luametatex

the manual

version 2.11.10

dev id 20261020

Contents

Introduction

1 Engines

1.1 Introduction 10
1.2 How it started 10
1.3 The engines 11
1.4 Reflections 12
1.5 Usage 14
1.6 Dependencies 15

2 Principles

2.1 Introduction 19
2.2 Text fonts 20
2.3 Math fonts 23
2.4 Rules 24
2.5 Paragraphs 26
2.6 Pages 26
2.7 Alignments 27
2.8 Adjusts 27
2.9 Marks 27
2.10 Inserts 27
2.11 Boxes 27
2.12 Language 28
2.13 Math 28
2.14 Programming 29
2.15 Protection 29
2.16 Optimization 29
2.17 Input 30
2.18 Nesting 30
2.19 Conditions 30
2.20 Macros 30
2.21 Keywords 31
2.22 Directions 31
2.23 Hooks 33
2.24 Expressions 33
2.25 Units 33
2.26 Local control 34
2.27 Overload protection 34
2.28 Specifications 36
2.29 Tracing 38

3 Constructions

3.1 Introduction 40
3.2 Boxes 40
3.3 Math style variants 42
3.4 Math scripts 43
3.5 Skewed fractions 45
3.6 Math fractions 46
3.7 Math radicals 49
3.8 Math accents 50
3.9 Math fences 53

4 Assumptions

4.1 Introduction 57
4.2 Virtual fonts 57

5 Internals

5.1 Introduction 60
5.2 A few basics 60
5.3 Memory words 64
5.4 Tokens 65
5.5 Nodes 66
5.6 The hash table 67
5.7 Save stack 70
5.8 Data types 70
5.9 Time flies 70
5.10 Keywords 74
5.11 Sparse arrays 75

6 Primitives

6.1 Introduction 77
6.2 Rationale 91
6.3 Primitives 92
6.4 Syntax 302

7 Callbacks

7.1 Introduction 343
7.2 Files 346
7.3 Running 347
7.4 Fonts 352
7.5 Typesetting 353
7.6 Tracing 364
7.7 Math 372

8 Fonts

8.1 Introduction 377
8.2 Primitives 378
8.3 Nodes 382
8.4 Loading 383
8.5 Helpers 388
8.6 Virtual fonts 391
8.7 Callbacks 393
8.8 Protrusion 393
8.9 Spaces 393

9 Languages

9.1 Introduction 396
9.2 Evolution 396
9.3 Characters, glyphs and discretionaries 397
9.4 Controlling hyphenation 403
9.5 The main control loop 403
9.6 Loading patterns and exceptions 405
9.7 Applying hyphenation 407
9.8 Applying ligatures and kerning 408
9.9 Breaking paragraphs into lines 409
9.10 The `language` library 409
9.11 Math 413
9.12 Tracing 413

10 Lua

10.1 Introduction 417
10.2 Initialization 417
10.3 Lua behaviour 420
10.4 Lua modules 420
10.5 Files 421
10.6 Testing 421
10.7 Helpers 421

11 Metapost

11.1 Introduction 428
11.2 The language 428
11.3 Instances 432
11.4 Processing 439
11.5 Internals 441
11.6 Information 444
11.7 Methods 444
11.8 Scanners 444
11.9 Injectors 447
11.10 Bytemaps 449
11.11 Experimental 451

12 TEX

12.1 Introduction 453
12.2 Status information 453
12.3 Everything TEX 465
12.4 The configuration 496
12.5 Input and output 497

13 Math

13.1 Introduction 500
13.2 Traditional alongside OpenType 500
13.3 Intermezzo 501
13.4 Unicode math characters 504
13.5 Math classes 505
13.6 Setting up the engine 505
13.7 Math styles 507
13.8 Math parameters 510
13.9 Math spacing 519
13.10 Fonts 521
13.11 Scripts 522

14 PDF

14.1 Introduction 527
14.2 Lua interfaces 527

15 Nodes

15.1 Introduction 536
15.2 Lua node representation 537
15.3 Main text nodes 538
15.4 Math nodes 563
15.5 Helpers 577

16 Tokens

16.1 Introduction 641
16.2 Lua token representation 641
16.3 Helpers 641

17 Libraries

17.1 Introduction 678
17.2 Third party 678
17.3 Core 679
17.4 Auxiliary 679
17.5 KD trees 709
17.6 Optional 713

18 Security

18.1 Introduction 735
18.2 Primitives 735
18.3 Macros 736
18.4 Tokens 736
18.5 Nodes 736
18.6 Lua 737
18.7 Files 737
18.8 Callbacks 737
18.9 Libraries 738
18.10 Execution 739

introduction

Introduction

The LuaMetaTEX manual that is a variant of the LuaTEX manual provides an overview similar to its parent. Instead of adding more and more to that one, an alternative take is provided. Here we start less from a historic perspective and treat the engine as independent development. The main reason for this is that we want to focus on ConTEXt, if only because that is the macro package that uses it and also drives the development.

In LuaMetaTEX we go further than in LuaTEX. We extend the language, refactor most subsystems and assume that the macro package adapts to that. Of course we are compatible as much as possible with predecessors but we also take the freedom to tune some default behavior. For instance, moving on with math rendering means that we can make assumptions with respect to fonts and because the math fonts have issues that never will be solved, in ConTEXt we just tweak the fonts before we feed them to the engine so that we can achieve the best result possible (in our opinion of course). The same is true for more mechanism, like for instance the par builder, where we introduce multiple paragraph line break passes using features not present in other engines and ConTEXt supports that. Although extensions like these are not discussed here we do have to describe the underlying mechanisms and interfaces and thereby assume usage as in ConTEXt.

A manual like this evolves over time and will take years to complete. These are volunteer efforts unless some project makes it possible to spend more time on it. In practice most work on TEX development is unpaid for and therefore mostly driven by the joy of playing with typesetting and coming up with solutions for problems that users present us. Keep that in mind when reading and wondering why the focus is not on what you expect or what is best for marketing. If you're annoyed by (the lack of) documentation, just don't waste time in LuaMetaTEX.

This manual replaces the older LuaMetaTEX manual. It has some less and some more than its predecessor which was derived from the LuaTEX manual. It will take some time to 'complete'. Eventually I might add a few indices but it makes only sense when the manual is more stable and I have to be in the mood to spend time on it.

Because many mechanisms have been extended we also have more parameters to control matters. Add to that additional font parameters (as in math) and it will be clear that it's hard to be complete, especially when control features only kick in when needed. Often the names of primitives and options give a clue. But when you're in for a bit of trial and error, looking at visual results might bring you to options that can be of help to get it better. Just ignore what doesn't make sense till you need something.

Disclaimer. I don't use 'artificial intelligence' tools for development and have no plans to do that either. If I can't manage without, I should not go on with developments anyway. I don't want to use tools that rip-off code (and basically abuse whatever people put on the internet for others to enjoy), pretty much aim at control and advertising (its all about money), infringe copyright, depend on other peoples originality and efforts, and frankly spoken, bring very little to my table, while consuming extreme amount of energy world-wide. I've nothing against expert systems applied wisely but that's a different story than today's big tech, commerce and dominance driven AI fashion. I also don't jump on every new language bandwagon because in the end there is little to gain, and all these software religious claims don't impress in the end. It's a waste of time and energy. Typesetting is very much also a human thing: look and feel, perception, joy and human interaction. I like to see what (challenges) users come up with, in results and demands; that is what drives me. Therefore, an important main point here is that all errors and hallucinations in this manual are mine.

Author	Hans Hagen & friends
ConTEXt	2026.10.21 21:08
LuaMetaTEX	2.11.10 (dev id: 20261020)
Support	contextgarden.net & tug.org


engines

1 Engines

Contents

1.1 Introduction 10
1.2 How it started 10
1.3 The engines 11
1.4 Reflections 12
1.5 Usage 14
1.6 Dependencies 15

1.1 Introduction

There are good reasons why we initialized the LuaTEX and later LuaMetaTEX projects. Here I will go into some of them. It is just short wrap up of how it started, how other engines influenced the process and how we see usage. There are plenty of documents out there that go into more detail. The main objective of this section is to put documentation into perspective.

1.2 How it started

When we started with ConTEXt, hardware was rather limited compared to what we have today. A personal computer had some 640kB memory, possibly bumped to 1MB with help from a memory extender. This put some restrictions to how macro packages could be defined, also because that memory had to be shared with the baseline operating system. However, over time, memory and runtime became less of an issue and the TEX engine could be configured to use whatever was available. Extending the program other than increasing the available memory became more feasible.

As with any program, there is always something to wish for which is why the e-TEX variant came into view. Before those extensions could be used, pdfTEX showed up. That variant simplified the 'TEX plus separate backend driver' model to a one-step process. Eventually e-TEX was merged into pdfTEX, and that became the de facto standard engine. There was never a follow up on e-TEX, and more drastic deviations like Omega were never ready for production. At some point XETEX came around but that was mostly a font specific extension. We were kind of stuck with a wish-list that never would be fulfilled but we occasionally pondered a follow up. We drafted an extended e-TEX proposal, played with some features related to pdf, improved a few things but that was it.

Having some experiences with Lua as extension language in SciTE, I wondered what something like that would bring to TEX and after discussing this with Hartmut he made variant of pdfTEX that has some basic interfaces: we could access properties of registers and print something to TEX as if it came from file. As is common with some variant, a new name was coined and LuaTEX came into existence. We're talking 2005.

Because Idris wanted to typeset high quality scholar manuscripts mixing Arabic and Latin we discussed how to do that in ConTEXt and his experiences with Omega were such that alternatives had to be considered: the Oriental TEX project was started and LuaTEX was the starting point. Taco merged some parts of Aleph (a somewhat stable variant of Omega) into the code base and stepwise some primitives were added. It was overall a rather large and serious project that took a lot of our time. It

was not commercially driven, mostly for ConTEXt users and therefore also a lot of fun to do. As often with such projects, early adapters keep things going.

It took a while before LuaTEX was stable in the sense that nothing more was added. Because the engine was developed alongside what is called ConTEXt MkIV, we could easily adapt both to each other. Even better: users could use both in production. However, in order for other macro packages to use LuaTEX (per request) it had to be frozen, and that happened around 2015, some 10 years after we started. However, we were not done yet and in order not to violate this stability principle the follow up was called LuaMetaTEX. Because it was a more drastic extension project, and also a somewhat drastic separation of the code base from the complex LuaTEX one, the related ConTEXt code was also separated, this time tagged MkXL, or LMTX when we talk about the combination. The project started around 2019 and soon again entered a state of combined development and use in production and most users switched to this variant.

There are more complete wrap ups of these developments and we systematically reported on them in various documents that are available in the distribution and/or published in user group journals.

1.3 The engines

Of course all starts with original TEX. We want to be compatible so we keep that functionality. However, for practical reasons LuaMetaTEX omits two core components. Font loading is not present in the frontend and there is no backend. Both are supposed to be provided via Lua plugins. This makes sense because in the meantime font technologies have changed and keep changing and backend also are a moving target. In ConTEXt we already did all that in Lua, so there was no need to keep that font and pdf generation code around in the engine. There are a few more deviations, like dropping some system specific features (terminal related) and in former times practical features like outer and long macros that no longer made sense and complicated integrating new features unnecessarily.

As mentioned in the introduction, pdfTEX is the basis for LuaTEX and LuaTEX is where we started with LuaMetaTEX. If we compare pdfTEX with traditional TEX the main additions are:

- There is an integrated pdf backend that also supports for instance hyperlinks and various annotations.
- Expansion of glyphs (aka hz) has been added to the engine and integrated in the par builder. The same is true for character protrusion (in the margin).
- There is, to some extend, support for inter-character kerning.
- There are some handy helpers, for instance for calculating hashes, randomization, etc.
- There is an extension to injection between lines (adjust).
- We have few more conditionals (like testing for a csname and absolute values).
- A few helpers like **\quitvmode** (that we liked to have in ConTEXt) were added.

Because pdfTEX was actively developed and maintained over many years, extensions showed up stepwise, also depending on usage and needs. That is also why the e-TEX extensions were included:

- More that 256 registers, including marks.
- Access to discarded material in the vertical splitting code.
- Protection against expansion of macros (the **\protected** prefix).
- A simple right to left typesetting mechanism.
- Access to some states, a limited set of last nodes, etc.
- There are some additional tracing features.
- One can reprocess tokens and produce detokenized lists.

In LuaTEX we also looked at what Omega could bring:

- More that 256 registers.
- Multi-directional typesetting.
- Local boxes (in lines).
- Input processing.

If we combine these lists, we see font expansion and protrusion coming back in LuaMetaTEX. However, already in LuaTEX expansion and protrusion were dealt with a bit differently and even more so in LuaMetaTEX, while protection in LuaMetaTEX is implemented differently. We also kept injection of vertical material but in LuaMetaTEX that done quite differently. Most of e-TEX is there but not right to left typesetting and the register approach. Of course we kept the additional conditionals but implemented them a bit different.

In LuaTEX we took the Omega enlarged register approach and directional typesetting although that has been stripped down and redone to right to left only. Local boxes are there but redone in LuaMetaTEX. There was no need for input processing because we have Lua. In the end there is little that we kept from the other engines which also means that one cannot take the manuals that come with these engines and simply assume that it is there.

We should of course mention MetaPost. That graphical subsystem was integrated in LuaTEX and on the one hand stripped down (less backend) and on the other extended (remove bottlenecks and add some functionality) in LuaMetaTEX. With respect to Lua we moved to more recent versions and dropped support for just in time compilation. This also means that in ConTEXt MkXL we have more MetaFun and therefore talk LuaMetaFun.

There is of course a lot in LuaTEX that can be found also in LuaMetaTEX but the later one goes way beyond its predecessor. It actually provides what we always wanted (as ConTEXt developers) but never showed up. And this brings us to a next topic.

1.4 Reflections

The previous section, somewhat derived from the LuaTEX manual, might suggest that LuaTEX and therefore LuaMetaTEX provides most of what pdfTEX, e-TEX, XETEX and Omega provide but here I must disappoint the reader. So in addition to or variation on the above here are some reflections.

We were quite involved in the early days of pdfTEX development, so some features of that program we kept in LuaTEX, like expansion, protrusion, basic pdf features like annotations, destinations, outlines and literals, transformations, image inclusion, plus a few handy extensions like `\vadjust pre`, `\insertht` and `\quitvmode` that were introduced for ConTEXt, as well as positioning that when brought into pdfTEX made that we no longer needed the indirect method using specials that we used (first with a post processing script filtering specials and providing positional information, later that became a the `dvipos` program). Experimental features (at that time introduced for ConTEXt) like snapping lines could make sense but were easier to handle in Lua so even those were dropped. We never used the features that were introduced for other macro packages, like color stacks and (un)escaping because we already did that otherwise. We also didn't want to burden the evolving LuaTEX engine with the other kerning features because they lacked control anyway. Even the mentioned adjust and insert extensions were redone and much more was added in those departments.

Because we started in 2005 (with a first release in 2006) the pdfTEX of that time is of course not the same as of today. I'm not sure what the last version is that ConTEXt MkII is targeting at because

the version numbering changed a bit; at some point versions like `14e` became `140.XX`, so it might be around`140.17` or so. It might even be that recent versions break MkII without us noticing. For LuaTEX we basically only took what we needed for ConTEXt at that time and assumed that Lua could fill in the gaps. Because ConTEXt didn't really use much of the LuaTEX backend in the end what we kept from pdfTEX in LuaMetaTEX was a follow up on expansion and protrusion, for which that engine set the standard. If it wasn't for pdfTEX the TEX community would not be where it was now.

For as much as they make sense e-TEX extensions are mostly there but that project was basically stopped after the first major release. In fact because pdfTEX has these extensions, we never implicitly had to include e-TEX. When we started with LuaTEX we actually kept in mind the ideas we had at that time because before we started with LuaTEX we already had plans for extensions (flagged `eetex`) but those never came to fruit, just as we had some ideas about extending dvi which were superseded by the arrival of pdf. The token prepend and append primitives actually were examples of that. The e-TEX project demonstrated that extending TEX was an option. In that sense, LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX were very much unavoidable from the perspective of those involved in ConTEXt.

Then there is XETEX. It is supported by MkII but only the font mechanism was extended to handle OpenType fonts. For a while LuaTEX had some compatible math character definition primitives but none of its features. We can assume that its internals are quite different when it comes to fonts from LuaTEX because LuaTEX basically provides support for traditional fonts and delegates everything OpenType to Lua. In LuaTEX we used font loader code from FontForge and some backend code from dvipdfmx, although ConTEXt eventually did all loading in Lua. But anyway this program demonstrated that a Unicode engine supporting publicly available (fancy) fonts was possible by adapting TEX so XETEX introduced TEXies to the at that point still evolving world of OpenType. And if someone is a happy XETEX user, there is no need to switch to LuaTEX.

In Omega there were input translation mechanisms that some ConTEXt users used but that I never looked into myself. These are of course not present in LuaTEX because we can use Lua for input processing. In the end a bit of the directionality is all that we kept, most noticeably the initial `parnode` and `dirnode` but we made them first class nodes instead of whatsits and in LuaMetaTEX the first one serves different purposes. It got us started with directions. Comparing the paragraph nodes of LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX makes little sense: they are too different.

Over the last decades other engines showed up, most noticeably those for e.g. Japanese but I never looked into these. I'm not sure if LuaTEX can do the same with help from Lua, but LuaMetaTEX has some more features so maybe it can. These engines serve a specific (language and script audience) but if Japanese ConTEXt user need something more than we provide they can ask. One reason why we have for instance an orientation feature in boxes is that we can support vertical typesetting with rotated glyphs and boxes.

In the end the extensions in LuaMetaTEX come from our own demands combined with trying to be complete but of course I might have missed something. It also means that flaws in the design are just mine (or ours in the case of LuaTEX). Of course quite some are common sense additions, often based what we need and what makes macro programming easier, but if users depend on some feature present in the other engines that cannot be handled by Lua, they might ask for something similar but then we need details and examples and not some reference to a manual or macros that we are unaware of, have never seen, never used or haven't catched up with.

There is very little overlap and common ground to cover between macro packages so if someone thinks that LuaMetaTEX is a ConTEXt thing, they might be right. Of course LuaMetaTEX has plenty of what LuaTEX has and the core of LuaTEX is pretty much original TEX. However, in LuaMetaTEX

nearly all mechanism have been extended, optimized, and in the process made a bit more C-ish. The original documentation describes what happens, the principles behind TEX, so to say. More details will be added but can also found in numerous documents in the ConTEXt distribution, articles and presentations. In the end we owe most to Don Knuth, who gave is the (very original) original that we can build upon.

An important decision we made when we started with LuaTEX is that we don't lock ourselves in specific solutions: callbacks are the way to go. Of course in LuaMetaTEX we have some more helpers, and in the extended MetaPost library we do implement some features in C after having prototyped them in Lua, but there runtime performance was important. But in general Lua solutions work out fine. Good examples are the font loading and processing code and the MetaPost backend. We can easily adapt, have complete control, can meet specific demands, and as with more plugins we just needed them right from the start. And that is an important consideration: we want to be able to experiment without constraints. There are always the other engines: pdfTEX for eight bit speed and XETEX for hard coded solutions and if they suit you, why not use them. We don't have to cover every niche out there.

1.5 Usage

Why is it that there has been little fundamental development around TEX engines? One of the reasons is that macro packages have to be stable. New features can be added but if they are only available in one engine (and there are a few more around now, like XETEX and the cjk specific ones) a macro package has to provide ways around them when they are not available. Risking some criticism I dare to say that in order to use LuaTEX to its full potential, macro package has to be set up such that this is possible and ConTEXt does just that. When we talk backends it's relatively easy, and when we talk fonts it's doable. But if you are not willing to adapt the core of your code dramatically (and conceptually) all you get from LuaTEX is a built-in scripting language and some occasional messing around with node lists. In ConTEXt we could transition rather well because the user interfaces permitted to do so without users noticing. Of course there were changes, for instance because encodings matter less, which is also true for e.g. XETEX, and font technologies changed. But for macro packages other than ConTEXt just the availability of Lua might be enough reasons to use that engine. That also means that documentation of the more intricate features is less important: one can just learn by example and ConTEXt is that example.

With LuaMetaTEX we go further because here one really has to make some fundamental choices. Again this could be done within the existing user interfaces, but here we are not only talking of fundamental improvements, like rendering math or breaking paragraphs into lines, but also of more flexible handling of alignments, inserts, adjusts, marks, par and page building, etc. Basically all mechanism got extended and opened up. In order to profit from this you have to be able to throw away existing solution and use these extensions to come up with better ones. If one can put sentiments aside, this also takes quite some time. This also means that where LuaMetaTEX is fine for the current ConTEXt, it might be less so for other macro packages. For instance, a font frontend and pdf backend in Lua comes at a performance penalty. Some can be gained back elsewhere, and actually the engine itself is more efficient too, but there are no guarantees that it also works out for others.

A very important aspect (at least for me) is that I want the macro code to look nice and in that respect stick to the TEX syntax as much as possible. That means that we have more programming related primitives, enhanced macro argument parsing, more (flexible) conditionals, additional registers, extra expansion related features and so on. Instead of some intermediate layer (like the helpers in ConTEXt) we can stick closer to the language itself. Of course this is not something that most users will notice.

What users might notice, is that on the average ConTEXt with LuaMetaTEX performs better than with LuaTEX or even LuaMetaTEX. Even with more performance critical components delegated to Lua (like the backend pdf generation) we gain and often can compete performance wise well with the faster eight bit pdfTEX engine.

The fact that one has to make (and/or cannot make) drastic choices has a consequence for documentation. Most of what is new and interesting is discussed in articles and low level manuals. However, it is often discussed in the perspective of ConTEXt. Although we do discuss and show generic solutions it makes little sense to go into details there, simply because in the end only ConTEXt might use them as intended. It's just a waste of time to implement variants that are more generic because they will never be used elsewhere, especially in situations where the solutions are considered 'standard' and will not change. In ConTEXt we always followed the principle that if we can do better, we will do better, and interfaces are such that this can be done.

Of course that brings up the question "How do you know that these are the best solutions" and the answer is that we don't. However, we're not talking of quick and dirty solutions. For instance it took years to enhance math support: experiments, discussion, reconsideration, documenting, writing articles, looking at usage, fonts, etc. A wider discussion would not have brought better solutions, if at all. If that were the case, there would already have been successors. The same is true for most extensions: there was little need for them outside the ConTEXt community. So in the end that's what those interested should look at: how is LuaMetaTEX used in ConTEXt. It is the combined development together with acceptance by users that makes this possible.

1.6 Dependencies

When we started using LuaTEX in ConTEXt we needed to add support for locating and reading files as well as for OpenType processing. We also had to provide a backend driver especially when we diverted from the pdfTEX approach. In MkII locating files is delegated to kpse but we already had code in the runners that made it more efficient because nested lookup calls (as we have for starting up and running MetaPost) have quite some overhead. In a full blown TEXLive installation we could measure multiple seconds overhead. So, we carried these optimizations into the MkIV code base and replaced kpse completely. This why we could remove it from LuaMetaTEX, which also removed a complex dependency. When a kpse library is present you can, at your own risk, use the optional library which (as with any optional) provides a minimal set of runtime bindings.

When it comes to fonts, in LuaTEX we also had to test plain TEX, so we made the font loader and processing code generic, which also is the reason why Kai Eigner is involved in maintaining it. We are aware of usage in LATEX but as far as we know it is a patched version (likely with limited functionality) and there using a library is the recommended way anyway. The font loader and processor in MkXL is extended and tuned for LuaMetaTEX and because we have no reason to support plain (it can if needed be emulated in ConTEXt) we don't need to make that variant generic. We could implement the base mode (native) font engine in Lua but the built-in one is fine and we see no reason to cripple TEX too much, but you need to load the font via Lua.

The same is true for the (pdf) backend. We already did most in Lua and prototyped in MkIV before we moved on to LuaMetaTEX. A disadvantage of not having a hard coded backend is that it increases runtime. The first versions of LuaMetaTEX took between 10 and 20 percent more runtime and partly that was due to the backend. Because the engine became faster and a few more primitive features were added we could gain back performance and currently MkXL is outperforming MkIV, for various reasons. A backend is only partially doing pure textual output. There are images to be dealt with,

fonts to be embedded (which can also involve virtual fonts), specific features involved (like color or hyperlinks), etc. Most of that is actually macro package specific. One could argue that a generic backend makes sense, but there is little use in that when it is only used by ConTEXt. I could code a LuaTEX compatible backend but I would not be able to test it, unless I made a setup for it, which is a waste of time.

So, these three components, although we could provide them, are currently very ConTEXt specific so if you want to use LuaMetaTEX elsewhere you need to come up with something like that. Given history, changes are slim that any agreement can be reached on a generic approach.[1] This is no real problem because in order to use LuaMetaTEX to its full potential you probably need to rewrite a lot and therefore likely end up in the ConTEXt mindset. If someone needs specific features that LuaMetaTEX seems to offer, just give ConTEXt a try.[2]

[1] We also have to be realistic. Apart maybe from fonts and hyphenation patterns there is little that macro packages have in common. The only package that from the perspective of ConTEXt qualifies as 'generic' is TikZ as that was designed with multiple macro packages in mind. We therefore try to keep supporting it in the ConTEXt ecosystem.

[2] This is why we have no LuaMetaTEX specific mailing list, we use the ConTEXt mailing list(s) for that. The official source distribution is the ConTEXt distribution where it is included in order to enable users to compile binaries if needed. This also fits into the open source 'source included' paradigm. If your ConTEXt installation doesn't ship with sources it is likely not an official one!


principles

2 Principles

Contents

2.1 Introduction 19
2.2 Text fonts 20
2.3 Math fonts 23
2.4 Rules 24
2.5 Paragraphs 26
2.6 Pages 26
2.7 Alignments 27
2.8 Adjusts 27
2.9 Marks 27
2.10 Inserts 27
2.11 Boxes 27
2.12 Language 28
2.13 Math 28
2.14 Programming 29
2.15 Protection 29
2.16 Optimization 29
2.17 Input 30
2.18 Nesting 30
2.19 Conditions 30
2.20 Macros 30
2.21 Keywords 31
2.22 Directions 31
2.23 Hooks 33
2.24 Expressions 33
2.25 Units 33
2.26 Local control 34
2.27 Overload protection 34
2.28 Specifications 36
2.29 Tracing 38

2.1 Introduction

This is a bit odd manual but needed anyway. In the process of adding features to LuaMetaTEX and adapting ConTEXt accordingly some decisions were made. On the one hand generic flexibility is a criterion used when the extending engine, on the other hand practical usability in ConTEXt is used to decide where to draw a line or make some choices. It makes no sense to complicate the already complex engine even more, or cripple ConTEXt when cleaner (low level) solutions are possible.

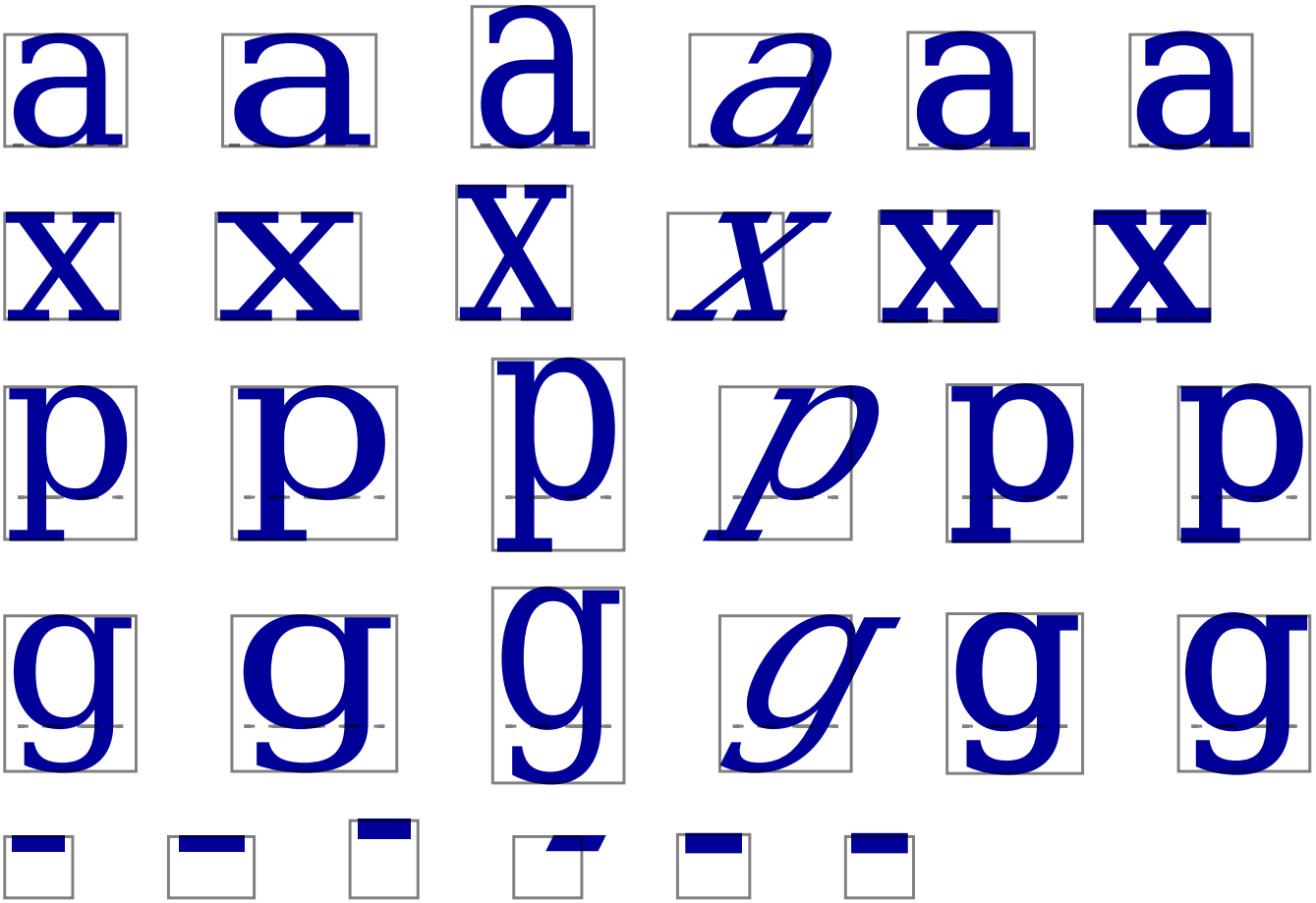
Here I will collect some of the considerations and mention the choices made. These are mostly mine but some result from discussions and experiments. This overview is not complete, new primitives are discussed elsewhere and the ConTEXt low level manuals explain how to use these. Consider this to be a teaser.

This summary is work in progress.

2.2 Text fonts

Plenty has been written about fonts in TEX, so here I will only mention a few aspects. Traditionally the TEX engines works with copies of fonts at given sizes. For large fonts that is kind of inefficient. This is why in LuaMetaTEX we can scale a font on-the-fly using **\glyphscale**, **\glyphxscale** and **\glyphyscale**. This feature is also used to implement a more efficient (although not 100% metric compatible) compact font mode. It works okay in text as well as math although it comes at a price: many more calculations are needed at the engine end.

One way to get an expanded, squeezed, emboldened or slanted font in ConTEXt is to use the effects mechanism. It is quite flexible but again comes at a price because the backend has to do more work which is measurable, especially because effects can apply to the font or individual glyphs. However, the advantages out-weight the disadvantages. At the cost of yet a bit more performance a more native variant is also available using **\glyphslant** and **\glyphweight**.



Extending, as seen in the second renderings, scales the shapes horizontally, while squeezing, in the third renderings, does it in the vertical direction. In both cases the dimensions have to be adapted. This is not the case when we slant. The last two samples in a row have an increased weight, and these are the more tricky cases because here one can argue how to scale and reposition a shape. When a shape is above the baseline we increase the height, and when it goes below we increase the depth. The engine is capable to increase the width, height and depth and shift the shape a little. It only makes sense to adapt the height and depth when they are non-zero. It will never be perfect, but this feature is not perfect anyway.

The way fonts are set up in a TEX macro package often originates in the past, if only because it came with fonts. The Computer Modern fonts are among the few that have multiple design sizes. However,

the collection is pretty much based on a ten point design. For math there are seven and five point variants for the script sizes, for footnotes an eight point makes sense and section heads can use the larger twelve point plus the few larger sizes. Setting up a twelve point body font environment, as we have in ConTEXt, is quite doable with the fonts but for an eleven point body font more compromised have to be made.

One can wonder why in ConTEXt the ten point math setup of 10/7/5 became 12/9/7 instead if 12/8.4/6 and the reason is just that when there were still bitmap fonts one didn't want too many (intermediate) sizes. Anyway, we're sort of stuck with this default setup now, but nothing prevents users to redefine a body font environment.

Another speciality of TEX (fonts) is that they have italic correction, something that lacks in OpenType fonts (apart from math btu there it serves a different purpose). We can however emulate it, and in ConTEXt that is an option. Given that we have to make choices it is clear that the engine can only be supportive here, especially when we use the **`\glyphslant`** method.

A curious case is the following: in Computer Modern we find italic correction in the upright fonts, for instance between an 'f' and 'h'. Dealing with this automatically is impossible because italic correction is not to be applied between glyph runs of the same font.

By now it will be clear that when we talk fonts, from the perspective of TEX we actually talk glyphs: the most prominent content item, although it is treated as an abstraction: a blob with dimensions and other properties. They are always wrapped in a box, often one that comes from the par builder where lines are packaged. They then travel around with the rest till the backend processes them and eventually discard the nodes that relate to them: glyph nodes.

When a character is entered it ends up in a list. In a traditional approach it will be packaged (hboxed) or enter the par builder. Before that happens font processing takes place optionally preceded by hyphenation. In LuaMetaTEX before and after that callbacks can do all kind of things with the character (glyph) sequence. It is for that reason that in ConTEXt we keep them as (either or not private) Unicode, but other macro packages might decide otherwise. The character value is in the end just a lookup key for the engine.

A glyph node carries a lot of information and most relates not to processing a font but controlling other actions as well as possible tracing. Because setting and using is up to the macro package we keep the following simple. One can find examples in ConTEXt and in the descriptions of nodes and Lua helpers.

A glyph carries the *font* identifier and a *character* code. The code is just the character from the input but any time a callback can change that. But in the end the backend has to know what it gets. Because the macro package implements the backend it has to be consistent but users don't need to know what actually happens, unless they plug in their own code. Of course the character code should relate to information passed to the engine, like dimensions. There is no standard so just assume that macro packages behave different. The font identifier combined with the character code that maps into the `characters` table passes to the engine provides the par builder and packager what it needs. There are no dimensions stored in the glyph nodes! But there are helpers that can provide the effective dimensions of a glyph at the Lua end.

A glyph node carries a *state* and *data*, both integers, that have no meaning in the engine. They are just efficient alternatives for attributes. In ConTEXt they play a role in font rendering but again, there is no prescribed usage.

The *scale*, *xscale* and *yscale* fields in a glyph node reflect **\glyphscale**, **\glyphxscale**, **\glyphyscale** as set directly or via a **\fontspecdef**'d command. The *weight* and *slant* fields relate to **\glyphweight** and **\glyphslant**. These are used in for instance the by now default ConTEXt compact font mode. So we can have the same font identifier with different scaling. Of course this comes at a price: instead of just picking up the width, height or depth from the font, the engine has to apply the scales to the natural dimensions. In practice this performance hit is compensated by savings elsewhere. But it does for instance means that in order to determine if two neighboring glyphs are from the same font in the traditional sense, scales as well as states and data fields have to be compared. Here is how that works in practice:

```
{\glyphscale  1000 infor}{\glyphscale  1000 mation}
{\glyphscale  1000 infor}{\glyphscale  1200 mation}
{\glyphweight  100 infor}{\glyphweight  120 mation}
```

We choose a font that has kerns:



When a text gets hyphenated, the process is controlled by all kind of settings, some of which relate to the language, so we have a *language* field and for practical reasons also a *script* field but the engine only uses the first one. The left and right hyphenation minima (*lhmin* and *rhmin*) are also stored in each glyph so one can control them locally, not that we've seen users doing that.

We only mention the *control* and *option* fields because they reflect what actually is permitted in various stages. We also have a *protection* state, that can be used to prevent duplicate processing. There are a few state variables that keep track of glyph originating in a pre, post or replacement discretionary component (*discpart* and *disccode*).

The *expansion* field stores the effective expansion factor as determined by the par builder. The backend has to follow up on this. When fonts features are applied kerning (or positioning in OpenType speak) can be be stored in the *left*, *right* and *raise* fields. This saves injecting kern nodes. The user applied **\glyphxoffset** and **\glyphyoffset** also are reflected in fields: *xoffset* and *yoffset*.

The final set of fields concern math, because after math has been processed glyphs is what we are left with. One can set a *group*, *index* and/or *properties*. These can come in handy when interpreting the stream (think of exporting, verbose math or tagging). Usage is very macro package specific.

The main message here is that in various stages of the rendering glyph fields are consulted, set, adapted. It definitely means that where in original TEX character nodes were one memory word, in LuaMetaTEX they are now 15 memory words. (At some point I might add some more details here.)

Closely related to glyph nodes, definitely from the perspective of processing fonts, are discretionary nodes. When you manually enter them the three components are:

```
\discretionary {pre break} {post break} {replace}
```

and when for instance an explicit hyphen `-` or a sequence of them that becomes a compound hyphen, is entered that also becomes such a triplet node. Of course the hyphenate machinery produces them in abundance.

In LuaMetaTEX (as follow up on LuaTEX) we don't use the traditional TEX approach of only a pre and post component combined with jumping over the replace. We have explicit *pre*, *post* and *replace* fields

and these can have a list of glyphs (plus some more). A font processor has to look into these three streams and make decisions based on matches with preceding or following glyphs. Take it from us that this is a complex and not easy to follow process, especially not for complex fonts with contextual lookups. A word can have more than one discretionary.

Most room in the 13 memory word node goes to housekeeping these three components and that has to be managed carefully so from the Lua end control is restricted. In addition we have a *penalty* and *options* field. We also have a math specific *class* field (so yes, math can have discretionaries) and a state field *orphaned* that we use in the line-break routine. Overall it gives us a lot of control over the process of hyphenation and breaking content over lines.

Eventually these discretionaries disappear from the node list. One can decide to keep them but it makes little sense. We loose information when the lines are constructed so keeping the inline only leaves us with an incomplete picture. Instead we store information with the glyphs in the mentioned *disc** fields so that we can to some extend reconstruct hyphenation points and provide visual feedback to the user on request; in the meantime ConTEXt has a bit of a reputation for that kind of feedback. One lines are normalized, read: have a well defined final structure with respect to various space related properties, the fact that there are no longer discretionary nodes makes later processing of such lists a bit more efficient.

2.3 Math fonts

Support for math in an Unicode aware engine is also driven by the repertoire of characters and their organization in Unicode, as well as by OpenType math as cooked up by Microsoft with a bit of input from TEX folk.

The engine is agnostic when it comes to Unicode: there are no character codes interpreted in special ways. There are math alphabets but these are not special: in a traditional eight bit engine we have families to deal with them, in a Unicode aware engine there are several solutions. The most important character property that has some consequence is the math class but for dealing with that we're on our own anyway. Everything Unicode related is up to ConTEXt to deal with, and it is the macro package that drives the engine, using the constructs that are available, like atoms with specific classes, fractions, accents, delimiters, fences, radicals, operators etc.

When it comes to fonts it is more complex. The OpenType math standard is driven by the fact that MS Word provides a math editor and therefore needs a font. That font is Cambria and it is (at the time of writing this) the only font that comes from the origin. It has not been extended, nor fixed so basically what is in there kind of has become the standard. The other OpenType math fonts are a curious mix of old and new technology and again not much has happened there.

Now, when it comes to choices here, a few can be made based on conclusions drawn during decades of dealing with these fonts and the assumed technology.

- There has be no real developments so we can just assume that what we got is what we will have forever. Cambria is and remains the standard, quite some fonts shipped with TEX have issues that will stay, and new fonts, especially when developed outside TEX's scope likely also have issues, because, after all, what is used for testing them?

- Only a few renders support the new technology. It is unlikely that MS Word will change and basically XETEX and LuaTEX are also frozen. On the web old school fonts are used, at least till 2023. Plenty of time went by since the beginning of the century and nothing improved.

- The most important font properties that play a role are parameters, italic correction, variants and extensibles, anchors for accents, stylistic alternates, script alternates and staircase kerns. There are some rules of how to apply italic correction, but many fonts make them unapplicable. The same is true for anchors and kerns. There are only top kerns.

- Italic correction is a flawed concept and we decided to just ignore them: when specified we add it to the width and discard them afterwards. The value is translated into a bottom right corner kern. For large operators we translate them to top and bottom accents.

- Top accents can be flawed so in many cases we can just ignore them. They only make sense for italic shapes anyway.

- Staircase kerns are a nice idea but make no sense. First of all they concern two characters, nucleus and script, but we can also have accents, fraction, fenced stuff and other constructs in scripts so instead we prefer a system of corner kerns. Also, we noticed that staircase kerns are often implemented partially and even then not that well, probably because there was no way to test them. Even worse is that when they are inconsistent formulas can look rather inconsistent. So, we translate staircase kerns into corner kerns and add and/ overload them by corner kerns. These kerns can then be applied for any reasonable combination.

- Extensible are mixed breed. Rules should be extensibles but aren't. Some snippets have Unicode points so they can be used to construct missing glyphs but the repertoire is inconsistent. Because we don't expect Unicode to adapt we therefore provide alternative solutions.

- The repertoire of math parameters is on the one hand incomplete and on the other hand less dependent on the font and more on intended usage. So, apart from a few, we end up with adapting to our needs. It is part of the more granular control that we wish.

- Gaps in alphabet vectors are a pain but the engine is agnostic of them. For some reason the TEX community let itself down on this so it has to cope at the macro level. It is by now an old problem.

So, to summarize the font part, an alternative standard could discard the concept of italic correction and go for proper widths, a simplified corner kern model, provide top and bottom accents, prescribe a repertoire of extensibles and snippets and at least fill the gaps in alphabets instead of relying on shared glyphs. It won't happen any time soon, but still we do follow that approach and have the engine ready for it. Because we adapt the fonts runtime to this, we can eventually remove all the code related to italic correction and staircase kerns, simply because it is not used.

2.4 Rules

The original TEX engine actually has only two graphical elements: glyphs and rules. These have a width, height and depth and when decisions are made, for instance when deciding where to break a line, or when boxes are constructed these dimensions have to be known. Actually, TEX doesn't really care what these elements are, it's the dimensions that matter most. Graphics for instance can be abstract objects, traditionally injected via so called specials wrapped into a box of given dimensions. The pdfTEX and later engines added a native representation but basically it acted like a box (or rule if you like). It's the backend that turns glyphs, rules and these special boxes into something that one can see and print.

Rules have the three dimensions we mentioned. There are horizontal and vertical rules, but only at the primitives level. Once you specified an **\hrule** or **\vrule** it became a generic rule with the main

difference being the default dimensions. A rule initializes with so called running dimensions, think of signals that the final dimension comes from the encapsulating box.

Here we have a vertical rule:  with width 3cm, height 5mm and depth 2mm. If we don't specify a width we get the default thickness of 0.4pt, as in and when we prefix it with **\leaders** and let it follow by a **\hfill** we get this:  .

When we put on an **\hrule** on an empty line the running width kicks in:



which is a feature that one can use in for instance tables. However the fact that we only talk rectangles means that there is only a limited repertoire of applications. In order to frame some text you need four (disconnected) rules, For a background fill you can use a single rule. There is also an application for rules that have height and depth but no width: these so called struts that can enforce vertical spacing and dimensions.

So what does LuaMetaTEX bring to the rules? Because the engine itself is only interested in dimensions it's more about passing information to the backend. For this we have a few more fields in the rule nodes that can be set from Lua. This permits for instance to hook in MetaPost graphics that adapt like rules. There are a few more primitives, one for making struts: they can take their dimensions from a character. In math mode they're invisible and don't influence inter-atom spacing but still take their role in determining dimensions. Then there are the virtual rules that have dimensions (to be used in the backend) but don't contribute in the frontend. The **\novrule** and **\nohrule** do contribute but are ignores in the backend so they are cheap alternatives for empty boxes with specific dimensions set.

Some rule subtypes are set by the engine, for instance the math engine marks over, under, fraction and radical rules. In Lua one can mark outline, user, box and image rules so that node list processors can take their properties into accounT when needed, the frontend is only interested in the dimensions and sees them as normal rules.



Here we have the following call:

```
\hrule height \strutht depth \strutdp on 0.04tw off 0.01tw \relax
```

The `on` and `off` are among the new keys and they do nothing at the TEX end. It is the backend that will create the dash pattern. You can achieve the same effect with leaders but while here we have a single rule, for a leader the engine will make as many rules as are needed for this dash pattern. This is a good example of adding little to the fontend in order to make the backend do the job. In a similar fashion outlines are delegated. Other tricks involve offsets and there is room for some additional features but for now they are on the "Only when I need it." list, after all we need something to wish for.

Like with glyphs we'll quickly discuss what information travels with the nine memory word large rule nodes, but let's first stress that because they are basically one of the two content items, it makes a lot of sense to see this blob with dimensions as more than rules. The fact that they have dimensions, means that routines that look at those, like a packager or line break routine, has only glyphs, rules and boxes to take into account when it comes to for instance height and depth. Adding a rule subtype is way cheaper than adding a new node type with dimensions because that would demand adaption of places where dimensions come into play but also Lua code that operates on lists.

This might be a good moment to mention that in TEX engines traditionally fields like *width*, *height* and *depth* were kept in equivalent places in the memory word set so that macros could be used to access them. In LuaMetaTEX we went more verbose and every node has its own accessors. This permits extending and makes for less potential errors. We leave it to the compiler to deal with the (a bit) more code that is needed.

Because we use rules as template for possible extensions but also for some control over typesetting we have more fields than the three dimensions. For instance we have *xoffset* and *yoffset* for a displacement and *left* and *right* for margins. Because rules are mode sensitive (horizontal vs. vertical) these last two can also result in top and bottom margins.

We have a *rulethickness* that can be used in the backend; the engine just passes it around. The same is true for the *data* field but some of the options in *options* are there for the engine.

There are also shared fields, think *extra_1* and *extra_2*, but their convenient names depend on the subtype, so we have *lineon* and *lineoff* for user rules that permit implementing a dashed rule. Strut rules provide *font* and *character*. A virtual rule overloads the two margin fields and thereby can provide the virtual dimensions while the engine calculates with zero dimensions in the usual fields. The *discardable* field is there for internal purposes (the balancing mechanism). For sure there will be be more in due time.

2.5 Paragraphs

A lot can be said about paragraphs but we keep it short here. Much more can be found in for instance the articles that we wrote on the subject. When you enter (or generate) text it will be added to a list (of nodes). That list can become a horizontal box, vertical box, or end up in the main vertical list. When we go vertical the list will be split in lines and the process is called line breaking. Between the lines we can get penalties that tell the machinery how a paragraph of lines can be split over page boundaries.

When breaking the engine can use up to three passes: a first pass that uses **\pretolerance** as criterion, a tolerant pass with hyphenation enabled using **\tolerance** and an emergency pass that kicks in **\emergencystretch** when set. In LuaMetaTEX we can have additional passes that come online depending on criteria and/or thresholds; search for **\parpasses** to learn more about this.

The par builder in LuaMetaTEX has more features that users can control and also normalized the resulting lines so that later on from the Lua end they can be manipulated easier. There are also ways to let embedded inserts, marks and (v)adjusts migrate to the outer level. All this takes more runtime than in original TEX but in practice one won't really notice this because we gain in other places.

Most or what is new is available as features in ConTEXt, most noticeably in extra keys to **\setupalign**. It is also good to know that we have ways to hook specific features in what is called 'wrapping up paragraph'. Also, contrary to traditional TEX we configured ConTEXt to use the mechanism that freezes paragraph specific parameters with the current paragraph so that there is no (or at least less) interference with grouping.

2.6 Pages

The page builder is less complex than the par builder as it doesn't really optimize. When the target size overflows it backtracks to the last best break. The main complication is in handling the inserts: these need to stay with the content and therefore can break over a page boundary.

In LuaMetaTEX we added only a few features like **\pageextragoal** for some slack in calculations and we also added the more explicit **\pagevsize** and a few state access primitives. We might at some point extend this builder a bit although the 'balance' mechanism (that for instance in ConTEXt is used in column sets) already provides a multi-pass solution.

2.7 Alignments

Alignments are on the one hand an independent builder but because cells in tables are kind of independent snippets this mechanism is also very much mixed in the parser. The engine is, when it comes to processing content, in text mode, math mode and both these states can happen inside alignments. When the alignment (group) is finished the table will be constructed from the snippets which happens in a few steps because the dimensions can depend on the content of a whole row of column.

This mechanism is rather straightforward if we forget about possible look-ahead issues in the 'preamble parsing' and 'determining if we're done'. This issue is a bit less problematic in LuaMetaTEX because we can define macros as being **\noaligned** which instructs the scanner to not expand but assume we're still doing table (cells).

Compared to LuaTEX there are some extras, like setting attributes on cells, as well as optimizations, like ignoring zero **\tabskip** which makes tables that span hundreds of pages and many columns less memory hungry.

2.8 Adjusts

You can put stuff before and after lines using **\vadjust** and at the edges using **\localleftbox** and alike. Both are seen in the par builder, where the boxes contribute to the dimensions and the adjusted material is inserted when the paragraph is wrapped up and contributed to the current list. In LuaMetaTEX these mechanism have been extended so that we can actually uses them in am meaningful way.

2.9 Marks

These signals in the text are used for managing (for instance) running headers and a few extra features have been added, like migration to an outer level and resets. In MkIV we handled marks in Lua but with LuaMetaTEX it makes sense to use the engine.

2.10 Inserts

Inserts are signals that end up in lines and migrate to the outer level, that is the main vertical list. An example of usage is footnotes. In the main vertical list they are bound to the line they relate to so that the page builder can make sure that they end up on the same page. In LuaMetaTEX they can bubble up from deeply nested boxes. Contrary to the traditional binding of an insert class to various registers in LuaMetaTEX they can be managed independently which means that they have more properties.

2.11 Boxes

Boxes are one of the most important structures. Eventually the result is a bunch of nested boxes with glyphs, kerns, glue and so called whatsits that the backend will convert into something, like a pdf file. We have a low level manual on boxes and their many properties.

Where glyphs are the visual elements, boxes are invisible wrappers. A line is a box that groups (collects) glyphs and spacing but we don't really see that box. In this paragraph we enable the ConTEXt visualizer so we do see the boxes when you zoom in. Every line is a **\hbox** with a height and depth depending on the content but a width determined by the **\hsize**. Of course we can have also boxes in the line, as we see with the TEX logo, where the lowered E is moved down boxed.

In a traditional engine box nodes have a width, height and depth field for dimensions but also a shift field that signal a displacement. Moving a box while still keeping its dimensions is used in the math builder and post line break routine but in LuaMetaTEX we did away with that in most places. The reason is that where in original TEX no one is confronted with these engine imposed/applied shifts, in an opened up LuaMetaTEX it can be confusing. Of course the field is still there, also because it's used in **\moveleft** and friends. In addition we can set offsets, orientation in four ways, anchor the box on corners and such. As a result we have more keywords to check when we set a box which actually was one of the reasons to optimize the keyword scanner.

2.12 Language

The language model in LuaMetaTEX is similar to LuaTEX. A glyph node has a language field that is used by the engine for hyphenation. There are some fields in the glyph node that carry states related to hyphenation and in LuaMetaTEX we have more control options. There are some text codes that one can see as related to languages, like **\lccode** and **\uccode** and even **\sfcode** but especially in a Unicode environment the macro package likely will do some independent of these shared vectors.

Hyphenation patterns are loaded at runtime which saves on the size of the format file; after all we seldom need more than one, and pre-loading dozens makes little sense. The hyphenate and exception handlers provide features for compound words and penalties and also have callbacks to add additional functionality. Users will not directly mess with these and trust the macro package to do the right thing.

2.13 Math

Plenty has been written about the multi-year project of opening up and extending the math engine. Opening up and providing full control is part of supporting and experimenting with OpenType math fonts but we already discussed this in a previous section. Another aspect of opening up is making hard coded properties configureable, even if that feature will hardly be used, simply because the built-in defaults make sense. Then there is all kind of control over rendering that can be controlled by keywords to the math specific elements like atoms, fractions, operators, accents, radicals and fences.

Because traditional fonts are phased out in favour of (often flawed) OpenType variants much of what is new is also controlled by fonts, be it that we have our own extensions. In ConTEXt mathfonts are tweaked to fit our model. Inter atom spacing, penalties, discretionaries, continuation scripts (think multiscripts, pre and post), additional classes, dictionaries, linebreaks, carrying properties over math groups, are all features that make it possible to renderer more precise math without the need for manual intervention. It often looks, for instance from posts on support platforms, that the more or less standard math has to come with tweaking your source; it has become an accepted practice. In ConTEXt we always had structure and we added some more of that and because the math engine carries more information around we could eventually simplify some code otherwise done in Lua.

By looking at what ConTEXt actually needs, we could decide to strip down the math engine (old as well as new features). We can also decide to eventually just assume wide fonts to be used and drop old font

support. After all, because one has to load the fonts with Lua, it's not hard to map traditional fonts to (extended) OpenType alternatives, which is actually what we do anyway with for instance Antykwa.

2.14 Programming

There are some major extensions to the way one can program macros, of which we mention a few:

- Macros can have more complex definitions, for instance optional arguments, mandate braces, optional spaces between arguments.
- We have more conditionals and conditionals can be less nested by using **\orelse** and continued tests at the same nesting level.
- We have various kind of native loops which makes for more advanced fully expandable solutions.
- There are additional, more advanced, expression scanners for numbers (integers) and dimensions. In fact, when a value is needed these scanners can kick in (curly braced values).
- There are user units that hook into registers and other properties. Of course this feature is rather macro package dependent.
- We can have local expansion, a.k.a. 'local control' which means that the main loops basically acts as a function.
- There are more (powerful) input parsers at the Lua end which helps making extensions to the syntax without bloating the already large set of primitives.
- Macros can have properties that make them more robust in alignment and expansion contexts and can be protected against overloading.

There are many small extensions that are the result of years of experience with programming in the TEX language and accumulated observations. Of course most is driven by ConTEXt development. Some of the new programming features are explained below.

2.15 Protection

The idea behind TEX is that users define macros. However, when they do so in the perspective of a macro package there is the danger that core functionality can be overwritten. Now, one can of course make all primitives less accessible, for instance by some prefix. But that makes no real sense for features that belong to the language. When users use Camel Case for their names they're unlikely to run into issues, so while internal macros are actually prefixed, we don't do that with the primitives, so you can write code that looks TEX.

Over time ConTEXt has been ridiculed by non users for prefixing with `\do` or `\dodo` but that's by folk who love long (cryptic) names with many underscores and other inaccessible characters. The way we protect users from accidental overloading is by using the LuaMetaTEX overload protection system. Macros (and primitives) can be tagged in way so that the engine can issue warning or even error in case of an undesirable definition.

There is of course some overhead involved in for instance every **\def** or **\let** but it is little and the engine is fast anyway.

2.16 Optimization

There are many places where the engine could be optimized without getting obscure. One reason is that the memory layout is somewhat different because we snap to 8, 16, 32 or 64 bits and the

engine being a Unicode capable one already has more memory available in some places than what was needed. Also, knowing usage patterns, it was possible to identify possible bottlenecks and widen the necks.

Furthermore, it was possible to improve input handling, logging, save stack usage, keyword parsing, expressions, and much more. On the other hand nodes became larger so there we loose some. The LuaMetaTEX engine is faster than LuaTEX, although some of the gain is lost on the fact that one needs to use Lua backend.

2.17 Input

The input can come from files, token lists, macros and Lua which means many places. When it comes from Lua it can be tokens, nodes, string, and each has its special way of handling and the engine has to keep track of this when it accumulated the input that pops up after a Lua call. This is done as efficient as possible without sacrificing performance. The fact that we have utf should not have too much impact.

2.18 Nesting

When you enter a group a stack boundary is set and when some value changes the original value is pushed on the stack. After leaving the group values are restored. The engine tries to avoid redundant actions which improves memory usage and runtime.

Every macro expansion, opened file, expanded token list, etc. pushes the input stack and that comes with overhead. Again we have tried to minimize the impact and thereby gain a bit over LuaTEX.

Other stacks like those used by math, alignment, conditionals, expressions etc. have also been improved some. On the other hand, by unweaving some shared code there can be a price to pay, but as with everything usage patterns indicate no penalty here.

2.19 Conditions

We already had more conditionals in LuaTEX but again the repertoire of conditionals has been extended. This permits us to remove some middle-layer helpers and stay closer to the core language. It also helps to improve performance.

Another important addition has been **\orelse** than permits us to write test in a way similar to what other language provide with for instance `elseif` or `else if`.

2.20 Macros

Expanding macros happens a lot especially in a more complex macro package. This means that adding features in that area can have a large impact on runtime. Nevertheless the argument parser now provides a few handfuls of variants in picking up arguments with out noticeable degradation, especially because these new features can gain performance.

At the same time there have been some optimizations in storing macro related states, checking and accessing parameters. There are additional (internal) classes of macros that make for a more natural implementation; for instance **\protected** macros are now first class commands.

2.21 Keywords

Some primitives accept one or more keywords and LuaMetaTEX adds some more. In order to deal with this efficiently the keyword scanner has been optimized, where even the context was taken into account. As a result the scanner was quite a bit faster. This kind of optimization was a graduate process the eventually ended up in what we have now. In traditional TEX (and also LuaTEX) the order of keywords is sometimes mixed and sometimes prescribed. In most cases only one occurrence is permitted. So, for instance, this is valid in LuaTEX:

```
\hbox attr 123 456 attr 123 456 spread 10cm { }
\hrule width 10cm depth 3mm
\hskip 3pt plus 2pt minus 1pt
```

The `attr` comes before the `spread`, rules can have multiple mixed dimension specifiers, and in glue the optional `minus` part always comes last. The last two commands are famous for look ahead side effects which is why macro packages will end them with something not keyword, like `\relax`, when needed.

In LuaMetaTEX the following is okay. Watch the few more keywords in box and rule specifications.

```
\hbox reverse to 10cm attr 123 456 orientation 4 xoffset 10pt spread 10cm { }
\hrule xoffset 10pt width 10cm depth 3mm
\hskip 3pt minus 1pt plus 2pt
```

Here the order is not prescribed and, as demonstrated with the box specifier, for instance dimensions (specified by `to` or `spread` can be overloaded by later settings. In case you wonder if that breaks compatibility: in some way it does but bad or sloppy keyword usage breaks a run anyway. For instance `minuscule` results in `minus` with no dimension being seen. So, in the end the user should not noticed it and when a user does, the macro package already had an issue that had to be fixed.

2.22 Directions

The directional model in LuaMetaTEX is a simplified version the the model used in LuaTEX. In fact, not much is happening at all: we only register a change in direction. The approach is that we try to make node lists balanced but also try to avoid some side effects. What happens is quite intuitive if we forget about spaces (turned into glue) but even there what happens makes sense if you look at it in detail. However that logic makes in-group switching kind of useless when no properly nested grouping is used: switching from right to left several times nested, results in spacing ending up after each other due to nested mirroring. Of course a sane macro package will manage this for the user but here we are discussing the low level injection of directional information.

This is what happens:

```
\textdirection 1 nur {\textdirection 0 run \textdirection 1 NUR} nur
```

This becomes stepwise:

```
injected: [push 1]nur {[push 0]run [push 1]NUR} nur
balanced: [push 1]nur {[push 0]run [pop 0][push 1]NUR[pop 1]} nur[pop 0]
result  : run {RUNrun } run
```

And this:

```
\textdirection 1 nur {nur \textdirection 0 run \textdirection 1 NUR} nur
```

becomes:

```
injected: [+TRT]nur {nur [+TLT]run [+TRT]NUR} nur
balanced: [+TRT]nur {nur [+TLT]run [-TLT][+TRT]NUR[-TRT]} nur[-TRT]
result  : run {run RUNrun } run
```

Now, in the following examples watch where we put the braces:

```
\textdirection 1 nur {{\textdirection 0 run} {\textdirection 1 NUR}} nur
```

This becomes:

run RUN run run

Compare this to:

```
\textdirection 1 nur {{\textdirection 0 run }{\textdirection 1 NUR}} nur
```

Which renders as:

run RUNrun run

So how do we deal with the next?

```
\def\ltr{\textdirection 0\relax}
\def\rtl{\textdirection 1\relax}

run {\rtl nur {\ltr run \rtl NUR \ltr run \rtl NUR} nur}
run {\ltr run {\rtl nur \ltr RUN \rtl nur \ltr RUN} run}
```

It gets typeset as:

run run RUNrun RUNrun run
run run runRUN runRUN run

We could define the two helpers to look back, pick up a skip, remove it and inject it after the dir node. But that way we loose the subtype information that for some applications can be handy to be kept as-is. This is why we now have a variant of `\textdirection` which injects the balanced node before the skip. Instead of the previous definition we can use:

```
\def\ltr{\linedirection 0\relax}
\def\rtl{\linedirection 1\relax}
```

and this time:

```
run {\rtl nur {\ltr run \rtl NUR \ltr run \rtl NUR} nur}
run {\ltr run {\rtl nur \ltr RUN \rtl nur \ltr RUN} run}
```

comes out as a properly spaced:

run run RUN run RUN run run
run run run RUN run RUN run

Anything more complex that this, like combination of skips and penalties, or kerns, should be handled in the input or macro package because there is no way we can predict the expected behavior. In fact, the `\linedirection` is just a convenience extra which could also have been implemented using node list parsing.

Directions are complicated by the fact that they often need to work over groups so a separate grouping related stack is used. A side effect is that there can be paragraphs with only a local par node followed by direction synchronization nodes. Paragraphs like that are seen as empty paragraphs and therefore ignored. Because `\noindent` doesn't inject anything but a `\indent` injects an box, paragraphs with only an indent and directions are handles and paragraphs with content. When indentation is normalized a paragraph with an indentation skip is seen as content.

2.23 Hooks

In many places callbacks are possible that can be used for implementing extensions or extensive tracing. Of course usage is macro package dependent and users should be aware of possible interferences when callbacks are chained. There are ways to block changes. Compared to LuaTEX, some callbacks are mandate, like reading from files or dealing with (and even loading) fonts. Some callbacks can replace built-in functionality but that will probably seldom be done.

Although officially callbacks are the way to extend the engine, we did in many places add functionality, simply because it integrates better in already complex features (like the par builder) and it is also faster.

2.24 Expressions

The e-TEX expression scanner has been optimized and extended with a **`\divide`** compatible operator. In addition we have a scanner with more features and another (experimental) one that does operator priorities proper (and internally uses an reverse Polish stack approach). When a number or dimension is expected a braced value is parsed as extended expression.

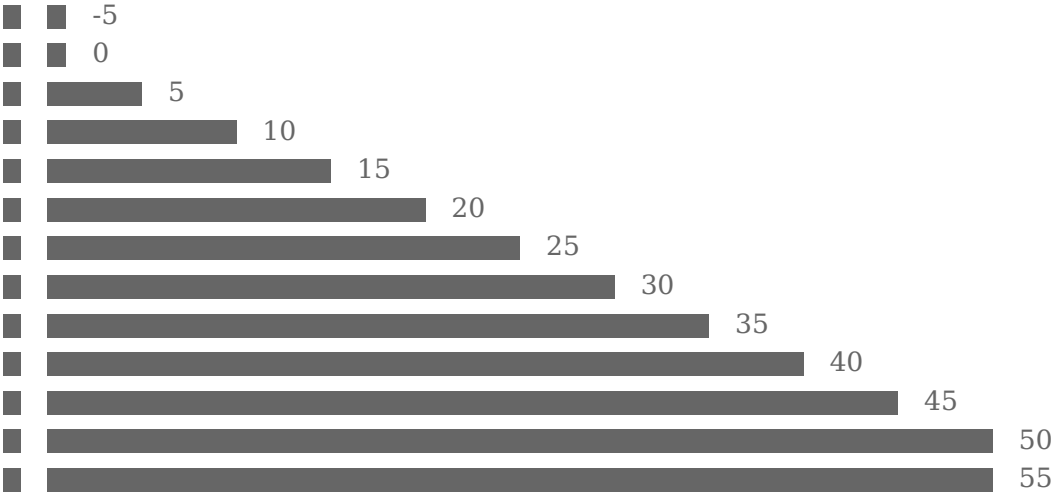
2.25 Units

The familiar TEX units like `pt` and `cm` are supported but since the 2021 ConTEXt meeting we also support the Knuthian Potrzebie, cf. `en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Potrzebie`. The two character acronym is `dk`. One `dk` is 6.43985pt. This unit is particularly suited for offsets in framed examples.

In 2023 we added the Edith (`es`) and Tove (`ts`) as metric replacements for the inch (`in`). As with the `dk` more background information can be found in documents that come with ConTEXt and user group journals. The `eu` unit starts out as one `es` but can be scaled with `\eufactor`.

```
\localcontrolledloop -5 55 5 {
    \eufactor=\currentloopiterator
    \dontleavehmode\strut
    \vrule height .1es depth .25ts width 1dk\relax\quad
    \vrule height .1es depth .25ts width 1eu\relax\quad
    \the\currentloopiterator
    \par
}
```

This example code shows all four new units. Watch how `\eufactor` is clipped to a value in the range $1 - 50$. The default factor of 10 makes the European Unit equivalent to ten Toves or one Edith.



In addition to these there can be user units but because these are macro package dependent they are not discussed here.

2.26 Local control

There are a few new primitives that permit what we call local controlled expansion. This permits for instance expanding non expandable macros and even typesetting inside an expansion context like `\edef`. Regular TEXhas a main loop to where it returns after every primitive action, but local control let the engine go into a nested main loop.

2.27 Overload protection

Protection is achieved via prefixes. Depending on the value of the `\overloadmode` variable warnings or errors will be triggered. Examples of usage can be found in some documents that come with ConTEXt, so here we just stick to the basics.

```
\mutable   \def\foo{...}
\immutable\def\foo{...}
\permanent\def\foo{...}
\frozen    \def\foo{...}
\aliased   \def\foo{...}
```

A `\mutable` macro can always be changed contrary to an `\immutable` one. For instance a macro that acts as a variable is normally `\mutable`, while a constant can best be immutable. It makes sense to define a public core macro as `\permanent`. Primitives start out a `\permanent` ones but with a primitive property instead.

```
          \let\relaxone   \relax 1: \meaningfull\relaxone
\aliased  \let\relaxtwo   \relax 2: \meaningfull\relaxtwo
\permanent\let\relaxthree\relax 3: \meaningfull\relaxthree
```

The `\meaningfull` primitive is like `\meaning` but report the properties too. The `\meaningless` companion reports the body of a macro. Anyway, this typesets:

```
1: \relax
2: primitive \relax
3: permanent \relax
```

So, the `\aliased` prefix copies the properties. Keep in mind that a macro package can redefine primitives, but `\relax` is an unlikely candidate.

There is an extra prefix `\noaligned` that flags a macro as being valid for `\noalign` compatible usage (which means that the body must contain that one. The idea is that we then can do this:

```
\permanent\protected\noaligned\def\foo{\noalign{...}} % \foo is unexpandable
```

that is: we can have protected macros that don't trigger an error in the parser where there is a look ahead for `\noalign` which is why normally protection doesn't work well. So: we have macro flagged as permanent (overload protection), being protected (that is, not expandable by default) and a valid equivalent of the noalign primitive. Of course we can also apply the `\global` and `\tolerant` prefixes here. The complete repertoire of extra prefixes is:

`frozen`	a macro that has to be redefined in a managed way
`permanent`	a macro that had better not be redefined
`primitive`	a primitive that normally will not be adapted
`immutable`	a macro or quantity that cannot be changed, it is a constant
`mutable`	a macro that can be changed no matter how well protected it is
`instance`	a macro marked as (for instance) be generated by an interface
`noaligned`	the macro becomes acceptable as **`\noalign`** alias
`overloaded`	when permitted the flags will be adapted
`enforced`	all is permitted (but only in zero mode or ini mode)
`aliased`	the macro gets the same flags as the original
`untraced`	the macro gets a different treatment in tracing

The not yet discussed `\instance` is just a flag with no special meaning which can be used as classifier. The `\frozen` also protects against overload which brings amount of blockers to four.

To what extent the engine will complain when a property is changed in a way that violates the flags depends on the parameter `\overloadmode`. When this parameter is set to zero no checking takes place. More interesting are values larger than zero. If that is the case, when a control sequence is flagged as mutable, it is always permitted to change. When it is set to immutable one can never change it. The other flags determine the kind of checking done. Currently the following overload values are used:

		immutable	permanent	primitive	frozen	instance
1	warning	*	*	*		
2	error	*	*	*		
3	warning	*	*	*	*	
4	error	*	*	*	*	
5	warning	*	*	*	*	*
6	error	*	*	*	*	*

The even values (except zero) will abort the run. A value of 255 will freeze this parameter. At level five and above the `\instance` flag is also checked but no drastic action takes place. We use this to

signal to the user that a specific instance is redefined (of course the definition macros can check for that too).

The \overloaded prefix can be used to overload a frozen macro. The \enforced is more powerful and forces an overload but that prefix is only effective in ini mode or when it's embedded in the body of a macro or token list at ini time unless of course at runtime the mode is zero.

So far for a short explanation. More details can be found in the ConTEXt documentation where we can discuss it in a more relevant perspective. It must be noted that this feature only makes sense a controlled situation, that is: user modules or macros of unpredictable origin will probably suffer from warnings and errors when de mode is set to non zero. In ConTEXt we're okay unless of course users redefine instances but there a warning or error is kind of welcome.

There is an extra prefix \untraced that will suppress the meaning when tracing so that the macro looks more like a primitive. It is still somewhat experimental so what gets displayed might change.

The \letfrozen, \unletfrozen, \letprotected and \unletprotected primitives do as their names advertise. Of course the \overloadmode must be set so that it is permitted.

2.28 Specifications

We need to discuss specifications and this will be a bit more detailed in terms of mentioning primitives. In original TEX we have \parshape. This is an array of indentations and widths with a variable number of entries. The engine manages an array of memory words from which it can take slices called nodes. The start of such a slice is a node pointer (actually an index in that memory array). A paragraph shape is stored in such a slice. Once it's no longer used the node is returned to a pool and can be used again later. When the engines runs low on memory it can combine pooled nodes and these shape nodes are a good candidate for that as they can be large. But it is suboptimal. The e-TEX engine introduced more arrays, like \widowpenalties and in

LuaMetaTEX we added for instance \parpasses. We also extended the LuaTEX initial par node with many more fields, and some of these point to these variable nodes, for instance \linepenalties or \orphanpenalties and we make copy of these, unless, as we will see, they are defined as constant. The more extensive usage of these variables nodes made for a change in approach. These arrays are now small fixed size nodes with a pointer to a dynamically allocated array of data. This comes at some cost but on a modern machine that is not much. The advantage is that we are less likely to run our of node memory. The generic node and mechanism that manages are called specifications.

Original TEX has only \parshape, e-TEX added four and LuaMetaTEX went on adding:

\parshape	dimension pairs
\interlinepenalties	integer pairs
\clubpenalties	integer pairs
\widowpenalties	integer pairs
\displaywidowpenalties	integer pairs
\adjacentdemerits	integer pair
\balancefinalpenalties	integer pairs
\balancepasses	multiple field sets
\balanceshape	multiple field sets
\brokenpenalties	integer pairs

\fitnessclasses	integers
\mathbackwardpenalties	integer pairs
\mathforwardpenalties	integer pairs
\orphanlinefactors	integers
\orphanpenalties	integer pairs
\parpassesexception	multiple field sets
\parpasses	multiple field sets
\toddlerpenalties	integer pairs
\specificationdef\count	integer (pairs)
\specificationdef\dimen	dimension (pairs)
\specificationdef\float	posit (pairs)

We set these specification according to their purpose but it always starts with a counter indicating how many entries to expect, where zero resets the specification.

```
\somespecification
   count
   [options]
   one or more [single|pair|fieldset]
```

We can't set individual fields, it always has to be a whole specification, but we can get fields values. In e-TEX we have **\parshapelength**, **\parshapeindent** and (weirdly named) **\parshapedimen** which best can be aliased to **\parshapewidth**. Of course one can wonder why these are needed. For balancing shapes we have **\balanceshapevsize**, **\balanceshapetopspace** and **\balanceshapebottomspace**. The passes don't have such introspection helpers. In order not to drown in primitives just for the sake of tracing we added a few generic accessor helpers that can be used like:

```
\widowpenalties 5 option 2 100 150 200 250 300 350 400 450 500 550
\the \specificationcount   \widowpenalties    % here 5
\the \specificationoptions \widowpenalties    % bit 2 set when double
\the \specificationfirst   \widowpenalties  3 % penalty 3 left  (300 )
\the \specificationsecond  \widowpenalties  3 % penalty 3 right (350)
```

We use these primitives to implement a serializer in ConTEXt so that we can say:

```
\parshape 3 0mm \hsize 20mm {\hsize-20mm} 30mm {\hsize-30mm} \relax
\thespecification\parshape
```

and get:

```
3: 0.0pt,513.00317pt 56.9055pt,456.09767pt 85.35826pt,427.64491pt.
```

When **\the** is applied to a specification with double entries you need to pass an extra subindex. Per tradition **\the\widowpenalties** takes an integer argument as index into the array. A zero value returns the size. A minus one will skip the index scanning and when we have a left- and right page penalty set we need to pass the subindex. The minus one permits us to overload the singular ones:

```
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\widowpenalty       {\widowpenalties       \minusone} % once
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\clubpenalty        {\clubpenalties        \minusone} % once
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\displaywidowpenalty{\displaywidowpenalties\minusone} % once
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\brokenpenalty      {\brokenpenalties      \minusone} % singular anyway
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\orphanpenalty      {\orphanpenalties      \minusone} % once
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\toddlerpenalty     {\toddlerpenalties     \minusone} % once
```

```
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\interlinepenalty   {\interlinepenalties   \plusone } % repeats
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\adjdemerits        {\adjacentdemerits     \minusone}
```

And we can actually at some point to decide to drop the e-TEX ones:

```
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\parshapelength{\specificationcount \parshape}
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\parshapeindent{\specificationfirst \parshape}
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\parshapewidth {\specificationsecond\parshape}

\aliased\let\parshapedimen\parshapewidth % weird etex name
```

2.29 Tracing

There is are more tracing options, like in math, alignments and inserts, and tracing can be more detailed. This is partly a aide effect of the need for exploring new features. Tracing is not always compatible, if only because there are more possibilities, for instance in the way macros are defined and can handle arguments.

constructions

3 Constructions

Contents

3.1 Introduction 40
3.2 Boxes 40
3.3 Math style variants 42
3.4 Math scripts 43
3.5 Skewed fractions 45
3.6 Math fractions 46
3.7 Math radicals 49
3.8 Math accents 50
3.9 Math fences 53

3.1 Introduction

This is more a discussion of the way some constructs in for instance math work. It will never be exhausting and mostly is for our own usage. We don't discuss all the options but many are interfaced in higher level macros in ConTEXt. This chapter will gradually grow, depending on time and mood.

3.2 Boxes

Boxes are very important in TEX. We have horizontal boxes and vertical boxes. When you look at a page of text, the page itself is a vertical box, and among other things it packs lines that are themselves horizontal boxes. The lines that make a paragraph are the result of breaking a long horizontal box in smaller pieces.

This is a vertical box. It has a few lines of text that started out as one long line but has been broken in pieces. Doing this as good as possible is one of TEX's virtues.

There is a low level manual on boxes so here we can limit the discussion to basics. A box is in TEX speak a node. In traditional TEX it has a width, height, depth and shift.



Here we see a box and the gray line is called the baseline, the height goes up and the depth goes down. Normally the height and depth are determined by what goes in the box but they can be changed as we like.

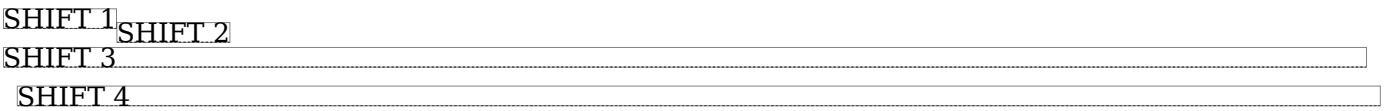
```
\setbox\scratchboxone\ruledhpack{SHIFT 1}
\setbox\scratchboxtwo\ruledhpack{SHIFT 2}

\boxshift\scratchboxtwo 1ex \dontleavehmode \box\scratchboxone\box\scratchboxtwo
```

```
\setbox\scratchboxone\ruledvpack{SHIFT 3}
\setbox\scratchboxtwo\ruledvpack{SHIFT 4}

\boxshift\scratchboxtwo 1ex \box\scratchboxone\box\scratchboxtwo
```

In this example you'll notice that the shift depends on the box being horizontal or vertical. The primitives **\raise**, **\lower**, **\moveleft** and **\moveright** can be used to shift a box.



The reason why we have the shift property is that it is more efficient than wrapping a box in another box and shifting with kerns. In that case we also have to go via a box register so that we can manipulate the final dimensions. Another advantage is that the engine can use shifts to position for instance elements in a math formula and even the par builder used shifts to deal with positioning the lines according to shape and margin. In LuaMetaTEX the later is no longer the case.

Inside a box there can be mark (think running headers), insert (think footnotes) and adjust (think injecting something before or after the current line) nodes. The par builder will move this from inside the box to between the lines but when boxes are nested too deeply this won't happen and they get lost. In LuaMetaTEX these objects do bubble up because we make them box properties. So, in addition to the dimensions and shift a box also has migration fields.

In the low level manuals you can find examples of accessing various properties of boxes so here we stick to a short description. The reason for mentioning them is that it gives you an idea of what goes on in the engine.

field	usage
`width`	the (used) width
`height`	the (used) height
`depth`	the (used) depth
`shift_amount`	the shift (right or down)
`list`	pointer to the content
`glue_order`	the calculated order of glue stretch of shrink
`glue_sign`	the determined sign of glue stretch of shrink
`glue_set`	the calculated multiplier for glue stretch or shrink
`geometry`	a bit set registering manipulations
`orientation`	positional manipulations
`w_offset`	used in horizontal movement calculations
`h_offset`	used in vertical movement calculations
`d_offset`	used in vertical movement calculations
`x_offset`	a horizontal shift independent of dimensions
`y_offset`	a vertical shift independent of dimensions
`axis`	the math axis
`dir`	the direction the box goes to (l2r or r2l)
`package_state`	a bitset indicating how the box came to be as it is
`index`	a (system dependent) identifier
`pre_migrated`	content bound to the box that eventually will be injected
`post_migrated`	idem

pre_adjusted	idem
post_adjusted	idem
source_anchor	an identifier bound to the box
target_anchor	idem
anchor	a bitset indicating where and how to anchor
except	carried information about additional virtual depth
exdepth	additional virtual depth taken into account in the page builder

We have the usual dimension but also extra ones that relate to **\boxxoffset** and **\boxyoffset** (these are virtual) as well as **\boxxmove** and **\boxymove** (these influence dimensions). The **\boxorientation** also gets registered. The state fields carry information that is used in various places, the pre and post fields relate to the mentioned embedded content. Anchors are just there so that a macro package can play with this and excepts refer to an additional dimensions that is looked at in the page builder, for instance in order to prevent a page break at an unlucky spot. It all gives an indication of what we are dealing with.

3.3 Math style variants

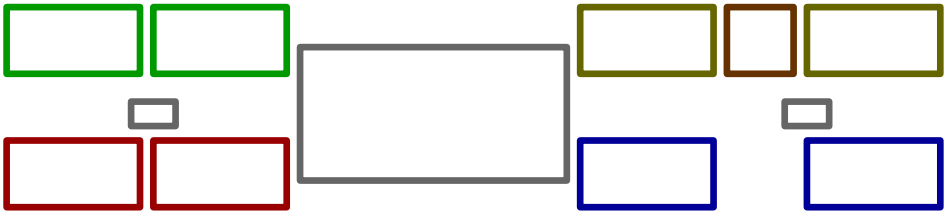
The LuaMetaTEX math engine is a follow up on the one in LuaTEX. That one gradually became more configurable in order to deal with both traditional fonts and OpenType fonts. In LuaMetaTEX much has been redone, opened up and extended. New mechanisms and constructs have been added. In the process hard coded heuristics with regards to math styles inside constructions were made configurable, a feature that is probably not used much, apart from experimenting. A side effect is that we can show how the engine is set up, so we do that when applicable.

construct	value	preset name
\Umathoverlinevariant	0x11335577	cramped
\Umathunderlinevariant	0x01234567	normal
\Umathoverdelimitervariant	0x45456767	small
\Umathunderdelimitervariant	0x45456767	small
\Umathdelimiterovervariant	0x01234567	normal
\Umathdelimiterundervariant	0x01234567	normal
\Umathhextensiblevariant	0x01234567	normal
\Umathvextensiblevariant	0x01234567	normal
\Umathfractionvariant	0x11335577	cramped
\Umathradicalvariant	0x11335577	cramped
\Umathaccentvariant	0x11335577	cramped
\Umathdegreevariant	0x67676767	doublesuperscript
\Umathtopaccentvariant	0x11335577	cramped
\Umathbottomaccentvariant	0x11335577	cramped
\Umathoverlayaccentvariant	0x11335577	cramped
\Umathnumeratorvariant	0x23456767	numerator
\Umathdenominatorvariant	0x33557777	denominator
\Umathsuperscriptvariant	0x45456767	small
\Umathsubscriptvariant	0x55557777	subscript
\Umathprimevariant	0x45456767	small
\Umathstackvariant	0x23456767	numerator

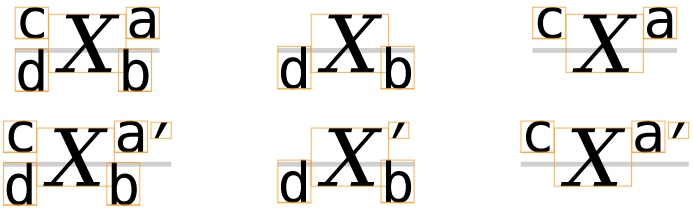
3.4 Math scripts

The basic components in a math formula are characters, accents, fractions, radicals and fences. They are represented in the to be processed node list as noads and eventually are converted in glyph, kern, glue and list nodes. Each noad carries similar but also specific information about its purpose and intended rendering. In LuaMetaTEX that is quite a bit more than in traditional TEX.

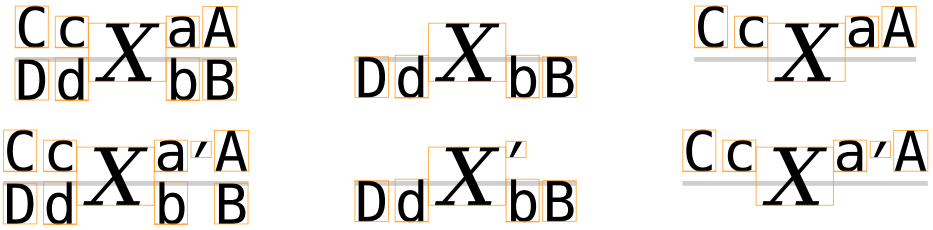
These noads are often called atoms. The center piece in a noad is called the nucleus. The fact that these noads also can have scripts attached makes them more like molecules. Scripts can be attached to the left and right, high or low. That makes fours of them: pre/post super/sub scripts. In LuaMetaTEX we also have a prime script, which comes on its own, above a post subscript or after the post superscript, if given.



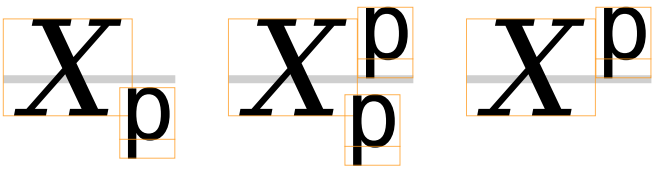
Here the raised rectangle represents the prime. The large center piece is the nucleus. Four scripts are attached to the nucleus. The two smaller center pieces indicate follow up atoms. They make it possible to have multiple pre- and postscripts. For single scripts we get combinations like these:



And for multiple (there can be more that two) we get this assembly:



It will be clear that there is quite a bit of code involved in dealing with this because these scripts are not only to be anchored relative to the nucleus but also to each other. The dimensions of the scripts determine for instance how close a combined super and subscript are positioned.



The rendering of scripts involves several parameters, of which some relate to font parameters. In LuaMetaTEX we have a few more variables and we also overload font parameters, if only because only a few make sense and it looks like font designers just copy values from the first available fonts so in the end we can as well use our own preferred values.

The following parameters play a role in rendering the shown assembly, The traditional TEX engine expects a math font to set quite some parameters for positioning the scripts but has no concept of prescripts and neither has OpenType. This is why we have extra parameters (and for completeness we also have them for the post scripts). One can wonder of font parameters make sense here because in the end we can decide for a better visual result with different ones. After all, assembling scripts is not really what fonts are about.

engine parameter	target	open type font	tex font
subscriptshiftdrop	post	SubscriptBaselineDropMin	subdrop
subscriptshiftdown	post	SubscriptShiftDown	sub1
subscriptsuperscriptshiftdown	post	SubscriptShiftDown[WithSuperscript]	sub2
subscriptsuperscriptvgap	post	SubSuperscriptGapMin	4 rulethickness
subscripttopmax	post	SubscriptTopMax	4/5 xheight
superscriptshiftdrop	post	SuperscriptBaselineDropMax	supdrop
superscriptbottommin	post	SuperscriptBottomMin	1/4 xheight
superscriptshiftup	post	SuperscriptShiftUp[Cramped]	sup1 sup2 sup3
superscriptsubscriptbottommax	post	SuperscriptBottomMaxWithSubscript	4/5 xheight
⋆ primeraise	prime	PrimeRaisePercent	
⋆ primeraisecomposed	prime	PrimeRaiseComposedPercent	
⋆ primeshiftup	prime	PrimeShiftUp[Cramped]	
⋆ primeshiftdrop	prime	PrimeBaselineDropMax	
⋆ primespaceafter	prime	PrimeSpaceAfter	
spaceafterscript	post	SpaceAfterScript	**\scriptspace**
⋆ spacebeforescript	post	SpaceBeforeScript	
⋆ spacebetweenscript	multi	SpaceBetweenScript	
⋆ extrasuperscriptshift	pre		
⋆ extrasuperprescriptshift	pre		
⋆ extrasubscriptshift	pre		
⋆ extrasubprescriptshift	pre		
⋆ extrasuperscriptspace	post		
⋆ extrasubscriptspace	post		
⋆ extrasuperprescriptspace	pre		
⋆ extrasubprescriptspace	pre		

The parameters marked by a ⋆ are LuaMetaTEX specific. Some have an associated font parameter but that is not official OpenType. For a very long time we had only a few math fonts but even today most of these fonts seem to use values that are similar to the ones TEX uses. In that respect one can as well turn them into rendering specific ones. After all, changes are slim that a formula rendered by TEX or e.g. MS Word are metric compatible and with the advanced spacing options in LuaMetaTEX we're even further off. Also keep in mind that the TEX font parameters could be overloaded at the TEX end.

The spacing after a (combination of) postscript(s) is determined by 'space after script' and the spacing before a (combination of) prescript(s) by 'space before script'. If we have multi-scripts the 'space between script' kicks in and the space after the script is subtracted from it. The given space between is scaled with the **\scriptspacebetweenfactor** parameter.

The default style mapping that we use are the same as those (hard coded) in regular TEX and those for prime scripts are the same as for superscripts.

subscriptvariant

current style	mapping	used style
display	0x55557777	crampedscript
crampeddisplay	0x55557777	crampedscript
text	0x55557777	crampedscript
crampedtext	0x55557777	crampedscript
script	0x55557777	crampedscriptscript
crampedscript	0x55557777	crampedscriptscript
scriptscript	0x55557777	crampedscriptscript
crampedscriptscript	0x55557777	crampedscriptscript

superscriptvariant

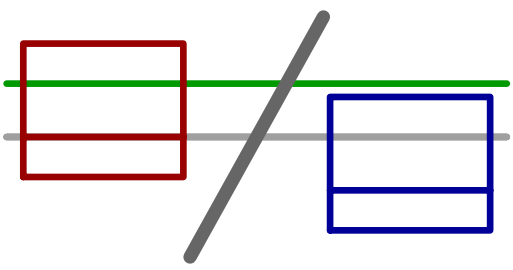
current style	mapping	used style
display	0x45456767	script
crampeddisplay	0x45456767	crampedscript
text	0x45456767	script
crampedtext	0x45456767	crampedscript
script	0x45456767	scriptscript
crampedscript	0x45456767	crampedscriptscript
scriptscript	0x45456767	scriptscript
crampedscriptscript	0x45456767	crampedscriptscript

primevariant

current style	mapping	used style
display	0x45456767	script
crampeddisplay	0x45456767	crampedscript
text	0x45456767	script
crampedtext	0x45456767	crampedscript
script	0x45456767	scriptscript
crampedscript	0x45456767	crampedscriptscript
scriptscript	0x45456767	scriptscript
crampedscriptscript	0x45456767	crampedscriptscript

3.5 Skewed fractions

Skewed fractions are native in LuaMetaTEX. Such a fraction is a horizontal construct with the numerator and denominator shifted up and down a bit. It looks like this:



The rendering is driven by some parameters that determine the horizontal and vertically shifts but we found that the ones given by the font make no sense (and are not that well defined in the standard either). The horizontal shift relates to the width (and angle) of the slash and the vertical relates to the math axis. We don't listen to 'skewed fraction hgap' nor to 'skewed fraction vgap' but use the width of the middle character, normally a slash, that can grow on demand and multiply that with a `hfactor` that can be passed with the fraction command. A `vfactor` is used a multiplier for the vertical shift over the axis. Examples of (more)) control can be found in the ConTEXt math manual. Here we just show a few examples that use **\vfrac** with its default values.

$$1/2 \qquad a/b \qquad b/a$$

$$x^2/x^3 \qquad (x+1)/(x+2) \qquad x+1/x+2$$

The quality of the slashes differs per font, some lack granularity in sizes, others have inconsistent angles between the base character and larger variants.

The following commands are used:

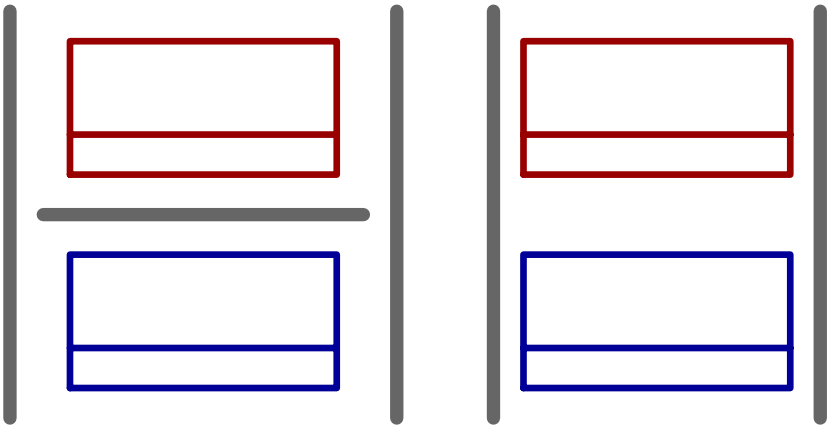
\Uskewed
\Uskewedwithdelims

There are some parameter involved:

\Umathskeweddelimitertolerance
\Umathskewedfractionhgap
\Umathskewedfractionvgap

3.6 Math fractions

Fractions in TEX come in variants: with or without rule in the middle and with or without fences. The reason for the fenced ones is that they are not spaced like open and close class symbols. So, instead of open, fraction, close being three things, we have one thing. In LuaMetaTEX we can also use an extensible instead of the rule.



Because the rule is optional, we can have the following, which represents a so called binom construct.

Involved commands:

\Uabove
\Uatop
\Uover
\Ustretched
\Uabovewithdelims
\Uatopwithdelims
\Uoverwithdelims
\Ustretchedwithdelims

Relevant parameters:

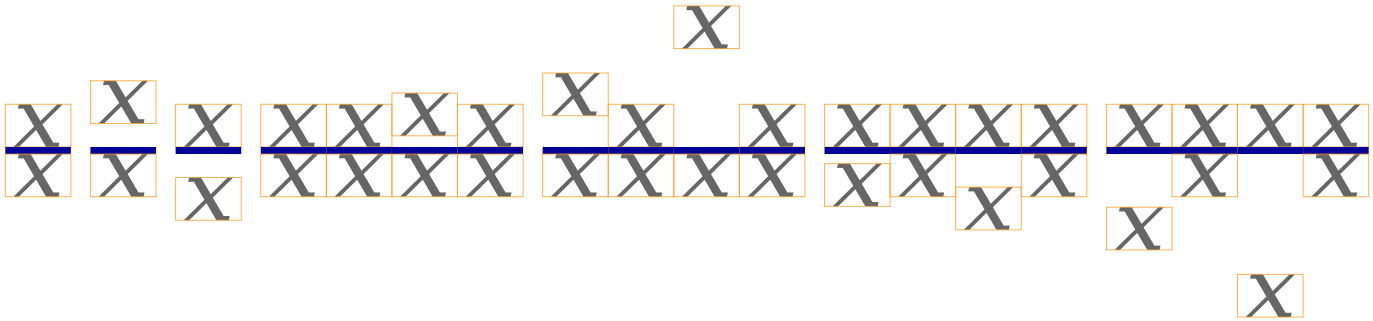
\Umathfractionrule
\Umathfractionnumvgap
\Umathfractionnumup
\Umathfractiondenomvgap
\Umathfractiondenomdown
\Umathfractiondelsize

The values that come with the fonts often are sub-optimal so in ConTEXt we adapt them. We also use different means for spacing, like struts. But it will always be a compromise. We'll try to show what happens but assume that you're familiar with TEX, read: are able to read a macro. If not, just forget about messing with these parameters.

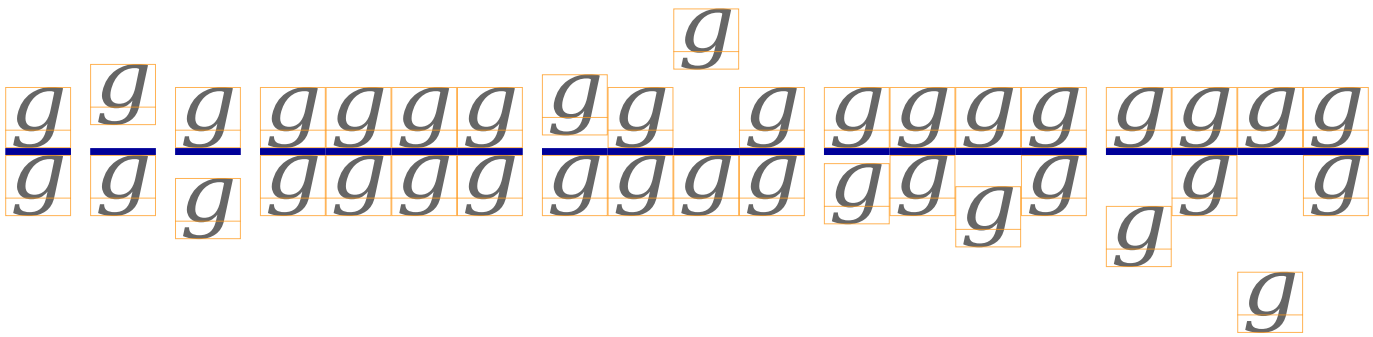
```
\starttexdefinition TestRun #1#2
    \dontleavehmode
    \scale[width=1tw] \bgroup \pushoverloadmode
        \def\TestA{$ \maincolor \showglyphs \Uover             {\darkgray #1}{
                                                                \darkgray #2} $}
        \def\TestB{$ \maincolor \showglyphs \Uover vfactor  100 {\darkgray #1}{
                                                                \darkgray #2} $}
        \def\TestC{$ \maincolor \showglyphs \Uover vfactor 2000 {\darkgray #1}{
                                                                \darkgray #2} $}
        \def\TestD{$ \maincolor \showglyphs \Uover vfactor    0 {\darkgray #1}{
                                                                \darkgray #2} $}
        \everymath{\fam\zerocount}%
        \Umathfractionnumup    \allmathstyles\zeropoint
        \Umathfractiondenomdown\allmathstyles\zeropoint
        \Umathfractionnumvgap  \allmathstyles\zeropoint
        \Umathfractiondenomvgap\allmathstyles\zeropoint
        \start
            \TestA
        \stop \thinspace \start
            \Umathfractionnumvgap  \allmathstyles 2pt
            \TestA
        \stop \thinspace \start
            \Umathfractiondenomvgap\allmathstyles 2pt
            \TestA
        \stop \thinspace \start
            \Umathfractionnumup    \allmathstyles 2pt
            \TestA \TestB \TestC \TestD
        \stop \thinspace \start
```

```
            \Umathfractionnumup    \allmathstyles 1.1ex
            \TestA \TestB \TestC \TestD
          \stop \thinspace \start
            \Umathfractiondenomdown\allmathstyles 2pt
            \TestA \TestB \TestC \TestD
          \stop \thinspace \start
            \Umathfractiondenomdown\allmathstyles 1.1ex
            \TestA \TestB \TestC \TestD
        % \stop \thinspace \start
        %     \Umathfractionnumvgap\allmathstyles -2pt
        %     \Umathfractionnumup  \allmathstyles  2pt
        %     \TestA
        % \stop \thinspace \start
        %     \Umathfractiondenomvgap\allmathstyles -2pt
        %     \Umathfractiondenomdown\allmathstyles  2pt
        %     \TestA
          \stop
      \egroup
\stoptexdefinition
```

We now apply this macro to two different characters, first the often used x:



Next we use a character with a descender:



The displacement logic that gets applied in the engine is as follows:

```
factor_up   = num_up     * vfactor
factor_down = denom_down * vfactor

delta_up    = num_vgap   - (factor_up   - num_depth   ) - (axis + rule/2)
delta_down  = denom_vgap - (factor_down - denom_height) + (axis - rule/2)

shift_up    = factor_up   + max(0,delta_up)
```

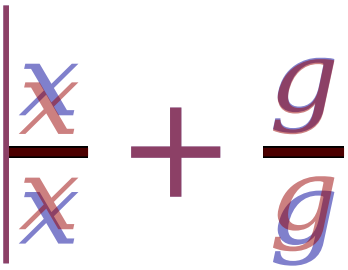
```
shift_down  = factor_down + max(0,delta_down)
```

In ConTEXt we only tweak the gaps, so there we effectively have:

```
delta_up    = num_vgap   + num_depth    - (axis + rule/2)
delta_down  = denom_vgap + denom_height + (axis - rule/2)

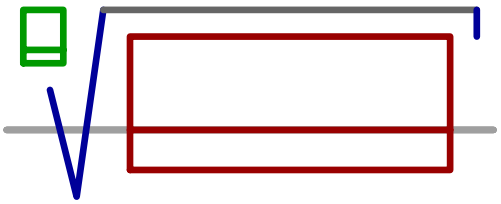
shift_up    = max(0,delta_up)
shift_down  = max(0,delta_down)
```

Here, in blue we see what ConTEXt does by default, while in red we see the engine (and font) defaults in action:



3.7 Math radicals

Radicals indeed look like roots. But the radical mechanism basically is a wrapping construct: there's something at the left that in traditional TEX gets a rule appended. The left piece is an extensible, so it first grow with variant glyphs and when we run out if these we get an upward extensible with a repeated upward rule like symbol that then connect with the horizontal rule. In LuaMetaTEX the horizontal rule can be an extensible (repeated symbol) and we can also have a symbol at the right, which indeed can be a vertical extensible too.



Here are some aspects to take care of when rendering a radical like this:

- The radical symbol goes below the baseline of what it contains.
- There is some distance between the left symbol and the body.
- There is some distance between the top symbol and the body.
- There is some distance between the right symbol and the body.
- The degree has to be anchored properly and possibly can stick out left.
- The (upto) three elements have to overlap a little to avoid artifacts.
- Multiple radicals might have to be made consistent with respect to heights and depths.

Involved commands:

\Uradical
\Uroot
\Urooted

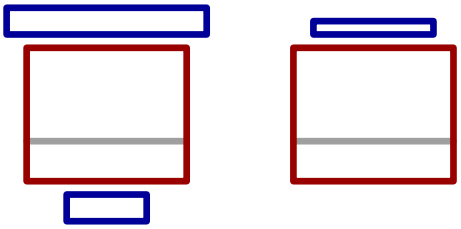
Relevant parameters:

```
\Umathradicaldegreeafter
\Umathradicaldegreebefore
\Umathradicaldegreeraise
\Umathradicalextensibleafter
\Umathradicalextensiblebefore
\Umathradicalkern
\Umathradicalrule
\Umathradicalvariant
\Umathradicalvgap
```

3.8 Math accents

Math accents a bit of a mess. We have for instance **\overline** and **\underline**which actually can be seen as an accent but is a rule because that was easier. It also saved a set of glyph variants and an extensible in a time where the number of slots in a font was a limiting factor. Of course a square rule doesn't match well with shapes that have rounded corners but given the small sizes that often goes unnoticed. Rules are important in TEX anyway: between fractions and as extender for a radical. In LuaMetaTEX we can instead fall back on what a font provides (or what we can fake using virtual assemblies).

Accents, or symbols that go on top or below, can be of a fixed size, go wider in steps or eventually stretch. A hat for instance comes in sizes and has no stretch variant (that is, no extensible because in LuaMetaTEX we actually can stretch); the shape is not that suited for it. A brace on the other hand can at some point be constructed from pieces. Unfortunately fonts are often inconsistent or incomplete, which is likely a side effect of the repertoire that TEX came with.



In OpenType we also have accents but for some reason we only have top anchors. Maybe it is because TEX had no real anchors, only a so called skew character from which we used a kern between that one and an accent as shift: a pseudo anchor so to say. In LuaMetaTEX we do support bottom anchors and also provide more control over placement. Of course one has to use math font that supports this, which is what we do in ConTEXt, after all we wanted this and had to test it. In OpenType fonts we also have so called flat accents, so we have ways to choose those variants when needed. They prevent a formula becoming too high.

In its simplest form, the accent constructor takes a single math character specification but you can control the location with a keyword. Given the availability of wider variants and/or an extensible the accent will cover the body. The fixed keyword will force the smallest variant.

```
\im {\Umathaccent           "0 "0 "20D7             {xxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent top       "0 "0 "20D7             {xxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent bottom    "0 "0 "20D7             {xxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent both      "0 "0 "20D7 "1 "0 "20D7 {xxx}}
```

```
\im {\Umathaccent top fixed "0 "0 "20D7             {xxx}}
```

$\overrightarrow{xxx}\ \overrightarrow{xxx}\ \underrightarrow{xxx}\ \underrightarrow{xxx}\ x\vec{x}x$

$\overrightarrow{xxx}\ \overrightarrow{xxx}\ \underrightarrow{xxx}\ \underrightarrow{xxx}\ x\vec{x}x$

To what extend the accent will stretch is controlled by keywords. As above, we show what happens with a font-as-is and with one set up by ConTEXt. The later will always stretch or shrink to fit.

```
\im {\Umathaccent         top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent exact   top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent stretch top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent shrink  top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent center  top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent single  top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxxxxx}}
```

It's not so easy to come up with an example for shrink because it will only happen when there is a reason to do so. Also, it's kind of hard to see because accents can be shifted based on the italic correction (or kern). The good news is that the macro package will set up things. Also good news is that some of these options are just there as left-over from experiments, so you might find no real reason to apply them.

```
\im {\Umathaccent         top "0 "0 `x    {\blue x}}
\im {\Umathaccent shrink  top "0 "0 `x    {\blue x}}
\im {\Umathaccent         top "0 "0 "0302 {\red x}}
\im {\Umathaccent shrink  top "0 "0 "0302 {\red x}}
```

The reason why you see a difference between ConTEXt and the non-tuned variant is that the rendering is controlled by a lot of options. After this mechanism is set up according to circumstances, font parameters, math font options, class options and available glyphs, we eventually end up at the following steps:

1. When the glyph involved has option 128 the italic correction will be set to zero. In ConTEXt we always have zero italic corrections anyway.

2. When we don't stretch or shrink and still have italic correction and italic correction is actually to be dealt with, we apply it to the accent if **\mathfontcontrol** has 1024 set. When italic has been applied we need to position and fall through, otherwise we continue.

3. We assume we have an accent with some width, otherwise we quit. The two previous steps are not applied in ConTEXt.

4. When **\mathfontcontrol** has the 16777216 bit set and when we have an extensible, it will stretch when to narrow or shrink when too wide. In that case we will subtract **\Umathaccentextendmargin** at both ends before checking. Independent of scaling being applied we then quit further actions. In ConTEXt we end up here, so we're done.

5. If the control option is not set, we will do a simple check for under- or overfull and just scale. We don't reposition, at least not currently, after all we don't use this branch so we can't decide on this.

We now carry on with some more examples. We can add an `nooverflow` directive just to be compatible with other mechanisms and to be prepared for future extensions, but as you see, accent placement is not overflowing due to constraints.

```
\im {\Umathaccent top "0 "0 "0302 {x}}
\im {\Umathaccent top "0 "0 "0302 {xx}}
\im {\Umathaccent top "0 "0 "0302 {xxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxxx}}
```

$\hat{x}$ $\hat{xx}$ $\hat{xxx}$ $\hat{xxxx}$ $\hat{xxxxx}$ $\hat{xxxxxx}$

$\hat{x}$ $\hat{xx}$ $\hat{xxx}$ $\hat{xxxx}$ $\hat{xxxxx}$ $\hat{xxxxxx}$

The `fraction` applied to the target width.

```
\im {\Umathaccent fraction 100 top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent fraction 200 top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent fraction 300 top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent fraction 400 top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent fraction 500 top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent fraction 600 top "0 "0 "0302 {xxxxx}}
```

$xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$

$xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$ $xx\hat{x}xx$

The `overlay` keyword can be used for special effects. The `base` keyword shown here doesn't do much: it compensate the fonts' accent base height with the depth of an accent. It's there to catch suboptional dimensions.

```
\im {\Umathaccent overlay      "0 "0 `a {xxxxxxxx}}
\im {\Umathaccent base overlay "0 "0 `a {xxxxxxxx}}
```

$xxxxaxxxx$ $xxxxaxxxx$

$xxxxaxxxx$ $xxxxaxxxx$

This only part of the story because accent placement is not just a matter of size but also of shifting to the (normally) right so that it looks beter over the (normally) sloped glyph. Because we started from OpenType font parameters combined with TEX existing algorithm the code involved it kind of messy. We might eventually decide to just remove what we don't need to do a proper job.

The shift to the right is in TEX speak called skew. In traditional TEX that value is defined by a kern between the accent and a bogus skew character, in OpenType we have a top accent value. In LuaMetaTEX we also have a bottom accent value. In LuaMetaTEX we also have kerns in all corners. These are used when we anchor scripts. We can set an permitted overshoot for a character which again is a LuaMetaTEX feature.

Before the steps above take place we need to resolve the character. The result of the search can be a single glyph or an assembly made from extensibles. When that is done we can trigger a callback which makes it possible for the macro package to mess with the result, for instance turn it into a Type3 character.

We also have to deal with so called flat accents, unless that font option is disabled. As more, it's driven by font parameters and of course an accent that qualifies should have such a variant. Anyway, there are all kind of optimizations going on.

We can control the styles applied with `\Umathtopaccentvariant`, `\Umathbottomaccentvariant` and `\Umathoverlayaccentvariant`. Spacing is influenced by the font parameters `\Umathconnectoroverlapmin`, `\Umathaccentbaseheight`, `\Umathaccenttopshiftup`, `\Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight`, `\Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup`, `\Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown`, `\Umathaccentbottomshiftdown`. There is actually no need for these and we can let the engine to a nice job without them. Given the number of times that we find ourselves adapting them indicates their uselessness. One reason is that for consistent spacing one will use different interfaces.

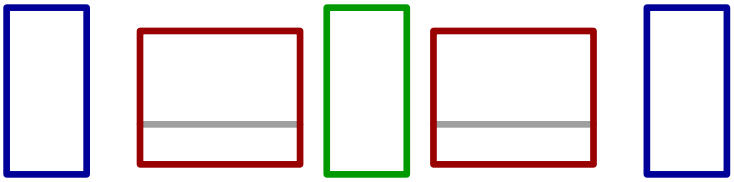
How we deal with specific situations is also driven by the `\mathfontcontrol` options ‘accent top skew with offset’, ‘accent skew half’ and ‘ignore flat accents’. The skew comes from the top accent anchor value or just is the middle of the accent. We already mentioned left and right margins and overshoot properties of glyphs. The character can have so called tag bits set: ‘keep base’, ‘extensible’ and ‘inner bottom’. We only mention them as something that the font loaded needs to set.

We can place accents above (top), below (bottom) and overlay, and we can let them stretch or shrink as well as play visually safe with a bit of scaling (this factor). We have to deal with attaching scripts which can be controlled with corner kerns as well as class options ‘left bottom kern’ and ‘right bottom kern’.

We could have hard coded the way ConTEXt likes it with just the control features that we need which makes a description easier. But for now we keep what we have.

3.9 Math fences

Fences are glyphs that adapts itself to what if surrounds. In original TEX there were only left and right fences that always come in pairs, although one can ‘hide’ one by using a bogus fence (often a period is used for that). The height and depth normally are at least those of the content but it also depends on what a font provides. A font can provide sizes (in steps) and eventually provide an extensible although that can only be used when the shape permits it. Although technically not a fence, an integral can be seen as a left fence and indeed this is why in LuaMetaTEX we implement such a fencing operator.



Here we also visualize a middle fence, something that e-TEX introduced. In LuaMetaTEX we are a bit more tolerant with respect to fences, and we try to compensate for missing ones, which is not always possible. Fences can have super- and subscripts on the right fence and in LuaMetaTEX prescripts on the left fence. Here the fences are kind of wide but depending on the shape that can actually be the case: it the base character is rather curved, the larger sizes also need to follow that design. Font also differ in the depth of these fencing characters. When we implemented some new features related to these fences in ConTEXt we also decided to add companion fonts that not only provided more steps but also did so consistently for various glyphs (parentheses, braces, brackets, etc) and we made sure that the height and depths were consistently distributed. In case we couldn’t come up with a companion we tweak dimensions and other properties runtime.

In order to determine the dimensions the content (subformula) has to be processed first. In traditional TEX we therefore have two passes but in LuaMetaTEX we do more and therefore have more passes.

There are a lot of subtle details, for instance we support specific kerning for scripts attached to fences. We also have a dedicated middle class so that we can do proper spacing.

One of the more tricky fences is the bar because it serves different purposes and Unicode doesn't deal with that. Of course there should have been a left and right bar and maybe even a middle bar but alas, this is something that we need to deal with in the macro package.

Involved commands:

\Uleft
\Uright
\Umiddle
\Uoperator
\Uvextensible

Relevant parameters:

\Umathfractionrule
\Umathoperatorsize
\Umathdelimitershortfall
\Umathdelimiterpercent

assumptions

4 Assumptions

Contents

4.1 Introduction **57**
4.2 Virtual fonts **57**

4.1 Introduction

Because the engine provides no backend there is also no need to document it. However, in ConTEXt we assume some features to be supported by its own backend. These will be collected here. This chapter is rather ConTEXt specific, for instance we have extended what can be done with characters and that is pretty much up to a macro package to decide.

4.2 Virtual fonts

Virtual fonts are a nice extension to traditional TEX fonts that originally was independent from the engine, which only needs dimensions from a tfm file. In LuaTEX, because it has a backend built in, virtual fonts are handled by the engine but here we also can construct such fonts at runtime. The original set of commands is:

char	+	chr sx sy
right	+	amount
down	+	amount
push	+	
pop	+	
font	+	index
nop	+	
special	–	str
rule	+	v h

The pdfTEX engine added two more but these are not supported in ConTEXt:

pdf	–	str
pdfmode	–	n

The LuaTEX engine also added some but these are never found in loaded fonts, only in those constructed at runtime. Two are not supported in ConTEXt.

lua	+	code f(font,char,posh,posv,sx,sy)
image	–	n
node	+	n
scale	–	sx sy

The LuaMetaTEX engine has nothing on board and doesn't even carry the virtual commands around. The backend can just fetch them from the Lua end. An advantage is that we can easily extend the repertoire of commands:

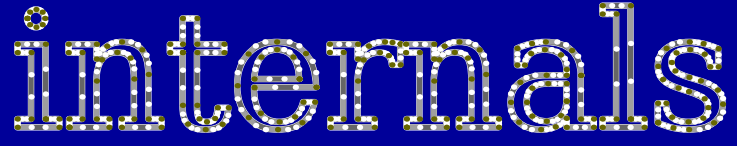
slot	+	index chr csx csy
use	+	index chr ... chr

left	+	amount
up	+	amount
offset	+	h v chr [csx [csy]]
stay	+	chr (push/pop)
compose	+	h v chr
frame	+	wd jt dp line outline advance baseline color
line	+	wd ht dp color
inspect	+	
trace	+	
<plugin>	+	f(posh,posv,packet)

There are some manipulations that don't need the virtual mechanism. In addition to the character properties like `width`, `height` and `depth` we also have:

advance		the width used in the backend
scale		an additional scale factor
xoffset		horizontal shift
yoffset		vertical shift
effect	slant	factor used for tilting
	extend	horizontal scale
	squeeze	vertical scale
	mode	special effects like outline
	weight	pen stroke width

Originally virtual fonts were 'a way out' and the official commands ensure that we can assemble from existing fonts. However, once we opened up that feature in LuaTEX it also opened up more possibilities. And with LuaMetaTEX we basically can do whatever we like. So, apart from the standard set we have top assume that what ConTEXt adds to that is not generic! This is no problem because there are no virtual font resources using those extras in the TEX ecosystem other that those shipped with ConTEXt and most are runtime features anyway. This also means that we can extend what we have without the need to bother about other usage: virtual fonts are really virtual, there is nothing in the engine that reflects it, contrary to LuaTEX, where command definitions need to be passed to the backend code and are also can be loaded from vf files when you use the helpers that load tfm files.


internals

5 Internals

Contents

5.1 Introduction **60**
5.2 A few basics **60**
5.3 Memory words **64**
5.4 Tokens **65**
5.5 Nodes **66**
5.6 The hash table **67**
5.7 Save stack **70**
5.8 Data types **70**
5.9 Time flies **70**
5.10 Keywords **74**
5.11 Sparse arrays **75**

5.1 Introduction

If you look at TEX as a programming language and are familiar with other languages, a natural question to ask is what data types there are and how is all managed. Here I will give a general overview of some concepts. The explanation below is not entirely accurate because it tries to avoid the sometimes messy details. More can be found in the other low level manuals. I assume that one knows at least how to process a simple document with a few commands.

It is not natural to start an explanation with how memory is laid out but by doing this it is easier to introduce the concepts. I will focus on what is called hash table, the stack, node memory and token memory. We leave fonts, languages, character properties, math, etc. out of the picture. There are details that we skip because it's the general picture that matters here.

I might add some more to this manual, depending on questions by users at meetings or on the mailing list. Some details might change over time but the principles remain the same.

5.2 A few basics

This is a reference manual and not a tutorial. This means that we discuss changes relative to traditional TEX and also present new (or extended) functionality. As a consequence we will refer to concepts that we assume to be known or that might be explained later. Because the LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX engines open up TEX there's suddenly quite some more to explain, especially about the way a (to be) typeset stream moves through the machinery. However, discussing all that in detail makes not much sense, because deep knowledge is only relevant for those who write code not possible with regular TEX and who are already familiar with these internals (or willing to spend time on figuring it out).

So, the average user doesn't need to know much about what is in this manual. For instance fonts and languages are normally dealt with in the macro package that you use. Messing around with node lists is also often not really needed at the user level. If you do mess around, you'd better know what you're dealing with. Reading "The TEX Book" by Donald Knuth is a good investment of time then also because it's good to know where it all started. A more summarizing overview is given by "TEX by Topic" by Victor Eijkhout. You might want to peek in "The e-TEX manual" too.

But ... if you're here because of Lua, then all you need to know is that you can call it from within a run. If you want to learn the language, just read the well written Lua book. The macro package that you use probably will provide a few wrapper mechanisms but the basic **\directlua** command that does the job is:

```
\directlua{tex.print("Hi there")}
```

You can put code between curly braces but if it's a lot you can also put it in a file and load that file with the usual Lua commands. If you don't know what this means, you definitely need to have a look at the Lua book first.

If you still decide to read on, then it's good to know what nodes are, so we do a quick introduction here. If you input this text:

```
Hi There ...
```

eventually we will get a linked lists of nodes, which in ascii art looks like:

```
H <=> i <=> [glue] <=> T <=> h <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

When we have a paragraph, we actually get something like this, where a `par` node stores some meta-data and is followed by a `hlist` flagged as indent box:

```
[par] <=> [hlist] <=> H <=> i <=> [glue] <=> T <=> h <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

Each character becomes a so called glyph node, a record with properties like the current font, the character code and the current language. Spaces become glue nodes. There are many node types and nodes can have many properties but that will be discussed later. Each node points back to a previous node or next node, given that these exist. Sometimes multiple characters are represented by one glyph (shape), so one can also get:

```
[par] <=> [hlist] <=> H <=> i <=> [glue] <=> Th <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

And maybe some characters get positioned relative to each other, so we might see:

```
[par] <=> [hlist] <=> H <=> [kern] <=> i <=> [glue] <=> Th <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

Actually, the above representation is one view, because in LuaMetaTEX we can choose for this:

```
[par] <=> [glue] <=> H <=> [kern] <=> i <=> [glue] <=> Th <=> e <=> r <=> e ...
```

where glue (currently fixed) is used instead of an empty hlist (think of a **\hbox**). Options like this are available because want a certain view on these lists from the Lua end and the result being predicable is part of that.

It's also good to know beforehand that TEX is basically centered around creating paragraphs and pages. The par builder takes a list and breaks it into lines. At some point horizontal blobs are wrapped into vertical ones. Lines are so called boxes and can be separated by glue, penalties and more. The page builder accumulates lines and when feasible triggers an output routine that will take the list so far. Constructing the actual page is not part of TEX but done using primitives that permit manipulation of boxes. The result is handled back to TEX and flushed to a (often pdf) file.

```
\setbox\scratchbox\vbox\bgroup
    line 1\par line 2
```

```
\egroup

\showbox\scratchbox
```

The above code produces the next log lines that reveal how the engines sees a paragraph (wrapped in a **\vbox**):

```
1:4: > \box257=
1:4: \vbox[normal][16=1,17=1,47=1], width 483.69687, height 27.58083, depth 0.1416, direction l2r
1:4: .\list
1:4: ..\hbox[line][16=1,17=1,47=1], width 483.69687, height 7.59766, depth 0.1416, glue 455.40097fil, direction l2r
1:4: ...\list
1:4: ....\glue[left hang][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[left][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[parfillleft][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\par[newgraf][16=1,17=1,47=1], hangafter 1, hsize 483.69687, pretolerance 100, tolerance 3000, adjdemerits 10000, linepenalty 10,
          doublehyphendemerits 10000, finalhyphendemerits 5000, clubpenalty 2000, widowpenalty 2000, brokenpenalty 100, emergencystretch 12.0,
                                                                                  parfillskip 0.0pt plus 1.0fil, hyphenationmode 499519
1:4: ....\glue[indent][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +00006C l
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +000069 i
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +00006E n
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +000065 e
1:4: ....\glue[space][16=1,17=1,47=1] 3.17871pt plus 1.58936pt minus 1.05957pt, font 30
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +000031 1
1:4: ....\penalty[line][16=1,17=1,47=1] 10000
1:4: ....\glue[parfill][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt plus 1.0fil
1:4: ....\glue[right][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[right hang][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ..\glue[par][16=1,17=1,47=1] 5.44995pt plus 1.81665pt minus 1.81665pt
1:4: ..\glue[baseline][16=1,17=1,47=1] 6.79396pt
1:4: ..\hbox[line][16=1,17=1,47=1], width 483.69687, height 7.59766, depth 0.1416, glue 455.40097fil, direction l2r
1:4: ...\list
1:4: ....\glue[left hang][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[left][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[parfillleft][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\par[newgraf][16=1,17=1,47=1], hangafter 1, hsize 483.69687, pretolerance 100, tolerance 3000, adjdemerits 10000, linepenalty 10,
          doublehyphendemerits 10000, finalhyphendemerits 5000, clubpenalty 2000, widowpenalty 2000, brokenpenalty 100, emergencystretch 12.0,
                                                                                  parfillskip 0.0pt plus 1.0fil, hyphenationmode 499519
1:4: ....\glue[indent][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +00006C l
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +000069 i
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +00006E n
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +000065 e
1:4: ....\glue[space][16=1,17=1,47=1] 3.17871pt plus 1.58936pt minus 1.05957pt, font 30
1:4: ....\glyph[32768][16=1,17=1,47=1], language (n=1,l=2,r=3), hyphenationmode 499519, options 128 , font <30: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>, glyph U
                                                                                                                                  +000032 2
1:4: ....\penalty[line][16=1,17=1,47=1] 10000
1:4: ....\glue[parfill][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt plus 1.0fil
1:4: ....\glue[right][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
1:4: ....\glue[right hang][16=1,17=1,47=1] 0.0pt
```

The LuaMetaTEX engine provides hooks for Lua code at nearly every reasonable point in the process: collecting content, hyphenating, applying font features, breaking into lines, etc. This means that you can overload TEX's natural behavior, which still is the benchmark. When we refer to 'callbacks' we means these hooks. The TEX engine itself is pretty well optimized but when you kick in much Lua code, you will notices that performance drops. Don't blame and bother the authors with performance issues. In ConTEXt over 50% of the time can be spent in Lua, but so far we didn't get many complaints about efficiency. Adding more callbacks makes no sense, also because at some point the performance hit gets too large. There are plenty of ways to achieve goals. For that reason: take remarks about LuaMetaTEX, features, potential, performance etc. with a natural grain of salt.

Where plain TEX is basically a basic framework for writing a specific style, macro packages like ConTEXt and LATEX provide the user a whole lot of additional tools to make documents look good. They hide the dirty details of font management, language support, turning structure into typeset results, wrapping pages, including images, and so on. You should be aware of the fact that when you hook in your own code to manipulate lists, this can interfere with the macro package that you use. Each successive step expects a certain result and if you mess around to much, the engine eventually might bark and quit. It can even crash, because testing everywhere for what users can do wrong is no real option.

When you read about nodes in the following chapters it's good to keep in mind what commands relate to them. Here are a few:

command	node	explanation
\hbox	hlist	horizontal box
\vbox	vlist	vertical box with the baseline at the bottom
\vtop	vlist	vertical box with the baseline at the top
\hskip	glue	horizontal skip with optional stretch and shrink
\vskip	glue	vertical skip with optional stretch and shrink
\kern	kern	horizontal or vertical fixed skip
\discretionary	disc	hyphenation point (pre, post, replace)
\char	glyph	a character
\hrule	rule	a horizontal rule
\vrule	rule	a vertical rule
\textdirection	dir	a change in text direction

Whatever we feed into TEX at some point becomes a token which is either interpreted directly or stored in a linked list. A token is just a number that encodes a specific command (operator) and some value (operand) that further specifies what that command is supposed to do. In addition to an interface to nodes, there is an interface to tokens, as later chapters will demonstrate.

Text (interspersed with macros) comes from an input medium. This can be a file, token list, macro body cq. arguments, some internal quantity (like a number), Lua, etc. Macros get expanded. In the process TEX can enter a group. Inside the group, changes to registers get saved on a stack, and restored after leaving the group. When conditionals are encountered, another kind of nesting happens, and again there is a stack involved. Tokens, expansion, stacks, input levels are all terms used in the next chapters. Don't worry, they loose their magic once you use TEX a lot. You have access to most of the internals and when not, at least it is possible to query some state we're in or level we're at.

When we talk about pack(ag)ing it can mean two things. When TEX has consumed some tokens that represent text they are added to the current list. When the text is put into a so called **\hbox** (for instance a line in a paragraph) it (normally) first gets hyphenated, next ligatures are build, and finally kerns are added. Each of these stages can be overloaded using Lua code. When these three stages are finished, the dimension of the content is calculated and the box gets its width, height and depth. What happens with the box depends on what macros do with it.

The other thing that can happen is that the text starts a new paragraph. In that case some information is stored in a leading `par` node. Then indentation is appended and the paragraph ends with some glue. Again the three stages are applied but this time afterwards, the long line is broken into lines and the result is either added to the content of a box or to the main vertical list (the running text so to say). This is called par building. At some point TEX decides that enough is enough and it will trigger the

page builder. So, building is another concept we will encounter. Another example of a builder is the one that turns an intermediate math list into something typeset.

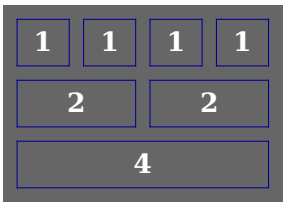
Wrapping something in a box is called packing. Adding something to a list is described in terms of contributing. The more complicated processes are wrapped into builders. For now this should be enough to enable you to understand the next chapters. The text is not as enlightening and entertaining as Don Knuths books, sorry.

5.3 Memory words

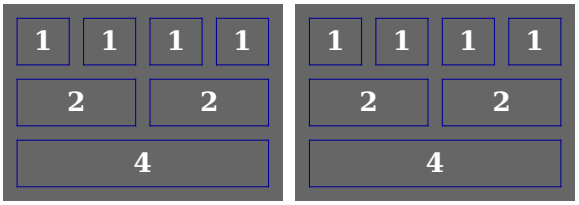
Before we come to know that TEX manages most of it memory itself. It allocates arrays of (pairs of) 32 bit integers because that is what TEX uses all over the place: integers. They store integer numbers of various ranges values, fixed point floats, pointers (indices in arrays), states, commands, and often groups of them travel around the system.

integer	:	mostly 8, 16, 24, 32 but we have odd packing too
fixed point float	:	16.16 used to represent dimensions
boolean	:	simple state variables
enumerations	:	a choice from a set, like operators and operands
strings	:	an index in a string pool (character array)

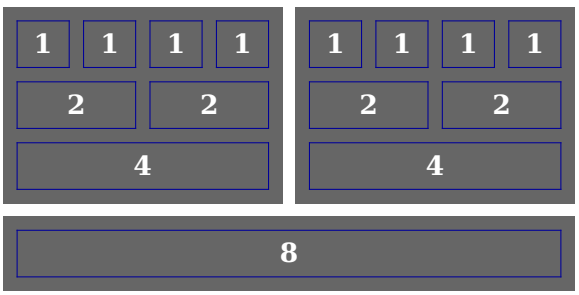
The main memory areas in TEX are therefore arrays integers or pairs of integers as we want to handle linked lists where in an element one integer has some data and the other points to another element. Keep in mind that when TEX showed up efficient memory management was best done by the application, especially when it had to be portable. This might seem odd now but is actually not that bad performance wise. One just has to get accustomed to the way TEX handles data.



Depending on usage we use four, two or one byte. Often a pair is used:



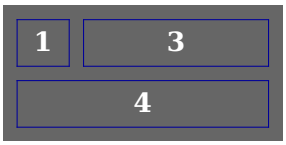
Such a pair is called a (memory) word and each component is a halfword that itself can have two quarterwords and four singlewords. In LuaMetaTEX we also can combine them:



The eight byte field is used for pointers (to more dynamic structures) and double floats but that can only happen when multiple words are used as a combined data structure (as in a so called node, explained below). Quite often the second field is used as pointer to another pair. We could have changed that model in LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX but there is little gain in that and we want to stay close to the well documented original as much as possible. It also has the side effect of simplifying the code and retain performance.[3]

5.4 Tokens

A token is a halfword, so a 32 bit integer as mentioned before. Here we use a one plus three model, not mentioned in the previous section. Sometimes we just look at the whole number, but quite often we look at the two smaller ones. The single byte is the so called command identifier (cmd), the second one traditionally is called character (chr), but what we're really talking about is an operator and operand kind of model. In a TEX engine source you can find variable names like `cur_cmd`, `cur_chr` and `cur_tok` were the third one combines the first two.



Tokens travel through the system as integers and when some action is required the command part is consulted which then triggers some action further defined by the character part. The combination can either directly trigger some action but often that action has to look ahead in order to get some more details.

Consider the following input:

```
\starttext
Hi there!

This is a \hbox{box}.
\stoptext
```

Every character falls in a category, and there are 16 of them. The `H` is a 'letter', the empty line a newline. The backslash is an 'escape' that tells the parser to scan for a command where the name is from letters. That command is then looked up and a token is created: in this case a 'call' command with as operand the memory address (an index in the to be discussed hash) where the start of a list of stored tokens can be found.

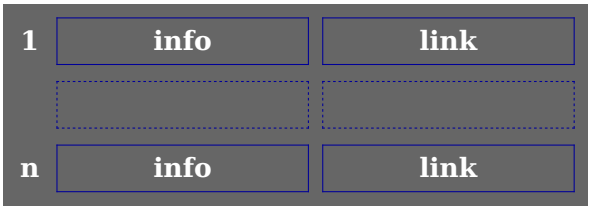
The characters in the text also become tokens and here we get two 'letter' commands (with the Unicode slots as operand), one 'space' command, five more letter commands and an 'other' command, and so on.

Here every token is fed into the interpreter. The `\starttext` and `\stoptext` are macros (control sequences) so they get expanded and the stored tokens get interpreted. The letters become (to be discussed) nodes in a linked list of content. In this case the tokens are not stored and discarded as we read on.

[3] In the source this is reflected in the names used: `vinfo` and `vlink` in these pairs but in LuaMetaTEX we often use more symbolic names.

The **\hbox** is also a control sequence but a built in primitive. The operator is `make_box` and the operand is `hbox`. It will trigger making a box of the given kind by reading an optional specification, the left curly brace (begin group) collects content, and when the right curly brace (end group) is seen wraps up by packaging the result. Al that is hard coded, contrary to a macro, but one can of course define **\hbox** as macro, which normally is a bad idea.

As a side note: quite often TEX reads a token, and then puts if back into the input. For instance, when it expects a number or keyword it keeps reading till it is satisfied and when it ends up in the unexpected it has to wrap up and go one step back. However, when we read from file we can't go back, which is why TEX has a model of 'input levels'. Pushing back boils down to creating a token list with this one token and then starts reading from that list. It is beyond this explanation to go into details but all you need to know is that TEX has various input sources, for instance files, token lists, arguments to commands (also token lists) and Lua output, but in the end all provide tokens.[4]



So to wrap up tokens, we have either singular ones (just 32 bit integers encoding a command and value aka operator and operand) or a pair where the second one is a link. A token list starts at some index and the link is zero (end of list) or another index. Token memory is huge array of memory words like these. When token lists are constructed we take from this pool so there is an index indicating the first available token. When a list is discarded it gets appended to a list of free tokens. So in practice we first try to get a free token from this pool. In LuaMetaTEX it the token array will grow on demand with a configurable chunk size.

5.5 Nodes

We already mentioned nodes. These are slices from an array that hold some values that belong together. So again we have a large array of memory words but where a token is one pair a node is multiple. Nodes have different size. The first node starts at index 1 and when it needs four memory words the second node starts at index 5.

A character in the input that is typeset will become a glyph node of 120 bytes and a paragraph starts with a par node of 288 bytes. A space becomes a glue node of 64 bytes and every box that you (or TEX) make is 152 bytes. Most nodes are way larger in LuaMetaTEX than in traditional TEX but we don't have the memory constraints of those times.

Here it is worth noticing that where TEX has a dedicated subsystem for glue which make sharing space related glue efficient: the so called glue specifications are reference counted. In LuaTEX we made these normal nodes which is slightly less efficient but fits better in the opened up (Lua) interface and also has some other advantages (we leave it to reader to guess what).

For instance, a kern node at the time of this writing needs three memory words (as with other nodes we might add some more fields, like `options`).

[4] We could use a double linked list in which case we would have a three integer element which is odd for TEX and has no real benefits as it would change the model completely.

3128	type	subtype	next
3129	previous		attribute
3130	amount		expansion

So here we take a slice of three memory words from the node array starting at index 3128. We mention this detail because sometimes (when tracing) you see these numbers. This doesn't mean that at that point we had 3128 nodes, because the next node taken from this pool will have number 3131. The numbers are indices!

In the source code we access thes enumber like this:

```
# define kern_amount(a)     vlink(a,2)
# define kern_expansion(a) vinfo(a,2)
```

So when $a = 3128$ the amount is found in the link field $a = 3128 + 2 = 3130$. The name link is somewhat weird here but that's the way these fields are called: `vlink` and `vinfo`. It could as well be `first` and `second` but by using macros we get away by abstraction. So now you can figure out what these references do:[5]

```
# define node_type(a)    vinfo0(a,0)
# define node_subtype(a) vinfo1(a,0)

# define node_next(a)    vlink(a,0)
# define node_prev(a)    vlink(a,1)
# define node_attr(a)    vinfo(a,1)
```

Not all nodes end up in a list that results in output, like paragraphs and pages. For instance **\parshape** and **\widowpenalties** also use nodes as storage container. Their common node is a specification node of 32 but with a pointer to a dynamically memory array.

Because the sizes differ one cannot simply have a list of free nodes (as with tokens) without some lookup mechanism that combines nodes when needed (they need to be next to each other) or split larger ones when we run out of nodes. In LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX we keep a list of free nodes per size which in practice is more efficient and one seldom runs out of nodes because on the average a page has a similar distribution and when a page is flushed (or any box for that matter) nodes get freed. For instance right at this moment, we have 1557 nodes in use and 3187 glyphs in stock.[6]

5.6 The hash table

The engine has a lot of built-in commands and users can define additional ones. An example is macros, like the mentioned **\starttext** and **\stoptext** that refer to a token list that starts the typesetting process. When reading the input from file these commands and macros are looked up in a hash table. There are also built-in commands that generate a hash entry. For instance when you define a counter or a font, the given name becomes a hash entry that points to a memory location (again an index).

[5] In what order these two fields end up in memory depends on the cpu being little or big endian.

[6] And a while later (that is: here) these numbers are 1634 and 3110. These numbers can handly be called dramatic as a page can only have so many glyph nodes: 1738 and 3006 were the numbers after the colon.

Here it gets more complex. A hash table is used to lookup primitive commands like **\hbox** and **\font** as well as **\starttext** and **\stoptext**. The string is converted into an integer within a specific range. That integer is then an index into a table like we saw before, with two halfwords per slot.

1	next	string
n	next	string

The hash value (integer calculated from string) point to a slot and the string is compared with the stored string. When the string is different, the next field points to a different slot (outside the hash range in the same table) and again the string is checked. When there is no next value set (zero), the index is used to determine what to do.

1	type	flags	level	value
n	type	flags	level	value

This table is called the table of equivalents. In LuaMetaTEX this is implemented a bit different than in the other engines because we combine tables. The fields that you see here keep track of the type (so that we can optimize some bits and pieces), flags (so that we can implement overload protection), a level (so that we can restore values after the group ends and of course a value.

That value can be a a pointer to (index of) a token list, or a pointer to (index of) a node. It can also be just some value, like a dimension, character reference or register entry.

Although there are similarities, the memory mapping in LuaMetaTEX differs from LuaTEX and that one differs from pdfTEX which again differs from original TEX.

In original TEX table of equivalents is organized in six regions.

1. active characters
2. hash table
   font identifiers
3. glue
   muglue
4. token lists
   boxes
   font names
   math codes
   category codes
   lowercase codes
   uppercase codes
   space factors
5. integers
   delimiter codes
6. dimensions

The internal dimension, integer, skip, muskip, token and box registers are part of this and for users there are 256 registers of each category. There are 256 active characters, and the mentioned codes and factors also have 256 entries.

In LuaMetaTEX (like in LuaTEX) we use Unicode, so there it makes no sense to store values in the table of equivalents. We use dedicates hashes instead. So there we have different regions. In LuaTEX we roughly have this:

1. hash table
2. frozen control sequences
3. font identifiers
4. glue
5. muglue
6. tokens
7. boxes
8. integers
9. attributes
10. dimensions

As we moved forward, LuaMetaTEX has some more:

1. hash table
2. frozen control sequences
3. glue
4. muglue
5. tokens
6. boxes
7. integers
8. attributes
9. dimensions
10. posits
11. units
12. specifications

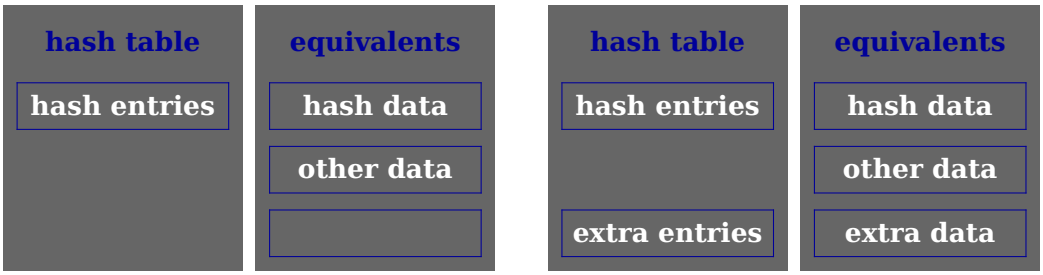
In case one wonders, on top of built-in units users can define their own. Specifications are for instance shape and penalty arrays. Fonts are not in here because we manage them in Lua.

In traditional TEX a delimiter code needs two integers so there it uses both fields in a memory word and saves the state in a parallel array with quarterwords. We don't need this in LuaMetaTEX because we store delimiters in a separate hash table (and actually don't need them at all, because we use OpenType fonts).

We need to keep some save/restore related state in the table but for integers and delimiter codes we need all four bytes of the value. Therefore original TEX has a separate parallel table for this, which as side effect spoils some memory. In LuaTEX we have way more registers so there the waste is larger.

In LuaMetaTEX we got rid of this. We could also use less space for the type and store some extra data. A side effect is that we keep the type information which is handy for tracing, sparse dumping, and optimizing save and restore. This is why with more functionality we don't need less more memory than one would expect.

The hash table in original TEX is a bit too small for larger macro packages which is why in practice engines took more than the default couple of thousands slots. But going too large makes no sense because one ends up with many misses and unused hash and equivalent space. That is why soon after TEX showed up support for extra hash space was introduced. That space is allocated at the end of normal hash space and can be configured when the format file is made. This means that the hash table also grows to the size of the equivalents table:



Too much extra hash space also means too much equivalent space as these arrays run in parallel. In LuaMetaTEX we can let hash memory grow on demand so there the penalty is less.

It makes sense to move the 'other data' to the beginning so that we can use a smaller hash but. That could potentially save 4MB memory, but when we decide to limit the maximum number of registers

to 8K (instead of 64K) we are at 512KB so that might be easier as it avoids using offsets. And who knows how we can use the yet unused space later. Compared to LuaTEX we already save much memory elsewhere.

5.7 Save stack

I only mention this here because it relates to the table of equivalents. Whenever a quantity (register, parameter, macro, you name it) changes the engine registers the old value on the save stack when the assignment is local. The equivalent is replaced and when found in the save stack restored afterwards. In order to let the save stack not grow too much we try to only save a state when there is a real change. We can do that because we have a bit more information available and otherwise do a bit more testing. This is specific for LuaMetaTEX.

5.8 Data types

The long winding explanation explanation in the previous section shows that we have a curious mix of data to manage. We already saw tokens and nodes but here we also saw registers. However, integers, dimensions and attributes are all basically just 32 bit numbers. Even a posit (float) fits into that space. So if you enter `10pt` internally it becomes a so called scaled (dimension). The skip registers point to a glue node and the token and box registers to a node list and those pointers are also numbers. So, what the user sees as a data type internally is just a number and its type (the command field in a token) tells what to do with it.

When tracing is turned on there can be mentioning of save stack, input levels, fonts, languages, hyphenation, various character related properties and so on. Here we have specialized data structures that have their own memory layout and management. Where terms like token, node, integer (count), dimension and glue indicate something that the user should grasp, the entries in a save stack are never presented other than in an message.

Manipulating data types is explained in various low level manuals, some relate to programming, and some to typesetting. It makes no sense to repeat that here. Take for instance macros: then come in variants (think of **`\protected`** and/or **`\tolerant`** ones) can take arguments (which effectively are token lists) and the flags in the mentioned table of equivalents control take care of that.

One aspect of token lists is worth mentioning: they start with a so called head token. So a list of length one actually has two tokens. The head keeps track of the fact that a list is a copy. Because a macro is also a token list, in LuaMetaTEX the head also has some information that permits a more efficient code path. Because token lists are used all over the place in the engine, sharing makes sense.

Attributes attached to a node are node lists themselves and these are also shared which not only saves memory but also is more performing. There are many places where LuaMetaTEX differs from its predecessors: there are more primitives, there is more data moved around but it got compensated by optimizing mechanisms. But as much as possible we stayed within the same paradigms.

5.9 Time flies

For those curious about how different the engines are when it comes to memory usage, here is a quote from TEX the program:

> Since we are assuming 32-bit integers, a halfword must contain at least 16 bits, and a quarterword must contain at least 8 bits. But it doesn't hurt to have more bits; for example, with enough 36-bit words you might be able to have `mem_max` as large as 262142, which is eight times as much memory as anybody had during the first four years of TEX's existence.
>
> N.B.: Valuable memory space will be dreadfully wasted unless TEX is compiled by a Pascal that packs all of the `memory_word` variants into the space of a single integer. This means, for example, that `glue_ratio` words should be `short_real` instead of `real` on some computers. Some Pascal compilers will pack an integer whose subrange is `0 .. 255` into an eight-bit field, but others insist on allocating space for an additional sign bit; on such systems you can get 256 values into a quarterword only if the subrange is `128 .. 127`.
>
> The present implementation tries to accommodate as many variations as possible, so it makes few assumptions. If integers having the subrange `min_quarterword .. max_quarterword` can be packed into a quarterword, and if integers having the subrange `min_halfword .. max_halfword` can be packed into a halfword, everything should work satisfactorily.
>
> It is usually most efficient to have `min_quarterword = min_halfword = 0`, so one should try to achieve this unless it causes a severe problem. The values defined here are recommended for most 32-bit computers.

This still applies to pdfTEX although there a memory word is two 32 bit integer, so each halfword in there spans 32 bits, and a quarterword 16 bits. So what does that mean for nodes? Here is what the original code says about char nodes.

> A `char_node`, which represents a single character, is the most important kind of node because it accounts for the vast majority of all boxes. Special precautions are therefore taken to ensure that a `char_node` does not take up much memory space. Every such node is one word long, and in fact it is identifiable by this property, since other kinds of nodes have at least two words, and they appear in `mem` locations less than `hi_mem_min`. This makes it possible to omit the `type` field in a `char_node`, leaving us room for two bytes that identify a `font` and a `character` within that font.
>
> Note that the format of a `char_node` allows for up to 256 different fonts and up to 256 characters per font; but most implementations will probably limit the total number of fonts to fewer than 75 per job, and most fonts will stick to characters whose codes are less than 128 (since higher codes are more difficult to access on most keyboards).

So, in order to save space these single size nodes use little memory. Even more interesting is the follow up on that explanation:

> Extensions of TEX intended for oriental languages will need even more than 256×256 possible characters, when we consider different sizes and styles of type. It is suggested that Chinese and Japanese fonts be handled by representing such characters in two consecutive `char_node` entries: The first of these has `font = font_base`, and its `link` points to the second; the second identifies the font and the character dimensions. The saving feature about oriental characters is that most of them have the same box dimensions. The `character` field of the first `char_node` is a `charext` that distinguishes between graphic symbols whose dimensions are identical for typesetting purposes. (See the MetaFont manual.) Such an extension of TEX would not be difficult; further details are left to the reader.
>
> In order to make sure that the `character` code fits in a quarterword, TEX adds the quantity `min_quarterword` to the actual code.

What if that had been implemented right from the start? What if utf8 had been around at that time? Of course when 32 bit integers are used we can use these extra bit for a larger code range anyway.

When we flash forward to LuaTEX we don't see that optimization and there are reasons for it. First of all content related nodes have an attribute list pointer as well as a `prev` field; lists are double linked. That means we don't reuse the `type` and `subtype` fields. The macros that define a glyph are:

```
# define glyph_node_size       7
# define character(a)          vinfo((a)+2)
# define font(a)               vlink((a)+2)
# define lang_data(a)          vinfo((a)+3)
# define lig_ptr(a)            vlink((a)+3)
# define x_displace(a)         vinfo((a)+4)
# define y_displace(a)         vlink((a)+4)
# define ex_glyph(a)           vinfo((a)+5)  /* expansion factor (hz) */
# define glyph_node_data(a)    vlink((a)+5)
# define synctex_tag_glyph(a)  vinfo((a)+6)
# define synctex_line_glyph(a) vlink((a)+6)
```

Instead of one memory word we use seven, and given the amount of characters on a page that adds quite a bit compared to the original. Of course it is irrelevant on todays machines. So how about LuaMetaTEX as of late 2024?

```
# define glyph_node_size     14
# define glyph_character(a)  vinfo(a,2)
# define glyph_font(a)       vlink(a,2)   /*tex can be quarterword */
# define glyph_data(a)       vinfo(a,3)   /*tex handy in context */
# define glyph_state(a)      vlink(a,3)   /*tex handy in context */
# define glyph_language(a)   vinfo0(a,4)
# define glyph_script(a)     vinfo1(a,4)
# define glyph_control(a)    vlink0(a,4)  /*tex we store 0xXXXX in the |\cccode| */
# define glyph_reserved(a)   vlink1(a,4)
# define glyph_options(a)    vinfo(a,5)
# define glyph_hyphenate(a)  vlink(a,5)
# define glyph_protected(a)  vinfo00(a,6)
# define glyph_lhmin(a)      vinfo01(a,6)
# define glyph_rhmin(a)      vinfo02(a,6)
# define glyph_discpart(a)   vinfo03(a,6)
# define glyph_expansion(a)  vlink(a,6)
# define glyph_x_scale(a)    vinfo(a,7)
# define glyph_y_scale(a)    vlink(a,7)
# define glyph_scale(a)      vinfo(a,8)
# define glyph_raise(a)      vlink(a,8)
# define glyph_left(a)       vinfo(a,9)
# define glyph_right(a)      vlink(a,9)
# define glyph_x_offset(a)   vinfo(a,10)
# define glyph_y_offset(a)   vlink(a,10)
# define glyph_weight(a)     vinfo(a,11)
# define glyph_slant(a)      vlink(a,11)
# define glyph_properties(a) vinfo0(a,12)  /*tex for math */
# define glyph_group(a)      vinfo1(a,12)  /*tex for math */
```

```
# define glyph_index(a)      vlink(a,12)   /*tex for math */
# define glyph_input_file(a) vinfo(a,13)
# define glyph_input_line(a) vlink(a,13)
```

We carry scaled, offsets, status information and various data around and consume twice what LuaTEX needs. In both cases there are the common fields:

```
# define node_type(a)    vinfo0(a,0)
# define node_subtype(a) vinfo1(a,0)
# define node_next(a)    vlink(a,0)
# define node_prev(a)    vlink(a,1)
# define node_attr(a)    vinfo(a,1)
```

As you see, we still use the original TEX `vinfo` and `vlink` identifications but in LuaMetaTEX we have node specific verbose accessors because we no longer use the same slots for (for instance) width, height and depth. This of course has impact on the code base because now `width(n)` becomes a different accessor per node it applies to. We get less compact code but gain readability and we often need to distinguish anyway. Where LuaTEX and predecessors we see:

```
w += width(n)
```

that covers boxes, glue and kerns. For glyphs we need to get the width from the font using the `font` and `char` fields. Actually, in TEX82 that can be done directly because we know that these values are okay. In LuaTEX however these values can be set in Lua and therefore we do need to check if they reference a loaded font and valid character slot. So in LuaTEX we do need a dedicated function to get the glyph width.

In LuaMetaTEX we have to be more granular and deal with each node type that has width independently:

```
switch (subtype(n) {
    case glyph_node:
        w += tex_glyph_width(s);
        break;
    case hlist_node:
    case vlist_node:
        w += box_width(n);
        break;
    case rule_node:
        w += rule_width(n);
        break;
    case glue_node:
        w += glue_amount(n);
        break;
    case kern_node:
        w += kern_amount(s);
        break;
    case math_node:
        if (tex_math_glue_is_zero(s)) {
            w += math_surround(s);
        } else {
```

```
            w -= math_amount(s);
        }
        break;

}
```

Because a glyph can have scaled set and similar features exist for glue we need to distinguish need to distinguish anyway. Watch the math node: we have to deal with either kern or glue.

5.10 Keywords

The e-TEX extension added primitives, pdfTEX did the same, as did Omega and therefore also LuaTEX, which took from its ancestors and added more. The LuaMetaTEX engine again extends the repertoire. However, in order to control some primitive (functional) behavior instead of using extra primitive parameters, we use keywords. For instance **\hbox** accepts multiple `attr`, `direction`, (LuaTEX) but also `xoffset`, `yoffset`, `orientation` and more. This has no impact on compatibility because scanning keywords stops at the left brace (or its equivalent). The **\hrule** like primitives also accept more keywords but here scanning stops at an unknown keyword, which can give interesting side effects when it's last in macro followed by text that itself starts with a valid keyword (say `height`) but not by a dimensions.

```
\def\foo{\hrule width 10pt} \foo height or depth, what about it.
\def\foo{\hrule width 10pt\relax} \foo height or depth, what about it.
\def\foo{\hrule width 10pt} \foo what about it.
\hbox to 20pt{x}
\hbox attr 999 1 to 20pt{x}
\hbox to 20pt attr 999 1 {x}
```

The first line gives an error, the second uses **\relax** to end the scanning. The last line is wrong in LuaTEX where order matters while it's okay in LuaMetaTEX. The third line is okay in LuaTEX where the `what` is pushed back but wrong in LuaMetaTEX where it expect `w` to start a valid keyword. The last is actually an incompatibility but one should keep in mind that using **\relax** is the way to go here anyway. The same is true for scanning glue specifications.

The fact that `what` gets pushed back (in LuaTEX) into the input add extra overhead. But in this case it's little. However, think of this in LuaTEX:

```
if (scan_keyword("width")) {
    scan_normal_dimen();
    width(q) = cur_val;
    goto RESWITCH;
}
if (scan_keyword("height")) {
    scan_normal_dimen();
    height(q) = cur_val;
    goto RESWITCH;
}
if (scan_keyword("depth")) {
    scan_normal_dimen();
    depth(q) = cur_val;
    goto RESWITCH;
```

```
}
```

Here we push back two times when we only specify the `depth`. This is still not that bad but imagine many more keywords. This is why in LuaMetaTEX we cascade: we check for the first character and act on that and if needed do the same with later characters (box specifications take `adapt`, `attr`, `anchor` and `axis` so here a second character differentiates. In par passes we have `adjustspacingstep`, `adjustspacingshrink`, `adjustspacingstretch` so there is no need to push back the `adjustspacings` and if you look carefully `tep` and `tretch` also cascade. Of course the code looks a bit more messy but we do gain here due to less push back and therefore input level bumping. In some cases we also need less further tracing because we already know what is coming. Of course given TEX's already good scanning performance it all depends on usage what we gain in practice.

5.11 Sparse arrays

Because original TEX supports 256 characters it can use data structures and ranges in the main equivalent repertoire without too much overhead but with LuaTEX we went Unicode so dedicated sparse arrays were used instead for `\catcode`, `\lccode`, `\uccode` and `\sfcode`. The new `\hjcode`, math characters, delimiters and font character arrays also use this mechanism and in LuaMetaTEX we use them even more. Although in principle we can use the regular save stack for pushing and popping values each sparse array comes with its own stack.

In LuaMetaTEX this mechanism has been optimized. Depending on the kind of data we use nibbles, bytes, shorts, integers or integer pairs. There is also more aggressive optimization of storing the set values in the format file. Stack management is more efficient too, which mostly has benefits for math where we use sparse arrays for math parameters of which we have plenty.

The sparse array mechanism is also interfaced to Lua, and we might actually use that feature in ConTEXt some day.

primitives

6 Primitives

Contents

6.1 Introduction **77**
6.2 Rationale **91**
6.3 Primitives **92**
6.4 Syntax **302**

6.1 Introduction

Here I will discuss some of the new primitives in LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX, the later being a successor that permits the ConTEXt folks to experiment with new features. The order is arbitrary. When you compare LuaTEX with pdfTEX, there are actually quite some differences. Some primitives that pdfTEX introduced have been dropped in LuaTEX because they can be done better in Lua. Others have been promoted to core primitives that no longer have a `pdf` prefix. Then there are lots of new primitives, some introduce new concepts, some are a side effect of for instance new math font technologies, and then there are those that are handy extensions to the macro language. The LuaMetaTEX engine drops quite some primitives, like those related to pdfTEX specific f(r)ont or backend features. It also adds some new primitives, mostly concerning the macro language.

We also discuss the primitives that fit into the macro programming scope that are present in traditional TEX and e-TEX but there are for sure better of explanations out there already. Primitives that relate to typesetting, like those controlling math, fonts, boxes, attributes, directions, catcodes, Lua (functions) etc are not discussed or discussed in less detail here.

There are for instance primitives to create aliases to low level registers like counters and dimensions, as well as other (semi-numeric) quantities like characters, but normally these are wrapped into high level macros so that definitions can't clash too much. Numbers, dimensions etc can be advanced, multiplied and divided and there is a simple expression mechanism to deal with them. We don't go into these details here: it's mostly an overview of what the engine provides. If you are new to TEX, you need to play a while with its mixed bag of typesetting and programming features in order to understand the difference between this macro language and other languages you might be familiar with.

6.3.1 \<space> 92
6.3.2 \- 92
6.3.3 \/ 93
6.3.4 \Uabove 93
6.3.5 \Uabovewithdelims 93
6.3.6 \Uatop 93
6.3.7 \Uatopwithdelims 93
6.3.8 \Udelcode 93
6.3.9 \Udelimited 93
6.3.10 \Udelimiter 93
6.3.11 \Udelimiterover 93
6.3.12 \Udelimiterunder 93
6.3.13 \Uhextensible 93
6.3.14 \Uleft 94
6.3.15 \Umathaccent 95
6.3.16 \Umathaccentbasedepth 95
6.3.17 \Umathaccentbaseheight 95
6.3.18 \Umathaccentbottomovershoot . 95
6.3.19 \Umathaccentbottomshiftdown . 95
6.3.20 \Umathaccentextendmargin 95
6.3.21 \Umathaccentsuperscriptdrop . 95
6.3.22 \Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent 96
6.3.23 \Umathaccenttopovershoot 96
6.3.24 \Umathaccenttopshiftup 96
6.3.25 \Umathaccentvariant 96

6.3.26 \Umathadapttoleft 96
6.3.27 \Umathadapttoright 96
6.3.28 \Umathaxis 96
6.3.29 \Umathbottomaccentvariant 96
6.3.30 \Umathchar 96
6.3.31 \Umathchardef 96
6.3.32 \Umathcode 96
6.3.33 \Umathconnectoroverlapmin 96
6.3.34 \Umathdegreevariant 97
6.3.35 \Umathdelimiterextendmargin . 97
6.3.36 \Umathdelimitervariant .. 97
6.3.37 \Umathdelimiterpercent 97
6.3.38 \Umathdelimitershortfall 97
6.3.39 \Umathdelimiterundervariant . 97
6.3.40 \Umathdenominatorvariant 97
6.3.41 \Umathdictdef 97
6.3.42 \Umathexheight 97
6.3.43 \Umathextrasubpreshift 97
6.3.44 \Umathextrasubprespace 97
6.3.45 \Umathextrasubshift 98
6.3.46 \Umathextrasubspace 98
6.3.47 \Umathextrasuppreshift 98
6.3.48 \Umathextrasupprespace 98
6.3.49 \Umathextrasupshift 98
6.3.50 \Umathextrasupspace 98
6.3.51 \Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth 98
6.3.52 \Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight 98
6.3.53 \Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown 98
6.3.54 \Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup 98
6.3.55 \Umathfractiondelsize 98
6.3.56 \Umathfractiondenomdown 98
6.3.57 \Umathfractiondenomvgap 99
6.3.58 \Umathfractionnumup 99
6.3.59 \Umathfractionnumvgap 99
6.3.60 \Umathfractionrule 99
6.3.61 \Umathfractionvariant 99
6.3.62 \Umathhextensiblevariant 99
6.3.63 \Umathlimitabovebgap 99
6.3.64 \Umathlimitabovekern 99
6.3.65 \Umathlimitabovevgap 99
6.3.66 \Umathlimitbelowbgap 99
6.3.67 \Umathlimitbelowkern 99
6.3.68 \Umathlimitbelowvgap 99
6.3.69 \Umathlimits 100
6.3.70 \Umathnoaxis 100
6.3.71 \Umathnolimits 100
6.3.72 \Umathnolimitsubfactor 100
6.3.73 \Umathnolimitsupfactor 100
6.3.74 \Umathnumeratorvariant 100
6.3.75 \Umathopenupdepth 100
6.3.76 \Umathopenupheight 100
6.3.77 \Umathoperatorsize 100
6.3.78 \Umathoverbarkern 100
6.3.79 \Umathoverbarrule 100
6.3.80 \Umathoverbarvgap 100
6.3.81 \Umathoverdelimiterbgap 101
6.3.82 \Umathoverdelimitervariant . 101
6.3.83 \Umathoverdelimitervgap 101
6.3.84 \Umathoverlayaccentvariant . 101
6.3.85 \Umathoverlinevariant 101
6.3.86 \Umathphantom 101
6.3.87 \Umathprimeraise 101
6.3.88 \Umathprimeraisecomposed 101
6.3.89 \Umathprimeshiftdrop 101
6.3.90 \Umathprimeshiftup 101
6.3.91 \Umathprimespaceafter 101
6.3.92 \Umathprimevariant 101
6.3.93 \Umathquad 102
6.3.94 \Umathradicaldegreeafter 102
6.3.95 \Umathradicaldegreebefore .. 102
6.3.96 \Umathradicaldegreeraise 102
6.3.97 \Umathradicalextensibleafter 102
6.3.98 \Umathradicalextensiblebefore 102
6.3.99 \Umathradicalkern 102
6.3.100 \Umathradicalrule 102
6.3.101 \Umathradicalvariant 102
6.3.102 \Umathradicalvgap 102
6.3.103 \Umathruledepth 102
6.3.104 \Umathruleheight 103
6.3.105 \Umathskeweddelimitertolerance 103
6.3.106 \Umathskewedfractionhgap 103
6.3.107 \Umathskewedfractionvgap 103
6.3.108 \Umathsource 103
6.3.109 \Umathspaceafterscript 103
6.3.110 \Umathspacebeforescript 103
6.3.111 \Umathspacebetweenscript 103
6.3.112 \Umathstackdenomdown 103
6.3.113 \Umathstacknumup 103
6.3.114 \Umathstackvariant 103
6.3.115 \Umathstackvgap 103
6.3.116 \Umathsubscriptsnap 104

6.3.117 \Umathsubscriptvariant 104
6.3.118 \Umathsubshiftdown 104
6.3.119 \Umathsubshiftdrop 104
6.3.120 \Umathsubsupshiftdown 104
6.3.121 \Umathsubsupvgap 104
6.3.122 \Umathsubtopmax 104
6.3.123 \Umathsupbottommin 104
6.3.124 \Umathsuperscriptsnap 104
6.3.125 \Umathsuperscriptvariant 104
6.3.126 \Umathsupshiftdrop 104
6.3.127 \Umathsupshiftup 104
6.3.128 \Umathsupsubbottommax 105
6.3.129 \Umathtopaccentvariant 105
6.3.130 \Umathunderbarkern 105
6.3.131 \Umathunderbarrule 105
6.3.132 \Umathunderbarvgap 105
6.3.133 \Umathunderdelimiterbgap 105
6.3.134 \Umathunderdelimitervariant 105
6.3.135 \Umathunderdelimitervgap 105
6.3.136 \Umathunderlinevariant 105
6.3.137 \Umathuseaxis 105
6.3.138 \Umathvextensiblevariant 105
6.3.139 \Umathvoid 105
6.3.140 \Umathxscale 106
6.3.141 \Umathyscale 106
6.3.142 \Umiddle 106
6.3.143 \Uoperator 106
6.3.144 \Uover 106
6.3.145 \Uoverdelimiter 107
6.3.146 \Uoverwithdelims 107
6.3.147 \Uradical 107
6.3.148 \Uright 109
6.3.149 \Uroot 109
6.3.150 \Urooted 109
6.3.151 \Uskewed 109
6.3.152 \Uskewedwithdelims 109
6.3.153 \Ustartdisplaymath 109
6.3.154 \Ustartmath 109
6.3.155 \Ustartmathmode 109
6.3.156 \Ustopdisplaymath 109
6.3.157 \Ustopmath 109
6.3.158 \Ustopmathmode 109
6.3.159 \Ustretched 110
6.3.160 \Ustretchedwithdelims 110
6.3.161 \Uunderdelimiter 110
6.3.162 \Uvextensible 110
6.3.163 \above 110
6.3.164 \abovedisplayshortskip 110
6.3.165 \abovedisplayskip 110
6.3.166 \abovewithdelims 110
6.3.167 \accent 110
6.3.168 \additionalpageskip 110
6.3.169 \adjacentdemerits 110
6.3.170 \adjdemerits 111
6.3.171 \adjustspacing 111
6.3.172 \adjustspacingshrink 111
6.3.173 \adjustspacingstep 111
6.3.174 \adjustspacingstretch 111
6.3.175 \advance 111
6.3.176 \advanceby 111
6.3.177 \afterassigned 112
6.3.178 \afterassignment 112
6.3.179 \aftergroup 112
6.3.180 \aftergrouped 112
6.3.181 \aliased 113
6.3.182 \aligncontent 114
6.3.183 \alignloop 114
6.3.184 \alignmark 114
6.3.185 \alignmentcellsource 114
6.3.186 \alignmentwrapsource 114
6.3.187 \alignoption 114
6.3.188 \alignsnapping 114
6.3.189 \aligntab 115
6.3.190 \allcrampedstyles 115
6.3.191 \alldisplaystyles 115
6.3.192 \allmainstyles 115
6.3.193 \allmathstyles 115
6.3.194 \allscriptscriptstyles 115
6.3.195 \allscriptstyles 115
6.3.196 \allsplitstyles 115
6.3.197 \alltextstyles 115
6.3.198 \alluncrampedstyles 115
6.3.199 \allunsplitstyles 116
6.3.200 \amcode 116
6.3.201 \associateunit 116
6.3.202 \atendoffile 117
6.3.203 \atendoffiled 117
6.3.204 \atendofgroup 117
6.3.205 \atendofgrouped 117
6.3.206 \atop 117
6.3.207 \atopwithdelims 118
6.3.208 \attribute 118
6.3.209 \attributeboundary 118
6.3.210 \attributedef 118
6.3.211 \automaticdiscretionary 118
6.3.212 \automatichyphenpenalty 118
6.3.213 \automigrationmode 118
6.3.214 \autoparagraphmode 118

6.3.215 \badness 119
6.3.216 \balanceadjdemerits 119
6.3.217 \balancebottomskip 119
6.3.218 \balanceboundary 119
6.3.219 \balancebreakpasses 119
6.3.220 \balancechecks 119
6.3.221 \balanceemergencyshrink 119
6.3.222 \balanceemergencystretch 119
6.3.223 \balancefinalpenalties 119
6.3.224 \balancelineheight 120
6.3.225 \balancelooseness 120
6.3.226 \balancepasses 120
6.3.227 \balancepenalty 120
6.3.228 \balanceshape 120
6.3.229 \balanceshapebottomspace 120
6.3.230 \balanceshapetopspace 120
6.3.231 \balanceshapevsize 120
6.3.232 \balancetolerance 121
6.3.233 \balancetopskip 121
6.3.234 \balancevsize 121
6.3.235 \baselineskip 121
6.3.236 \batchmode 121
6.3.237 \begincsname 121
6.3.238 \begingroup 122
6.3.239 \beginlocalcontrol 122
6.3.240 \beginmathgroup 122
6.3.241 \beginmvl 122
6.3.242 \beginsimplegroup 123
6.3.243 \belowdisplayshortskip 124
6.3.244 \belowdisplayskip 124
6.3.245 \binoppenalty 124
6.3.246 \botmark 124
6.3.247 \botmarks 124
6.3.248 \bottomskip 124
6.3.249 \boundary 124
6.3.250 \box 124
6.3.251 \boxadapt 124
6.3.252 \boxanchor 125
6.3.253 \boxanchors 125
6.3.254 \boxattribute 125
6.3.255 \boxdirection 125
6.3.256 \boxfinalize 126
6.3.257 \boxfreeze 126
6.3.258 \boxgeometry 127
6.3.259 \boxinserts 127
6.3.260 \boxlimit 127
6.3.261 \boxlimitate 127
6.3.262 \boxlimitmode 127
6.3.263 \boxmaxdepth 127
6.3.264 \boxmigrate 127
6.3.265 \boxorientation 127
6.3.266 \boxrepack 127
6.3.267 \boxshift 128
6.3.268 \boxshrink 128
6.3.269 \boxsnapping 128
6.3.270 \boxsource 128
6.3.271 \boxstretch 128
6.3.272 \boxsubtype 129
6.3.273 \boxtarget 129
6.3.274 \boxtotal 129
6.3.275 \boxvadjust 129
6.3.276 \boxxmove 129
6.3.277 \boxxoffset 129
6.3.278 \boxymove 130
6.3.279 \boxyoffset 130
6.3.280 \breaklasthangindent 130
6.3.281 \breaklasthangleftindent 130
6.3.282 \breaklasthangleftslack 130
6.3.283 \breaklasthangrightindent .. 130
6.3.284 \breaklasthangrightslack 130
6.3.285 \breaklasthangslack 130
6.3.286 \breaklastlinecount 130
6.3.287 \breaklastlinewidth 130
6.3.288 \brokenpenalties 131
6.3.289 \brokenpenalty 131
6.3.290 \catcode 131
6.3.291 \catcodetable 131
6.3.292 \cccode 131
6.3.293 \cdef 131
6.3.294 \cdefcsname 132
6.3.295 \cfcode 132
6.3.296 \char 132
6.3.297 \chardef 132
6.3.298 \cleaders 132
6.3.299 \clearmarks 132
6.3.300 \clubpenalties 132
6.3.301 \clubpenalty 133
6.3.302 \constant 133
6.3.303 \constrained 133
6.3.304 \copy 133
6.3.305 \copymathatomrule 133
6.3.306 \copymathparent 133
6.3.307 \copymathspacing 133
6.3.308 \copysplitdiscards 133
6.3.309 \count 133
6.3.310 \countdef 134
6.3.311 \cr 134
6.3.312 \crampeddisplaystyle 134

6.3.313 \crampedscriptscriptstyle .. 134
6.3.314 \crampedscriptstyle 134
6.3.315 \crampedtextstyle 134
6.3.316 \crcr 134
6.3.317 \csactive 134
6.3.318 \csname 135
6.3.319 \csnamestring 135
6.3.320 \csstring 135
6.3.321 \currentalignmentcolumn 135
6.3.322 \currentalignmentrow 135
6.3.323 \currentalignmenttabskip 135
6.3.324 \currentgrouplevel 135
6.3.325 \currentgrouptype 136
6.3.326 \currentifbranch 136
6.3.327 \currentiflevel 136
6.3.328 \currentiftype 137
6.3.329 \currentloopiterator 138
6.3.330 \currentloopnesting 138
6.3.331 \currentlysetmathstyle 138
6.3.332 \currentmarks 138
6.3.333 \currentstacksize 139
6.3.334 \day 139
6.3.335 \dbox 139
6.3.336 \deadcycles 140
6.3.337 \def 140
6.3.338 \defaulthyphenchar 141
6.3.339 \defaultskewchar 141
6.3.340 \defcsname 141
6.3.341 \deferred 141
6.3.342 \delcode 141
6.3.343 \delimiter 142
6.3.344 \delimiterfactor 142
6.3.345 \delimitershortfall 142
6.3.346 \detokened 142
6.3.347 \detokenize 142
6.3.348 \detokenized 143
6.3.349 \dimen 143
6.3.350 \dimendef 143
6.3.351 \dimensiondef 143
6.3.352 \dimexperimental 143
6.3.353 \dimexpr 144
6.3.354 \dimexpression 144
6.3.355 \directlua 144
6.3.356 \discretionary 145
6.3.357 \discretionaryoptions 145
6.3.358 \displayindent 145
6.3.359 \displaylimits 145
6.3.360 \displaystyle 145
6.3.361 \displaywidowpenalties 145
6.3.362 \displaywidowpenalty 145
6.3.363 \displaywidth 146
6.3.364 \divide 146
6.3.365 \divideby 146
6.3.366 \doublehyphendemerits 146
6.3.367 \doublepenaltymode 146
6.3.368 \dp 146
6.3.369 \dpack 146
6.3.370 \dsplit 146
6.3.371 \dump 146
6.3.372 \edef 147
6.3.373 \edefcsname 147
6.3.374 \edivide 147
6.3.375 \edivideby 147
6.3.376 \efcode 148
6.3.377 \else 148
6.3.378 \emergencyextrastretch 148
6.3.379 \emergencyleftskip 148
6.3.380 \emergencyrightskip 148
6.3.381 \emergencystretch 148
6.3.382 \emptyparagraphmode 148
6.3.383 \end 148
6.3.384 \endcsname 149
6.3.385 \endgroup 149
6.3.386 \endinput 149
6.3.387 \endlinechar 149
6.3.388 \endlocalcontrol 150
6.3.389 \endmathgroup 150
6.3.390 \endmvl 150
6.3.391 \endsimplegroup 150
6.3.392 \enforced 150
6.3.393 \eofinput 150
6.3.394 \eqno 150
6.3.395 \errhelp 151
6.3.396 \errmessage 151
6.3.397 \errorcontextlines 151
6.3.398 \errorrecoverymode 151
6.3.399 \errorstopmode 151
6.3.400 \escapechar 151
6.3.401 \etexexprmode 151
6.3.402 \etoks 151
6.3.403 \etoksapp 152
6.3.404 \etokspre 152
6.3.405 \eufactor 152
6.3.406 \everybeforepar 152
6.3.407 \everycr 152
6.3.408 \everydisplay 152
6.3.409 \everyeof 153
6.3.410 \everyhbox 153

6.3.411 \everyjob 153
6.3.412 \everymath 153
6.3.413 \everymathatom 153
6.3.414 \everypar 153
6.3.415 \everyparbegin 154
6.3.416 \everyparend 154
6.3.417 \everytab 154
6.3.418 \everyvbox 154
6.3.419 \exapostrophechar 154
6.3.420 \exceptionpenalty 154
6.3.421 \exhyphenchar 154
6.3.422 \exhyphenpenalty 154
6.3.423 \expand 154
6.3.424 \expandactive 155
6.3.425 \expandafter 155
6.3.426 \expandafterpars 155
6.3.427 \expandafterspaces 155
6.3.428 \expandcstoken 156
6.3.429 \expanded 157
6.3.430 \expandedafter 157
6.3.431 \expandeddetokenize 157
6.3.432 \expandedendless 158
6.3.433 \expandedloop 158
6.3.434 \expandedrepeat 158
6.3.435 \expandparameter 158
6.3.436 \expandtoken 158
6.3.437 \expandtoks 159
6.3.438 \explicitdiscretionary 160
6.3.439 \explicithyphenpenalty 160
6.3.440 \explicititaliccorrection .. 160
6.3.441 \explicitspace 160
6.3.442 \fam 160
6.3.443 \fi 160
6.3.444 \finalhyphendemerits 160
6.3.445 \firstmark 161
6.3.446 \firstmarks 161
6.3.447 \firstvalidlanguage 161
6.3.448 \fitnessclasses 161
6.3.449 \float 161
6.3.450 \floatdef 162
6.3.451 \floatexpr 162
6.3.452 \floatingpenalty 162
6.3.453 \flushmarks 163
6.3.454 \flushmvl 163
6.3.455 \font 163
6.3.456 \fontcharba 163
6.3.457 \fontchardp 163
6.3.458 \fontcharht 163
6.3.459 \fontcharic 163
6.3.460 \fontcharlb 163
6.3.461 \fontcharlt 164
6.3.462 \fontcharrb 164
6.3.463 \fontcharrt 164
6.3.464 \fontcharta 164
6.3.465 \fontcharwd 164
6.3.466 \fontdimen 164
6.3.467 \fontid 164
6.3.468 \fontidentifier 165
6.3.469 \fontmathcontrol 165
6.3.470 \fontname 165
6.3.471 \fontspecdef 165
6.3.472 \fontspecid 166
6.3.473 \fontspecifiedname 166
6.3.474 \fontspecifiedsize 167
6.3.475 \fontspecscale 167
6.3.476 \fontspecslant 167
6.3.477 \fontspecweight 167
6.3.478 \fontspecxscale 167
6.3.479 \fontspecyscale 167
6.3.480 \fonttextcontrol 167
6.3.481 \forcedleftcorrection 168
6.3.482 \forcedrightcorrection 168
6.3.483 \formatname 168
6.3.484 \frozen 168
6.3.485 \futurecsname 168
6.3.486 \futuredef 168
6.3.487 \futureexpand 169
6.3.488 \futureexpandis 169
6.3.489 \futureexpandisap 170
6.3.490 \futurelet 170
6.3.491 \gdef 170
6.3.492 \gdefcsname 170
6.3.493 \givenmathstyle 170
6.3.494 \gleaders 170
6.3.495 \glet 171
6.3.496 \gletcsname 171
6.3.497 \glettonothing 172
6.3.498 \global 172
6.3.499 \globaldefs 172
6.3.500 \glueexpr 172
6.3.501 \glueshrink 172
6.3.502 \glueshrinkorder 172
6.3.503 \gluespecdef 172
6.3.504 \gluestretch 172
6.3.505 \gluestretchorder 173
6.3.506 \gluetomu 173
6.3.507 \glyph 173
6.3.508 \glyphdatafield 173

6.3.509 \glyphoptions 173
6.3.510 \glyphscale 174
6.3.511 \glyphscriptfield 174
6.3.512 \glyphscriptscale 174
6.3.513 \glyphscriptscriptscale 174
6.3.514 \glyphslant 174
6.3.515 \glyphstatefield 174
6.3.516 \glyphtextscale 174
6.3.517 \glyphweight 174
6.3.518 \glyphxoffset 174
6.3.519 \glyphxscale 175
6.3.520 \glyphxscaled 175
6.3.521 \glyphyoffset 175
6.3.522 \glyphyscale 175
6.3.523 \glyphyscaled 175
6.3.524 \gtoksapp 175
6.3.525 \gtokspre 175
6.3.526 \halign 175
6.3.527 \hangafter 177
6.3.528 \hangindent 177
6.3.529 \hbadness 177
6.3.530 \hbadnessmode 177
6.3.531 \hbox 177
6.3.532 \hccode 177
6.3.533 \hfil 178
6.3.534 \hfill 178
6.3.535 \hfilneg 178
6.3.536 \hfuzz 178
6.3.537 \hjcode 178
6.3.538 \hkern 178
6.3.539 \hmcode 178
6.3.540 \holdinginserts 179
6.3.541 \holdingmigrations 179
6.3.542 \hpack 179
6.3.543 \hpenalty 179
6.3.544 \hrule 179
6.3.545 \hsize 180
6.3.546 \hskip 180
6.3.547 \hss 180
6.3.548 \ht 181
6.3.549 \hyphenation 181
6.3.550 \hyphenationmin 181
6.3.551 \hyphenationmode 181
6.3.552 \hyphenchar 181
6.3.553 \hyphenpenalty 181
6.3.554 \if 181
6.3.555 \ifabsdim 182
6.3.556 \ifabsfloat 182
6.3.557 \ifabsnum 182
6.3.558 \ifarguments 183
6.3.559 \ifboolean 183
6.3.560 \ifcase 183
6.3.561 \ifcat 183
6.3.562 \ifchkdim 184
6.3.563 \ifchkdimension 184
6.3.564 \ifchkdimexpr 184
6.3.565 \ifchknum 184
6.3.566 \ifchknumber 184
6.3.567 \ifchknumexpr 185
6.3.568 \ifcmpdim 185
6.3.569 \ifcmpnum 185
6.3.570 \ifcondition 185
6.3.571 \ifcramped 186
6.3.572 \ifcsname 186
6.3.573 \ifcstok 186
6.3.574 \ifdefined 187
6.3.575 \ifdim 187
6.3.576 \ifdimexpression 187
6.3.577 \ifdimval 187
6.3.578 \ifempty 188
6.3.579 \iffalse 188
6.3.580 \ifflags 188
6.3.581 \iffloat 189
6.3.582 \iffontchar 189
6.3.583 \ifhaschar 189
6.3.584 \ifhastok 189
6.3.585 \ifhastoks 189
6.3.586 \ifhasxtoks 190
6.3.587 \ifhbox 190
6.3.588 \ifhmode 190
6.3.589 \ifinalignment 190
6.3.590 \ifincsname 191
6.3.591 \ifinner 191
6.3.592 \ifinsert 191
6.3.593 \ifintervaldim 191
6.3.594 \ifintervalfloat 191
6.3.595 \ifintervalnum 191
6.3.596 \iflastnamedcs 191
6.3.597 \iflist 192
6.3.598 \ifmathparameter 192
6.3.599 \ifmathstyle 192
6.3.600 \ifmmode 192
6.3.601 \ifnum 192
6.3.602 \ifnumexpression 193
6.3.603 \ifnumval 193
6.3.604 \ifodd 193
6.3.605 \ifparameter 194
6.3.606 \ifparameters 194

6.3.607 \ifrelax 194
6.3.608 \ifspecification 194
6.3.609 \iftok 194
6.3.610 \iftrue 195
6.3.611 \ifvbox 195
6.3.612 \ifvmode 195
6.3.613 \ifvoid 195
6.3.614 \ifx 195
6.3.615 \ifzerodim 196
6.3.616 \ifzerofloat 196
6.3.617 \ifzeronum 196
6.3.618 \ignorearguments 196
6.3.619 \ignoredepthcriterion 196
6.3.620 \ignorenestedupto 197
6.3.621 \ignorepars 197
6.3.622 \ignorerest 197
6.3.623 \ignorespaces 198
6.3.624 \ignoretokens 198
6.3.625 \ignoreupto 198
6.3.626 \immediate 198
6.3.627 \immutable 198
6.3.628 \indent 198
6.3.629 \indexedsubprescript 198
6.3.630 \indexedsubscript 199
6.3.631 \indexedsuperprescript 199
6.3.632 \indexedsuperscript 199
6.3.633 \indexofcharacter 199
6.3.634 \indexofregister 200
6.3.635 \inherited 200
6.3.636 \initcatcodetable 200
6.3.637 \initialpageskip 200
6.3.638 \initialtopskip 201
6.3.639 \input 201
6.3.640 \inputlineno 201
6.3.641 \insert 201
6.3.642 \insertboundary 201
6.3.643 \insertbox 201
6.3.644 \insertcategory 201
6.3.645 \insertcopy 201
6.3.646 \insertdepth 202
6.3.647 \insertdirection 202
6.3.648 \insertdistance 202
6.3.649 \insertheight 202
6.3.650 \insertheights 202
6.3.651 \insertlimit 202
6.3.652 \insertlinedepth 202
6.3.653 \insertlineheight 202
6.3.654 \insertmaxdepth 202
6.3.655 \insertmaxplaced 202
6.3.656 \insertmode 203
6.3.657 \insertmultiplier 203
6.3.658 \insertonlycount 203
6.3.659 \insertoptions 203
6.3.660 \insertpenalties 203
6.3.661 \insertpenalty 203
6.3.662 \insertplaced 203
6.3.663 \insertprogress 203
6.3.664 \insertshrink 203
6.3.665 \insertstorage 204
6.3.666 \insertstoring 204
6.3.667 \insertstretch 204
6.3.668 \insertunbox 204
6.3.669 \insertuncopy 204
6.3.670 \insertwidth 204
6.3.671 \instance 204
6.3.672 \integerdef 204
6.3.673 \interactionmode 205
6.3.674 \interlinepenalties 205
6.3.675 \interlinepenalty 205
6.3.676 \jobname 205
6.3.677 \justificationskip 205
6.3.678 \kern 205
6.3.679 \language 205
6.3.680 \lastalignmentcolumn 206
6.3.681 \lastalignmentrow 206
6.3.682 \lastarguments 206
6.3.683 \lastatomclass 206
6.3.684 \lastboundary 206
6.3.685 \lastbox 206
6.3.686 \lastchkdimension 206
6.3.687 \lastchknumber 207
6.3.688 \lastkern 207
6.3.689 \lastleftclass 207
6.3.690 \lastlinefit 207
6.3.691 \lastloopiterator 207
6.3.692 \lastnamedcs 207
6.3.693 \lastnodesubtype 208
6.3.694 \lastnodetype 208
6.3.695 \lastpageextra 208
6.3.696 \lastparcontext 208
6.3.697 \lastpartrigger 208
6.3.698 \lastpenalty 208
6.3.699 \lastrightclass 208
6.3.700 \lastskip 208
6.3.701 \lccode 208
6.3.702 \leaders 209
6.3.703 \left 209
6.3.704 \lefthyphenmin 209

6.3.705 \leftmarginkern 209
6.3.706 \leftskip 209
6.3.707 \lefttwindemerits 209
6.3.708 \leqno 209
6.3.709 \let 209
6.3.710 \letcharcode 209
6.3.711 \letcsname 210
6.3.712 \letfrozen 210
6.3.713 \letmathatomrule 210
6.3.714 \letmathparent 210
6.3.715 \letmathspacing 210
6.3.716 \letprotected 211
6.3.717 \lettolastnamedcs 211
6.3.718 \lettonothing 211
6.3.719 \limits 211
6.3.720 \linebreakchecks 212
6.3.721 \linebreakoptional 212
6.3.722 \linebreakpasses 212
6.3.723 \linedirection 212
6.3.724 \linepenalty 212
6.3.725 \lineskip 212
6.3.726 \lineskiplimit 212
6.3.727 \linesnapping 213
6.3.728 \linesnappingdpfactor 213
6.3.729 \linesnappinghtfactor 213
6.3.730 \linesnappingtolerance 213
6.3.731 \localbreakpar 213
6.3.732 \localbrokenpenalty 213
6.3.733 \localcontrol 214
6.3.734 \localcontrolled 214
6.3.735 \localcontrolledendless 214
6.3.736 \localcontrolledloop 215
6.3.737 \localcontrolledrepeat 215
6.3.738 \localhangafter 215
6.3.739 \localhangindent 215
6.3.740 \localinterlinepenalty 216
6.3.741 \localleftbox 216
6.3.742 \localleftboxbox 216
6.3.743 \localmiddlebox 216
6.3.744 \localmiddleboxbox 216
6.3.745 \localpretolerance 216
6.3.746 \localrightbox 216
6.3.747 \localrightboxbox 216
6.3.748 \localtolerance 216
6.3.749 \long 216
6.3.750 \looseness 217
6.3.751 \lower 217
6.3.752 \lowercase 217
6.3.753 \lpcode 217
6.3.754 \luaboundary 217
6.3.755 \luabytecode 217
6.3.756 \luabytecodecall 217
6.3.757 \luacopyinputnodes 218
6.3.758 \luadef 218
6.3.759 \luaescapestring 218
6.3.760 \luafunction 219
6.3.761 \luafunctioncall 219
6.3.762 \luametatexmajorversion 219
6.3.763 \luametatexminorversion 219
6.3.764 \luametatexrelease 219
6.3.765 \luatexbanner 219
6.3.766 \luametatexversion 219
6.3.767 \mark 219
6.3.768 \marks 220
6.3.769 \mathaccent 220
6.3.770 \mathatom 220
6.3.771 \mathatomglue 220
6.3.772 \mathatomskip 220
6.3.773 \mathbackwardpenalties 220
6.3.774 \mathbeginclass 220
6.3.775 \mathbin 221
6.3.776 \mathboundary 221
6.3.777 \mathchar 221
6.3.778 \mathcharclass 221
6.3.779 \mathchardef 221
6.3.780 \mathcharfam 221
6.3.781 \mathcharslot 221
6.3.782 \mathcheckfencesmode 222
6.3.783 \mathchoice 222
6.3.784 \mathclass 222
6.3.785 \mathclose 223
6.3.786 \mathcode 223
6.3.787 \mathdictgroup 223
6.3.788 \mathdictionary 223
6.3.789 \mathdictproperties 223
6.3.790 \mathdirection 223
6.3.791 \mathdiscretionary 223
6.3.792 \mathdisplaymode 224
6.3.793 \mathdisplaypenaltyfactor .. 224
6.3.794 \mathdisplayskipmode 224
6.3.795 \mathdoublescriptmode 224
6.3.796 \mathendclass 224
6.3.797 \matheqnogapstep 225
6.3.798 \mathfontcontrol 225
6.3.799 \mathforwardpenalties 225
6.3.800 \mathgluemode 226
6.3.801 \mathgroupingmode 226
6.3.802 \mathinlinepenaltyfactor 226

6.3.803 \mathinner 226
6.3.804 \mathleftclass 226
6.3.805 \mathlimitsmode 226
6.3.806 \mathmainstyle 227
6.3.807 \mathop 228
6.3.808 \mathopen 228
6.3.809 \mathoptions 228
6.3.810 \mathord 228
6.3.811 \mathparentstyle 228
6.3.812 \mathpenaltiesmode 229
6.3.813 \mathpretolerance 229
6.3.814 \mathpunct 229
6.3.815 \mathrel 229
6.3.816 \mathrightclass 229
6.3.817 \mathrulesfam 229
6.3.818 \mathrulesmode 229
6.3.819 \mathscale 230
6.3.820 \mathscriptsmode 230
6.3.821 \mathslackmode 230
6.3.822 \mathsnapping 230
6.3.823 \mathspacingmode 230
6.3.824 \mathstack 230
6.3.825 \mathstackstyle 231
6.3.826 \mathstyle 231
6.3.827 \mathstylefontid 231
6.3.828 \mathsurround 231
6.3.829 \mathsurroundmode 231
6.3.830 \mathsurroundskip 232
6.3.831 \maththreshold 232
6.3.832 \mathtolerance 232
6.3.833 \maxdeadcycles 232
6.3.834 \maxdepth 232
6.3.835 \meaning 232
6.3.836 \meaningasis 232
6.3.837 \meaningful 232
6.3.838 \meaningfull 233
6.3.839 \meaningles 233
6.3.840 \meaningless 233
6.3.841 \medmuskip 233
6.3.842 \message 233
6.3.843 \middle 233
6.3.844 \mkern 233
6.3.845 \month 233
6.3.846 \moveleft 234
6.3.847 \moveright 234
6.3.848 \mskip 234
6.3.849 \muexpr 234
6.3.850 \mugluespecdef 234
6.3.851 \multiply 234
6.3.852 \multiplyby 234
6.3.853 \muskip 234
6.3.854 \muskipdef 234
6.3.855 \mutable 234
6.3.856 \mutoglue 235
6.3.857 \mvlcurrentlyactive 235
6.3.858 \nestedloopiterator 235
6.3.859 \newlinechar 235
6.3.860 \noalign 235
6.3.861 \noaligned 235
6.3.862 \noarguments 236
6.3.863 \noatomruling 236
6.3.864 \noboundary 236
6.3.865 \noexpand 236
6.3.866 \nohrule 236
6.3.867 \noindent 236
6.3.868 \nolimits 236
6.3.869 \nomathchar 237
6.3.870 \nonscript 237
6.3.871 \nonstopmode 237
6.3.872 \nooutputboxerror 237
6.3.873 \norelax 237
6.3.874 \normalizelinemode 237
6.3.875 \normalizeparmode 238
6.3.876 \noscript 238
6.3.877 \nospaces 238
6.3.878 \nosubprescript 238
6.3.879 \nosubscript 239
6.3.880 \nosuperprescript 239
6.3.881 \nosuperscript 239
6.3.882 \notexpanded 239
6.3.883 \novrule 239
6.3.884 \nulldelimiterspace 239
6.3.885 \nullfont 239
6.3.886 \number 239
6.3.887 \numericscale 240
6.3.888 \numericscaled 240
6.3.889 \numexperimental 240
6.3.890 \numexpr 240
6.3.891 \numexpression 241
6.3.892 \omit 242
6.3.893 \optionalboundary 242
6.3.894 \optionspar 242
6.3.895 \or 242
6.3.896 \orelse 242
6.3.897 \orphanlinefactors 244
6.3.898 \orphanpenalties 244
6.3.899 \orunless 244
6.3.900 \outer 244

6.3.901 \output 244
6.3.902 \outputbox 245
6.3.903 \outputpenalty 245
6.3.904 \over 245
6.3.905 \overfullrule 245
6.3.906 \overline 245
6.3.907 \overloaded 246
6.3.908 \overloadmode 246
6.3.909 \overshoot 246
6.3.910 \overwithdelims 247
6.3.911 \pageboundary 247
6.3.912 \pagedepth 247
6.3.913 \pagediscards 247
6.3.914 \pageexcess 247
6.3.915 \pageextragoal 247
6.3.916 \pagefilllstretch 247
6.3.917 \pagefillstretch 248
6.3.918 \pagefilstretch 248
6.3.919 \pagefistretch 248
6.3.920 \pagegoal 248
6.3.921 \pagelastdepth 248
6.3.922 \pagelastfilllstretch 248
6.3.923 \pagelastfillstretch 248
6.3.924 \pagelastfilstretch 248
6.3.925 \pagelastfistretch 248
6.3.926 \pagelastheight 248
6.3.927 \pagelastshrink 248
6.3.928 \pagelaststretch 249
6.3.929 \pageshrink 249
6.3.930 \pagestretch 249
6.3.931 \pagetotal 249
6.3.932 \pagevsize 249
6.3.933 \par 249
6.3.934 \parametercount 249
6.3.935 \parameterdef 249
6.3.936 \parameterindex 250
6.3.937 \parametermark 250
6.3.938 \parametermode 250
6.3.939 \parattribute 250
6.3.940 \pardirection 250
6.3.941 \parfillleftskip 250
6.3.942 \parfillmode 250
6.3.943 \parfillrightskip 250
6.3.944 \parfillskip 250
6.3.945 \parindent 251
6.3.946 \parinitleftskip 251
6.3.947 \parinitrightskip 251
6.3.948 \paroptions 251
6.3.949 \parpasses 251
6.3.950 \parpassesexception 251
6.3.951 \parshape 251
6.3.952 \parshapedimen 251
6.3.953 \parshapeindent 251
6.3.954 \parshapelength 251
6.3.955 \parshapewidth 251
6.3.956 \parskip 252
6.3.957 \patterns 252
6.3.958 \pausing 252
6.3.959 \penalty 252
6.3.960 \permanent 252
6.3.961 \pettymuskip 252
6.3.962 \positdef 252
6.3.963 \postdisplaypenalty 253
6.3.964 \postexhyphenchar 253
6.3.965 \posthyphenchar 253
6.3.966 \postinlinepenalty 253
6.3.967 \postshortinlinepenalty 253
6.3.968 \prebinoppenalty 253
6.3.969 \predisplaydirection 253
6.3.970 \predisplaygapfactor 253
6.3.971 \predisplaypenalty 253
6.3.972 \predisplaysize 254
6.3.973 \preexhyphenchar 254
6.3.974 \prehyphenchar 254
6.3.975 \preinlinepenalty 254
6.3.976 \prerelpenalty 254
6.3.977 \prerollmvl 254
6.3.978 \preshortinlinepenalty 254
6.3.979 \pretolerance 254
6.3.980 \prevdepth 254
6.3.981 \prevgraf 254
6.3.982 \previousloopiterator 255
6.3.983 \primescript 255
6.3.984 \protected 255
6.3.985 \protecteddetokenize 255
6.3.986 \protectedexpandeddetokenize 255
6.3.987 \protrudechars 256
6.3.988 \protrusionboundary 256
6.3.989 \pxdimen 256
6.3.990 \quitloop 256
6.3.991 \quitloopnow 256
6.3.992 \quitvmode 256
6.3.993 \radical 256
6.3.994 \raise 256
6.3.995 \rdivide 257
6.3.996 \rdivideby 257
6.3.997 \realign 257

6.3.998 \relax 257
6.3.999 \relpenalty 258
6.3.1000 \resetlocalboxes 258
6.3.1001 \resetmathspacing 258
6.3.1002 \restorecatcodetable 258
6.3.1003 \retained 260
6.3.1004 \retokenized 261
6.3.1005 \right 262
6.3.1006 \righthyphenmin 262
6.3.1007 \rightmarginkern 262
6.3.1008 \rightskip 262
6.3.1009 \righttwindemerits 262
6.3.1010 \romannumeral 262
6.3.1011 \romannumerical 262
6.3.1012 \rpcode 262
6.3.1013 \savecatcodetable 262
6.3.1014 \savinghyphcodes 263
6.3.1015 \savingvdiscards 263
6.3.1016 \scaledemwidth 263
6.3.1017 \scaledexheight 263
6.3.1018 \scaledextraspace 263
6.3.1019 \scaledfontcharba 263
6.3.1020 \scaledfontchardp 263
6.3.1021 \scaledfontcharht 263
6.3.1022 \scaledfontcharic 263
6.3.1023 \scaledfontcharlb 263
6.3.1024 \scaledfontcharlt 264
6.3.1025 \scaledfontcharrb 264
6.3.1026 \scaledfontcharrt 264
6.3.1027 \scaledfontcharta 264
6.3.1028 \scaledfontcharwd 264
6.3.1029 \scaledfontdimen 264
6.3.1030 \scaledfontemwidth 264
6.3.1031 \scaledfontexheight 264
6.3.1032 \scaledfontextraspace 264
6.3.1033 \scaledfontinterwordshrink . 265
6.3.1034 \scaledfontinterwordspace .. 265
6.3.1035 \scaledfontinterwordstretch 265
6.3.1036 \scaledfontslantperpoint 265
6.3.1037 \scaledinterwordshrink 265
6.3.1038 \scaledinterwordspace 265
6.3.1039 \scaledinterwordstretch 265
6.3.1040 \scaledmathaxis 265
6.3.1041 \scaledmathemwidth 265
6.3.1042 \scaledmathexheight 265
6.3.1043 \scaledmathstyle 265
6.3.1044 \scaledslantperpoint 266
6.3.1045 \scantextokens 266
6.3.1046 \scantokens 266
6.3.1047 \scriptfont 266
6.3.1048 \scriptscriptfont 266
6.3.1049 \scriptscriptstyle 266
6.3.1050 \scriptspace 266
6.3.1051 \scriptspaceafterfactor 267
6.3.1052 \scriptspacebeforefactor 267
6.3.1053 \scriptspacebetweenfactor .. 267
6.3.1054 \scriptstyle 267
6.3.1055 \scrollmode 267
6.3.1056 \semiexpand 267
6.3.1057 \semiexpanded 267
6.3.1058 \semiprotected 267
6.3.1059 \setbox 268
6.3.1060 \setdefaultmathcodes 268
6.3.1061 \setfontid 268
6.3.1062 \setlanguage 268
6.3.1063 \setmathatomrule 268
6.3.1064 \setmathdisplaypostpenalty . 269
6.3.1065 \setmathdisplayprepenalty .. 269
6.3.1066 \setmathignore 269
6.3.1067 \setmathoptions 269
6.3.1068 \setmathpostpenalty 270
6.3.1069 \setmathprepenalty 270
6.3.1070 \setmathspacing 270
6.3.1071 \sfcode 270
6.3.1072 \shapingpenaltiesmode 270
6.3.1073 \shapingpenalty 271
6.3.1074 \shipout 271
6.3.1075 \shortinlinemaththreshold .. 271
6.3.1076 \shortinlineorphanpenalty .. 271
6.3.1077 \show 271
6.3.1078 \showbox 271
6.3.1079 \showboxbreadth 271
6.3.1080 \showboxdepth 271
6.3.1081 \showcodestack 271
6.3.1082 \showgroups 272
6.3.1083 \showifs 272
6.3.1084 \showlists 272
6.3.1085 \shownodedetails 272
6.3.1086 \showstack 272
6.3.1087 \showthe 273
6.3.1088 \showtokens 273
6.3.1089 \singlelinepenalty 273
6.3.1090 \skewchar 273
6.3.1091 \skip 273
6.3.1092 \skipdef 274
6.3.1093 \snapshotpar 274
6.3.1094 \spacechar 274
6.3.1095 \spacefactor 274

6.3.1096 \spacefactormode 275
6.3.1097 \spacefactoroverload 275
6.3.1098 \spacefactorshrinklimit 275
6.3.1099 \spacefactorstretchlimit 275
6.3.1100 \spaceskip 275
6.3.1101 \spaceskipfactor 276
6.3.1102 \spaceskipmode 276
6.3.1103 \span 276
6.3.1104 \spcode 276
6.3.1105 \specificationcount 276
6.3.1106 \specificationdef 277
6.3.1107 \specificationfirst 277
6.3.1108 \specificationoptions 277
6.3.1109 \specificationsecond 277
6.3.1110 \splitbotmark 277
6.3.1111 \splitbotmarks 277
6.3.1112 \splitdiscards 277
6.3.1113 \splitextraheight 278
6.3.1114 \splitfirstmark 278
6.3.1115 \splitfirstmarks 278
6.3.1116 \splitlastdepth 278
6.3.1117 \splitlastheight 278
6.3.1118 \splitlastshrink 278
6.3.1119 \splitlaststretch 278
6.3.1120 \splitmaxdepth 278
6.3.1121 \splittopskip 278
6.3.1122 \srule 278
6.3.1123 \string 278
6.3.1124 \subprescript 279
6.3.1125 \subscript 279
6.3.1126 \superprescript 279
6.3.1127 \superscript 279
6.3.1128 \supmarkmode 279
6.3.1129 \swapcsvalues 279
6.3.1130 \tabsize 280
6.3.1131 \tabskip 280
6.3.1132 \textdirection 281
6.3.1133 \textfont 281
6.3.1134 \textspacing 281
6.3.1135 \textspacingfactor 281
6.3.1136 \textspacingpenalty 281
6.3.1137 \textstyle 281
6.3.1138 \the 281
6.3.1139 \thewithoutunit 281
6.3.1140 \thickmuskip 282
6.3.1141 \thinmuskip 282
6.3.1142 \time 282
6.3.1143 \tinymuskip 282
6.3.1144 \tocharacter 282
6.3.1145 \toddlerpenalties 282
6.3.1146 \todimension 282
6.3.1147 \tohexadecimal 282
6.3.1148 \tointeger 282
6.3.1149 \tokenized 283
6.3.1150 \toks 283
6.3.1151 \toksapp 283
6.3.1152 \toksdef 283
6.3.1153 \tokspre 284
6.3.1154 \tolerance 284
6.3.1155 \tolerant 284
6.3.1156 \tolimitedfloat 284
6.3.1157 \tomathstyle 286
6.3.1158 \topmark 286
6.3.1159 \topmarks 286
6.3.1160 \topskip 286
6.3.1161 \toscaled 286
6.3.1162 \tosparsedimension 286
6.3.1163 \tosparsescaled 286
6.3.1164 \tpack 286
6.3.1165 \tracingadjusts 286
6.3.1166 \tracingalignments 286
6.3.1167 \tracingassigns 287
6.3.1168 \tracingbalancing 287
6.3.1169 \tracingcommands 287
6.3.1170 \tracingexpressions 287
6.3.1171 \tracingfitness 287
6.3.1172 \tracingfullboxes 287
6.3.1173 \tracinggroups 287
6.3.1174 \tracinghyphenation 287
6.3.1175 \tracingifs 287
6.3.1176 \tracinginserts 287
6.3.1177 \tracinglevels 287
6.3.1178 \tracinglists 288
6.3.1179 \tracingloners 288
6.3.1180 \tracinglooseness 288
6.3.1181 \tracinglostchars 288
6.3.1182 \tracingmacros 288
6.3.1183 \tracingmarks 288
6.3.1184 \tracingmath 288
6.3.1185 \tracingmvl 288
6.3.1186 \tracingnesting 288
6.3.1187 \tracingnodes 289
6.3.1188 \tracingonline 289
6.3.1189 \tracingorphans 289
6.3.1190 \tracingoutput 289
6.3.1191 \tracingpages 289
6.3.1192 \tracingparagraphs 289
6.3.1193 \tracingpasses 289

6.3.1194 \tracingpenalties 289
6.3.1195 \tracingraggedness 289
6.3.1196 \tracingrestores 289
6.3.1197 \tracingsnapping 290
6.3.1198 \tracingstats 290
6.3.1199 \tracingtoddlers 290
6.3.1200 \tsplit 290
6.3.1201 \uccode 290
6.3.1202 \uchyph 290
6.3.1203 \uleaders 290
6.3.1204 \unboundary 292
6.3.1205 \undent 292
6.3.1206 \underline 292
6.3.1207 \unexpanded 292
6.3.1208 \unexpandedendless 293
6.3.1209 \unexpandedloop 293
6.3.1210 \unexpandedrepeat 294
6.3.1211 \unhbox 294
6.3.1212 \unhcopy 294
6.3.1213 \unhpack 294
6.3.1214 \unkern 294
6.3.1215 \unless 294
6.3.1216 \unletfrozen 294
6.3.1217 \unletprotected 294
6.3.1218 \unpenalty 295
6.3.1219 \unskip 295
6.3.1220 \untraced 295
6.3.1221 \unvbox 295
6.3.1222 \unvcopy 296
6.3.1223 \unvpack 296
6.3.1224 \uppercase 296
6.3.1225 \vadjust 296
6.3.1226 \valign 296
6.3.1227 \variablefam 296
6.3.1228 \vbadness 296
6.3.1229 \vbadnessmode 296
6.3.1230 \vbalance 296
6.3.1231 \vbalancedbox 297
6.3.1232 \vbalanceddeinsert 297
6.3.1233 \vbalanceddiscard 297
6.3.1234 \vbalancedinsert 298
6.3.1235 \vbalancedreinsert 298
6.3.1236 \vbalancedtop 298
6.3.1237 \vbox 298
6.3.1238 \vcenter 298
6.3.1239 \vfil 298
6.3.1240 \vfill 298
6.3.1241 \vfilneg 298
6.3.1242 \vfuzz 299
6.3.1243 \virtualhrule 299
6.3.1244 \virtualvrule 299
6.3.1245 \vkern 299
6.3.1246 \vpack 299
6.3.1247 \vpenalty 299
6.3.1248 \vrule 299
6.3.1249 \vsize 299
6.3.1250 \vskip 299
6.3.1251 \vsplit 299
6.3.1252 \vsplitchecks 300
6.3.1253 \vss 300
6.3.1254 \vtop 300
6.3.1255 \wd 300
6.3.1256 \widowpenalties 300
6.3.1257 \widowpenalty 300
6.3.1258 \wordboundary 300
6.3.1259 \wrapuppar 300
6.3.1260 \xdef 300
6.3.1261 \xdefcsname 301
6.3.1262 \xleaders 301
6.3.1263 \xspaceskip 301
6.3.1264 \xtoks 301
6.3.1265 \xtoksapp 301
6.3.1266 \xtokspre 301
6.3.1267 \year 301

In this document the section titles that discuss the original TEX and e-TEX primitives have a different color those explaining the LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX primitives.

Primitives that extend typesetting related functionality, provide control over subsystems (like math), allocate additional data types and resources, deal with fonts and languages, manipulate boxes and glyphs, etc. are hardly discussed here, only mentioned. Math for instance is a topic of its own. In this document we concentrate on the programming aspects.

Most of the new primitives are discussed in specific manuals and often also original primitives are covered there but the best explanations of the traditional primitives can be found in The TEXbook by Donald Knuth and TEX by Topic from Victor Eijkhout. I see no need to try to improve on those.

6.2 Rationale

Some words about the why and how it came. One of the early adopters of ConTEXt was Taco Hoekwater and we spent numerous trips to TEX meetings all over the globe. He was also the only one I knew who had read the TEX sources. Because ConTEXt has always been on the edge of what is possible and at that time we both used it for rather advanced rendering, we also ran into the limitations. I'm not talking of TEX features here. Naturally old school TEX is not really geared for dealing with images of all kind, colors in all kind of color spaces, highly interactive documents, input methods like xml, etc. The nice thing is that it offers some escapes, like specials and writes and later execution of programs that opened up lots of possibilities, so in practice there were no real limitations to what one could do. But coming up with a consistent and extensible (multi lingual) user interface was non trivial, because it had an impact in memory usage and performance. A lot could be done given some programming, as ConTEXt MkII proves, but it was not always pretty under the hood. The move to LuaTEX and MkIV transferred some action to Lua, and because LuaTEX effectively was a ConTEXt related project, we could easily keep them in sync.

Our traveling together, meeting several times per year, and eventually email and intense LuaTEX developments (lots of Skype sessions) for a couple of years, gave us enough opportunity to discuss all kind of nice features not present in the engine. The previous century we discussed lots of them, rejected some, stayed with others, and I admit that forgot about most of the arguments already. Some that we did was already explored in `eetex`, some of those ended up in LuaTEX, and eventually what we have in LuaMetaTEX can been seen as the result of years of programming in TEX, improving macros, getting more performance and efficiency out of existing ConTEXt code and inspiration that we got out of the ConTEXt community, a demanding lot, always willing to experiment with us.

Once I decided to work on LuaMetaTEX and bind its source to the ConTEXt distribution so that we can be sure that it won't get messed up and might interfere with the ConTEXt expectations, some more primitives saw their way into it. It is very easy to come up with all kind of bells and whistles but it is equally easy to hurt performance of an engine and what might go unnoticed in simple tests can really affect a macro package that depends on stability. So, what I did was mostly looking at the ConTEXt code and wondering how to make some of the low level macros look more natural, also because I know that there are users who look into these sources. We spend a lot of time making them look consistent and nice and the nicer the better. Getting a better performance was seldom an argument because much is already as fast as can be so there is not that much to gain, but less clutter in tracing was an argument for some new primitives. Also, the fact that we soon might need to fall back on our phones to use TEX a smaller memory footprint and less byte shuffling also was a consideration. The LuaMetaTEX memory footprint is somewhat smaller than the LuaTEX footprint. By binding LuaMetaTEX to ConTEXt we can also guarantee that the combinations works as expected.

I'm aware of the fact that ConTEXt is in a somewhat unique position. First of all it has always been kind of cutting edge so its users are willing to experiment. There are users who immediately update and run tests, so bugs can and will be fixed fast. Already for a long time the community has an convenient infrastructure for updating and the build farm for generating binaries (also for other engines) is running smoothly.

Then there is the ConTEXt user interface that is quite consistent and permits extensions with staying backward compatible. Sometimes users run into old manuals or examples and then complain that ConTEXt is not compatible but that then involves obsolete technology: we no longer need font and input encodings and font definitions are different for OpenType fonts. We always had an abstract backend model, but nowadays pdf is kind of dominant and drives a lot of expectations. So, some of the MkII commands are gone and MkIV has some more. Also, as MetaPost evolved that department

in ConTEXt also evolved. Think of it like cars: soon all are electric so one cannot expect a hole to poor in some fluid but gets a (often incompatible) plug instead. And buttons became touch panels. There is no need to use much force to steer or brake. Navigation is different, as are many controls. And do we need to steer ourselves a decade from now?

So, just look at TEX and ConTEXt in the same way. A system from the nineties in the previous century differs from one three decades later. Demands differ, input differs, resources change, editing and processing moves on, and so on. Manuals, although still being written are seldom read from cover to cover because online searching replaced them. And who buys books about programming? So LuaMetaTEX, while still being TEX also moves on, as do the way we do our low level coding. This makes sense because the original TEX ecosystem was not made with a huge and complex macro package in mind, that just happened. An author was supposed to make a style for each document. An often used argument for using another macro package over ConTEXt was that the later evolved and other macro packages would work the same forever and not change from the perspective of the user. In retrospect those arguments were somewhat strange because the world, computers, users etc. do change. Standards come and go, as do software politics and preferences. In many aspects the TEX community is not different from other large software projects, operating system wars, library devotees, programming language addicts, paradigm shifts. But, don't worry, if you don't like LuaMetaTEX and its new primitives, just forget about them. The other engines will be there forever and are a safe bet, although LuaTEX already stirred up the pot I guess. But keep in mind that new features in the latest greatest ConTEXt version will more and more rely on LuaMetaTEX being used; after all that is where it's made for. And this manual might help understand its users why, where and how the low level code differs between MkII, MkIV and LMTX.

Can we expect more new primitives than the ones introduced here? Given the amount of time I spent on experimenting and considering what made sense and what not, the answer probably is "no", or at least "not that much". As in the past no user ever requested the kind of primitives that were added, I don't expect users to come up with requests in the future either. Of course, those more closely related to ConTEXt development look at it from the other end. Because it's there where the low level action really is, demands might still evolve.

Basically there are wo areas where the engine can evolve: the programming part and the rendering. In this manual we focus on the programming and writing the manual sort of influences how details get filled in. Rendering in more complex because there heuristics and usage plays a more dominant role. Good examples are the math, par and page builder. They were extended and features were added over time but improved rendering came later. Not all extensions are critical, some are there (and got added) in order to write more readable code but there is only so much one can do in that area. Occasionally a feature pops up that is a side effect of a challenge. No matter what gets added it might not affect complexity too much and definitely not impact performance significantly!

6.3 Primitives

1 \<space>

This original TEX primitive is equivalent to the more verbose `\explicitspace`.

2 \-

This original TEX primitive is equivalent to the more verbose `\explicitdiscretionary`.

3 \/

This original TEX primitive is equivalent to the more verbose `\explicititaliccorrection`.

4 \Uabove

See `\Uover` for an introduction.

5 \Uabovewithdelims

See `\Uover` for an introduction.

6 \Uatop

See `\Uover` for an introduction.

7 \Uatopwithdelims

See `\Uover` for an introduction.

8 \Udelcode

This is the Unicode variant of `\delcode`: it sets or returns the small and large delimiter codes associated with a character.

9 \Udelimited

See `\Uradical` for an introduction.

10 \Udelimiter

This creates a delimiter from a Unicode math character specification. Unlike a fence made with `\Uleft`, it does not delimit a subformula.

11 \Udelimiterover

See `\Uradical` for an introduction.

12 \Udelimiterunder

See `\Uradical` for an introduction.

13 \Uhextensible

See `\Uradical` for an introduction.

14 \Uleft

This command is combined with \Umiddle, which is optional, and \Uright, which is mandate, although we are tolerant and do some checking. As in traditional TEX's \left and \right and e-TEX's \middle these fences bound a sub formula and adapt their heights. They are one of the reasons why rendering math is a multi-pass affair: we first have to calculate the inner sizes in order to decide on the outer fences.

Although it might nor be clear from the names, \Uoperator and \Uvextensible use the same fencing mechanism. All of these U commands accept options. Not all options are applied to every fence, at least not now. Some in the end makes little sense but were part of experiments, so we kept them.

attr	integer integer
auto	
axis	
bottom	dimension
class	integer
depth	dimension
exact	
factor	integer
height	dimension
leftclass	integer
limits	
noaxis	
nocheck	
nolimits	
nooverflow	
middle	
phantom	
rightclass	integer
scale	
single	
source	integer
symbolattr	integer integer
top	dimension
usecallback	
variant	integer
void	

In due time more explanation will be added here. The usage is straightforward so when no options are given we can do:

```
\im {\Uleft ( x \Umiddle | y \Uright )} and
\im {\Uleft ( x \Uright )} and
\im {\Umiddle |} and
\im {x \Uright )} and
\im {{\Uleft nocheck ( x }}
```

and get: $(x \mid y)$ and (x) and $\mid$ and $x)$ and $(x$.

15 \Umathaccent

This attaches one or more accent characters to a math nucleus. Options select top, bottom or overlay accents and control how they adapt to the nucleus.

```
attr          integer integer
base
bottom        [fixed] <char>
both          [fixed] <char> [fixed] <char>
center
class         integer
exact
fraction      integer
fixed         char
keepbase
nooverflow
overlay       [fixed] char
shrink
single
source        integer
stretch
symbolattr    integer integer
top           [fixed] char
usecallback
```

16 \Umathaccentbasedepth

This is the depth of the base used when placing an accent. It complements `\Umathaccentbaseheight`.

17 \Umathaccentbaseheight

This is the height of the base used when placing an accent.

18 \Umathaccentbottomovershoot

This is the amount by which a bottom accent can extend beyond the base.

19 \Umathaccentbottomshiftdown

This is the amount by which a bottom accent is shifted down.

20 \Umathaccentextendmargin

This is the margin added when an accent is automatically extended.

21 \Umathaccentsuperscriptdrop

This controls the drop applied to a superscript attached to an accented nucleus.

22 \Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent

This is the percentage used when positioning a superscript on an accented nucleus.

23 \Umathaccenttopovershoot

This is the amount by which a top accent can extend beyond the base.

24 \Umathaccenttopshiftup

This is the amount by which a top accent is shifted up.

25 \Umathaccentvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x67676767` or `SS SS' SS SS' SS SS' SS SS'`.

26 \Umathadapttoleft

This modifier makes the current math atom adapt its size to the atom on its left.

27 \Umathadapttoright

This modifier makes the current math atom adapt its size to the atom on its right.

28 \Umathaxis

This is the height of the math axis above the baseline.

29 \Umathbottomaccentvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x11335577` or `D' D' T' T' S' S' SS' SS'`.

30 \Umathchar

This inserts a math character specified by a Unicode math code.

31 \Umathchardef

This defines a control sequence as a math character specified by a Unicode math code.

32 \Umathcode

This sets or returns the Unicode math code of a character, including its class and family.

33 \Umathconnectoroverlapmin

This is the minimum overlap between parts of an extensible math construction.

34 \Umathdegreevariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x11335577` or `D' D' T' T' S' S' SS' SS'`. It is used for the degree in `\Uroot` and `\Urooted`.

35 \Umathdelimiterextendmargin

This is the margin added when a delimiter is automatically extended.

36 \Umathdelimiterovervariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x01234567` or `D D' T T' S S' SS SS'`. It is used by `\Udelimiterover`.

37 \Umathdelimiterpercent

This is the percentage used when sizing a delimiter for the current style.

38 \Umathdelimitershortfall

This is the amount by which a delimiter may fall short of the requested size.

39 \Umathdelimiterundervariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x01234567` or `D D' T T' S S' SS SS'`. It is used by `\Udelimiterunder`.

40 \Umathdenominatorvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x33557777` or `T' T' S' S' SS' SS' SS' SS'`.

41 \Umathdictdef

Like `\Umathchardef`, this defines a math character and also associates a math dictionary with it.

42 \Umathexheight

This is the ex-height used by the current math style.

43 \Umathextrasubpreshift

This adds a vertical shift to a sub-prescript.

44 \Umathextrasubprespace

This adds horizontal space before a sub-prescript.

45 \Umathextrasubshift

This adds a vertical shift to a subscript.

46 \Umathextrasubspace

This adds horizontal space before a subscript.

47 \Umathextrasuppreshift

This adds a vertical shift to a super-prescript.

48 \Umathextrasupprespace

This adds horizontal space before a super-prescript.

49 \Umathextrasupshift

This adds a vertical shift to a superscript.

50 \Umathextrasupspace

This adds horizontal space before a superscript.

51 \Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth

This is the depth of the flattened base used when placing a wide accent. It complements `\Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight`.

52 \Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight

This is the height of the flattened base used when placing a wide accent.

53 \Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown

This is the amount by which a wide bottom accent is shifted down.

54 \Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup

This is the amount by which a wide top accent is shifted up.

55 \Umathfractiondelsize

This is the minimum delimiter size used by a fraction with delimiters.

56 \Umathfractiondenomdown

This is the downward shift of the denominator in a fraction.

57 \Umathfractiondenomvgap

This is the vertical clearance between the denominator and the fraction rule.

58 \Umathfractionnumup

This is the upward shift of the numerator in a fraction.

59 \Umathfractionnumvgap

This is the vertical clearance between the numerator and the fraction rule.

60 \Umathfractionrule

This is the thickness of the rule in a fraction.

61 \Umathfractionvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x11335577` or `D' D' T' T' S' S' SS' SS'`.

62 \Umathhextensiblevariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x01234567` or `D D' T T' S S' SS SS'`. It is used by `\Uhextensible`.

63 \Umathlimitabovebgap

This is the baseline clearance for a limit placed above an operator.

64 \Umathlimitabovekern

This is the space reserved at the top of a limit placed above an operator.

65 \Umathlimitabovevgap

This is the vertical clearance for a limit placed above an operator.

66 \Umathlimitbelowbgap

This is the baseline clearance for a limit placed below an operator.

67 \Umathlimitbelowkern

This is the space reserved at the bottom of a limit placed below an operator.

68 \Umathlimitbelowvgap

This is the vertical clearance for a limit placed below an operator.

69 \Umathlimits

This modifier places scripts on top of and below the current operator.

70 \Umathnoaxis

This modifier prevents the current math atom from being aligned on the math axis.

71 \Umathnolimits

This modifier forces scripts on the current operator to remain as postscripts.

72 \Umathnolimitsubfactor

This is the multiplier used when shifting a subscript on an operator without limits.

73 \Umathnolimitsupfactor

This is the multiplier used when shifting a superscript on an operator without limits.

74 \Umathnumeratorvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x23456767` or `T T' S S' SS SS' SS SS'`.

75 \Umathopenupdepth

This modifier adds the given depth to the current math atom.

76 \Umathopenupheight

This modifier adds the given height to the current math atom.

77 \Umathoperatorsize

This is the minimum size of a large operator in display style.

78 \Umathoverbarkern

This is the vertical clearance above the rule in an overbar.

79 \Umathoverbarrule

This is the thickness of the rule in an overbar.

80 \Umathoverbarvgap

This is the vertical clearance below the rule in an overbar.

81 \Umathoverdelimiterbgap

This is the baseline clearance used by `\Uoverdelimiter` and `\Udelimiterover`.

82 \Umathoverdelimitervariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x45456767` or `S S' S S' SS SS' SS SS'`. It is used by `\Uoverdelimiter`.

83 \Umathoverdelimitervgap

This is the vertical clearance used by `\Uoverdelimiter` and `\Udelimiterover`.

84 \Umathoverlayaccentvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x11335577` or `D' D' T' T' S' S' SS' SS'`.

85 \Umathoverlinevariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x11335577` or `D' D' T' T' S' S' SS' SS'`.

86 \Umathphantom

This modifier discards the content of the current atom but retains its dimensions.

87 \Umathprimeraise

This is the percentage by which a prime is raised.

88 \Umathprimeraisecomposed

This is the percentage by which a composed prime is raised.

89 \Umathprimeshiftdrop

This is the maximum baseline drop applied to a prime.

90 \Umathprimeshiftup

This is the upward shift applied to a prime.

91 \Umathprimespaceafter

This is the additional space inserted after a prime.

92 \Umathprimevariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x45456767` or `S S' S S' SS SS' SS SS'`.

93 \Umathquad

This is the width of eighteen math units in the current style.

94 \Umathradicaldegreeafter

This is the horizontal kern after the degree in `\Uroot` and `\Urooted`.

95 \Umathradicaldegreebefore

This is the horizontal kern before the degree in `\Uroot` and `\Urooted`.

96 \Umathradicaldegreeraise

This is the percentage by which the degree is raised in `\Uroot` and `\Urooted`.

97 \Umathradicalextensibleafter

This is the horizontal space after an extensible radical symbol in `\radical`, `\Uradical`, `\Uroot` and `\Urooted`.

98 \Umathradicalextensiblebefore

This is the horizontal space before an extensible radical symbol in `\radical`, `\Uradical`, `\Uroot` and `\Urooted`.

99 \Umathradicalkern

This is the vertical clearance above the rule in `\radical`, `\Uradical`, `\Uroot` and `\Urooted`.

100 \Umathradicalrule

This is the thickness of the rule in the radical and related delimiter constructors.

101 \Umathradicalvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x11335577` or `D' D' T' T' S' S' SS' SS'`. It selects the style used for the radicand in the radical constructors.

102 \Umathradicalvgap

This is the vertical clearance between the radicand and the rule in `\radical`, `\Uradical`, `\Uroot` and `\Urooted`.

103 \Umathruledepth

This is the default depth of a math strut rule when no depth is specified.

104 \Umathruleheight

This is the default height of a math strut rule when no height is specified.

105 \Umathskeweddelimitertolerance

This is the tolerance used when sizing a delimiter in a skewed fraction.

106 \Umathskewedfractionhgap

This is the horizontal gap used when positioning the parts of a skewed fraction.

107 \Umathskewedfractionvgap

This is the vertical gap used when positioning the parts of a skewed fraction.

108 \Umathsource

This modifier assigns a source identifier to the current math atom or its nucleus.

109 \Umathspaceafterscript

This is the additional horizontal space inserted after a super- or subscript.

110 \Umathspacebeforescript

This is the additional horizontal space inserted before a prescript.

111 \Umathspacebetweenscript

This is the horizontal space inserted between a super- and subscript.

112 \Umathstackdenomdown

This is the downward shift of the denominator in an `\atop` stack.

113 \Umathstacknumup

This is the upward shift of the numerator in an `\atop` stack.

114 \Umathstackvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x23456767` or `T T' S S' SS SS' SS SS'`.

115 \Umathstackvgap

This is the vertical clearance between the elements of an `\atop` stack.

116 \Umathsubscriptsnap

This controls snapping of small standalone subscript boxes to the normal script position.

117 \Umathsubscriptvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x55557777` or `S' S' S' S' SS' SS' SS' SS'`.

118 \Umathsubshiftdown

This is the downward shift of a subscript attached to a character.

119 \Umathsubshiftdrop

This is the subscript drop used for boxes and subformulas.

120 \Umathsubsupshiftdown

This is the subscript shift used when a superscript is present as well.

121 \Umathsubsupvgap

This is the vertical clearance between a superscript and a subscript.

122 \Umathsubtopmax

This limits how high a standalone subscript may reach above the baseline.

123 \Umathsupbottommin

This sets the minimum height of the bottom of a standalone superscript above the baseline.

124 \Umathsuperscriptsnap

This controls snapping of small standalone superscript boxes to the normal script position.

125 \Umathsuperscriptvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x45456767` or `S S' S S' SS SS' SS SS'`.

126 \Umathsupshiftdrop

This is the superscript drop used for boxes and subformulas.

127 \Umathsupshiftup

This is the upward shift of a superscript attached to a character.

128 \Umathsupsubbottommax

This limits how low the superscript of a combined super- and subscript may reach.

129 \Umathtopaccentvariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x11335577` or `D' D' T' T' S' S' SS' SS'`.

130 \Umathunderbarkern

This is the vertical clearance below the rule in an underbar.

131 \Umathunderbarrule

This is the thickness of the rule in an underbar.

132 \Umathunderbarvgap

This is the vertical clearance above the rule in an underbar.

133 \Umathunderdelimiterbgap

This is the baseline clearance used by `\Uunderdelimiter` and `\Udelimiterunder`.

134 \Umathunderdelimitervariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x45456767` or `S S' S S' SS SS' SS SS'`. It is used by `\Uunderdelimiter`.

135 \Umathunderdelimitervgap

This is the vertical clearance used by `\Uunderdelimiter` and `\Udelimiterunder`.

136 \Umathunderlinevariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x01234567` or `D D' T T' S S' SS SS'`.

137 \Umathuseaxis

This modifier aligns the current math atom on the math axis.

138 \Umathvextensiblevariant

The current value of this parameter is `0x01234567` or `D D' T T' S S' SS SS'`.

139 \Umathvoid

This modifier discards the content and dimensions of the current math atom.

140 \Umathxscale

The \Umathxscale and \Umathyscale factors are applied to the horizontal and vertical parameters. They are set by style. There is no combined scaling primitive.

```
$\Umathxscale\textstyle  800 a + b + x + d + e = f $\par
$\Umathxscale\textstyle 1000 a + b + x + d + e = f $\par
$\Umathxscale\textstyle 1200 a + b + x + d + e = f $\blank

$\Umathyscale\textstyle  800 \sqrt[2]{x+1}$\quad
$\Umathyscale\textstyle 1000 \sqrt[2]{x+1}$\quad
$\Umathyscale\textstyle 1200 \sqrt[2]{x+1}$\blank
```

Normally only small deviations from 1000 make sense but here we want to show the effect and use a 20% scaling:

$a + b + x + d + e = f$

$a + b + x + d + e = f$

$a + b + x + d + e = f$

$\sqrt[2]{x+1}$ $\sqrt[2]{x+1}$ $\sqrt[2]{x+1}$

141 \Umathyscale

See \Umathxscale]

142 \Umiddle

See \Uleft for an explanation.

143 \Uoperator

This constructs a large operator from a Unicode math character. It uses the same options and sizing mechanism as the extended fences.

144 \Uover

This command is one of the fraction constructors.[7] A fraction has a numerator and a denominator and optionally a rule in between. Another option is left and right fences. You might wonder why this feature is there instead of using regular left and right fences and the reason is (but I can be mistaken) in spacing: here the open/close spacing doesn't apply, which makes sense if you take the application in mind: binominals, in which case we have what looks like a fraction, without rule but with for instance parentheses.

Here we show the six more or less traditional vertically stacked variants of fractions. Watch how we have a syntax where we take two arguments instead of the more operator like approach that \over and friends use. The atop variants have no rule. So we have:

[7] The traditional commands like \over, \atop and \above are supported but in for instance ConTEXt they are disabled or have different meanings.

```
\Uabove    1pt  {1} {2+x}  \Uatop    {1} {2+x}  \Uover  {1} {2+x}  \Uskewed  /{1} {2
```
versus:

```
\Uabovewithdelims          () 1pt  {1} {2+x}
\Uatopwithdelims           ()      {1} {2+x}
\Uoverwithdelims           ()      {1} {2+x}
\Uskewedwithdelims      /  ()      {1} {2+x}
\Ustretchedwithdelims   =  ()      {1} {2+x}
```

The relative positioning (like the gap above or below a rule) is partly determined by math font parameters but there are additional ways to influence the look and feel with options.

attr	integer integer	
class	integer	
exact		reserved, not used
font		use font related thickness
hfactor	integer	
noaxis		
nooverflow		
proportional		reserved, not used
style	integer or id	
source	integer	
symbolattr	integer integer	
thickness	dimension	
usecallback		
vfactor	integer	

Not all apply to every fraction but it made sense to just accept all. When the `thickness` is specified, scanning the formal dimension skipped. In due time these options will be discussed in mode detail.

145 \Uoverdelimiter

See `\Uradical` for an introduction.

146 \Uoverwithdelimits

See `\Uover` for an introduction.

147 \Uradical

This command is one of the radical constructors. A radical has a delimiter on the left and a radicand. A degree and a right delimiter are available in the related constructors. The delimiter can be a variant glyph or an extensible made from several glyphs.

The basic forms are:

\Uradical	<left delimiter> <radicand>
\Uroot	<left delimiter> <degree> <radicand>
\Urooted	<left delimiter> <right delimiter> <degree> <radicand>

The \Udelimited variant takes two delimiters but no degree. The \Uoverdelimiter and \Uunderdelimiter variants put an extensible delimiter above or below a formula, while \Udelimiterover and \Udelimiterunder put the formula above or below an extensible delimiter. The \Uhextensible variant constructs only the horizontal extensible.

These commands accept options for dimensions, style, delimiter alignment, overflow and rule handling. The options are attr, bottom, callback, depth, exact, height, left, middle, norule, nooverflow, right, reflected, shrink, size, stretch, style, source, symbolattr, top, usecallback and width. Not all options apply to every constructor. The parameters that control these constructions are summarized in the appendix.

The radical primitives share a construction path, but not every parameter is read by every variant. The following table gives the main relationships. The parameters ending in variant, and the extensible... parameters, are LuaMetaTEX additions; the other radical and delimiter parameters are based on the OpenType math parameters.

parameter	use	constructors
Umathradicalvgap	clearance between the radicand and the radical rule	**\radical**, **\Uradical**, **\Uroot**, **\Urooted**
Umathradicalkern	clearance above the radical rule	**\radical**, **\Uradical**, **\Uroot**, **\Urooted**
Umathradicalrule	radical rule thickness, also used as callback line width	radical and delimiter forms, except **\Uhextensible**
Umathradicaldegreebefore, Umathradicaldegreeafter	horizontal kerns before and after the degree	**\Uroot**, **\Urooted**
Umathradicaldegreeraise	percentage used for the vertical position of the degree	**\Uroot**, **\Urooted**
Umathradicalextensiblebefore, Umathradicalextensibleafter	horizontal space around an extensible radical symbol	**\radical**, **\Uradical**, **\Uroot**, **\Urooted**
Umathradicalvariant	style used for the radicand	radical forms and **\Udelimited**
Umathoverdelimiterbgap, Umathoverdelimitervgap	baseline and vertical clearance for an upper delimiter	**\Uoverdelimiter**, **\Udelimiterover**
Umathunderdelimiterbgap, Umathunderdelimitervgap	baseline and vertical clearance for a lower delimiter	**\Uunderdelimiter**, **\Udelimiterunder**
Umathdegreevariant	style used for the degree	**\Uroot**, **\Urooted**
Umathhextensiblevariant	style used for the horizontal exten-	**\Uhextensible**

sible

The radical rule is made directly for the usual radical forms. In the related delimiter forms it is also passed to an extensible callback as the requested line width. The horizontal-extensible form instead uses `\Umathfractionrule` for that callback.

148 \Uright

See `\Uleft` for an explanation.

149 \Uroot

See `\Uradical` for an introduction.

150 \Urooted

See `\Uradical` for an introduction.

151 \Uskewed

See `\Uover` for an introduction.

152 \Uskewedwithdelims

See `\Uover` for an introduction.

153 \Ustartdisplaymath

This is equivalent to the first of a pair of $$.

154 \Ustartmath

This is equivalent to the first of a pair of $.

155 \Ustartmathmode

This command starts math mode with a given style.

156 \Ustopdisplaymath

This is equivalent to the second of a pair of $$.

157 \Ustopmath

This is equivalent to the second of a pair of $.

158 \Ustopmathmode

This command is the companion of `\Ustartmathmode`.

159 \Ustretched

See \Uover for an introduction.

160 \Ustretchedwithdelims

See \Uover for an introduction.

161 \Uunderdelimiter

See \Uradical for an introduction.

162 \Uvextensible

This constructs a vertically extensible math symbol around the following material. It accepts the same sizing options as the other extended fences.

163 \above

This is a variant of \over that doesn't put a rule in between.

164 \abovedisplayshortskip

The glue injected before a display formula when the line above it is not overlapping with the formula. Watch out for interference with \baselineskip. It can be controlled by \displayskipmode.

165 \abovedisplayskip

The glue injected before a display formula. Watch out for interference with \baselineskip. It can be controlled by \displayskipmode.

166 \abovewithdelims

This is a variant of \atop but with delimiters. It has a more advanced upgrade in \Uabovewithdelims.

167 \accent

This primitive is kind of obsolete in wide engines and takes two arguments: the indexes of an accent and a base character.

168 \additionalpageskip

This quantity will be added to the current page goal, stretch and shrink after which it will be set to zero.

169 \adjacentdemerits

This is a more granular variant of \adjdemerits and mostly meant for multipass par building, for instance:

```
\adjacentdemerits 8 0 2500 5000 7500 10000 12500 15000 20000
```

More details can be found in the 'beyond paragraphs' chapter of the 'beyond' progress report. One can also discriminate between loose and tight deltas. In these examples we also assume a more granular fitness classes setup.

```
\adjacentdemerits 8 double
        0  2500   5000  7500 10000 12500 15000 20000
    20000 15000 125000 10000 7500   5000  2500     0
```

170 \adjdemerits

When TEX considers to lines to be incompatible it will add this penalty to its verdict when considering this breakpoint.

171 \adjustspacing

This parameter controls expansion (hz). A value 2 expands glyphs and font kerns and a value of 3 only glyphs. Expansion of kerns can have side effects when they are used for positioning by OpenType features.

172 \adjustspacingshrink

When set to a non zero value this overloads the shrink maximum in a font when expansion is applied. This is then the case for all fonts.

173 \adjustspacingstep

When set to a non zero value this overloads the expansion step in a font when expansion is applied. This is then the case for all fonts.

174 \adjustspacingstretch

When set to a non zero value this overloads the stretch maximum in a font when expansion is applied. This is then the case for all fonts.

175 \advance

Advances the given register by an also given value:

```
\advance\scratchdimen      10pt
\advance\scratchdimen      by 3pt
\advance\scratchcounterone \zerocount
\advance\scratchcounterone \scratchcountertwo
```

The by keyword is optional.

176 \advanceby

This is slightly more efficient variant of \advance that doesn't look for by and therefore, if one is missing, doesn't need to push back the last seen token. Using \advance with by is nearly as efficient but takes more tokens.

177 \afterassigned

The \afterassignment primitive stores a token to be injected (and thereby expanded) after an assignment has happened. Unlike \aftergroup, multiple calls are not accumulated, and changing that would be too incompatible. This is why we have \afterassigned, which can be used to inject a bunch of tokens. But in order to be consistent this one is also not accumulative.

```
\afterassigned{done}%
\afterassigned{{\bf done}}%
\scratchcounter=123
```

results in: done**done** being typeset.

178 \afterassignment

The token following \afterassignment, a traditional TEX primitive, is saved and gets injected (and then expanded) after a following assignment took place.

```
\afterassignment !\def\MyMacro {}\quad
\afterassignment !\let\MyMacro ?\quad
\afterassignment !\scratchcounter 123\quad
\afterassignment !%
\afterassignment ?\advance\scratchcounter by 1
```

The \afterassignments are not accumulated, the last one wins:

```
! ! ! ?
```

179 \aftergroup

The traditional TEX \aftergroup primitive stores the next token and expands that after the group has been closed.

Multiple \aftergroups are combined:

```
before{ ! \aftergroup a\aftergroup f\aftergroup t\aftergroup e\aftergroup r}
```

before ! after

180 \aftergrouped

The in itself powerful \aftergroup primitives works quite well, even if you need to do more than one thing: you can either use it multiple times, or you can define a macro that does multiple things and apply that after the group. However, you can avoid that by using this primitive which takes a list of tokens.

```
regular
\bgroup
\aftergrouped{regular}%
\bf bold
\egroup
```

Because it happens after the group, we're no longer typesetting in bold.

regular **bold** regular

You can mix `\aftergroup` and `\aftergrouped`. Which one is more efficient depends on how many tokens are delayed. Picking up one token is faster than scanning a list.

```
{
    \aftergroup A \aftergroup B \aftergroup C
test 1 : }

{
    \aftergrouped{What comes next 1}
    \aftergrouped{What comes next 2}
    \aftergrouped{What comes next 3}
test 2 : }

{
    \aftergroup A \aftergrouped{What comes next 1}
    \aftergroup B \aftergrouped{What comes next 2}
    \aftergroup C \aftergrouped{What comes next 3}
test 3 : }

{
    \aftergrouped{What comes next 1} \aftergroup A
    \aftergrouped{What comes next 2} \aftergroup B
    \aftergrouped{What comes next 3} \aftergroup C
test 4 : }
```

This gives:

test 1 : ABC
test 2 : What comes next 1What comes next 2What comes next 3
test 3 : AWhat comes next 1BWhat comes next 2CWhat comes next 3
test 4 : What comes next 1AWhat comes next 2BWhat comes next 3C

181 \aliased

This primitive is part of the overload protection subsystem where control sequences can be tagged.

```
\permanent\def\foo{FOO}
          \let\ofo\foo
\aliased  \let\oof\foo

\meaningasis\foo
\meaningasis\ofo
\meaningasis\oof
```

gives:

```
\permanent \def \foo {FOO}
\def \ofo {FOO}
```

```
\permanent \def \oof {FOO}
```

When a something is `\let` the 'permanent', 'primitive' and 'immutable' flags are removed but the `\aliased` prefix retains them.

```
\let\relaxed\relax

\meaningasis\relax
\meaningasis\relaxed
```

So in this example the `\relaxed` alias is not flagged as primitive:

```
\global \primitive \relax
\relax
```

182 \aligncontent

This is equivalent to a hash in an alignment preamble. Contrary to `\alignmark` there is no need to duplicate inside a macro definition.

183 \alignloop

This is just a convenient (and more clear) variant of the double tab: **\aligntab\aligntab** or && when that method is used.

184 \alignmark

When you have the # not set up as macro parameter character cq. align mark, you can use this primitive instead. The same rules apply with respect to multiple such tokens in (nested) macros and alignments.

185 \alignmentcellsource

This sets the source id (a box property) of the current alignment cell.

186 \alignmentwrapsource

This sets the source id (a box property) of the current alignment row (in a `\halign`) or column (in a `\valign`).

187 \alignoption

This is an experimental feature that accepts some of the keywords that one can pass to the alignment command: `firstskip`, `lastskip`, `nofirstskip`, `nolastskip` and `prune`. When given in a cell they will overload the already set options.

188 \alignsnapping

This primitive is part of the experimental line snapping mechanism and when set determines how rows get snapped.

189 \aligntab

When you have the & not set up as align tab, you can use this primitive instead. The same rules apply with respect to multiple such tokens in (nested) macros and alignments.

190 \allcrampedstyles

A symbolic representation of \crampeddisplaystyle, \crampedtextstyle, \crampedscriptstyle and \crampedscriptscriptstyle; integer representation: 17.

191 \alldisplaystyles

A symbolic representation of \displaystyle and \crampeddisplaystyle; integer representation: 8.

192 \allmainstyles

A symbolic representation of \displaystyle, \crampeddisplaystyle, \textstyle and \crampedtextstyle; integer representation: 13.

193 \allmathstyles

A symbolic representation of \displaystyle, \crampeddisplaystyle, \textstyle, \crampedtextstyle, \scriptstyle, \crampedscriptstyle, \scriptscriptstyle and \crampedscriptscriptstyle; integer representation: 12.

194 \allscriptscriptstyles

A symbolic representation of \scriptscriptstyle and \crampedscriptscriptstyle; integer representation: 11.

195 \allscriptstyles

A symbolic representation of \scriptstyle and \crampedscriptstyle; integer representation: 10.

196 \allsplitstyles

A symbolic representation of \displaystyle and \textstyle but not \scriptstyle and \scriptscriptstyle: set versus reset; integer representation: 14.

197 \alltextstyles

A symbolic representation of \textstyle and \crampedtextstyle; integer representation: 9.

198 \alluncrampedstyles

A symbolic representation of \displaystyle, \textstyle, \scriptstyle and \scriptscriptstyle; integer representation: 16.

199 \allunsplitstyles

A symbolic representation of \scriptstyle and \scriptscriptstyle; integer representation: 15.

200 \amcode

201 \associateunit

The TEX engine comes with some build in units, like pt (fixed) and em (adaptive). On top of that a macro package can add additional units, which is what we do in ConTEXt. In figure 6.1 we show the current repertoire.

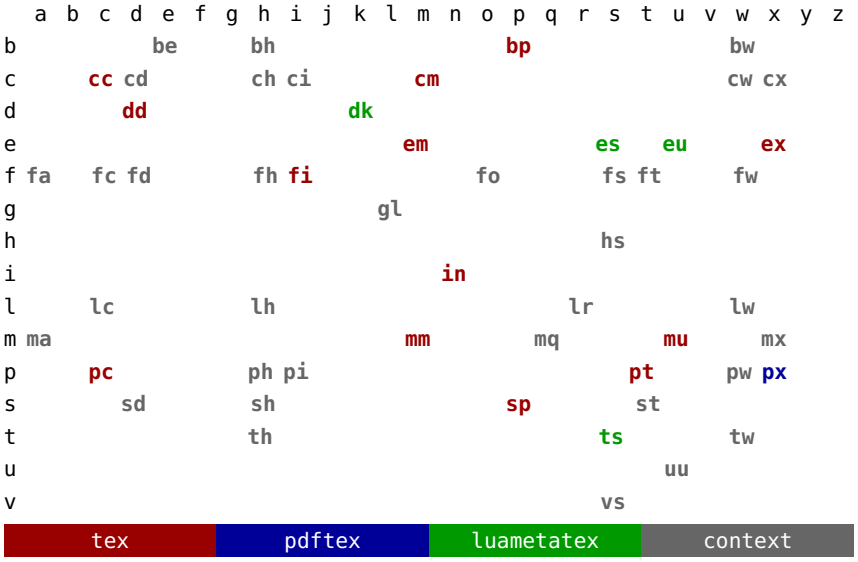


Figure 6.1 Available units

When this primitive is used in a context where a number is expected it returns the origin of the unit (in the color legend running from 1 upto 4). A new unit is defined as:

```
\newdimen\MyDimenZA  \MyDimenZA=10pt

\protected\def\MyDimenAB{\dimexpr\hsize/2\relax}

\associateunit za \MyDimenZA
\associateunit zb \MyMacroZB
```

Possible associations are: macros that expand to a dimension, internal dimension registers, register dimensions (\dimendef, direct dimensions (\dimensiondef) and Lua functions that return a dimension.

One can run into scanning ahead issues where TEX expects a unit and a user unit gets expanded. This is why for instance in ConTEXt we define the ma unit as:

```
\protected\def\mathaxisunit{\scaledmathaxis\mathstyle\norelax}

\associateunit ma \mathaxisunit % or \newuserunit \mathaxisunit ma
```

So that it can be used in rule specifications that themselves look ahead for keywords and therefore are normally terminated by a \relax. Adding the extra \norelax will make the scanner see one that

doesn't get fed back into the input. Of course a macro package has to manage extra units in order to avoid conflicts.

202 \atendoffile

The \everyeof primitive is kind of useless because you don't know if a file (which can be a tokenlist processed as pseudo file) itself includes a file, which then results in nested application of this token register. One way around this is:

```
\atendoffile\SomeCommand
```

This acts on files the same way as \atendofgroup does. Multiple calls will be accumulated and are bound to the current file.

203 \atendoffiled

This is the multi token variant of \atendoffile. Multiple invocations are accumulated and by default prepended to the existing list. As with grouping this permits proper nesting. You can force an append by the optional keyword reverse.

204 \atendofgroup

The token provided will be injected just before the group ends. Because these tokens are collected, you need to be aware of possible interference between them. However, normally this is managed by the macro package.

```
\bgroup
\atendofgroup\unskip
\atendofgroup )%
(but it works okay
\egroup
```

Of course these effects can also be achieved by combining (extra) grouping with \aftergroup calls, so this is more a convenience primitives than a real necessity: (but it works okay), as proven here.

205 \atendofgrouped

This is the multi token variant of \atendofgroup. Of course the next example is somewhat naive when it comes to spacing and so, but it shows the purpose.

```
\bgroup
\atendofgrouped{\bf QED}%
\atendofgrouped{ (indeed)}%
This sometimes looks nicer.
\egroup
```

Multiple invocations are accumulated: This sometimes looks nicer. **QED (indeed)**.

206 \atop

This one stack two math elements on top of each other, like a fraction but with no rule. It has a more advanced upgrade in \Uatop.

207 \atopwithdelims

This is a variant of \atop but with delimiters. It has a more advanced upgrade in \Uatopwithdelims.

208 \attribute

The following sets an attribute(register) value:

```
\attribute 999 = 123
```

An attribute is unset by assigning -2147483647 to it. A user needs to be aware of attributes being used now and in the future of a macro package and setting them this way is very likely going to interfere.

209 \attributeboundary

This creates a boundary node with two properties that can be picked up at the Lua end: data and reserved; after all we had that second field anyway so why now exploit it.

210 \attributedef

This primitive can be used to relate a control sequence to an attribute register and can be used to implement a mechanism for defining unique ones that won't interfere. As with other registers: leave management to the macro package in order to avoid unwanted side effects!

211 \automaticdiscretionary

This is an alias for the automatic hyphen trigger -.

212 \automatichyphenpenalty

The penalty injected after an automatic discretionary -, when \hyphenationmode enables this.

213 \automigrationmode

This bitset determines what will bubble up to an outer level:

```
0x01  mark
0x02  insert
0x04  adjust
0x08  pre
0x10  post
```

The current value is 0x1F.

214 \autoparagraphmode

A paragraph can be triggered by an empty line, a **\par** token or an equivalent of it. This parameter controls how **\par** is interpreted in different scenarios:

`0x01` text
`0x02` macro
`0x04` continue

The current value is `0x1` and setting it to a non-zero value can have consequences for mechanisms that expect otherwise. The text option uses the same code as an empty line. The macro option checks a token in a macro preamble against the frozen `\par` token. The last option ignores the par token.

215 \badness

This one returns the last encountered badness value.

216 \balanceadjdemerits

These are added to the accumulated demerits depending on the fitness of neighbouring slots in balancing act.

217 \balancebottomskip

The counterpart of `\balancetopskip` and ensures that the last depth honors this criterium.

218 \balanceboundary

This boundary is triggering a callback that can itself trigger a try break call. It's up to the macro package to come up with a usage scenario.

219 \balancebreakpasses

See (upcoming) ConTEXt documentation for an explanation.

220 \balancechecks

The balance tracer callback gets this paremeter passed.

221 \balanceemergencyshrink

This is a reserved parameter.

222 \balanceemergencystretch

When set this will make the balancer more tolerant. It's comparable to `\emergencystretch` in the par builder.

223 \balancefinalpenalties

This is a penalty array which values will be applied to the end of the to be balanced list, starting at the end. Widow, club and other encountered penalties will be overloaded.

```
\balancefinalpenalties 4
    10000 9000 8000 7000
\relax
```

The last one is not repetitive so here at most four penalties will be injected between lines (that is: hlists with the line subtype).

224 \balancelineheight

This is a reserved parameter.

225 \balancelooseness

When set the balancer tries to produce nore or less slots. As with the par builder the result of looseness is kind of unpredictable. One needs plenty of glue and normally that is not present in a vertical list.

226 \balancepasses

Specifies one or more recipes for additional second balance passes. Examples can be found in the ConTEXt distribution (in due time).

227 \balancepenalty

This is the penalty applied between slots, prety much like `\linepenalty`.

228 \balanceshape

229 \balanceshapebottomspace

This gives the (fixed) amount of space added at the bottom of the given shape slot.

```
\the\balanceshapebottomspace 1 \space
\the\balanceshapebottomspace 3
```

We get: 21.0pt 23.0pt.

230 \balanceshapetopspace

This provides (fixed) amount of space added at the top of the given shape slot.

```
\the\balanceshapetopspace 1 \space
\the\balanceshapetopspace 3
```

This results in: 11.0pt 13.0pt.

231 \balanceshapevsize

This returns the the target height of the given shape slot.

```
\the\balanceshapevsize 1 \space
\the\balanceshapevsize 3
```

This results in: 91.0pt 93.0pt.

232 \balancetolerance

This parameter sets the criterium for a slot being bad (pretty much like in the linebreak for a line). Although the code is able to have a pre balance pass it has no meaning here so we don't have a \balancepretolerance.[8]

233 \balancetopskip

This glue ensures the height of the first content (box or rule) in a slot. It can be compared to \topskip and \splittopskip.

234 \balancevsize

This sets the target height of a balance slot unless \balanceshape is used.

235 \baselineskip

This is the maximum glue put between lines. The depth of the previous and height of the next line are substracted.

236 \batchmode

This command disables (error) messages which can safe some runtime in situations where TEX's character-by-character log output impacts runtime. It only makes sense in automated workflows where one doesn't look at the log anyway.

237 \begincsname

The next code creates a control sequence token from the given serialized tokens:

```
\csname mymacro\endcsname
```

When \mymacro is not defined a control sequence will be created with the meaning \relax. A side effect is that a test for its existence might fail because it now exists. The next sequence will *not* create an controil sequence:

```
\begincsname mymacro\endcsname
```

This actually is kind of equivalent to:

```
\ifcsname mymacro\endcsname
    \csname mymacro\endcsname
\fi
```

[8] We might find usage for it some day.

238 \begingroup

This primitive starts a group and has to be ended with \endgroup. See \beginsimplegroup for more info.

239 \beginlocalcontrol

Once TEX is initialized it will enter the main loop. In there certain commands trigger a function that itself can trigger further scanning and functions. In LuaMetaTEX we can have local main loops and we can either enter it from the Lua end (which we don't discuss here) or at the TEX end using this primitive.

```
\scratchcounter100

\edef\whatever{
    a
    \beginlocalcontrol
        \advance\scratchcounter 10
        b
    \endlocalcontrol
    \beginlocalcontrol
        c
    \endlocalcontrol
    d
    \advance\scratchcounter 10
}

\the\scratchcounter
\whatever
\the\scratchcounter
```

A bit of close reading probably gives an impression of what happens here:

b c

110 a d 120

The local loop can actually result in material being injected in the current node list. However, where normally assignments are not taking place in an \edef, here they are applied just fine. Basically we have a local TEX job, be it that it shares all variables with the parent loop.

240 \beginmathgroup

In math mode grouping with \begingroup and \endgroup in some cases works as expected, but because the math input is converted in a list that gets processed later some settings can become persistent, like changes in style or family. The engine therefore provides the alternatives \beginmathgroup and \endmathgroup that restore some properties.

241 \beginmvl

This initiates intercepting the main vertical list (the page). There has to be a matching \endmvl. For example:

```
\beginmvl 1 the main vertical list, one \endmvl
\beginmvl 2 the main vertical list, two \endmvl
```

The streams can be flushed out of order:

```
\setbox\scratchboxone\flushmvl 2
\setbox\scratchboxtwo\flushmvl 1
```

One can be more specific:

```
\beginmvl
    index   1
    options 5 % ignore prevdepth (1) and discard top (4)
\relax
    ....
\endmvl
```

More details can be found in the ConTEXt low level manuals that describe this feature in combination with balancing.

242 \beginsimplegroup

The original TEX engine distinguishes two kind of grouping that at the user end show up as:

```
\begingroup \endgroup
\bgroup \egroup { }
```

where the last two pairs are equivalent unless the scanner explicitly wants to see a left and/or right brace and not an equivalent. For the sake of simplify we use the aliases here. It is not possible to mix these pairs, so:

```
\bgroup xxx\endgroup
\begingroup xxx\egroup
```

will in both cases issue an error. This can make it somewhat hard to write generic grouping macros without somewhat dirty trickery. The way out is to use the generic group opener `\beginsimplegroup`.

Internally LuaMetaTEX is aware of what group it currently is dealing with and there we distinguish:

simple group	`\bgroup`	`\egroup`
semi simple group	`\begingroup`	`\endgroup` `\endsimplegroup`
also simple group	`\beginsimplegroup`	`\egroup` `\endgroup` `\endsimplegroup`
math simple group	`\beginmathgroup`	`\endmathgroup`

This means that you can say:

```
\beginsimplegroup xxx\endsimplegroup
\beginsimplegroup xxx\endgroup
\beginsimplegroup xxx\egroup
```

So a group started with `\beginsimplegroup` can be finished in three ways which means that the user (or calling macro) doesn't have take into account what kind of grouping was used to start with. Normally usage of this primitive is hidden in macros and not something the user has to be aware of.

243 \belowdisplayshortskip

The glue injected aftter a display formula when the line above it is not overlapping with the formula (TEX can't look ahead). Watch out for interference with `\baselineskip`. It can be controlled by `\displayskipmode`.

244 \belowdisplayskip

The glue injected after a display formula. Watch out for interference with `\baselineskip`. It can be controlled by `\displayskipmode`.

245 \binoppenalty

This internal quantity is a compatibility feature because normally we will use the inter atom spacing variables.

246 \botmark

This is a reference to the last mark on the current page, it gives back tokens.

247 \botmarks

This is a reference to the last mark with the given id (a number) on the current page, it gives back tokens.

248 \bottomskip

This is a reserved parameter.

249 \boundary

Boundaries are signals added to he current list. This primitive injects a user boundary with the given (integer) value. Such a boundary can be consulted at the Lua end or with `\lastboundary`.

250 \box

This is the box register accessor. While other registers have one property a box has many, like `\wd`, `\ht` and `\dp`. This primitive returns the box and resets the register.

251 \boxadapt

Adapting will recalculate the dimensions with a scale factor for the glue:

```
\setbox 0 \hbox       {test test test}
\setbox 2 \hbox {\red  test test test} \boxadapt 0  200
\setbox 4 \hbox {\blue test test test} \boxadapt 0 -200
\ruledhbox{\box0} \vskip-\lineheight
\ruledhbox{\box0} \vskip-\lineheight
\ruledhbox{\box0}
```

Like \boxfreeze and \boxrepack this primitive has been introduced for experimental usage, although we do use some in production code.
test test test

252 \boxanchor

This feature is part of an (experimental) mechanism that relates boxes. The engine just tags a box and it is up to the macro package to deal with it.

```
\setbox0\hbox anchor "01010202 {test}\tohexadecimal\boxanchor0
```

This gives: 1010202. Of course this feature is very macro specific and should not be used across macro packages without coordination. An anchor has two parts each not exceeding 0x0FFF.

253 \boxanchors

This feature is part of an (experimental) mechanism that relates boxes. The engine just tags a box and it is up to the macro package to deal with it.

```
\setbox0\hbox anchors "0101 "0202 {test}\tohexadecimal\boxanchors0
```

This gives: 1010202. Of course this feature is very macro specific and should not be used across macro packages without coordination. An anchor has two parts each not exceeding 0x0FFF.

254 \boxattribute

Every node, and therefore also every box gets the attributes set that are active at the moment of creation. Additional attributes can be set too:

```
\darkred
\setbox0\hbox attr 999 1 {whatever}
\the\boxattribute 0 \colorattribute
\the\boxattribute 0 998
\the\boxattribute 0 999
```

A macro package should make provide a way define attributes that don't clash the ones it needs itself, like, in ConTEXt, the ones that can set a color

```
4
-2147483647
1
```

The number -2147483647 (-7FFFFFFF) indicates an unset attribute.

255 \boxdirection

The direction of a box defaults to l2r but can be explicitly set:

```
\setbox0\hbox direction 1 {this is a test}\textdirection1
\setbox2\hbox direction 0 {this is a test}\textdirection0
\the\boxdirection0: \box0
```

```
\the\boxdirection2: \box2
```

The \textdirection does not influence the box direction:

1: tset a si siht
0: this is a test

256 \boxfinalize

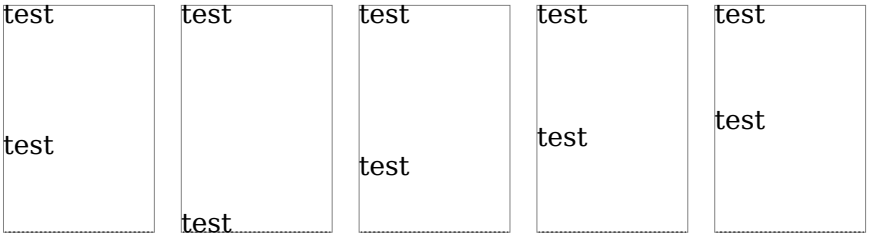
This is special version of \boxfreeze which we demonstrate with an example:

```
\boxlimitate 0 0   % don't recurse
\boxfreeze   2 0   % don't recurse
\boxfinalize 4 500 % scale glue multiplier by .50
\boxfinalize 6 250 % scale glue multiplier by .25
\boxfinalize 8 100 % scale glue multiplier by .10

\hpack\bgroup
    \copy0\quad\copy2\quad\copy4\quad\copy6\quad\copy8
\egroup
```

where the boxes are populated with:

```
\setbox0\ruledvbox to 3cm{\hsize 2cm test\vskip10pt plus 10pt test}
\setbox2\copy0\setbox4\copy0\setbox6\copy0\setbox8\copy0
```



257 \boxfreeze

Glue in a box has a fixed component that will always be used and stretch and shrink that kicks in when needed. The effective value (width) of the glue is driven by some box parameters that are set by the packaging routine. This is why we can unbox: the original value is kept. It is the backend that calculates the effective value. Te \boxfreeze primitive can do the same: turn the flexible glue into a fixed one.

```
\setbox    0 \hbox to 6cm {\hss frost}
\setbox    2 \hbox to 6cm {\hss frost}
\boxfreeze 2 0
\ruledhbox{\unhbox 0}
\ruledhbox{\unhbox 2}
```

The second parameter to \boxfreeze determines recursion. We don't recurse here so just freeze the outer level:



258 \boxgeometry

A box can have an orientation, offsets and/or anchors. These are stored independently but for efficiency reasons we register if one or more of these properties is set. This primitive accesses this state; it is a bitset:

`0x01` offset
`0x02` orientation
`0x04` anchor

259 \boxinserts

A non zero value return indicates that there are inserts in this box. This primitive is meant to be used with the balancer.

260 \boxlimit

This primitive will freeze the glue in a box but only when there is glue marked with the limit option.

261 \boxlimitate

This primitive will freeze the glue in a box. It takes two arguments, a box number and an number that when set to non-zero will recurse into nested lists.

262 \boxlimitmode

This variable controls if boxes with glue marked 'limit' will be checked and frozen.

263 \boxmaxdepth

You can limit the depth of boxes being constructed. It's one of these parameters that should be used with care because when that box is filled nested boxes can be influenced.

264 \boxmigrate

When the given box has pre migration material the value will have `0x08` set. When there is post material the `0x10` bit is set. Of course both can be set.

265 \boxorientation

The orientation field can take quite some values and is discussed in one of the low level ConTEXt manuals. Some properties are dealt with in the TEX engine because they influence dimensions but in the end it is the backend that does the work.

266 \boxrepack

When a box of to wide or tight we can tweak it a bit with this primitive. The primitive expects a box register and a dimension, where a positive number adds and a negatie subtracts from the current box with.

```
\setbox 0 \hbox        {test test test}
\setbox 2 \hbox {\red   test test test} \boxrepack0 +.2em
\setbox 4 \hbox {\green test test test} \boxrepack0 -.2em
\ruledhbox{\box0} \vskip-\lineheight
\ruledhbox{\box0} \vskip-\lineheight
\ruledhbox{\box0}
```

test test test

We can also use this primitive to check the natural dimensions of a box:

```
\setbox 0 \hbox spread 10pt {test test test}
\ruledhbox{\box0} (\the\boxrepack0,\the\wd0)
```

In this context only one argument is expected.
test test test

(0.0pt,0.0pt)

267 \boxshift

Returns or sets how much the box is shifted: up or down in horizontally mode, left or right in vertical mode.

268 \boxshrink

Returns the amount of shrink found (applied) in a box:

```
\setbox0\hbox to 4em {m m m m}
\the\boxshrink0
```

gives: 3.17871pt

269 \boxsnapping

This is an experimental feature what we occasionally come back to, so it's currently undocumented.

270 \boxsource

This feature is part of an (experimental) mechanism that relates boxes. The engine just tags a box and it is up to the macro package to deal with it.

```
\setbox0\hbox source 123 {m m m m}
\the\boxsource0
```

This gives: 123. Of course this feature is very macro specific and should not be used across macro packages without coordination.

271 \boxstretch

Returns the amount of stretch found (applied) in a box:

```
\setbox0\hbox to 6em {m m m m}
\the\boxstretch0
```

gives: 4.76807pt

272 \boxsubtype

Returns the subtype of the given box.

```
\setbox0\hbox           {test}[\the\boxsubtype0]
\setbox2\hbox container {test}[\the\boxsubtype2]
```

gives: [2] [4]. Beware that the numbers can change so best use the symbolic values that can be queried via Lua.

273 \boxtarget

This feature is part of an (experimental) mechanism that relates boxes. The engine just tags a box and it is up to the macro package to deal with it.

```
\setbox0\hbox source 123 {m m m m}
\the\boxsource0
```

This gives: 123. Of course this feature is very macro specific and should not be used across macro packages without coordination.

274 \boxtotal

Returns the total of height and depth of the given box.

275 \boxvadjust

When used as query this returns a bitset indicating the associated adjust and migration (marks and inserts) data:

`0x1` pre adjusted
`0x2` post adjusted
`0x4` pre migrated
`0x8` post migrated

When used as a setter it directly adds adjust data to the box and it accepts the same keywords as `\vadjust`.

276 \boxxmove

This will set the vertical offset and adapt the dimensions accordingly.

277 \boxxoffset

Returns or sets the horizontal offset of the given box.

278 \boxymove

This will set the vertical offset and adapt the dimensions accordingly.

279 \boxyoffset

Returns or sets the vertical offset of the given box.

280 \breaklasthangindent

This variable reflects the state of the current vertical list with respect to a `\hangindent` and `\hangafter` situation.

281 \breaklasthangleftindent

This variable reflects the state of the current vertical list with respect to a (positive, therefore left) `\localhangindent` and `\localhangafter` situation.

282 \breaklasthangleftslack

This variable reflects the state of the current vertical list with respect to a (positive, therefore left) `\localhangindent` and `\localhangafter` situation. Here slack refers to the pending number lines on the left.

283 \breaklasthangrightindent

This variable reflects the state of the current vertical list with respect to a (negative, therefore right) `\localhangindent` and `\localhangafter` situation.

284 \breaklasthangrightslack

This variable reflects the state of the current vertical list with respect to a (negative, therefore right) `\localhangindent` and `\localhangafter` situation. Here slack refers to the pending number lines on the right.

285 \breaklasthangslack

This variable reflects the state of the current vertical list with respect to a `\hangindent` and `\hangafter` situation. Here slack refers to the pending number lines.

286 \breaklastlinecount

This variable refers to the current vertical list.

287 \breaklastlinewidth

This variable refers to last lines of the current vertical list.

288 \brokenpenalties

Together with \widowpenalties and \clubpenalties this one permits discriminating left- and right page (doublesided) penalties. For this one needs to also specify \options 4 and provide penalty pairs. Where the others accept multiple pairs, this primitives expects a count value one.

289 \brokenpenalty

This penalty is added after a line that ends with a hyphen; it can help to discourage a page break (or split in a box).

290 \catcode

Every character can be put in a category, but this is typically something that the macro package manages because changes can affect behavior. Also, once passed as an argument, the catcode of a character is frozen. There are 16 different values:

\escapecatcode	0	\begingroupcatcode	1
\endgroupcatcode	2	\mathshiftcatcode	3
\alignmentcatcode	4	\endoflinecatcode	5
\parametercatcode	6	\superscriptcatcode	7
\subscriptcatcode	8	\ignorecatcode	9
\spacecatcode	10	\lettercatcode	11
\othercatcode	12	\activecatcode	13
\commentcatcode	14	\invalidcatcode	15

The first column shows the constant that ConTEXt provides and the name indicates the purpose. Here are two examples:

```
\catcode123=\begingroupcatcode
\catcode125=\endgroupcatcode
```

291 \catcodetable

The catcode table with the given index will become active.

292 \cccode

This is an experimental feature that can set some processing options. The character specific code is stored in the glyph node and consulted later. An example of such option is ‘ignore twin’, bit one, which we set for a few punctuation characters.

293 \cdef

This primitive is like \edef but in some usage scenarios is slightly more efficient because (delayed) expansion is ignored which in turn saves building a temporary token list.

```
\edef\FooA{this is foo} \meaningfull\FooA\crlf
\cdef\FooB{this is foo} \meaningfull\FooB\par
```

```
macro:this is foo
constant macro:this is foo
```

294 \cdefcsname

This primitive is like \edefcsame but in some usage scenarios is slightly more efficient because (delayed) expansion is ignored which in turn saves building a temporary token list.

```
\edefcsname FooA\endcsname{this is foo} \meaningasis\FooA\crlf
\cdefcsname FooB\endcsname{this is foo} \meaningasis\FooB\par

\def \FooA {this is foo}
\constant \def \FooB {this is foo}
```

295 \cfcode

This primitive is a companion to \efcode and sets the compression factor. It takes three values: font, character code, and factor.

296 \char

This appends a character with the given index in the current font.

297 \chardef

The following definition relates a control sequence to a specific character:

```
\chardef\copyrightsign"A9
```

However, because in a context where a number is expected, such a \chardef is seen as valid number, there was a time when this primitive was used to define constants without overflowing the by then limited pool of count registers. In e-TEX aware engines this was less needed, and in LuaMetaTEX we have \integerdef as a more natural candidate.

298 \cleaders

See \gleaders for an explanation.

299 \clearmarks

This primitive is an addition to the multiple marks mechanism that originates in e-TEX and reset the mark registers of the given category (a number).

300 \clubpenalties

This is an array of penalty put before the first lines in a paragraph. High values discourage (or even prevent) a lone line at the end of a page. This command expects a count value indicating the number of entries that will follow. The first entry is ends up after the first line.

301 \clubpenalty

This is the penalty put before a club line in a paragraph. High values discourage (or even prevent) a lone line at the end of a next page.

302 \constant

This prefix tags a macro (without arguments) as being constant. The main consequence is that in some cases expansion gets delayed which gives a little performance boost and less (temporary) memory usage, for instance in **\csname** like scenarios.

303 \constrained

See previous section about `\retained`.

304 \copy

This is the box register accessor that returns a copy of the box.

305 \copymathatomrule

This copies the rule bitset from the parent class (second argument) to the target class (first argument). The bitset controls the features that apply to atoms.

306 \copymathparent

This binds the given class (first argument) to another class (second argument) so that one doesn't need to define all properties.

307 \copymathspacing

This copies an class spacing specification to another one, so in

```
\copymathspacing 34 2
```

class 34 (a user one) get the spacing from class 2 (binary).

308 \copysplitdiscards

This is a variant of `\splitdiscards` that keep the original.

309 \count

This accesses a count register by index. This is kind of 'not done' unless you do it local and make sure that it doesn't influence macros that you call.

```
\count4023=10
```

In standard TEX the first 10 counters are special because they get reported to the console, and **\count**`0` is then assumed to be the page counter.

310 \countdef

This primitive relates a control sequence to a count register. Compare this to the example in the previous section.

```
\countdef\MyCounter4023
\MyCounter=10
```

However, this is also 'not done'. Instead one should use the allocator that the macro package provides.

```
\newcount\MyCounter
\MyCounter=10
```

In LuaMetaTEX we also have integers that don't rely on registers. These are assigned by the primitive `\integerdef`:

```
\integerdef\MyCounterA 10
```

Or better `\newinteger`.

```
\newinteger\MyCounterB
\MyCounterN10
```

There is a lowlevel manual on registers.

311 \cr

This ends a row in an alignment. It also ends an alignment preamble.

312 \crampeddisplaystyle

A less spacy alternative of `\displaystyle`; integer representation: 4.

313 \crampedscriptscriptstyle

A less spacy alternative of `\scriptscriptstyle`; integer representation: 6.

314 \crampedscriptstyle

A less spacy alternative of `\scriptstyle`; integer representation: 4.

315 \crampedtextstyle

A less spacy alternative of `\textstyle`; integer representation: 2.

316 \crcr

This ends a row in an alignment when it hasn't ended yet.

317 \csactive

Because LuaTEX (and LuaMetaTEX) are Unicode engines active characters are implemented a bit differently. They don't occupy a eight bit range of characters but are stored as control sequence with a

special prefix U+FFFF which never shows up in documents. The \csstring primitive injects the name of a control sequence without leading escape character, the \csactive injects the internal name of the following (either of not active) character. As we cannot display the prefix: \csactive~ will inject the utf sequences for U+FFFF and U+007E, so here we get the bytes EFBFBF7E. Basically the next token is preceded by \string, so when you don't provide a character you are in for a surprise.

318 \csname

This original TEX primitive starts the construction of a control sequence reference. It does a lookup and when no sequence with than name is found, it will create a hash entry and defaults its meaning to \relax.

```
\csname letters and other characters\endcsname
```

319 \csnamestring

This is a companion of \lastnamedcs that injects the name of the found control sequence. When used inside a csname constructor it is more efficient than repeating a token list, compare:

```
\csname\ifcsname whatever\endcsname\csnamestring\endcsname % referenced
\csname\ifcsname whatever\endcsname     whatever\endcsname % scanned
```

320 \csstring

This primitive returns the name of the control sequence given without the leading escape character (normally a backslash). Of course you could strip that character with a simple helper but this is more natural.

```
\csstring\mymacro
```

We get the name, not the meaning: mymacro.

321 \currentalignmentcolumn

This number keeps track of the current column.

322 \currentalignmentrow

This number keeps track of the current row.

323 \currentalignmenttabskip

This dimension reflects the currently uses tabskip.

324 \currentgrouplevel

The next example gives: [1] [2] [3] [2] [1].

```
[\the\currentgrouplevel] \bgroup
    [\the\currentgrouplevel] \bgroup
```

```
        [\the\currentgrouplevel]
    \egroup [\the\currentgrouplevel]
\egroup [\the\currentgrouplevel]
```

325 \currentgrouptype

The next example gives: [22] [1] [22] [1] [1] [23] [1] [1].

```
[\the\currentgrouptype] \bgroup
    [\the\currentgrouptype] \begingroup
        [\the\currentgrouptype]
    \endgroup [\the\currentgrouptype]
    [\the\currentgrouptype] \beginmathgroup
        [\the\currentgrouptype]
    \endmathgroup [\the\currentgrouptype]
[\the\currentgrouptype] \egroup
```

The possible values depend in the engine and for LuaMetaTEX they are:

0	bottomlevel	9	output	18	mathoperator	27	mathequationnumber
1	simple	10	mathsubformula	19	mathradical	28	localbox
2	hbox	11	mathstack	20	mathchoice	29	splitoff
3	adjustedhbox	12	mathcomponent	21	alsosimple	30	splitkeep
4	vbox	13	discretionary	22	semisimple	31	preamble
5	vtop	14	insert	23	mathsimple	32	alignset
6	dbox	15	vadjust	24	mathfence	33	finishrow
7	align	16	vcenter	25	mathinline	34	lua
8	noalign	17	mathfraction	26	mathdisplay		

326 \currentifbranch

The next example gives: [0] [1] [-1] [1] [0].

```
[\the\currentifbranch] \iftrue
    [\the\currentifbranch] \iffalse
        [\the\currentifbranch]
    \else
        [\the\currentifbranch]
    \fi [\the\currentifbranch]
\fi [\the\currentifbranch]
```

So when in the ‘then’ branch we get plus one and when in the ‘else’ branch we end up with a minus one.

327 \currentiflevel

The next example gives: [0] [1][2] [3] [2] [1] [0].

```
[\the\currentiflevel] \iftrue
    [\the\currentiflevel]\iftrue
```

```
        [\the\currentiflevel] \iftrue
            [\the\currentiflevel]
        \fi [\the\currentiflevel]
    \fi [\the\currentiflevel]
\fi [\the\currentiflevel]
```

328 \currentiftype

The next example gives: [-1] [25][25] [25] [25] [25] [-1].

```
[\the\currentiftype] \iftrue
    [\the\currentiftype]\iftrue
        [\the\currentiftype] \iftrue
            [\the\currentiftype]
        \fi [\the\currentiftype]
    \fi [\the\currentiftype]
\fi [\the\currentiftype]
```

The values are engine dependent:

0 char
1 cat
2 num
3 absnum
4 zeronum
5 intervalnum
6 float
7 absfloat
8 zerofloat
9 intervalfloat
10 dim
11 absdim
12 zerodim
13 intervaldim
14 odd
15 vmode
16 hmode
17 mmode
18 inner
19 void
20 hbox
21 vbox
22 tok
23 cstoken
24 x
25 true
26 false
27 defined
28 csname
29 incsname

30 fontchar
31 condition
32 flags
33 empty
34 relax

329 \currentloopiterator

Here we show the different expanded loop variants:

```
\edef\testA{\expandedloop  1 10 1{!}}
\edef\testB{\expandedrepeat  10  {!}}
\edef\testC{\expandedendless     {\ifnum\currentloopiterator>10 \quitloop\else !\fi}}
\edef\testD{\expandedendless     {\ifnum#I>10 \quitloop\else !\fi}}
```

All these give the same result:

```
\def \testA {!!!!!!!!!!}
\def \testB {!!!!!!!!!!}
\def \testC {!!!!!!!!!!}
\def \testD {!!!!!!!!!!}
```

The #I is a shortcut to the current loop iterator; other shortcuts are #P for the parent iterator value and #G for the grand parent.

330 \currentloopnesting

This integer reports how many nested loops are currently active. Of course in practice the value only has meaning when you know at what outer level your nested loop started.

```
\expandedloop 1 10 1 {%
    \ifodd\currentloopiterator\else
      [\expandedloop 1 \currentloopiterator 1 {%
        \the\currentloopnesting
      }]
    \fi
}
```

Here we use the two numeric state primitives \currentloopiterator and \currentloopnesting. This results in:

[22] [2222] [222222] [22222222] [2222222222]

331 \currentlysetmathstyle

This expands to the math style currently in effect, including its cramped state. Unlike an explicit style command, it does not add a style node to the math list.

332 \currentmarks

Marks only get updated when a page is split off or part of a box using \vsplit gets wrapped up. This primitive gives access to the current value of a mark and takes the number of a mark class.

333 \currentstacksize

This is more diagnostic feature than a useful one but we show it anyway. There is some basic overhead when we enter a group:

```
\bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
    \bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
        \bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
        [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
    [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
[\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
```

[222] [223] [224] [224] [223] [222]

As soon as we define something or change a value, the stack gets populated by information needed for recovery after the group ends.

```
\bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
    \scratchcounter 1
    \bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
        \scratchdimen 1pt
        \scratchdimen 2pt
        \bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
            \scratchcounter 2
            \scratchcounter 3
        [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
    [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
[\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
```

[222] [224] [226] [227] [225] [223]

The stack also keeps some state information, for instance when a box is being built. In LuaMetaTEX that is is quite a bit more than in other engines but it is compensated by more efficient save stack handling elsewhere.

```
\hbox \bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
    \hbox \bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
        \hbox \bgroup [\the\currentstacksize]
        [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
    [\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
[\the\currentstacksize] \egroup
```

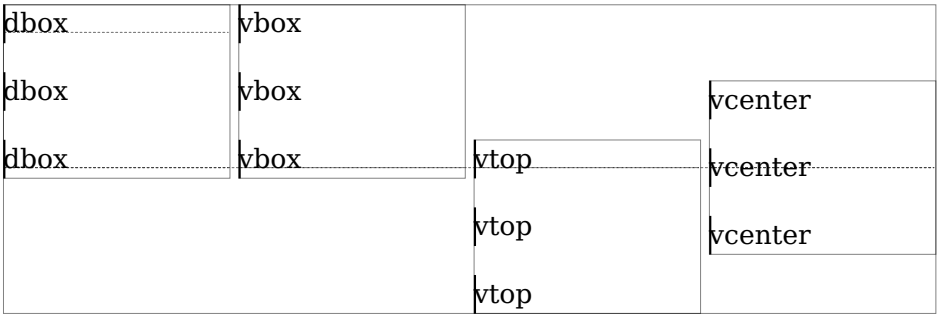
[231] [241] [251] [251] [241] [231]

334 \day

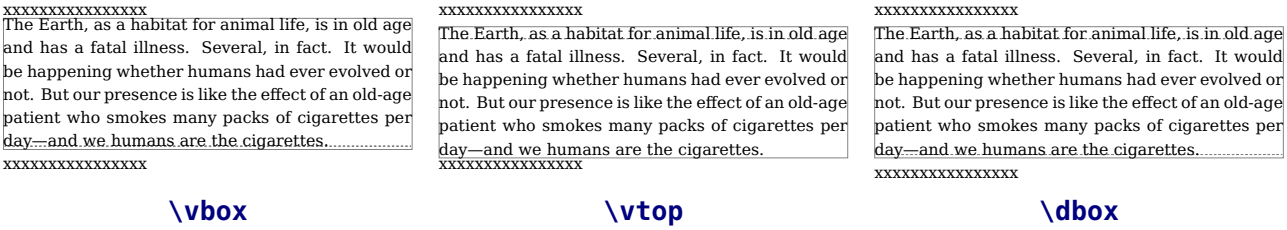
This internal number starts out with the day that the job started.

335 \dbox

A \dbox is just a \vbox (baseline at the bottom) but it has the property ‘dual baseline’ which means that is some cases it will behave like a \vtop (baseline at the top) too. Like:



A **\dbox** behaves like a **\vtop** when it's appended to a vertical list which means that the height of the first box or rule determines the (base)line correction that gets applied.



336 \deadcycles

This counter is incremented every time the output routine is entered. When `\maxdeadcycles` is reached TEX will issue an error message, so you'd better reset its value when a page is done.

337 \def

This is the main definition command, as in:

```
\def\foo{l me}
```

with companions like `\gdef`, `\edef`, `\xdef`, etc. and variants like:

```
\def\foo#1{... #1...}
```

where the hash is used in the preamble and for referencing. More about that can be found in the low level manual about macros.

In the ConTEXt distribution you can find explanations about how LuaMetaTEX extends the argument parser. When defining a macro you can do this:

```
\def\foo(#1)#2{...}
```

Here the first argument between parentheses is mandate. But the magic prefix `\tolerant` makes that limitation go away:

```
\tolerant\def\foo(#1)#2{...}
```

A variant is this:

```
\tolerant\def\foo(#1)#*(#2){...}
```

Here we have two optional arguments, possibly be separated by spaces. There are more parsing options, that we just mention:

+	keep the braces
-	discard and don't count the argument
/	remove leading an trailing spaces and pars
=	braces are mandate
_	braces are mandate and kept
^	keep leading spaces
1-9	an argument
0	discard but count the argument
*	ignore spaces
.	ignore pars and spaces
,	push back space when no match
:	pick up scanning here
;	quit scanning

338 \defaulthyphenchar

When a font is loaded its hyphen character is set to this value. It can be changed afterwards. However, in LuaMetaTEX font loading is under Lua control so these properties can be set otherwise.

339 \defaultskewchar

When a font is loaded its skew character is set to this value. It can be changed afterwards. However, in LuaMetaTEX font loading is under Lua control so these properties can be set otherwise. Also, OpenType math fonts have top anchor instead.

340 \defcsname

We now get a series of log clutter avoidance primitives. It's fine if you argue that they are not really needed, just don't use them.

```
\expandafter\def\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
            \defcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
```

The fact that TEX has three (expanded and global) companions can be seen as a signal that less verbosity makes sense. It's just that macro packages use plenty of \csname's.

341 \deferred

This is mostly a compatibility prefix and it can be checked at the Lua end when there is a Lua based assignment going on. It is the counterpart of \immediate. In the traditional engines a \write is normally deferred (turned into a node) and can be handled \immediate, while a \special does the opposite.

342 \delcode

This assigns delimiter properties to an eight bit character so it has little use in an OpenType math setup. WHen the assigned value is hex encoded, the first byte denotes the small family, then we have two bytes for the small index, followed by three similar bytes for the large variant.

343 \delimiter

This command inserts a delimiter with the given specification. In OpenType math we use a different command so it is unlikely that this primitive is used in LuaMetaTEX. It takes a number that can best be coded hexadecimal: one byte for the class, one for the small family, two for the small index, one for the large family and two for the large index. This demonstrates that it can't handle wide fonts. Also, in OpenType math fonts the larger sizes and extensible come from the same font as the small symbol. On top of that, in LuaMetaTEX we have more classes than fit in a byte.

344 \delimiterfactor

This is one of the parameters that determines the size of a delimiter: at least this factor times the formula height divided by 1000. In OpenType math different properties and strategies are used.

345 \delimitershortfall

This is one of the parameters that determines the size of a delimiter: at least the formula height minus this parameter. In OpenType math different properties and strategies are used.

346 \detokened

The following token will be serialized into characters with category 'other'.

```
\toks0{123}
\def\foo{let's be \relax'd}
\def\oof#1{let's see #1}
\detokened\toks0
\detokened\foo
\detokened\oof
\detokened\setbox
\detokened X
```

Gives:

```
123
let's be \relax 'd
\oof
\setbox
X
```

Macros with arguments are not shown.

347 \detokenize

This e-TEX primitive turns the content of the provides list will become characters, kind of verbatim.

```
\expandafter\let\expandafter\temp\detokenize{1} \meaning\temp
\expandafter\let\expandafter\temp\detokenize{A} \meaning\temp
```

```
the character U+0031 1
the character U+0041 A
```

348 \detokenized

The following (single) token will be serialized into characters with category 'other'.

```
\toks0{123}
\def\foo{let's be \relax'd}
\def\oof#1{let's see #1}
\detokenized\toks0
\detokenized\foo
\detokenized\oof
\detokenized\setbox
\detokenized X
```

Gives:

```
\toks 0
\foo
\oof
\setbox
X
```

It is one of these new primitives that complement others like `\detokened` and such, and they are often mostly useful in experiments of some low level magic, which made them stay.

349 \dimen

Like `\count` this is a register accessor which is described in more detail in a low level manual.

```
\dimen0=10pt
```

While TEX has some assumptions with respect to the first ten count registers (as well as the one that holds the output, normally 255), all dimension registers are treated equal. However, you need to be aware of clashes with other usage. Therefore you can best use the predefined scratch registers or define dedicate ones with the **\newdimen** macro.

350 \dimendef

This primitive is used by the **\newdimen** macro when it relates a control sequence with a specific register. Only use it when you know what you're doing.

351 \dimensiondef

A variant of `\integerdef` is:

```
\dimensiondef\MyDimen = 1234pt
```

The properties are comparable to the ones described in the section `\integerdef`.

352 \dimexperimental

This is the most extensive of the triplet `\dimexpr`, `\dimexpression` and and `\dimexperimental`. The first one is the simple e-TEX scanner, the second one adds a few more operators and the third one

adds even more and uses a reverse polish notation stack internally which means that it is better with priorities and nesting. The reason for calling it experimental is that it needs testing an dis less of a drop-in than the second one.

For more about this scanner we refer to the ConTEXt lowlevel manuals, especially the one about expressions..

353 \dimexpr

This primitive is similar to of `\numexpr` but operates on dimensions instead. Integer quantities are interpreted as dimensions in scaled points.

```
\the\dimexpr (1pt + 2pt - 5pt) * 10 / 2 \relax
```

gives: -10.0pt. You can mix in symbolic integers and dimensions. This doesn't work:

because the engine scans for a dimension and only for an integer (or equivalent) after a * or /.

354 \dimexpression

This command is like `\numexpression` but results in a dimension instead of an integer. Where `\dimexpr` doesn't like `2 * 10pt` this expression primitive is quite happy with it.

You can get an idea what the engines sees by setting `\tracingexpressions` to a value larger than zero. It shows the expression in rpn form.

```
\dimexpression 4pt * 2   + 6pt   \relax
\dimexpression 2   * 4pt + 6pt   \relax
\dimexpression 4pt * 2.5 + 6pt   \relax
\dimexpression 2.5 * 4pt + 6pt   \relax
\numexpression 2 * 4 + 6         \relax
\numexpression (1 + 2) * (3 + 4) \relax
```

The `\relax` is mandate simply because there are keywords involved so the parser needs to know where to stop scanning. It made no sense to be more clever and introduce fuzziness (so there is no room for exposing in-depth TEX insight and expertise here). In case you wonder: the difference in performance between the e-TEX expression mechanism and the more extended variant will normally not be noticed, probably because they both use a different approach and because the e-TEX variant also has been optimized.

355 \directlua

This is the low level interface to Lua:

Gives: "Greetings from the lua end!" as expected. In Lua we have access to all kind of internals of the engine. In LuaMetaTEX the interfaces have been polished and extended compared to LuaTEX. Although many primitives and mechanisms were added to the TEX frontend, the main extension interface remains Lua. More information can be found in documents that come with ConTEXt, in presentations and in articles.

356 \discretionary

The three snippets given with this command determine the pre, post and replace component of the injected discretionary node. The `penalty` keyword permits setting a penalty with this node. The `postword` keyword indicates that this discretionary starts a word, and `preword` ends it. With `break` the line break algorithm will prefer a pre or post component over a replace, and with `nobreak` replace will win over pre. With `class` you can set a math class that will determine spacing and such for discretionaries used in math mode.

357 \discretionaryoptions

Processing of discretionaries is controlled by this bitset:

`0x00000000`	normalword
`0x00000001`	preword
`0x00000002`	postword
`0x00000010`	preferbreak
`0x00000020`	prefernobreak
`0x00000040`	noitaliccorrection
`0x00000080`	nozeroitaliccorrection
`0x00000100`	standalone
`0x00010000`	userfirst
`0x40000000`	userlast

These can also be set on `\discretionary` using the `options` key.

358 \displayindent

The `\displaywidth`, `\displayindent` and `\predisplaysize` parameters are set by the line break routine (but can be adapted by the user), so that mid-par display formula can adapt itself to hanging indentation and par shapes. I order to calculate thee values and adapt the line break state afterwards such a display formula is assumed to occupy three lines, so basically a rather compact formula.

359 \displaylimits

By default in math display mode limits are place on top while in inline mode they are placed like scripts, after the operator. Placement can be forced with the `\limits` and `\nolimits` modifiers (after the operator). Because there can be multiple of these in a row there is `\displaylimits` that forces the default placement, so effectively it acts here as a reset modifier.

360 \displaystyle

One of the main math styles; integer representation: 0.

361 \displaywidowpenalties

This is a math specific variant of `\widowpenalties`.

362 \displaywidowpenalty

This is a math specific variant of `\widowpenalty`.

363 \displaywidth

This parameter determines the width of the formula and normally defaults to the \hsize unless we are in the middle of a paragraph in which case it is compensated for hanging indentation or the par shape.

364 \divide

The \divide operation can be applied to integers, dimensions, float, attribute and glue quantities. There are subtle rounding differences between the divisions in expressions and \divide:

```
\scratchcounter 1049 \numexpr\scratchcounter / 10\relax : 105
\scratchcounter 1049 \numexpr\scratchcounter : 10\relax : 104
\scratchcounter 1049 \divide\scratchcounter by 10       : 104
```

The : divider in \dimexpr is something that we introduced in LuaTEX.

365 \divideby

This is slightly more efficient variant of \divide that doesn't look for by. See previous section.

366 \doublehyphendemerits

This penalty will be added to the penalty assigned to a breakpoint that results in two lines ending with a hyphen.

367 \doublepenaltymode

When set to one this parameter signals the backend to use the alternative (left side) penalties of the pairs set on \widowpenalties, \clubpenalties and \brokenpenalties. For more information on this you can consult manuals (and articles) that come with ConTEXt.

368 \dp

Returns the depth of the given box.

369 \dpack

This does what \dbox does but without callback overhead.

370 \dsplit

This is the dual baseline variant of \vsplit (see \dbox for what that means).

371 \dump

This finishes an (ini) run and dumps a format (basically the current state of the engine).

372 \edef

This is the expanded version of \def.

```
\def \foo{foo}      \meaning\foo
\def \ofo{\foo\foo} \meaning\ofo
\edef\oof{\foo\foo} \meaning\oof
```

Because \foo is unprotected it will expand inside the body definition:

```
macro:foo
macro:\foo \foo
macro:foofoo
```

373 \edefcsname

This is the companion of \edef:

```
\expandafter\edef\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
            \edefcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
```

374 \edivide

When expressions were introduced the decision was made to round the divisions which is incompatible with the way \divide works. The expression scanners in LuaMetaTEX compensates that by providing a : for integer division. The \edivide does the opposite: it rounds the way expressions do.

```
\the\dimexpr .4999pt                    : 2 \relax          =.24994pt
\the\dimexpr .4999pt                    / 2 \relax          =.24995pt
\scratchdimen.4999pt \divide \scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen=.24994pt
\scratchdimen.4999pt \edivide\scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen=.24995pt

\the\numexpr   1001                       : 2 \relax            =500
\the\numexpr   1001                       / 2 \relax            =501
\scratchcounter1001  \divide \scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=500
\scratchcounter1001  \edivide\scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=501
```

Keep in mind that with dimensions we have a fractional part so we actually rounding applies to the fraction. For that reason we also provide \rdivide.

```
0.24994pt=.24994pt
0.24995pt=.24995pt
0.24994pt=.24994pt
0.24995pt=.24995pt

500=500
501=501
500=500
501=501
```

375 \edivideby

This the by-less variant of \edivide.

376 \efcode

This primitive originates in pdfTEX and can be used to set the expansion factor of a glyph (characters). This primitive is obsolete because the values can be set in the font specification that gets passed via Lua to TEX. Keep in mind that setting font properties at the TEX end is a global operation and can therefore influence related fonts. In LuaMetaTEX the `\cf` code can be used to specify the compression factor independent from the expansion factor. The primitive takes three values: font, character code, and factor.

377 \else

This traditional primitive is part of the condition testing mechanism. When a condition matches, TEX will continue till it sees an `\else` or `\or` or `\orelse` (to be discussed later). It will then do a fast skipping pass till it sees an `\fi`.

378 \emergencyextrastretch

This is one of the extended parbuilder parameters. You can you it so temporary increase the permitted stretch without knowing or messing with the normal value.

379 \emergencyleftskip

This is one of the extended parbuilder parameters (playground). It permits going ragged left in case of a too bad result.

380 \emergencyrightskip

This is one of the extended parbuilder parameters (playground). It permits going ragged right in case of a too bad result.

381 \emergencystretch

When set the par builder will run a third pass in order to fit the set criteria.

382 \emptyparagraphmode

An empty display math environment can add bogus nodes to the list. Although we don't use the engine's display math in ConTEXt, we do support this parameter because it permitted us to test a comparable feature in LuaTEX. In our case the value is a bitmap:

`0x01`	par	`0x04`	indentlist
`0x02`	dir	`0x08`	indentglue

383 \end

This ends a TEX run, unless of course this primitive is redefined.

384 \endcsname

This primitive is used in combination with \csname, \ifcsname and \begincsname where its end the scanning for the to be constructed control sequence token.

385 \endgroup

This is the companion of the \begingroup primitive that opens a group. See \beginsimplegroup for more info.

386 \endinput

The engine can be in different input modes: reading from file, reading from a token list, expanding a macro, processing something that comes back from Lua, etc. This primitive quits reading from file:

```
this is seen
\endinput
here we're already quit
```

There is a catch. This is what the above gives:

this is seen

but how about this:

```
this is seen
before \endinput after
here we're already quit
```

Here we get:

this is seen before after

Because a token list is one line, the following works okay:

```
\def\quitrun{\ifsomething \endinput \fi}
```

but in a file you'd have to do this when you quit in a conditional:

```
\ifsomething
    \expandafter \endinput
\fi
```

While the one-liner works as expected:

```
\ifsomething \endinput \fi
```

387 \endlinechar

This is an internal integer register. When set to positive value the character with that code point will be appended to the line. The current value is 13. Here is an example:

```
\endlinechar\hyphenasciicode
```

```
line 1
line 2
```

line 1-line 2-

If the character is active, the property is honored and the command kicks in. The maximum value is 127 (the maximum character code a single byte utf character can carry.)

388 \endlocalcontrol

See \beginlocalcontrol.

389 \endmathgroup

This primitive is the counterpart of \beginmathgroup.

390 \endmvl

This ends \beginmvl.

391 \endsimplegroup

This one ends a simple group, see \beginsimplegroup for an explanation about grouping primitives.

392 \enforced

The engine can be set up to prevent overloading of primitives and macros defined as \permanent or \immutable. However, a macro package might want to get around this in controlled situations, which is why we have a \enforced prefix. This prefix in interpreted differently in so called 'ini' mode when macro definitions can be dumped in the format. Internally they get an always flag as indicator that in these places an overload is possible.

```
\permanent\def\foo{original}

\def\oof         {\def\foo{fails}}
\def\oof{\enforced\def\foo{succeeds}}
```

Of course this only has an effect when overload protection is enabled.

393 \eofinput

This is a variant on \input that takes a token list as first argument. That list is expanded when the file ends. It has companion primitives \atendoffile (single token) and \atendoffiled (multiple tokens).

394 \eqno

This primitive stores the (typeset) content (presumably a number) and when the display formula is wrapped that number will end up right of the formula.

395 \errhelp

This is additional help information to \errmessage that triggers an error and shows a message.

396 \errmessage

This primitive expects a token list and shows its expansion on the console and/or in the log file, depending on how TEX is configured. After that it will enter the error state and either goes on or waits for input, again depending on how TEX is configured. For the record: we don't use this primitive in ConTEXt.

397 \errorcontextlines

This parameter determines the number on lines shown when an error is triggered.

398 \errorrecoverymode

There are cases when an error is not fatal and TEX can easily recover from it. It does not mean that one should not pay attention. This parameter gets a bitset that makes the engine turn these errors into warnings and continue. Currently we have two options: 0x01 for fixing an alignment tab, and 0x02 for fixing infinite shrink (which happens in various places). We don't enable this in ConTEXt; it's more for unattended runs.

399 \errorstopmode

This directive stops at every opportunity to interact. In ConTEXt we overload the actions in a callback and quit the run because we can assume that a successful outcome is unlikely.

400 \escapechar

This internal integer has the code point of the character that get prepended to a control sequence when it is serialized (for instance in tracing or messages).

401 \etexexprmode

When set to a positive value the : and ; operators are not interpreted. In ConTEXt we keep this value zero! This flag was added in 2024 for LATEX where in places ; is used as signal to end an expression instead of **\relax**). Because one never knows what users expect this flag disables both.

402 \etoks

This assigns an expanded token list to a token register:

```
\def\temp{less stuff}
\etoks\scratchtoks{a bit \temp}
```

The orginal value of the register is lost.

403 \etoksapp

A variant of \toksapp is the following: it expands the to be appended content.

```
\def\temp{more stuff}
\etoksapp\scratchtoks{some \temp}
```

404 \etokspre

A variant of \tokspre is the following: it expands the to be prepended content.

```
\def\temp{less stuff}
\etokspre\scratchtoks{a bit \temp}
```

405 \eufactor

When we introduced the es (2.5cm) and ts (2.5mm) units as metric variants of the in we also added the eu factor. One eu equals one tenth of a es times the \eufactor. The ts is a convenient offset in test files, the es a convenient ones for layouts and image dimensions and the eu permits definitions that scale nicely without the need for dimensions. They also were a prelude to what later became possible with \associateunit.

406 \everybeforepar

This token register is expanded before a paragraph is triggered. The reason for triggering is available in \lastpartrigger.

407 \everycr

This token list gets expanded when a row ends in an alignment. Normally it will use \noalign as wrapper

```
{\everycr{\noalign{H}}            \halign{#\cr test\cr test\cr}}
{\everycr{\noalign{V}} \hsize 4cm \valign{#\cr test\cr test\cr}}
```

Watch how the \cr ending the preamble also get this treatment:
H
test

H
test

H

Vtest Vtest V

408 \everydisplay

This token list gets expanded every time we enter display mode. It is a companion of \everymath.

409 \everyeof

The content of this token list is injected when a file ends but it can only be used reliably when one is really sure that no other file is loaded in the process. So in the end it is of no real use in a more complex macro package.

410 \everyhbox

This token list behaves similar to \everyvbox so look there for an explanation.

411 \everyjob

This token list register is injected at the start of a job, or more precisely, just before the main control loop starts.

412 \everymath

Often math needs to be set up independent from the running text and this token list can be used to do that. There is also \everydisplay.

413 \everymathatom

When a math atom is seen this tokenlist is expanded before content is processed inside the atom body. It is basically a math companion for \everyhbox and friends and it is therefore probably just as useless. The next example shows how it works:

```
\everymathatom
  {\begingroup
   \scratchcounter\lastatomclass
   \everymathatom{}%
   \mathghost{\hbox to 0pt yoffset -1ex{\smallinfofont \setstrut\strut \the
                                                    \scratchcounter\hss}}%
   \endgroup}

$ a = \mathatom class 4 {b} + \mathatom class 5 {c} $
```

We get a formula with open- and close atom spacing applied to b and c:

$a = {}_{4}b+{}_{5}c$

This example shows bit of all: we want the number to be invisible to the math machinery so we ghost it. So, we need to make sure we don't get recursion due to nested injection and expansion of \everymathatom and of course we need to store the number. The \lastatomclass state variable is only meaningful inside an explicit atom wrapper like \mathatom and \mathatom.

414 \everypar

When a paragraph starts this tokenlist is expanded before content is processed.

415 \everyparbegin

This token list is inserted *before* \everypar and likewise it's not reset.

416 \everyparend

This token lists is injected at the end of a paragraph but before collected end of group tokens. This register is not reset afterwards.

417 \everytab

This token list gets expanded every time we start a table cell in \halign or \valign.

418 \everyvbox

This token list gets expanded every time we start a vertical box. Like \everyhbox this is not that useful unless you are certain that there are no nested boxes that don't need this treatment. Of course you can wipe this register in this expansion, like:

```
\everyvbox{\kern10pt\everyvbox{}}
```

419 \exapostrophechar

This parameter is like \exhyphenchar marks a character code as being an explicit apostrophe. This feature related to the node.direct.collapsing function that turns replaces some sequences that relate to traditional TEX usage: hyphens, en-dashes (U+2013), em-dashes (U+2014) and apostrophes (U+2019). For this to kick in, the font's text control option must enable it and hyphenation mode must have the replace apostrophe bit set.

420 \exceptionpenalty

In exceptions we can indicate a penalty by [digit] in which case a penalty is injected set by this primitive, multiplied by the digit.

421 \exhyphenchar

The character that is used as pre component of the related discretionary.

422 \exhyphenpenalty

The penalty injected after - or \- unless \hyphenationmode is set to force the dedisated penalties.

423 \expand

Beware, this is not a prefix but a directive to ignore the protected characters of the following macro.

```
\protected \def \testa{\the\scratchcounter}
           \edef\testb{\testa}
           \edef\testc{\expand\testa}
```

The meaning of the three macros is:

```
protected macro:\the \scratchcounter
macro:\testa
macro:123
```

424 \expandactive

This a bit of an outlier and mostly there for completeness.

```
                          \meaningasis~
\edef\foo{~}              \meaningasis\foo
\edef\foo{\expandactive~} \meaningasis\foo
```

There seems to be no difference but the real meaning of the first \foo is 'active character 126' while the second \foo 'protected call ' is.

\global \permanent \protected \def ~ {\nobreakspace }
\def \foo {~}
\def \foo {~}

Of course the definition of the active tilde is ConTEXt specific and situation dependent.

425 \expandafter

This original TEX primitive stores the next token, does a one level expansion of what follows it, which actually can be an not expandable token, and reinjects the stored token in the input. Like:

```
\expandafter\let\csname my weird macro name\endcsname{m w m n}
```

Without \expandafter the \csname primitive would have been let to the left brace (effectively then a begin group). Actually in this particular case the control sequence with the weird name is injected and when it didn't yet exist it will get the meaning \relax so we sort of have two assignments in a row then.

426 \expandafterpars

Here is another gobbler: the next token is reinjected after following spaces and par tokens have been read. So:

```
[\expandafterpars 1 2]
[\expandafterpars 3
4]
[\expandafterpars 5

6]
```

gives us: [12] [34] [56], because empty lines are like \par and therefore ignored.

427 \expandafterspaces

This is a gobbler: the next token is reinjected after following spaces have been read. Here is a simple example:

```
[\expandafterspaces 1 2]
[\expandafterspaces 3
4]
[\expandafterspaces 5

6]
```

We get this typeset: [12] [34] [5

6], because a newline normally is configured to be a space (and leading spaces in a line are normally being ignored anyway).

428 \expandcstoken

The rationale behind this primitive is that when we `\let` a single token like a character it is hard to compare that with something similar, stored in a macro. This primitive pushes back a single token alias created by `\let` into the input.

```
\let\tempA + \meaning\tempA

\let\tempB X \meaning\tempB \crlf
\let\tempC $ \meaning\tempC \par

\edef\temp         {\tempA} \doifelse{\temp}{+}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \crlf
\edef\temp         {\tempB} \doifelse{\temp}{X}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \crlf
\edef\temp         {\tempC} \doifelse{\temp}{X}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \par

\edef\temp{\expandcstoken\tempA} \doifelse{\temp}{+}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \crlf
\edef\temp{\expandcstoken\tempB} \doifelse{\temp}{X}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \crlf
\edef\temp{\expandcstoken\tempC} \doifelse{\temp}{$}{Y}{N} \meaning\temp \par

\doifelse{\expandcstoken\tempA}{+}{Y}{N}
\doifelse{\expandcstoken\tempB}{X}{Y}{N}
\doifelse{\expandcstoken\tempC}{$}{Y}{N} \par
```

The meaning of the `\let` macros shows that we have a shortcut to a character with (in this case) catcode letter, other (here ‘other character’ gets abbreviated to ‘character’), math shift etc.

```
the character U+002B 'plus sign'

the letter U+0058 X
math shift character U+0024 'dollar sign'

N macro:\tempA
N macro:\tempB
N macro:\tempC

Y macro:+
Y macro:X
Y macro:$

Y Y Y
```

Here we use the ConTEXt macro `\doifelse` which can be implemented in different ways, but the only property relevant to the user is that the expanded content of the two arguments is compared.

429 \expanded

This primitive complements the two expansion related primitives mentioned in the previous two sections. This time the content will be expanded and then pushed back into the input. Protected macros will not be expanded, so you can use this primitive to expand the arguments in a call.

```
\def\A{!}
          \def\B#1{\string#1}                    \B{\A}
          \def\B#1{\string#1} \expanded{\noexpand\B{\A}}
\protected\def\B#1{\string#1}                    \B{\A}

\A
```

!
\A

430 \expandedafter

The following two lines are equivalent:

```
\def\foo{123}
\expandafter[\expandafter[\expandafter\secondofthreearguments\foo]]
\expandedafter{[[\secondofthreearguments}\foo]]
```

In ConTEXt MkIV the number of times that one has multiple `\expandafters` is much larger than in ConTEXt LMTX thanks to some of the new features in LuaMetaTEX, and this primitive is not really used yet in the core code.

[[2]]
[[2]]

431 \expandeddetokenize

This is a companion to `\detokenize` that expands its argument:

```
\def\foo{12#H3}
\def\oof{\foo}
\detokenize        {\foo} \detokenize        {\oof}
\expandeddetokenize{\foo} \expandeddetokenize{\oof}
\edef\ofo{\expandeddetokenize{\foo}} \meaningless\ofo
\edef\ofo{\expandeddetokenize{\oof}} \meaningless\ofo
```

This is a bit more convenient than

```
\detokenize \expandafter {\expanded {\foo}}
```

kind of solutions. We get:

\foo \oof
12#3 12#3

12#3
12#3

432 \expandedendless

This one loops forever but because the loop counter is not set you need to find a way to quit it.

433 \expandedloop

This variant of the previously introduced `\localcontrolledloop` doesn't enter a local branch but immediately does its work. This means that it can be used inside an expansion context like `\edef`.

```
\edef\whatever
  {\expandedloop 1 10 1
     {\scratchcounter=\the\currentloopiterator\relax}}

\meaningasis\whatever
```

```
\def \whatever {\scratchcounter =1\relax \scratchcounter =2\relax \scratchcounter =3\relax \scratchcounter
=4\relax \scratchcounter =5\relax \scratchcounter =6\relax \scratchcounter =7\relax \scratchcounter
=8\relax \scratchcounter =9\relax \scratchcounter =10\relax }
```

434 \expandedrepeat

This one takes one instead of three arguments which is sometimes more convenient.

435 \expandparameter

This primitive is a predecessor of `\parameterdef` so we stick to a simple example.

```
\def\foo#1#2%
  {\integerdef\MyIndexOne\parameterindex\plusone % 1
   \integerdef\MyIndexTwo\parameterindex\plustwo % 2
   \oof{P}\oof{Q}\oof{R}\norelax}

\def\oof#1%
  {<1:\expandparameter\MyIndexOne><1:\expandparameter\MyIndexOne>%
   #1%
   <2:\expandparameter\MyIndexTwo><2:\expandparameter\MyIndexTwo>}

\foo{A}{B}
```

In principle the whole parameter stack can be accessed but often one never knows if a specific macro is called nested. The original idea behind this primitive was tracing but it can also be used to avoid passing parameters along a chain of calls.

<1:A><1:A>P<2:B><2:B><1:A><1:A>Q<2:B><2:B><1:A><1:A>R<2:B><2:B>

436 \expandtoken

This primitive creates a token with a specific combination of catcode and character code. Because it assumes some knowledge of TEX we can show it using some `\expandafter` magic:

```
\expandafter\let\expandafter\temp\expandtoken 11 `X \meaning\temp
\expandafter\let\expandafter\temp\expandtoken 12 `X \meaning\temp
```

The meanings are:

```
the letter U+0058 X
the character U+0058 X
```

Using other catcodes is possible but the results of injecting them into the input directly (or here by injecting \temp) can be unexpected because of what TEX expects. You can get messages you normally won't get, for instance about unexpected alignment interference, which is a side effect of TEX using some catcode/character combinations as signals and there is no reason to change those internals. That said:

```
\xdef\tempA{\expandtoken  9 `X} \meaning\tempA
\xdef\tempB{\expandtoken 10 `X} \meaning\tempB
\xdef\tempC{\expandtoken 11 `X} \meaning\tempC
\xdef\tempD{\expandtoken 12 `X} \meaning\tempD
```

are all valid and from the meaning you cannot really deduce what's in there:

```
macro:X
macro:X
macro:X
macro:X
```

But you can be assured that:

```
[AB: \ifx\tempA\tempB Y\else N\fi]
[AC: \ifx\tempA\tempC Y\else N\fi]
[AD: \ifx\tempA\tempD Y\else N\fi]
[BC: \ifx\tempB\tempC Y\else N\fi]
[BD: \ifx\tempB\tempD Y\else N\fi]
[CD: \ifx\tempC\tempD Y\else N\fi]
```

makes clear that they're different: [AB: N] [AC: N] [AD: N] [BC: N] [BD: N] [CD: N], and in case you wonder, the characters with catcode 10 are spaces, while those with code 9 are ignored.

437 \expandtoks

This is a more efficient equivalent of \the applied to a token register, so:

```
\scratchtoks{just some tokens}
\edef\TestA{[\the       \scratchtoks]}
\edef\TestB{[\expandtoks\scratchtoks]}
[\the       \scratchtoks] [\TestA] \meaning\TestA
[\expandtoks\scratchtoks] [\TestB] \meaning\TestB
```

does the expected:

```
[just some tokens] [[just some tokens]] macro:[just some tokens]
[just some tokens] [[just some tokens]] macro:[just some tokens]
```

The \expandtoken primitive avoid a copy into the input when there is no need for it.

438 \explicitdiscretionary

This is the verbose alias for one of TEX's single character control sequences: \-.

439 \explicithyphenpenalty

The penalty injected after an automatic discretionary \-, when \hyphenationmode enables this.

440 \explicititaliccorrection

This is the verbose alias for one of TEX's single character control sequences: \/. Italic correction is a character property specific to TEX and the concept is not present in modern font technologies. There is a callback that hooks into this command so that a macro package can provide its own solution to this (or alternatively it can assign values to the italic correction field.

441 \explicitspace

This is the verbose alias for one of TEX's single character control sequences: \. A space is inserted with properties according the space related variables. There is look-back involved in order to deal with space factors.

When \nospaces is set to 1 no spaces are inserted, when its value is 2 a zero space is inserted.

442 \fam

In a numeric context it returns the current family number, otherwise it sets the given family. The number of families in a traditional engine is 16, in LuaTEX it is 256 and in LuaMetaTEX we have at most 64 families. A future version can lower that number when we need more classes.

443 \fi

This traditional primitive is part of the condition testing mechanism and ends a test. So, we have:

```
\ifsomething ... \else ... \fi
\ifsomething ... \or ... \or ... \else ... \fi
\ifsomething ... \orelse \ifsometing  ... \else ... \fi
\ifsomething ... \or ... \orelse \ifsometing  ... \else ... \fi
```

The \orelse is new in LuaMetaTEX and a continuation like we find in other programming languages (see later section).

444 \finalhyphendemerits

This penalty will be added to the penalty assigned to a breakpoint when that break results in a pre-last line ending with a hyphen.

445 \firstmark

This is a reference to the first mark on the (split off) page, it gives back tokens.

446 \firstmarks

This is a reference to the first mark with the given id (a number) on the (split off) page, it gives back tokens.

447 \firstvalidlanguage

Language id's start at zero, which makes it the first valid language. You can set this parameter to indicate the first language id that is actually a language. The current value is 1, so lower values will not trigger hyphenation.

448 \fitnessclasses

We can have more fitness classes than traditional TEX that has 'very loose', 'loose', 'decent' and 'tight'. In ConTEXt we have 'veryloose', 'loose', 'almostloose', 'barelyloose', 'decent', 'barelytight', 'almosttight', 'tight' and 'verytight'. Although we can go up to 31 this is already more than enough. The default is the same as in regular TEX.

The `\fitnessclasses` can be used to set the criteria and like other specification primitives (like `\parshape` and `\widowpenalties`, it expects a count. With `\adjacentdemerits` one can set the demerits that are added depending on the distance between classes (in traditional TEX that is `adjdemerits` for all distances larger than one. With the double option the demerits come in pairs because we can go up or down in the list of fitness classes.

449 \float

In addition to integers and dimensions, which are fixed 16.16 integer floats we also have 'native' floats, based on 32 bit posit unums.

```
\float0 = 123.456           \the\float0
\float2 = 123.456           \the\float0
\advance \float0 by 123.456 \the\float0
\advance \float0 by \float2 \the\float0
\divideby\float0 3          \the\float0
```

They come with the same kind of support as the other numeric data types:

123.456000328
123.456000328
246.912000656
370.368003845
123.456001282

We leave the subtle differences between floats and dimensions to the user to investigate:

```
\dimen00 = 123.456pt          \the\dimen0
\dimen02 = 123.456pt          \the\dimen0
```

```
\advance \dimen0 by 123.456pt \the\dimen0
\advance \dimen0 by \dimen2   \the\dimen0
\divideby\dimen0 3            \the\dimen0
```

The nature of posits is that they are more accurate around zero (or smaller numbers in general).

123.456pt
123.456pt
246.91199pt
370.36798pt
123.456pt

This also works:

```
\float0=123.456e4
\float2=123.456    \multiply\float2 by 10000
\the\float0
\the\float2
```

The values are (as expected) the same:

1234560
1234560

450 \floatdef

This primitive defines a symbolic (macro) alias to a float register, just like `\countdef` and friends do.

451 \floatexpr

This is the companion of `\numexpr`, `\dimexpr` etc.

```
\scratchcounter 200
\the   \floatexpr 123.456/456.123     \relax
\the   \floatexpr 1.2*\scratchcounter \relax
\the   \floatexpr \scratchcounter/3   \relax
\number\floatexpr \scratchcounter/3   \relax
```

Watch the difference between `\the` and `\number`:

0.270663833
240
66.666666985
67

452 \floatingpenalty

When an insertion is split (across pages) this one is added to to accumulated `\insertpenalties`. In LuaMetaTEX this penalty can be stored per insertion class.

453 \flushmarks

This primitive is an addition to the multiple marks mechanism that originates in e-TEX and inserts a reset signal for the mark given category that will perform a clear operation (like `\clearmarks` which operates immediately).

454 \flushmvl

This returns a vertical box with the content of the accumulated mvl list (see `\beginmvl`).

455 \font

This primitive is either a symbolic reference to the current font or in the perspective of an assignment is used to trigger a font definitions with a given name (`cs`) and specification. In LuaMetaTEX the assignment will trigger a callback that then handles the definition; in addition to the filename an optional size specifier is checked (`at` or `scaled`).

In LuaMetaTEX *all* font loading is delegated to Lua, and there is no loading code built in the engine. Also, instead of `\font` in ConTEXt one uses dedicated and more advanced font definition commands.

456 \fontcharba

Fetches the bottom anchor of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 1.8275pt. However, this anchor is only available when it is set and it is not part of OpenType; it is something that ConTEXt provides for math fonts.

457 \fontchardp

Fetches the depth of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 2.22168pt.

458 \fontcharht

Fetches the width of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 5.33203pt.

459 \fontcharic

Fetches the italic correction of a character in the given font, but because it is not an OpenType property it is unlikely to return something useful. Although math fonts have such a property in ConTEXt we deal with it differently.

460 \fontcharlb

This command returns the left-bottom math kern of a glyph. These kerns are set by ConTEXtfont goodies and more reliable than the OPENTYPE staircase kerns.

461 \fontcharlt

This command returns the left-top math kern of a glyph.

462 \fontcharrb

This command returns the right-bottom math kern of a glyph.

463 \fontcharrt

This command returns the right-top math kern of a glyph.

464 \fontcharta

Fetches the top anchor of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 1.8275pt. This is a specific property of math characters because in text mark anchoring is driven by a feature.

465 \fontcharwd

Fetches the width of a character in the given font, so:

results in: 6.40137pt.

466 \fontdimen

A traditional TEX font has a couple of font specific dimensions, we only mention the seven that come with text fonts:

1. The slant (slope) is an indication that we have an italic shape. The value divided by 65.536 is a fraction that can be compared with for instance the `slanted` operator in MetaPost. It is used for positioning accents, so actually not limited to oblique fonts (just like italic correction can be a property of any character). It is not relevant in the perspective of OpenType fonts where we have glyph specific top and bottom anchors.
2. Unless is it overloaded by `\spaceskip` this determines the space between words (or actually anything separated by a space).
3. This is the stretch component of `\fontdimen` 2(space).
4. This is the shrink component of `\fontdimen` 2(space).
5. The so called ex-height is normally the height of the 'x' and is also accessible as `em` unit.
6. The so called em-width or in TEX speak quad width is about the with of an 'M' but in many fonts just matches the font size. It is also accessible as `em` unit.
7. This is a very TEX specific property also known as extra space. It gets *added* to the regular space after punctuation when `\spacefactor` is 2000 or more. It can be overloaded by `\xspaceskip`.

This primitive expects a a number and a font identifier. Setting a font dimension is a global operation as it directly pushes the value in the font resource.

467 \fontid

Returns the (internal) number associated with the given font:

```
{\bf \xdef\MyFontA{\the\fontid\font}}
{\sl \xdef\MyFontB{\setfontid\the\fontid\font}}
```

with:

```
test {\setfontid\MyFontA test} test {\MyFontB test} test
```

gives: test **test** test *test* test.

468 \fontidentifier

This one is just there for completeness: it reports the string used to identify a font when logging. Compare:

`\fontname\font`	DejaVuSerif at 10.0pt
`\fontidentifier\font`	<1: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>
`\the\fontid\font`	1

469 \fontmathcontrol

The `\mathfontcontrol` parameter controls how the engine deals with specific font related properties and possibilities. It is set at the TEX end. It makes it possible to fine tune behavior in this mixed traditional and not perfect OpenType math font arena. One can also set this bitset when initializing (loading) the font (at the Lua end) and the value set there is available in `\fontmathcontrol`. The bits set in the font win over those in `\mathfontcontrol`. There are a few cases where we set these options in the (so called) goodie files. For instance we ignore font kerns in Libertinus, Antykwa and some more.

modern	`0x0`
pagella	`0x0`
antykwa	`0x37EF3FF`
libertinus	`0x37EF3FF`

470 \fontname

Depending on how the font subsystem is implemented this gives some information about the used font:

```
{\tf \fontname\font}
{\bf \fontname\font}
{\sl \fontname\font}
```

DejaVuSerif at 10.0pt
DejaVuSerif-Bold at 10.0pt
DejaVuSerif-Italic at 10.0pt

471 \fontspecdef

This primitive creates a reference to a specification that when triggered will change multiple parameters in one go.

```
\fontspecdef\MyFontSpec
    \fontid\font
    scale  1200
    xscale 1100
    yscale  800
    weight  200
    slant   500
\relax
```

is equivalent to:

```
\fontspecdef\MyFontSpec
    \fontid\font
    all 1200 1100 800 200 500
\relax
```

while

```
\fontspecdef\MyFontSpec
    \fontid\font
    all \glyphscale \glyphxscale \glyphyscale \glyphslant \glyphweight
\relax
```

is the same as

```
\fontspecdef\MyFontSpec
    \fontid\font
\relax
```

The engine adapts itself to these glyph parameters but when you access certain quantities you have to make sure that you use the scaled ones. The same is true at the Lua end. This is somewhat fundamental in the sense that when one uses these sort of dynamic features one also need to keep an eye on code that uses font specific dimensions.

472 \fontspecid

Internally a font reference is a number and this primitive returns the number of the font bound to the specification.

473 \fontspecifiedname

Depending on how the font subsystem is implemented this gives some information about the (original) definition of the used font:

```
{\tf \fontspecifiedname\font}
{\bf \fontspecifiedname\font}
{\sl \fontspecifiedname\font}
```

Serif sa 1
SerifBold sa 1
SerifSlanted sa 1

474 \fontspecifiedsize

Depending on how the font subsystem is implemented this gives some information about the (original) size of the used font:

```
{\tf  \the\fontspecifiedsize\font : \the\glyphscale}
{\bfa \the\fontspecifiedsize\font : \the\glyphscale}
{\slx \the\fontspecifiedsize\font : \the\glyphscale}
```

Depending on how the font system is setup, this is not the real value that is used in the text because we can use for instance `\glyphscale`. So the next lines depend on what font mode this document is typeset.

10.0pt: 1000
10.0pt: 1200
10.0pt: 800

475 \fontspecscale

This returns the scale factor of a fontspec where as usual 1000 means scaling by 1.

476 \fontspecslant

This returns the slant factor of a font specification, usually between zero and 1000 with 1000 being maximum slant.

477 \fontspecweight

This returns the weight of the font specification. Reasonable values are between zero and 500.

478 \fontspecxscale

This returns the scale factor of a font specification where as usual 1000 means scaling by 1.

479 \fontspecyscale

This returns the scale factor of a font specification where as usual 1000 means scaling by 1.

480 \fonttextcontrol

This returns the text control flags that are set on the given font, here `0x208`. Bits that can be set are:

`0x01` collapsehyphens
`0x02` baseligaturing
`0x04` basekerning
`0x08` noneprotected
`0x10` hasitalics
`0x20` autoitalics
`0x40` replaceapostrophe

481 \forcedleftcorrection

This is a callback driven left correction signal similar to italic corrections.

482 \forcedrightcorrection

This is a callback driven right correction signal similar to italic corrections.

483 \formatname

It is in the name: `cont-en`, but we cheat here by only showing the filename and not the full path, which in a ConTEXt setup can span more than a line in this paragraph.

484 \frozen

You can define a macro as being frozen:

```
\frozen\def\MyMacro{...}
```

When you redefine this macro you get an error:

```
! You can't redefine a frozen macro.
```

This is a prefix like `\global` and it can be combined with other prefixes.[9]

485 \futurecsname

In order to make the repertoire of `def`, `let` and `futurelet` primitives complete we also have:

```
\futurecsname MyMacro:1\endcsname\MyAction
```

486 \futuredef

We elaborate on the example of using `\futurelet` in the previous section. Compare that one with the next:

```
\def\MySpecialToken{[}
\def\DoWhatever{\ifx\NextToken\MySpecialToken YES\else NOP\fi : }
\futurelet\NextToken\DoWhatever [A]\crlf
\futurelet\NextToken\DoWhatever (A)\par
```

This time we get:

NOP: [A]
NOP: (A)

It is for that reason that we now also have `\futuredef`:

```
\def\MySpecialToken{[}
\def\DoWhatever{\ifx\NextToken\MySpecialToken YES\else NOP\fi : }
```

[9] The `\outer` and `\long` prefixes are no-ops in LuaMetaTEX and LuaTEX can be configured to ignore them.

```
\futuredef\NextToken\DoWhatever [A]\crlf
\futuredef\NextToken\DoWhatever (A)\par
```

So we're back to what we want:

YES: [A]
NOP: (A)

487 \futureexpand

This primitive can be used as an alternative to a \futurelet approach, which is where the name comes from.[10]

```
\def\variantone<#1>{(#1)}
\def\varianttwo#1{[#1]}
\futureexpand<\variantone\varianttwo<one>
\futureexpand<\variantone\varianttwo{two}
```

So, the next token determines which of the two variants is taken:

(one) [two]

Because we look ahead there is some magic involved: spaces are ignored but when we have no match they are pushed back into the input. The next variant demonstrates this:

```
\def\variantone<#1>{(#1)}
\def\varianttwo{}
\def\temp{\futureexpand<\variantone\varianttwo}
[\temp <one>]
[\temp {two}]
[\expandafter\temp\space <one>]
[\expandafter\temp\space {two}]
```

This gives us:

[(one)] [two] [(one)] [two]

488 \futureexpandis

We assume that the previous section is read. This variant will not push back spaces, which permits a consistent approach i.e. the user can assume that macro always gobbles the spaces.

```
\def\variantone<#1>{(#1)}
\def\varianttwo{}
\def\temp{\futureexpandis<\variantone\varianttwo}
[\temp <one>]
[\temp {two}]
[\expandafter\temp\space <one>]
[\expandafter\temp\space {two}]
```

[10] In the engine primitives that have similar behavior are grouped in commands that are then dealt with together, code wise.

So, here no spaces are pushed back. This `is` in the name of this primitive means ‘ignore spaces’, but having that added to the name would have made the primitive even more verbose (after all, we also don’t have `\expandeddef` but `\edef` and no `\globalexpandeddef` but `\xdef`.

[(one)] [two] [(one)] [two]

489 \futureexpandisap

This primitive is like the one in the previous section but also ignores par tokens, so `isap` means ‘ignore spaces and paragraphs’.

490 \futurelet

The original TEX primitive `\futurelet` can be used to create an alias to a next token, push it back into the input and then expand a given token.

```
\let\MySpecialTokenL[
\let\MySpecialTokenR] % nicer for checker
\def\DoWhatever{\ifx\NextToken\MySpecialTokenL YES\else NOP\fi : }
\futurelet\NextToken\DoWhatever [A]\crlf
\futurelet\NextToken\DoWhatever (A)\par
```

This is typically the kind of primitive that most users will never use because it expects a sane follow up handler (here `\DoWhatever`) and therefore is related to user interfacing.

YES: [A]
NOP: (A)

491 \gdef

The is the global companion of `\def`.

492 \gdefcsname

As with standard TEX we also define global ones:

```
\expandafter\gdef\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
            \gdefcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
```

493 \givenmathstyle

This primitive expects a math style and returns it when valid or otherwise issues an error.

494 \gleaders

Leaders are glue with special property: a box, rule of (in LuaMetaTEX) glyph, like:

```
x\leaders   \glyph `M \hfill  x
xx\leaders  \glyph `M \hfill xx
```

```
x\cleaders  \glyph `M \hfill x
xx\cleaders \glyph `M \hfill xx

x\xleaders  \glyph `M \hfill x
xx\xleaders \glyph `M \hfill xx

x\gleaders  \glyph `M \hfill x
xx\gleaders \glyph `M \hfill xx
```

The various leaders differ in how they anchor and align the successive components:

x MMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMx
xx MMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMM xx

xMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMx
xx MMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMM xx

xMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMx
xxMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMxx

xMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMx
xx MMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMMM xx

Leaders fill the available space. The `\leaders` command starts at the left edge and stops when there is no more space. The blobs get centered when we use `\cleaders`: excess space is distributed before and after a blob while `\xleaders` also puts space between the blobs.

When a rule is given the advance (width or height and depth) is ignored, so these are equivalent.

```
x\leaders \hrule           \hfill x
x\leaders \hrule width 1cm \hfill x
```

When a box is used one will normally have some alignment in that box.

```
x\leaders \hbox {\hss.\hss} \hfill            x
x\leaders \hbox {\hss.\hss} \hskip 6cm \relax x
```

The reference point is the left edge of the current (outer) box and the effective glue (when it has stretch or shrink) depends on that box. The `\gleaders` variant takes the page as reference. That makes it possible to 'align' across boxes.

495 \glet

This is the global companion of `\let`. The fact that it is not an original primitive is probably due to the expectation for it not it not being used (as) often (as in ConTEXt).

496 \gletcsname

Naturally LuaMetaTEX also provides a global variant:

```
\expandafter\global\expandafter\let\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
\expandafter                  \glet\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
                               \gletcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
```

So, here we save even more.

497 \glettonothing

This is the global companion of \lettonothing.

498 \global

This is one of the original prefixes that can be used when we define a macro of change some register.

```
\bgroup
       \def\MyMacroA{a}
\global\def\MyMacroB{a}
      \gdef\MyMacroC{a}
\egroup
```

The macro defined in the first line is forgotten when the groups is left. The second and third definition are both global and these definitions are retained.

499 \globaldefs

When set to a positive value, this internal integer will force all definitions to be global, and in a complex macro package that is not something a user will do unless it is very controlled.

500 \glueexpr

This is a more extensive variant of \dimexpr that also handles the optional stretch and shrink components.

501 \glueshrink

This returns the shrink component of a glue quantity. The result is a dimension so you need to apply \the when applicable.

502 \glueshrinkorder

This returns the shrink order of a glue quantity. The result is a integer so you need to apply \the when applicable.

503 \gluespecdef

A variant of \integerdef and \dimensiondef is:

```
\gluespecdef\MyGlue = 3pt plus 2pt minus 1pt
```

The properties are comparable to the ones described in the previous sections.

504 \gluestretch

This returns the stretch component of a glue quantity. The result is a dimension so you need to apply \the when applicable.

505 \gluestretchorder

This returns the stretch order of a glue quantity. The result is a integer so you need to apply `\the` when applicable.

506 \gluetomu

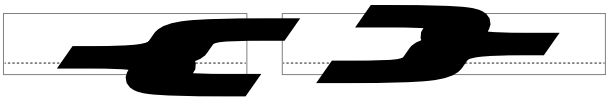
The sequence `\the\gluetomu 20pt plus 10pt minus 5pt` gives 20.0mu plus 10.0mu minus 5.0mu.

507 \glyph

This is a more extensive variant of `\char` that permits setting some properties if the injected character node.

```
\ruledhbox{\glyph
    scale 2000 xscale 9000 yscale 1200
    slant 700 weight 200
    xoffset 10pt yoffset -5pt left 10pt right 20pt
    123}
\quad
\ruledhbox{\glyph
    scale 2000 xscale 9000 yscale 1200
    slant 700 weight 200
    125}
```

In addition one can specify `font` (symbol), `id` (valid font id number), an `options` (bit set) and `raise`.



When no parameters are set, the current ones are used. More details and examples of usage can be found in the ConTEXt distribution.

508 \glyphdatafield

The value of this parameter is assigned to data field in glyph nodes that get injected. It has no meaning in itself but can be used at the Lua end.

509 \glyphoptions

The value of this parameter is assigned to the options field in glyph nodes that get injected.

0x00000000	normal	0x00000100	applyxoffset
0x00000001	noleftligature	0x00000200	applyyoffset
0x00000002	norightligature	0x00000400	mathdiscretionary
0x00000004	noleftkern	0x00000800	mathsitalicstoo
0x00000008	norightkern	0x00001000	mathartifact
0x00000010	noexpansion	0x00002000	weightless
0x00000020	noprotrusion	0x00004000	spacefactoroverload
0x00000040	noitaliccorrection	0x00008000	checktoddler
0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection	0x00010000	checktwin

0x00020000	istoddler	0x01000000	userfirst
0x00040000	iscontinuation	0x40000000	userlast
0x00080000	keepspacing		

510 \glyphscale

An integer parameter defining the current glyph scale, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

511 \glyphscriptfield

The value of this parameter is assigned to script field in glyph nodes that get injected. It has no meaning in itself but can be used at the Lua end.

512 \glyphscriptscale

This multiplier is applied to text font and glyph dimension properties when script style is used.

513 \glyphscriptscriptscale

This multiplier is applied to text font and glyph dimension properties when script script style is used.

514 \glyphslant

An integer parameter defining the current glyph slant, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

515 \glyphstatefield

The value of this parameter is assigned to script state in glyph nodes that get injected. It has no meaning in itself but can be used at the Lua end.

516 \glyphtextscale

This multiplier is applied to text font and glyph dimension properties when text style is used.

517 \glyphweight

An integer parameter defining the current glyph weight, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

518 \glyphxoffset

An integer parameter defining the current glyph x offset, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list. Normally this will only be set when one explicitly works with glyphs and defines a specific sequence.

519 \glyphxscale

An integer parameter defining the current glyph x scale, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

520 \glyphxscaled

This primitive returns the given dimension scaled by the \glyphscale and \glyphxscale.

521 \glyphyoffset

An integer parameter defining the current glyph x offset, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list. Normally this will only be set when one explicitly works with glyphs and defines a specific sequence.

522 \glyphyscale

An integer parameter defining the current glyph y scale, assigned to glyphs (characters) inserted into the current list.

523 \glyphyscaled

This primitive returns the given dimension scaled by the \glyphscale and \glyphyscale.

524 \gtoksapp

This is the global variant of \toksapp.

525 \gtokspre

This is the global variant of \tokspre.

526 \halign

This command starts horizontally aligned material. Macro packages use this command in table mechanisms and math alignments. It starts with a preamble followed by entries (rows and columns). There are some related primitives, for instance \alignmark duplicates the functionality of # inside alignment preambles, while \aligntab duplicates the functionality of &. The \aligncontent primitive directly refers to an entry so that one does not get repeated.

Alignments can be traced with \tracingalignments. When set to 1 basics usage is shown, for instance of \noalign but more interesting is 2 or more: you then get the preambles reported.

The \halign (tested) and \valign (yet untested) primitives accept a few keywords in addition to to and spread:

keyword	explanation
attr	set the given attribute to the given value
callback	(integer) sets the alignment callback

`callbacks`	(integer) adds to the callbacks
`discard`	discard zero `\tabskip`'s when finalizing
`noskips`	don't even process zero `\tabskip`'s
`nofirstskip`	suppress initial skip
`nolastskip`	suppress final skip
`reverse`	reverse the final rows
`collapse`	combine `\tabsize` in spans
`nolastskip`	remove the last `\tabskip`
`prune`	remove empty edge columns
`split`	split marked multi-line cell boxes into rows
`minheight`	minimum line height
`mindepth`	minimum line depth
`gluemode`	controls split-boundary handling

In the preamble the `\tabsize` primitive can be used to set the width of a column. By doing so one can avoid using a box in the preamble which, combined with the sparse tabskip features, is a bit easier on memory when you produce tables that span hundreds of pages and have a dozen columns.

The `\everytab` complements the `\everycr` token register but is sort of experimental as it might become more selective and powerful some day.

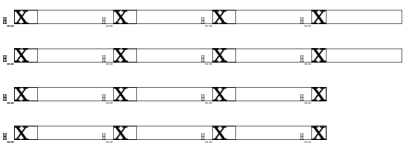
The two primitives `\alignmentcellsource` and `\alignmentwrapsource` that associate a source id (integer) to the current cell and row (line). Sources and targets are experimental and are being explored in ConTEXt so we'll see where that ends up in.

Here is an example of `nolastskip` usage:

```
\halign {
    \tabskip1cm
    \aligncontent \aligntab
    \aligncontent \aligntab \aligntab
    \aligncontent \cr
    x \aligntab x \aligntab x \aligntab x\cr
    x \aligntab x \aligntab x \aligntab x\cr
}

\halign nolastskip {
    \tabskip1cm
    \aligncontent \aligntab
    \aligncontent \aligntab \aligntab
    \aligncontent \cr
    x \aligntab x \aligntab x \aligntab x\cr
    x \aligntab x \aligntab x \aligntab x\cr
}
```

This feature is mostly handy for repeated preamble entries:



The split related options control how a vertical cell box gets split over lines. This works with multiple cells and honors penalties, and vertical space. The callback kicks in at given stages (when enabled) and is discussed in the chapter about callbacks.

527 \hangafter

This parameter tells the par builder when indentation specified with `\hangindent` starts. A negative value does the opposite and starts indenting immediately. So, a value of −2 will make the first two lines indent.

528 \hangindent

This parameter relates to `\hangafter` and sets the amount of indentation. When larger than zero indentation happens left, otherwise it starts at the right edge.

529 \hbadness

This sets the threshold for reporting a horizontal badness value, its current value is 0.

530 \hbadnessmode

This parameter determines what gets reported when the (in the horizontal packer) badness exceeds some limit. The current value of this bitset is `"F`.

`0x01`	underfull	`0x02`	loose	`0x04`	tight	`0x08`	overfull

531 \hbox

This constructs a horizontal box. There are a lot of optional parameters so more details can be found in dedicated manuals. When the content is packed a callback can kick in that can be used to apply for instance font features.

532 \hccode

The TEX engine is good at hyphenating but traditionally that has been limited to hyphens. Some languages however use different characters. You can set up a different `\hyphenchar` as well as pre and post characters, but there's also a dedicated code for controlling this.

```
\hccode"2013 "2013

\hsize 50mm test\char"2013test\par
\hsize  1mm test\char"2013test\par

\hccode"2013 `!

\hsize 50mm test\char"2013test\par
\hsize  1mm test\char"2013test\par
```

This example shows that we can mark a character as hyphen-like but also can remap it to something else:

test–test
test–
test
test–test
test!
test

533 \hfil

This is a shortcut for **\hskip** `plus 1 fil` (first order filler).

534 \hfill

This is a shortcut for **\hskip** `plus 1 fill` (second order filler).

535 \hfilneg

This is a shortcut for **\hskip** `plus - 1 fil` so it can compensate `\hfil`.

536 \hfuzz

This dimension sets the threshold for reporting horizontal boxes that are under- or overfull. The current value is 0.1pt.

537 \hjcode

The so called lowercase code determines if a character is part of a to-be-hyphenated word. In LuaTEX we introduced the 'hyphenation justification' code as replacement. When a language is saved and no `\hjcode` is set the `\lccode` is used instead. This code serves a second purpose. When the assigned value is greater than 0 but less than 32 it indicated the to be used length when checking for left- and righthyphenmin. For instance it make sense to set the code to 2 for characters like œ.

538 \hkern

This primitive is like `\kern` but will force the engine into horizontal mode if it isn't yet.

539 \hmcode

The `hm` stands for 'hyphenation math'. When bit 1 is set the characters will be repeated on the next line after a break. The second bit concerns italic correction but is of little relevance now that we moved to a different model in ConTEXt. Here are some examples, we also show an example of `\mathdiscretionary` because that is what this code triggers:

```
test $ \dorecurse {50} {
    a \discretionary class 2 {$\darkred +$}{$\darkgreen +$}{$\darkblue +$}
} b$

test $ a \mathdiscretionary class 1 {-}{-}{-} b$
```

```
\bgroup
    \hmcode"002B=1 % +
    \hmcode"002D=1 % -
    \hmcode"2212=1 % -
    test $ \dorecurse{50}{a + b - } c$
\egroup
```

test $a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a +$
$+ a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + a + b$

test $a - b$

test $a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b -$
$- a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a +$
$+ b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b -$
$- a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - a + b - c$

540 \holdinginserts

When set to a positive value inserts will be kept in the stream and not moved to the insert registers.

541 \holdingmigrations

When set to a positive value marks (and adjusts) will be kept in the stream and not moved to the outer level or related registers.

542 \hpack

This primitive is like `\hbox` but without the callback overhead.

543 \hpenalty

This primitive is like `\penalty` but will force the engine into horizontal mode if it isn't yet.

544 \hrule

This creates a horizontal rule. Unless the width is set it will stretch to fix the available width. In addition to the traditional `width`, `height` and `depth` specifiers some more are accepted. These are discussed in other manuals. To give an idea:

```
h\hrule width 10mm height 2mm depth 1mm \relax rule
h\hrule width 10mm height 2mm depth 1mm xoffset 30mm yoffset -10mm \relax rule
v\vrule width 10mm height 2mm depth 1mm \relax rule
v\vrule width 10mm height 2mm depth 1mm xoffset 30mm yoffset  10mm \relax rule
```

The `\relax` stops scanning and because we have more keywords we get a different error report than in traditional TEX when a lookahead confuses the engine. On separate lines we get the following.

h
rule

h
rule
v rule
v rule

545 \hsize

This sets (or gets) the current horizontal size.

```
\hsize 40pt \setbox0\vbox{x} hsize: \the\wd0
\setbox0\vbox{\hsize 40pt x} hsize: \the\wd0
```

In both cases we get the same size reported but the first one will also influence the current paragraph when used ungrouped.

hsize:
40.0pt
hsize:
40.0pt

546 \hskip

The given glue is injected in the horizontal list. If possible horizontal mode is entered.

547 \hss

In traditional TEX glue specifiers are shared. This makes a lot of sense when memory has to be saved. For instance spaces in a paragraph of text are often the same and a glue specification has at least an amount, stretch, shrink, stretch order and shrink order field plus a leader pointer; in LuaMetaTEX we have even more fields. In LuaTEX these shared (and therefore referenced) glue spec nodes became just copies.

```
x\hbox to 0pt{\hskip 0pt plus 1 fil minus 1 fil\relax test}x
x\hbox to 0pt{\hss test}x
x\hbox to 0pt{test\hskip 0pt plus 1 fil minus 1 fil\relax}x
x\hbox to 0pt{test\hss}x
```

The \hss primitives injects a glue node with one order stretch and one order shrink. In traditional TEX this is a reference to a shared specification, and in LuaTEX just a copy of a predefined specifier. The only gain is now in tokens because one could just be explicit or use a glue register with that value because we have plenty glue registers.

testx
testx
xtest
xtest

We could have this:

```
\permanent\protected\untraced\def\hss
  {\hskip0pt plus 1 fil minus 1 fil\relax}
```

or this:

```
\gluespecdef\hssglue 0pt plus 1 fil minus 1 fil

\permanent\protected\untraced\def\hss
  {\hskip\hssglue}
```

but we just keep the originals around.

548 \ht

Returns the height of the given box.

549 \hyphenation

The list passed to this primitive contains hyphenation exceptions that get bound to the current language. In LuaMetaTEX this can be managed at the Lua end. Exceptions are not stored in the format file.

550 \hyphenationmin

This property (that also gets bond to the current language) sets the minimum length of a word that gets hyphenated.

551 \hyphenationmode

This bitset controls which kinds of hyphenation and discretionary injection are enabled. The individual bits are described in the language documentation.

552 \hyphenchar

This is one of the font related primitives: it returns the number of the hyphen set in the given font.

553 \hyphenpenalty

Discretionary nodes have a related default penalty. The `\hyphenpenalty` is injected after a regular discretionary, and `\exhyphenpenalty` after `\-` or `-`. The later case is called an automatic discretionary. In LuaMetaTEX we have two extra penalties: `\explicithyphenpenalty` and `\automatichyphenpenalty` and these are used when the related bits are set in `\hyphenationmode`.

554 \if

This traditional TEX conditional checks if two character codes are the same. In order to understand unexpanded results it is good to know that internally TEX groups primitives in a way that serves the implementation. Each primitive has a command code and a character code, but only for real characters the name character code makes sense. This condition only really tests for character codes when we have a character, in all other cases, the result is true.

```
\def\A{A}\def\B{B} \chardef\C=`C \chardef\D=`D \def\AA{AA}
```

```
[\if AA   YES \else NOP \fi] [\if AB   YES \else NOP \fi]
[\if \A\B YES \else NOP \fi] [\if \A\A YES \else NOP \fi]
[\if \C\D YES \else NOP \fi] [\if \C\C YES \else NOP \fi]
[\if \count\dimen YES \else NOP \fi] [\if \AA\A YES \else NOP \fi]
```

The last example demonstrates that the tokens get expanded, which is why we get the extra A:

[YES] [NOP] [NOP] [YES] [YES] [YES] [YES] [AYES]

555 \ifabsdim

This test will negate negative dimensions before comparison, as in:

```
\def\TestA#1{\ifdim   #1<2pt too small\orelse\ifdim   #1>4pt too large\else okay\fi}
\def\TestB#1{\ifabsdim#1<2pt too small\orelse\ifabsdim#1>4pt too large\else okay\fi}

\TestA {1pt}\quad\TestA {3pt}\quad\TestA {5pt}\crlf
\TestB {1pt}\quad\TestB {3pt}\quad\TestB {5pt}\crlf
\TestB{-1pt}\quad\TestB{-3pt}\quad\TestB{-5pt}\par
```

So we get this:

too small okay too large
too small okay too large
too small okay too large

556 \ifabsfloat

This test will negate negative floats before comparison, as in:

```
\def\TestA#1{\iffloat   #1<2.46 small\orelse\iffloat   #1>4.68 large\else medium\fi}
\def\TestB#1{\ifabsfloat#1<2.46 small\orelse\ifabsfloat#1>4.68 large\else medium\fi}

\TestA {1.23}\quad\TestA {3.45}\quad\TestA {5.67}\crlf
\TestB {1.23}\quad\TestB {3.45}\quad\TestB {5.67}\crlf
\TestB{-1.23}\quad\TestB{-3.45}\quad\TestB{-5.67}\par
```

So we get this:

small medium large
small medium large
small medium large

557 \ifabsnum

This test will negate negative numbers before comparison, as in:

```
\def\TestA#1{\ifnum   #1<100 too small\orelse\ifnum   #1>200 too large\else okay\fi}
\def\TestB#1{\ifabsnum#1<100 too small\orelse\ifabsnum#1>200 too large\else okay\fi}

\TestA {10}\quad\TestA {150}\quad\TestA {210}\crlf
\TestB {10}\quad\TestB {150}\quad\TestB {210}\crlf
```

```
\TestB{-10}\quad\TestB{-150}\quad\TestB{-210}\par
```

Here we get the same result each time:

too small okay too large
too small okay too large
too small okay too large

558 \ifarguments

This is a variant of `\ifcase` where the selector is the number of arguments picked up. For example:

```
\def\MyMacro#1#2#3{\ifarguments\0\or1\or2\or3\else ?\fi} \MyMacro{A}{B}{C}
\def\MyMacro#1#0#3{\ifarguments\0\or1\or2\or3\else ?\fi} \MyMacro{A}{B}{C}
\def\MyMacro#1#-#2{\ifarguments\0\or1\or2\or3\else ?\fi} \MyMacro{A}{B}{C}\par
```

Watch the non counted, ignored, argument in the last case. Normally this test will be used in combination with `\ignorearguments`.

3 3 2

559 \ifboolean

This tests a number (register or equivalent) and any nonzero value represents `true`, which is nicer than using an **`\unless\ifcase`**.

560 \ifcase

This numeric TEX conditional takes a counter (literal, register, shortcut to a character, internal quantity) and goes to the branch that matches.

```
\ifcase 3 zero\or one\or two\or three\or four\else five or more\fi
```

Indeed: three equals three. In later sections we will see some LuaMetaTEX primitives that behave like an `\ifcase`.

561 \ifcat

Another traditional TEX primitive: what happens with what gets read in depends on the catcode of a character, think of characters marked to start math mode, or alphabetic characters (letters) versus other characters (like punctuation).

```
\def\A{A}\def\B{,} \chardef\C=`C \chardef\D=`, \def\AA{AA}

[\ifcat $!   YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat ()   YES \else NOP \fi]
[\ifcat AA   YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat AB   YES \else NOP \fi]
[\ifcat \A\B YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat \A\A YES \else NOP \fi]
[\ifcat \C\D YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat \C\C YES \else NOP \fi]
[\ifcat \count\dimen YES \else NOP \fi] [\ifcat \AA\A YES \else NOP \fi]
```

Close reading is needed here:

[NOP] [YES] [YES] [YES] [NOP] [YES] [YES] [YES] [YES] [AYES]

This traditional TEX condition as a well as the one in the previous section are hardly used in ConTEXt, if only because they expand what follows and we seldom need to compare characters.

562 \ifchkdim

A variant on the checker in the previous section is a dimension checker:

```
\ifchkdim oeps        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdim 12          \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdim 12pt        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdim 12pt or more\or okay\else error\fi
```

We get:

error error okay okay

563 \ifchkdimension

COntrary to `\ifchkdim` this test doesn't accept trailing crap:

```
\ifchkdimension oeps        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdimension 12          \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdimension 12pt        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchkdimension 12pt or more\or okay\else error\fi
```

reports:

error error okay error

564 \ifchkdimexpr

This primitive is like `\ifchkdim` but handles an expression.

565 \ifchknum

In ConTEXt there are quite some cases where a variable can have a number or a keyword indicating a symbolic name of a number or maybe even some special treatment. Checking if a valid number is given is possible to some extend, but a native checker makes much sense too. So here is one:

```
\ifchknum oeps        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknum 12          \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknum 12pt        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknum 12pt or more\or okay\else error\fi
```

The result is as expected:

error okay okay okay

566 \ifchknumber

This check is more restrictive than `\ifchknum` discussed in the previous section:

```
\ifchknumber oeps        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknumber 12          \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknumber 12pt        \or okay\else error\fi\quad
\ifchknumber 12pt or more\or okay\else error\fi
```

Here we get:

error okay error error

567 \ifchknumexpr

This primitive is like `\ifchknum` but handles an expression.

568 \ifcmpdim

This is a less strict veriant of `\ifchkdimension` that doesn't bark on trailing tokens.

569 \ifcmpnum

This is a less strict veriant of `\ifchknumber` that doesn't bark on trailing tokens.

570 \ifcondition

The conditionals in TEX are hard coded as primitives and although it might look like `\newif` creates one, it actually just defined three macros.

```
\newif\ifMyTest
\meaning\MyTesttrue  \crlf
\meaning\MyTestfalse \crlf
\meaning\ifMyTest    \crlf \MyTesttrue
\meaning\ifMyTest    \par
```

```
protected macro:\always \let \ifMyTest \iftrue
protected macro:\always \let \ifMyTest \iffalse
\iffalse
\iftrue
```

This means that when you say:

```
\ifMytest ... \else ... \fi
```

You actually have one of:

```
\iftrue  ... \else ... \fi
\iffalse ... \else ... \fi
```

and because these are proper conditions nesting them like:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter > 0 \ifMyTest A\else B\fi \fi
```

will work out well too. This is not true for macros, so for instance:

```
\scratchcounter = 1
\unexpanded\def\ifMyTest{\iftrue}
\ifnum\scratchcounter > 0 \ifMyTest A\else B\fi \fi
```

will make a run fail with an error (or simply loop forever, depending on your code). This is where `\ifcondition` enters the picture:

```
\def\MyTest{\iftrue} \scratchcounter0
\ifnum\scratchcounter > 0
    \ifcondition\MyTest A\else B\fi
\else
    x
\fi
```

This primitive is seen as a proper condition when TEX is in "fast skipping unused branches" mode but when it is expanding a branch, it checks if the next expanded token is a proper tests and if so, it deals with that test, otherwise it fails. The main condition here is that the `\MyTest` macro expands to a proper true or false test, so, a definition like:

```
\def\MyTest{\ifnum\scratchcounter<10 }
```

is also okay. Now, is that neat or not?

571 \ifcramped

Depending on the given math style this returns true of false:

```
\ifcramped\mathstyle        no  \fi
\ifcramped\crampedtextstyle yes \fi
\ifcramped\textstyle        no  \fi
\ifcramped\displaystyle     yes \fi
```

gives: yes.

572 \ifcsname

This is an e-TEX conditional that complements the one on the previous section:

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname MyMacro\endcsname\relax ... \else ... \fi
           \ifcsname   MyMacro\endcsname       ... \else ... \fi
```

Here the first one has the side effect of defining the macro and defaulting it to `\relax`, while the second one doesn't do that. Just think of checking a few million different names: the first one will deplete the hash table and probably string space too.

In LuaMetaTEX the construction stops when there is no letter or other character seen (TEX expands on the go so expandable macros are dealt with). Instead of an error message, the match is simply false and all tokens till the `\endcsname` are gobbled.

573 \ifcstok

A variant on the primitive mentioned in the previous section is one that operates on lists and macros:

```
\def\a{a} \def\b{b} \def\c{a}
```

This:

```
\ifcstok\a\b   Y\else N\fi\space
\ifcstok\a\c   Y\else N\fi\space
\ifcstok{\a}\c Y\else N\fi\space
\ifcstok{a}\c  Y\else N\fi
```

will give us: N Y Y Y.

574 \ifdefined

In traditional TEX checking for a macro to exist was a bit tricky and therefore e-TEX introduced a convenient conditional. We can do this:

```
\ifx\MyMacro\undefined ... \else ... \fi
```

but that assumes that `\undefined` is indeed undefined. Another test often seen was this:

```
\expandafter\ifx\csname MyMacro\endcsname\relax ... \else ... \fi
```

Instead of comparing with `\undefined` we need to check with `\relax` because the control sequence is defined when not yet present and defaults to `\relax`. This is not pretty.

575 \ifdim

Dimensions can be compared with this traditional TEX primitive.

```
\scratchdimen=1pt \scratchcounter=65536

\ifdim\scratchdimen=\scratchcounter sp YES \else NOP\fi
\ifdim\scratchdimen=1               pt YES \else NOP\fi
```

The units are mandate:

YES YES

576 \ifdimexpression

The companion of the previous primitive is:

This matches when the result is non zero, and you can mix calculations and tests as with normal expressions. Contrary to the number variant units can be used and precision kicks in.

577 \ifdimval

This conditional is a variant on `\ifchkdim` and provides some more detailed information about the value:

```
[-12pt : \ifdimval-12pt\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[0pt   : \ifdimval  0pt\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
```

```
[12pt  : \ifdimval 12pt\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[oeps  : \ifdimval oeps\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]
```

This gives:

[-12pt : negative] [0pt : zero] [12pt : positive] [oeps : error]

578 \ifempty

This conditional checks if a control sequence is empty:

```
is \ifempty\MyMacro \else not \fi empty
```

It is basically a shortcut of:

```
is \ifx\MyMacro\empty \else not \fi empty
```

with:

```
\def\empty{}
```

Of course this is not empty at all:

```
\def\notempty#1{}
```

579 \iffalse

Here we have a traditional TEX conditional that is always false (therefore the same is true for any macro that is `\let` to this primitive).

580 \ifflags

This test primitive relates to the various flags that one can set on a control sequence in the perspective of overload protection and classification.

```
\protected\untraced\tolerant\def\foo[#1]{...#1...}
\permanent\constant          \def\oof{okay}
```

flag	\foo	\oof	flag	\foo	\oof
frozen	N	N	permanent	N	Y
immutable	N	N	mutable	N	N
noaligned	N	N	instance	N	N
untraced	Y	N	global	N	N
tolerant	Y	N	constant	N	Y
protected	Y	N	semiprotected	N	N

Instead of checking against a prefix you can test against a bitset made from:

0x1	frozen	0x2	permanent	0x4	immutable	0x8	primitive
0x10	mutable	0x20	noaligned	0x40	instance	0x80	untraced
0x100	global	0x200	tolerant	0x400	protected	0x800	overloaded

0x1000	aliased	0x2000	immediate	0x4000	conditional	0x8000	value
0x10000	semiprotected	0x20000	inherited	0x40000	constant	0x80000	deferred

581 \iffloat

This test does for floats what `\ifnum`, `\ifdim` do for numbers and dimensions: comparing two of them.

582 \iffontchar

This is an e-TEX conditional. It takes a font identifier and a character number. In modern fonts simply checking could not be enough because complex font features can swap in other ones and their index can be anything. Also, a font mechanism can provide fallback fonts and characters, so don't rely on this one too much. It just reports true when the font passed to the frontend has a slot filled.

583 \ifhaschar

This one is a simplified variant of the above:

```
\ifhaschar !{this ! works} yes \else no \fi
```

and indeed we get: yes! Of course the spaces in this this example code are normally not present in such a test.

584 \ifhastok

This conditional looks for occurrences in token lists where each argument has to be a proper list.

```
\def\scratchtoks{x}

\ifhastoks{yz}          {xyz} Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhastoks\scratchtoks {xyz} Y\else N\fi
```

We get:

Y Y

585 \ifhastoks

This test compares two token lists. When a macro is passed it's meaning gets used.

```
\def\x  {x}
\def\xyz{xyz}

(\ifhastoks  {x}  {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks {\x}  {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks  \x   {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks  {y}  {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks {yz}  {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks {yz} {\xyz}Y\else N\fi)
```

(Y) (N) (Y) (Y) (Y) (N)

586 \ifhasxtoks

This primitive is like the one in the previous section but this time the given lists are expanded.

```
\def\x  {x}
\def\xyz{\x yz}

(\ifhasxtoks  {x}  {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhasxtoks {\x}  {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhastoks   \x   {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhasxtoks  {y}  {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhasxtoks {yz}  {xyz}Y\else N\fi)\quad
(\ifhasxtoks {yz} {\xyz}Y\else N\fi)
```

(Y) (Y) (Y) (Y) (Y) (Y)

This primitive has some special properties.

```
\edef\+{\expandtoken 9 `+}

\ifhasxtoks {xy}   {xyz}Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhasxtoks {x\+y} {xyz}Y\else N\fi
```

Here the first argument has a token that has category code ‘ignore’ which means that such a character will be skipped when seen. So the result is:

Y Y

This permits checks like these:

```
\edef\,{\expandtoken 9 `,}

\ifhasxtoks{\,x\,} {,x,y,z,}Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhasxtoks{\,y\,} {,x,y,z,}Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhasxtoks{\,z\,} {,x,y,z,}Y\else N\fi\quad
\ifhasxtoks{\,x\,}  {,xy,z,}Y\else N\fi
```

I admit that it needs a bit of a twisted mind to come up with this, but it works ok:

Y Y Y Y

587 \ifhbox

This traditional conditional checks if a given box register or internal box variable represents a horizontal box,

588 \ifhmode

This traditional conditional checks we are in (restricted) horizontal mode.

589 \ifinalignment

As the name indicates, this primitive tests for being in an alignment. Roughly spoken, the engine is either in a state of align, handling text or dealing with math.

590 \ifincsname

This conditional is sort of obsolete and can be used to check if we're inside a \csname or \ifcsname construction. It's not used in ConTEXt.

591 \ifinner

This traditional one can be confusing. It is true when we are in restricted horizontal mode (a box), internal vertical mode (a box), or inline math mode.

```
test \ifhmode \ifinner INNER\fi HMODE\fi\crlf
\hbox{test \ifhmode \ifinner INNER \fi HMODE\fi} \par

\ifvmode \ifinner INNER\fi VMODE \fi\crlf
\vbox{\ifvmode \ifinner INNER \fi VMODE\fi} \crlf
\vbox{\ifinner INNER \ifvmode VMODE \fi \fi} \par
```

Watch the last line: because we typeset INNER we enter horizontal mode:

test HMODE
test INNER HMODE

VMODE
INNER VMODE
INNER

592 \ifinsert

This is the equivalent of \ifvoid for a given insert class.

593 \ifintervaldim

This conditional is true when the intervals around the values of two dimensions overlap. The first dimension determines the interval.

```
[\ifintervaldim1pt 20pt 21pt \else no \fi overlap]
[\ifintervaldim1pt 18pt 20pt \else no \fi overlap]
```

So here: [overlap] [no overlap]

594 \ifintervalfloat

This one does with floats what we described under \ifintervaldim.

595 \ifintervalnum

This one does with integers what we described under \ifintervaldim.

596 \iflastnamedcs

When a \csname is constructed and succeeds the last one is remembered and can be accessed with \lastnamedcs. It can however be an undefined one. That state can be checked with this primitive. Of course it also works with the \ifcsname and \begincsname variants.

597 \iflist

The \ifvoid conditional checks is a box is unset, that is, no hlist or vlist node is assigned. The \iflist conditional also checks is a list is assigned to this node. If there is a node assigned the box can of course have dimensions, but it's the presence of a list (content) that matters here.

```
[\setbox0\hbox{!}\iflist0 \else no \fi list, \ifvoid0 \else not \fi void]
[\setbox0\hbox {}\iflist0 \else no \fi list, \ifvoid0 \else not \fi void]
[\box0           \iflist0 \else no \fi list, \ifvoid0 \else not \fi void]
```

We get: [list, not void] [no list, not void] [no list, void]

598 \ifmathparameter

This is an \ifcase where the value depends on if the given math parameter is zero, (0), set (1), or unset (2).

```
\ifmathparameter\Umathpunctclosespacing\displaystyle
    zero    \or
    nonzero \or
    unset   \fi
```

599 \ifmathstyle

This is a variant of \ifcase were the number is one of the seven possible styles: display, text, cramped text, script, cramped script, script script, cramped script script.

```
\ifmathstyle
  display
\or
  text
\or
  cramped text
\else
  normally smaller than text
\fi
```

600 \ifmmode

This traditional conditional checks we are in (inline or display) math mode mode.

601 \ifnum

This is a frequently used conditional: it compares two numbers where a number is anything that can be seen as such.

```
\scratchcounter=65 \chardef\A=65

\ifnum65=`A              YES \else NOP\fi
\ifnum\scratchcounter=65 YES \else NOP\fi
\ifnum\scratchcounter=\A YES \else NOP\fi
```

Unless a number is an unexpandable token it ends with a space or \relax, so when you end up in the true branch, you'd better check if TEX could determine where the number ends.

YES YES YES

On top of these ascii combinations, the engine also accepts some Unicode characters. This brings the full repertoire to:

character			operation
0x003C	<		less
0x003D	=		equal
0x003E	>		more
0x2208	∈		element of
0x2209	∉		not element of
0x2260	≠	!=	not equal
0x2264	≤	!>	less equal
0x2265	≥	!<	greater equal
0x2270	≰		not less equal
0x2271	≱		not greater equal

This also applied to \ifdim although in the case of element we discard the fractional part (read: divide the numeric representation by 65536).

602 \ifnumexpression

Here is an example of a conditional using expressions:

This matches when the result is non zero, and you can mix calculations and tests as with normal expressions.

603 \ifnumval

This conditional is a variant on \ifchknum. This time we get some more detail about the value:

```
[-12  : \ifnumval  -12\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[0    : \ifnumval    0\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[12   : \ifnumval   12\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]\quad
[oeps : \ifnumval oeps\or negative\or zero\or positive\else error\fi]
```

This gives:

[-12 : negative] [0 : zero] [12 : positive] [oeps : error]

604 \ifodd

One reason for this condition to be around is that in a double sided layout we need test for being on an odd or even page. It scans for a number the same was as other primitives,

```
\ifodd65 YES \else NO\fi &
\ifodd`B YES \else NO\fi .
```

So: YES & NO.

605 \ifparameter

In a macro body #1 is a reference to a parameter. You can check if one is set using a dedicated parameter condition:

```
\tolerant\def\foo[#1]#*[#2]%
  {\ifparameter#1\or one\else no one\fi\enspace
   \ifparameter#2\or two\else no two\fi\emspace}

\foo
\foo[1]
\foo[1][2]
```

We get:

no one no two one no two one two

606 \ifparameters

This is equivalent to an \ifcase with as value the number of parameters passed to the current macro.

607 \ifrelax

This is a convenient shortcut for **\ifx\relax** and the motivation for adding this one is (as with some others) to get less tracing.

608 \ifspecification

This test expects a specification (more extensive data structures) and goes 'true' when it is a valid one. This primitive might evolved a bit.

609 \iftok

When you want to compare two arguments, the usual way to do this is the following:

```
\edef\tempA{#1}
\edef\tempb{#2}
\ifx\tempA\tempB
    the same
\else
    different
\fi
```

This works quite well but the fact that we need to define two macros can be considered a bit of a nuisance. It also makes macros that use this method to be not so called 'fully expandable'. The next one avoids both issues:

```
\iftok{#1}{#2}
```

```
    the same
\else
    different
\fi
```

Instead of direct list you can also pass registers, so given:

```
\scratchtoks{a}%
\toks0{a}%
```

This:

```
\iftok 0 \scratchtoks          Y\else N\fi\space
\iftok{a}\scratchtoks          Y\else N\fi\space
\iftok\scratchtoks\scratchtoks Y\else N\fi
```

gives: Y Y Y.

610 \iftrue

Here we have a traditional TEX conditional that is always true (therefore the same is true for any macro that is `\let` to this primitive).

611 \ifvbox

This traditional conditional checks if a given box register or internal box variable represents a vertical box,

612 \ifvmode

This traditional conditional checks we are in (internal) vertical mode.

613 \ifvoid

This traditional conditional checks if a given box register or internal box variable has any content.

614 \ifx

We use this traditional TEX conditional a lot in ConTEXt. Contrary to `\if` the two tokens that are compared are not expanded. This makes it possible to compare the meaning of two macros. Depending on the need, these macros can have their content expanded or not. A different number of parameters results in false.

Control sequences are identical when they have the same command code and character code. Because a `\let` macro is just a reference, both let macros are the same and equal to `\relax`:

```
\let\one\relax \let\two\relax
```

The same is true for other definitions that result in the same (primitive) or meaning encoded in the character field (think of `\chardefs` and so).

615 \ifzerodim

This tests for a dimen (dimension) being zero so we have:

```
\ifdim<dimension>=0pt
\ifzerodim<dimension>
\ifcase<dimension register>
```

616 \ifzerofloat

As the name indicated, this tests for a zero float value.

```
[\scratchfloat\zerofloat \ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
[\scratchfloat\plusone   \ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
[\scratchfloat 0.01      \ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
[\scratchfloat 0.0e0     \ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
[\scratchfloat \zeropoint\ifzerofloat\scratchfloat \else not \fi zero]
```

So: [zero] [not zero] [not zero] [zero] [zero]

617 \ifzeronum

This tests for a number (integer) being zero so we have these variants now:

```
\ifnum<integer or equivalent>=0
\ifzeronum<integer or equivalent>
\ifcase<integer or equivalent>
```

618 \ignorearguments

This primitive will quit argument scanning and start expansion of the body of a macro. The number of grabbed arguments can be tested as follows:

```
\def\MyMacro[#1][#2][#3]%
 {\ifarguments zero\or one\or two\or three \else hm\fi}

\MyMacro          \ignorearguments \quad
\MyMacro       [1]\ignorearguments \quad
\MyMacro    [1][2]\ignorearguments \quad
\MyMacro [1][2][3]\ignorearguments \par
```

zero one two three

When optional arguments are represented by delimiters in the macro definition, this primitive stops scanning at the current point. Any remaining arguments are left empty and can be handled by the macro body.

619 \ignoredepthcriterion

When setting the \prevdepth (either by TEX or by the current user) of the current vertical list the value 1000pt is a signal for special treatment of the skip between 'lines'. There is an article on that in

the distribution. It also demonstrates that `\ignoredepthcriterion` can be used to change this special signal, just in case it is needed.

620 \ignorenestedupto

This primitive gobbles following tokens and can deal with nested 'environments', for example:

```
\def\StartFoo{\ignorenestedupto\StartFoo\StopFoo}

(before
\StartFoo
    test \StartFoo test \StopFoo
   {test \StartFoo test \StopFoo}
\StopFoo
after)
```

delivers:

(before after)

621 \ignorepars

This is a variant of `\ignorespaces`: following spaces *and* **\par** equivalent tokens are ignored, so for instance:

```
one + \ignorepars

two = \ignorepars \par
three
```

renders as: one + two = three. Traditionally TEX has been sensitive to `\par` tokens in some of its building blocks. This has to do with the fact that it could indicate a runaway argument which in the times of slower machines and terminals was best to catch early. In LuaMetaTEX we no longer have long macros and the mechanisms that are sensitive can be told to accept `\par` tokens (and ConTEXt set them such that this is the case).

622 \ignorerest

An example shows what this primitive does:

```
\tolerant\def\foo[#1]#*[#2]%
  {1234
   \ifparameter#1\or\else
     \expandafter\ignorerest
   \fi
   /#1/
   \ifparameter#2\or\else
     \expandafter\ignorerest
   \fi
   /#2/ }

\foo test \foo[456] test \foo[456][789] test
```

As this likely makes most sense in conditionals you need to make sure the current state is properly finished. Because `\expandafter` bumps the input state, here we actually quit two levels; this is because so called 'backed up text' is intercepted by this primitive.

1234 test 1234 /456/ test 1234 /456/ /789/ test

623 \ignorespaces

This traditional TEX primitive signals the scanner to ignore the following spaces, if any. We mention it because we show a companion in the next section.

624 \ignoretokens

This primitive is an input command that reads a balanced list and discards what it sees upto a matching right brace.

625 \ignoreupto

This ignores everything upto the given token, so

```
\ignoreupto \foo not this but\foo only this
```

will give: only this.

626 \immediate

This one has no effect unless you intercept it at the Lua end and act upon it. In original TEX immediate is used in combination with read from and write to file operations. So, this is an old primitive with a new meaning.

627 \immutable

This prefix flags what follows as being frozen and is usually applied to for instance `\integerdef`'d control sequences. In that respect is is like `\permanent` but it makes it possible to distinguish quantities from macros.

628 \indent

In engines other than LuaMetaTEX a paragraph starts with an indentation box. The width of that (empty) box is determined by `\parindent`. In LuaMetaTEX we can use a dedicated indentation skip instead (as part of paragraph normalization). An indentation can be zero'd with `\undent`.

629 \indexedsubprescript

This primitive (or `____`) puts a flag on the script but renders the same:

```
$
    x \indexedsuperprescript{2} \subprescript       {2} +
    x \superprescript       {2} \indexedsubprescript{2} +
```

```
    x \superprescript       {2} ____                {2} =
    x \superprescript       {2} \subprescript       {2}
$
```

Gives: ${}^{2}_{2}x + {}^{2}_{2}x + {}^{2}_{2}x = {}^{2}_{2}x$.

630 \indexedsubscript

This primitive (or __) puts a flag on the script but renders the same:

```
$
    x \indexedsuperscript{2} \subscript       {2} +
    x \superscript       {2} \indexedsubscript{2} +
    x \superscript       {2} __                {2} =
    x \superscript       {2} \subscript       {2}
$
```

Gives: $x^{2}_{2} + x^{2}_{2} + x^{2}_{2} = x^{2}_{2}$.

631 \indexedsuperprescript

This primitive (or ^^^^) puts a flag on the script but renders the same:

```
$
    x \indexedsuperprescript{2} \subprescript       {2} +
    x ^^^^                  {2} \subprescript       {2} +
    x \superprescript       {2} \indexedsubprescript{2} =
    x \superprescript       {2} \subprescript       {2}
$
```

Gives: ${}^{2}_{2}x + {}^{2}_{2}x + {}^{2}_{2}x = {}^{2}_{2}x$.

632 \indexedsuperscript

This primitive (or ^^) puts a flag on the script but renders the same:

```
$
    x \indexedsuperscript{2} \subscript       {2} +
    x ^^                  {2} \subscript       {2} +
    x \superscript       {2} \indexedsubscript{2} =
    x \superscript       {2} \subscript       {2}
$
```

Gives: $x^{2}_{2} + x^{2}_{2} + x^{2}_{2} = x^{2}_{2}$.

633 \indexofcharacter

This primitive is more versatile variant of the backward quote operator, so instead of:

```
\number`|
\number`~
```

```
\number`\a
\number`\q
```

you can say:

```
\the\indexofcharacter |
\the\indexofcharacter ~
\the\indexofcharacter \a
\the\indexofcharacter \q
```

In both cases active characters and unknown single character control sequences are valid. In addition this also works:

```
\chardef    \foo 128
\mathchardef\oof 130

\the\indexofcharacter \foo
\the\indexofcharacter \oof
```

An important difference is that `\indexofcharacter` returns an integer and not a serialized number. A negative value indicates no valid character.

634 \indexofregister

You can use this instead of `\number` for determining the index of a register but it also returns a number when a register value is seen. The result is an integer, not a serialized number.

When you have defined a register with one of the `\...def` primitives but for some reasons needs to know the register index you can query that:

```
\the\indexofregister \scratchcounterone,
\the\indexofregister \scratchcountertwo,
\the\indexofregister \scratchwidth,
\the\indexofregister \scratchheight,
\the\indexofregister \scratchdepth,
\the\indexofregister \scratchbox
```

We lie a little here because in ConTEXt the box index `\scratchbox` is actually defined as: `\global\permanent\constant integer 257` but it still is a number so it fits in.

0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 257

635 \inherited

When this prefix is used in a definition using `\let` the target will inherit all the properties of the source.

636 \initcatcodetable

This initializes the catcode table with the given index.

637 \initialpageskip

When a page starts the value of this register are used to initialize `\pagetotal`, `\pagestretch` and `\pageshrink`. This make nicer code than using a `\topskip` with weird values.

638 \initialtopskip

When set this one will be used instead of `\topskip`. The rationale is that the `\topskip` is often also used for side effects and compensation.

639 \input

There are several ways to use this primitive:

```
\input  test
\input {test}
\input "test"
\input 'test'
```

When no suffix is given, TEX will assume the suffix is `.tex`. The second one is normally used.

640 \inputlineno

This integer holds the current linenumber but it is not always reliable.

641 \insert

This stores content in the insert container with the given index. In LuaMetaTEX inserts bubble up to outer boxes so we don't have the 'deeply buried insert issue'.

642 \insertboundary

This boundary takes two integer values. When it is encountered in the page builder a callback `insert_boundary` will be triggered that gets the two integers as arguments.

643 \insertbox

This is the accessor for the box (with results) of an insert with the given index. This is equivalent to the `\box` in the traditional method.

644 \insertcategory

There is currently only one category (0x01) for page bound inserts like footnotes. The category is used to help determining the top of an insert stack as well as the first in a substack. For instance, a top insert can come before a footnote but in that case the first footnote is still the first in the list of inserts with the same category (when set). This relates to the `insert_distance` callback where the first variant call gets an index (integer), variant (here 1), a first and top state (boolean) and returns a distance (glue). These are rather specialized features.

645 \insertcopy

This is the accessor for the box (with results) of an insert with the given index. It makes a copy so the original is kept. This is equivalent to a `\copy` in the traditional method.

646 \insertdepth

This is the (current) depth of the inserted material with the given index. It is comparable to the `\dp` in the traditional method.

647 \insertdirection

This sets the direction of the inserted material with the given index.

648 \insertdistance

This is the space before the inserted material with the given index. This is equivalent to `\glue` in the traditional method.

649 \insertheight

This is the (current) depth of the inserted material with the given index. It is comparable to the `\ht` in the traditional method.

650 \insertheights

This is the combined height of the inserted material.

651 \insertlimit

This is the maximum height that the inserted material with the given index can get. This is equivalent to `\dimen` in the traditional method.

652 \insertlinedepth

This property is used in the balancer where the currently checked insert has no depth. It is experimental.

653 \insertlineheight

This is a reserved property.

654 \insertmaxdepth

This is the maximum depth that the inserted material with the given index can get.

655 \insertmaxplaced

This represents the maximum number of inserts that gets placed (flushed) for the given index.

656 \insertmode

In traditional TEX inserts are controlled by a \box, \dimen, \glue and \count register with the same index. The allocators have to take this into account. When this primitive is set to one a different model is followed with its own namespace. There are more abstract accessors to interface to this.[11]

657 \insertmultiplier

This is the height (contribution) multiplier for the inserted material with the given index. This is equivalent to \count in the traditional method.

658 \insertonlycount

When a page was wrapped up and there are *only* inserts left, this variable hold the number of inserts. In ConTEXt we use this property to issue an insert boundary that then triggers (via a callback) resetting some constraints with respect to note placement. It's one of the more specialized features.

659 \insertoptions

When bit 0x01 is set, the engine will check for insert overflows as described in one of the 'beyond' wrap-ups in the ConTEXt distribution. Such overflows can happen in documents (like critical editions) that have many (large) notes that end up on their own pages.

660 \insertpenalties

This dual purpose internal counter holds the sum of penalties for insertions that got split. When we're the output routine in reports the number of insertions that is kept in store.

661 \insertpenalty

This is the insert penalty associated with the inserted material with the given index.

662 \insertplaced

This quantity hold the number of inserts in a specific class that has been placed, assuming that we use that insert mode.

663 \insertprogress

This returns the current accumulated insert height of the insert with the given index.

664 \insertshrink

When set this will be taken into account. It basically turns ann insert into a kind of glue but without it being a valid break point.

[11] The old model might be removed at some point.

665 \insertstorage

The value passed will enable (one) or disable (zero) the insert with the given index.

666 \insertstoring

The value passed will enable (one) or disable (zero) inserts.

667 \insertstretch

When set this will be taken into account. It basically turns ann insert into a kind of glue but without it being a valid break point.

668 \insertunbox

This is the accessor for the box (with results) of an insert with the given index. It makes a copy so the original is kept. The content is unpacked and injected. This is equivalent to an \unvbox in the traditional method.

669 \insertuncopy

This is the accessor for the box (with results) of an insert with the given index. It makes a copy so the original is kept. The content is unpacked and injected. This is equivalent to the \unvcopy in the traditional method.

670 \insertwidth

This is the (current) width of the inserted material with the given index. It is comparable to the \wd in the traditional method.

671 \instance

This prefix flags a macro as an instance which is mostly relevant when a macro package want to categorize macros.

672 \integerdef

You can alias to a count (integer) register with \countdef:

```
\countdef\MyCount134
```

Afterwards the next two are equivalent:

```
\MyCount   = 99
\count1234 = 99
```

where \MyCount can be a bit more efficient because no index needs to be scanned. However, in terms of storage the value (here 99) is always in the register so \MyCount has to get there. This indirectness has the benefit that directly setting the value is reflected in the indirect accessor.

```
\integerdef\MyCount = 99
```

This primitive also defines a numeric equivalent but this time the number is stored with the equivalent. This means that:

```
\let\MyCopyOfCount = \MyCount
```

will store the *current* value of `\MyCount` in `\MyCopyOfCount` and changing either of them is not reflected in the other.

The usual `\advance`, `\multiply` and `\divide` can be used with these integers and they behave like any number. But compared to registers they are actually more a constant.

673 \interactionmode

This internal integer can be used to set or query the current interaction mode:

\batchmode	0	omits all stops and terminal output
\nonstopmode	1	omits all stops
\scrollmode	2	omits error stops
\errorstopmode	3	stops at every opportunity to interact

674 \interlinepenalties

This is a more granular variant of `\interlinepenalty`: an array of penalties to be put between successive line from the start of a paragraph. The list starts with the number of penalties that gets passed.

675 \interlinepenalty

This is the penalty that is put between lines.

676 \jobname

This gives the current job name without suffix: `luametatex`.

677 \justificationskip

When set, the amount is added to the left- and/or right skip values and the stretch and shrink properties then replace the corresponding fields in those skips. This feature relates to experimental support for ragged paragraphs.

678 \kern

A kern is injected with the given dimension. For variants that switch to a mode we have `\hkern` and `\vkern`.

679 \language

Sets (or returns) the current language, a number. In LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX the current language is stored in the glyph nodes.

680 \lastalignmentcolumn

This number keeps track of the last (maximum) column count.

681 \lastalignmentrow

This number keeps track of the last (maximum) row count.

682 \lastarguments

```
\def\MyMacro    #1{\the\lastarguments (#1) }          \MyMacro{1}       \crlf
\def\MyMacro  #1#2{\the\lastarguments (#1) (#2)}      \MyMacro{1}{2}    \crlf
\def\MyMacro#1#2#3{\the\lastarguments (#1) (#2) (#3)} \MyMacro{1}{2}{3} \par

\def\MyMacro    #1{(#1)           \the\lastarguments} \MyMacro{1}       \crlf
\def\MyMacro  #1#2{(#1) (#2)      \the\lastarguments} \MyMacro{1}{2}    \crlf
\def\MyMacro#1#2#3{(#1) (#2) (#3) \the\lastarguments} \MyMacro{1}{2}{3} \par
```

The value of `\lastarguments` can only be trusted in the expansion until another macro is seen and expanded. For instance in these examples, as soon as a character (like the left parenthesis) is seen, horizontal mode is entered and `\everypar` is expanded which in turn can involve macros. You can see that in the second block (that is: unless we changed `\everypar` in the meantime).

1(1)
2(1) (2)
3(1) (2) (3)

(1) 0
(1) (2) 2
(1) (2) (3) 3

683 \lastatomclass

This returns the class number of the last atom seen in the math input parser.

684 \lastboundary

This primitive looks back in the list for a user boundary injected with `\boundary` and when seen it returns that value or otherwise zero.

685 \lastbox

When issued this primitive will, if possible, pull the last box from the current list.

686 \lastchkdimension

When the last check for a dimension with `\ifchkdimension` was successful this primitive returns the value.

687 \lastchknumber

When the last check for an integer with \ifchknumber was successful this primitive returns the value.

688 \lastkern

This returns the last kern seen in the list (if possible).

689 \lastleftclass

This variable registers the first applied math class in a formula.

690 \lastlinefit

The e-TEX manuals explains this parameter in detail but in practice it is enough to know that when set to 1000 spaces in the last line might match those in the previous line. Basically it counters the strong push of a \parfillskip.

691 \lastloopiterator

In addition to \currentloopiterator we have a variant that stores the value in case an unexpanded loop is used:

```
\localcontrolledrepeat 8 { [\the\currentloopiterator\eq\the\lastloopiterator] }
\expandedrepeat        8 { [\the\currentloopiterator\eq\the\lastloopiterator] }
\unexpandedrepeat      8 { [\the\currentloopiterator\ne\the\lastloopiterator] }
```

```
[1=1] [2=2] [3=3] [4=4] [5=5] [6=6] [7=7] [8=8]
[1=1] [2=2] [3=3] [4=4] [5=5] [6=6] [7=7] [8=8]
[0≠1] [0≠2] [0≠3] [0≠4] [0≠5] [0≠6] [0≠7] [0≠8]
```

692 \lastnamedcs

The example code in the previous section has some redundancy, in the sense that there to be looked up control sequence name mymacro is assembled twice. This is no big deal in a traditional eight bit TEX but in a Unicode engine multi-byte sequences demand some more processing (although it is unlikely that control sequences have many multi-byte utf8 characters).

```
\ifcsname mymacro\endcsname
    \csname mymacro\endcsname
\fi
```

Instead we can say:

```
\ifcsname mymacro\endcsname
    \lastnamedcs
\fi
```

Although there can be some performance benefits another advantage is that it uses less tokens and parsing. It might even look nicer.

693 \lastnodesubtype

When possible this returns the subtype of the last node in the current node list. Possible values can be queried (for each node type) via Lua helpers.

694 \lastnodetype

When possible this returns the type of the last node in the current node list. Possible values can be queried via Lua helpers.

695 \lastpageextra

This reports the last applied (permitted) overshoot.

696 \lastparcontext

When a paragraph is wrapped up the reason is reported by this state variable. Possible values are:

0x00	normal	0x04	dbox	0x08	output	0x0C	math
0x01	vmode	0x05	vcenter	0x09	align	0x0D	lua
0x02	vbox	0x06	vadjust	0x0A	noalign	0x0E	reset
0x03	vtop	0x07	insert	0x0B	span		

697 \lastpartrigger

There are several reasons for entering a paragraphs and some are automatic and triggered by other commands that force TEX into horizontal mode.

0x00	normal	0x04	mathchar	0x08	math	0x0C	valign
0x01	force	0x05	char	0x09	kern	0x0D	vrule
0x02	indent	0x06	boundary	0x0A	hskip		
0x03	noindent	0x07	space	0x0B	unhbox		

698 \lastpenalty

This returns the last penalty seen in the list (if possible).

699 \lastrightclass

This variable registers the last applied math class in a formula.

700 \lastskip

This returns the last glue seen in the list (if possible).

701 \lccode

When the \lowercase operation is applied the lowercase code of a character is used for the replacement. This primitive is used to set that code, so it expects two character number. The code is also

used to determine what characters make a word suitable for hyphenation, although in LuaTEX we introduced the \hj code for that.

702 \leaders

See \gleaders for an explanation.

703 \left

Inserts the given delimiter as left fence in a math formula.

704 \lefthyphenmin

This is the minimum number of characters after the last hyphen in a hyphenated word.

705 \leftmarginkern

The dimension returned is the protrusion kern that has been added (if at all) to the left of the content in the given box.

706 \leftskip

This skip will be inserted at the left of every line.

707 \lefttwindemerits

Additional demerits for a glyph sequence at the left edge when a previous line also has that sequence.

708 \leqno

This primitive stores the (typeset) content (presumably a number) and when the display formula is wrapped that number will end up left of the formula.

709 \let

Where a \def creates a new macro, either or not with argument, a \let creates an alias. You are not limited to aliasing macros, basically everything can be aliased.

710 \letcharcode

Assigning a meaning to an active character can sometimes be a bit cumbersome; think of using some documented uppercase magic that one tends to forget as it's used only a few times and then never looked at again. So we have this:

```
{\letcharcode 65 1 \catcode 65 13 A : \meaning A}\crlf
{\letcharcode 65 2 \catcode 65 13 A : \meaning A}\par
```

here we define A as an active charcter with meaning 1 in the first line and 2 in the second.

```
1 : the character U+0031 1
2 : the character U+0032 2
```

Normally one will assign a control sequence:

```
{\letcharcode 66 \bf \catcode 66 13 {B   bold}: \meaning B}\crlf
{\letcharcode 73 \it \catcode 73 13 {I italic}: \meaning I}\par
```

Of course \bf and \it are ConTEXt specific commands:

```
bold: protected macro:\ifmmode \expandafter \mathbf \else \expandafter \normalbf \fi
italic: protected macro:\ifmmode \expandafter \mathit \else \expandafter \normalit
\fi
```

711 \letcsname

It is easy to see that we save two tokens when we use this primitive. As with the ..defcs.. variants it also saves a push back of the composed macro name.

```
\expandafter\let\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
            \letcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname\relax
```

712 \letfrozen

You can explicitly freeze an unfrozen macro:

```
\def\MyMacro{...}
\letfrozen\MyMacro
```

A redefinition will now give:

```
! You can't redefine a frozen macro.
```

713 \letmathatomrule

You can change the class for a specific style. This probably only makes sense for user classes. It's one of those features that we used when experimenting with more control.

```
\letmathatomrule 4 = 4 4 0 0
\letmathatomrule 5 = 5 5 0 0
```

This changes the classes 4 and 5 into class 0 in the two script styles and keeps them the same in display and text. We leave it to the reader to ponder how useful this is.

714 \letmathparent

This primitive takes five arguments: the target class, and four classes that determine the pre penalty class, post penalty class, options class and a dummy class for future use.

715 \letmathspacing

By default inter-class spacing inherits from the ordinary class but you can remap specific combinations is you want:

```
\letmathspacing \mathfunctioncode
    \mathordinarycode \mathordinarycode
    \mathordinarycode \mathordinarycode
```

The first value is the target class, and the nest four tell how it behaves in display, text, script and script script style. Here \mathfunctioncode is a ConTEXt specific class (26), one of the many.

716 \letprotected

Say that you have these definitions:

```
            \def  \MyMacroA{alpha}
\protected  \def  \MyMacroB{beta}
            \edef \MyMacroC{\MyMacroA\MyMacroB}
\letprotected     \MyMacroA
            \edef \MyMacroD{\MyMacroA\MyMacroB}
\meaning          \MyMacroC\crlf
\meaning          \MyMacroD\par
```

The typeset meaning in this example is:

```
macro:alpha\MyMacroB
macro:\MyMacroA \MyMacroB
```

717 \lettolastnamedcs

The \lastnamedcs primitive is somewhat special as it is a (possible) reference to a control sequence which is why we have a dedicated variant of \let.

```
\csname relax\endcsname\let                          \foo\lastnamedcs \meaning\foo
\csname relax\endcsname\expandafter\let\expandafter \oof\lastnamedcs \meaning\oof
\csname relax\endcsname\lettolastnamedcs             \ofo             \meaning\ofo
```

These give the following where the first one obviously is not doing what we want and the second one is kind of cumbersome.

```
\lastnamedcs
\relax
\relax
```

718 \lettonothing

This one let's a control sequence to nothing. Assuming that \empty is indeed empty, these two lines are equivalent.

```
\let         \foo\empty
\lettonothing\oof
```

719 \limits

This is a modifier: it flags the previous math atom to have its scripts above and below the (summation, product, integral etc.) symbol. In LuaMetaTEX this can be any atom (that is: any class). In display mode the location defaults to above and below.

Like any modifier it looks back for a math specific element. This means that the following will work well:

```
\sum \limits ^2 _3
\sum ^2 \limits _3
\sum ^2 _3 \limits
\sum ^2 _3 \limits \nolimits \limits
```

because scripts are bound to these elements so looking back just sees the element.

720 \linebreakchecks

The value of this parameter is passed to the linebreak callback so that one can act on it if needed.

721 \linebreakoptional

This selects the optional text range that is to be used. Optional content is marked with optionalboundary nodes.

722 \linebreakpasses

When set to a positive value it will apply additional line break runs defined with `\parpasses` until the criteria set in there are met.

723 \linedirection

This sets the text direction (1 for `r2l`) to the given value but keeps preceding glue into the range.

724 \linepenalty

Every line gets this penalty attached, so normally it is a small value, like here: 10.

725 \lineskip

This is the amount of glue that gets added when the distance between lines falls below `\lineskiplimit`.

726 \lineskiplimit

When the distance between two lines becomes less than `\lineskiplimit` a `\lineskip` glue item is added.

```
\ruledvbox{
    \lineskiplimit 0pt \lineskip3pt \baselineskip0pt
    \ruledhbox{line 1}
    \ruledhbox{line 2}
    \ruledhbox{\tx line 3}
}
```

Normally the \baselineskip kicks in first but here we've set that to zero, so we get two times a 3pt glue injected.



727 \linesnapping

This is an experimental feature what we occasionally come back to, so it's currently undocumented. Here is an example definition:

```
\linesnappinghtfactor 720
\linesnappingdpfactor 280

\specificationdef \LineSnappingA \linesnapping 1 factors global
    step           2
    height      1000
    depth       1000
    httolerance  100
    dptolerance  100
\relax
```

Here the height and depth are multipliers then themselves get multiplied by \linesnappinghtfactor and \linesnappingdpfactor and applied to the \baselineskip. More details can be found in the ConTEXt documentation.

728 \linesnappingdpfactor

See \linesnapping.

729 \linesnappinghtfactor

See \linesnapping.

730 \linesnappingtolerance

See \linesnapping.

731 \localbreakpar

This forces a newline in a paragraph without side effects so that for instance \widowpenalties work as expected in scenarios where using a \par would have been the solution. This is an experimental primitive!

732 \localbrokenpenalty

This sets the penalty used for a break in the current paragraph when the local paragraph settings are active.

733 \localcontrol

This primitive takes a single token:

```
\edef\testa{\scratchcounter123 \the\scratchcounter}
\edef\testc{\testa \the\scratchcounter}
\edef\testd{\localcontrol\testa \the\scratchcounter}
```

The three meanings are:

123

```
\testa  macro:\scratchcounter 123 123
\testc  macro:\scratchcounter 123 123123
\testd  macro:123
```

The \localcontrol makes that the following token gets expanded so we don't see the yet to be expanded assignment show up in the macro body.

734 \localcontrolled

The previously described local control feature comes with two extra helpers. The \localcontrolled primitive takes a token list and wraps this into a local control sidetrack. For example:

```
\edef\testa{\scratchcounter123 \the\scratchcounter}
\edef\testb{\localcontrolled{\scratchcounter123}\the\scratchcounter}
```

The two meanings are:

```
\testa  macro:\scratchcounter 123 123
\testb  macro:123
```

The assignment is applied immediately in the expanded definition.

735 \localcontrolledendless

As the name indicates this will loop forever. You need to explicitly quit the loop with \quitloop or \quitloopnow. The first quitter aborts the loop at the start of a next iteration, the second one tries to exit immediately, but is sensitive for interference with for instance nested conditionals. Of course in the next case one can just adapt the final iterator value instead. Here we step by 2:

```
\expandedloop 1 20 2 {%
    \ifnum\currentloopiterator>10
        \quitloop
    \else
        [!]
    \fi
}
```

This results in:

[!] [!] [!] [!] [!]

736 \localcontrolledloop

As with more of the primitives discussed here, there is a manual in the 'lowlevel' subset that goes into more detail. So, here a simple example has to do:

```
\localcontrolledloop 1 100 1 {%
    \ifnum\currentloopiterator>6\relax
        \quitloop
    \else
        [\number\currentloopnesting:\number\currentloopiterator]
        \localcontrolledloop 1 8 1 {%
            (\number\currentloopnesting:\number\currentloopiterator)
        }\par
    \fi
}
```

Here we see the main loop primitive being used nested. The code shows how we can `\quitloop` and have access to the `\currentloopiterator` as well as the nesting depth `\currentloopnesting`.

[1:1] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:2] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:3] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:4] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:5] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)
[1:6] (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) (2:4) (2:5) (2:6) (2:7) (2:8)

Be aware of the fact that `\quitloop` will end the loop at the *next* iteration so any content after it will show up. Normally this one will be issued in a condition and we want to end that properly. Also keep in mind that because we use local control (a nested TEX expansion loop) anything you feed back can be injected out of order.

The three numbers can be separated by an equal sign which is a trick to avoid look ahead issues that can result from multiple serialized numbers without spaces that indicate the end of sequence of digits.

737 \localcontrolledrepeat

This one takes one instead three arguments which looks a bit better in simple looping.

738 \localhangafter

A positive value will create a local, that is at he current line, hole in the paragraph similar to a `\hangafter`. One needs to set `\localhangindent` in order to happen. Depending on the sign of that dimension the hole will appear left or right. In this perspective 'current' is a bit fluid because the par builder is in charge of breaking lines at the best possible location.

739 \localhangindent

This value only kicks in when a `\localhangafter` command is given. A positive dimension will create an insert left of the paragraph, a negative number creates a hole at the right. This is consistent with `\hangindent`.

740 \localinterlinepenalty

This sets the interline penalty for the current paragraph without changing the global \interlinepenalty.

741 \localleftbox

This sets the box that gets injected at the left of every line.

742 \localleftboxbox

This returns the box set with \localleftbox.

743 \localmiddlebox

This sets the box that gets injected at the left of every line but its width is ignored.

744 \localmiddleboxbox

This returns the box set with \localmiddlebox.

745 \localpretolerance

This sets the first-pass line-breaking tolerance for the current paragraph without changing the global \pretolerance.

746 \localrightbox

This sets the box that gets injected at the right of every line.

747 \localrightboxbox

This returns the box set with \localrightbox.

748 \localtolerance

This sets the line-breaking tolerance for the current paragraph without changing the global \tolerance.

749 \long

This original prefix gave the macro being defined the property that it could not have \par (or the often equivalent empty lines) in its arguments. It was mostly a protection against a forgotten right curly brace, resulting in a so called run-away argument. That mattered on a paper terminal or slow system where such a situation should be catched early. In LuaTEX it was already optional, and in LuaMetaTEX we dropped this feature completely (so that we could introduce others).

750 \looseness

The number fo lines in the current paragraph will be increased by given number of lines. For this to succeed there need to be enough stretch in the spacing to make that happen. There is some wishful thinking involved.

751 \lower

This primitive takes two arguments, a dimension and a box. The box is moved down. The operation only succeeds in horizontal mode.

752 \lowercase

This token processor converts character tokens to their lowercase counterparts as defined per `\lccode`. In order to permit dirty tricks active characters are also processed. We don't really use this primitive in ConTEXt, but for consistency we let it respond to `\expand`:[12]

```
\edef           \foo       {\lowercase{tex TeX \TEX}} \meaningless\foo
\lowercase{\edef\foo                  {tex TeX \TEX}} \meaningless\foo
\edef           \foo{\expand\lowercase{tex TeX \TEX}} \meaningless\foo
```

Watch how `\lowercase` is not expandable but can be forced to. Of course, as the logo macro is protected the TEX logo remains mixed case.

\lowercase {tex TeX \TEX }
tex tex \TEX
tex tex \TEX

753 \lpcode

This one can be used to set the left protrusion factor of a glyph in a font and takes three arguments: font, character code and factor. It is kind of obsolete because we can set up vectors at definition time and tweaking from TEX can have side effects because it globally adapts the font.

754 \luaboundary

This primive inserts a boundary that takes two integer values. Some mechanisms (like math constructors) can trigger a callback when preceded by such a boundary. As we go more mechanisms might do such a check but we don't want a performance hit on ConTEXt as we do so (nor unwanted interference).

755 \luabytecode

This behaves like `\luafunction` but here the number is a byte code register. These bytecodes are in the `lua.bytecode` array.

756 \luabytecodecall

This behaves like `\luafunctioncall` but here the number is a byte code register. These bytecodes are in the `lua.bytecode` array.

[12] Instead of providing **\lowercased** and **\uppercased** primitives that would clash with macros anyway.

757 \luacopyinputnodes

When set to a positive value this will ensure that when nodes are printed from Lua to TEX copies are used.

758 \luadef

This command relates a (user) command to a Lua function registered in the `lua.lualib_get_functions_table()`, so after:

```
\luadef\foo123
```

the `\foo` command will trigger the function at index 123. Of course a macro package has to make sure that these definitions are unique.[13]

This command is accompanied by `\luafunctioncall` and `\luafunction`. When we have funciton 123 defined as

```
function() tex.sprint("!") end
```

the following:

```
(\luafunctioncall  \foocode ?)
(\normalluafunction\foocode ?)
(\foo                       ?)
```

gives three times `(!?)`. But this:

```
\edef\oof{\foo                     } \meaning\oof  % protected
\edef\oof{\luafunctioncall  \foocode} \meaning\oof  % protected
\edef\oof{\normalluafunction\foocode} \meaning\oof  % expands
```

returns:

```
macro:!
macro:\luafunctioncall 1740
macro:!
```

Because the definition command is like any other

```
\permanent\protected\luadef\foo123
```

boils down to:

```
permanent protected luacall 123
```

759 \luaescapestring

This command converts the given (token) list into something that is acceptable for Lua. It is inherited from LuaTEX and not used in ConTEXt.

```
\directlua { tex.print ("\luaescapestring {{\tt This is a "test".}}") }
```

[13] Plain TEX established a norm for allocating registers, like `\newdimen` but there is no such convention for Lua functions.

Results in: `This is a "test".` (Watch the grouping.)

760 \luafunction

The integer passed to this primitive is the index in the table returned by `lua.lualib_get_functions_table()`. Of course a macro package has to provide reliable management for this. This is a so called convert command so it expands in an expansion context (like an `\edef`).

761 \luafunctioncall

The integer passed to this primitive is the index in the table returned by `lua.lualib_get_functions_table()`. Of course a macro package has to provide reliable management for this. This primitive doesn't expand in an expansion context (like an `\edef`).

762 \luametatexmajorversion

This is the numeric major version number, so it's an integer: 2, which will only change when we have very drastic changes. The whole repertoire of numbers is:

\the\luametatexmajorversion	2
\the\luametatexminorversion	11
\the\luametatexrelease	10
\the\luametatexversion	211

The last two are there because they might be tested but the first three are the official ones.

763 \luametatexminorversion

This is a numeric minor version number, so it's an integer: 11. It changes when we add functionality. Intermediate updates

764 \luametatexrelease

This is a numeric release number, so it's an integer: 10. It changes when we are developing functionality.

765 \luatexbanner

This gives: `This is LuaMetaTeX, Version 2.11.10`.

766 \luametatexversion

This is an integer. The current value is: 211.

767 \mark

The given token list is stored in a node in the current list and might become content of `\topmark`, `\botmark` or `\firstmark` when a page split off, or in the case of a box split in `\splitbotmark` or `\splitfirstmark`. In LuaMetaTEX deeply burried marks bubbly up to an outer box level.

768 \marks

This command is similar to \mark but first expects a number of a mark register. Multiple marks were introduced in e-TEX.

769 \mathaccent

This takes a number and a math object to put the accent on. The four byte number has a dummy class byte, a family byte and two index bytes. It is replaced by \Umathaccent that handles wide fonts.

770 \mathatom

This operation wraps following content in a atom with the given class. It is part of LuaMetaTEX's extended math support. There are three class related key/values: class, leftclass and rightclass (or all for all of them). When none is given this command expects a class number before scanning the content. The options key expects a bitset but there are also direct option keys, like limits, nolimits, unpack, unroll, single, nooverflow, void and phantom. A source id can be set, one or more attr assigned, and for specific purposes textfont and mathfont directives are accepted. Features like this are discussed in dedicated manuals.

771 \mathatomglue

This returns the glue that will be inserted between two atoms of a given class for a specific style.

```
\the\mathatomglue \textstyle   1 1
\the\mathatomglue \textstyle   0 2
\the\mathatomglue \scriptstyle 1 1
\the\mathatomglue \scriptstyle 0 2
```

```
1.66667mu
2.22223mu plus 1.11111mu minus 1.11111mu
1.66667mu
0.55556mu minus 0.27777mu
```

772 \mathatomskip

This injects a glue with the given style and class pair specification: $xx\ x\ x\ x\ x\ xx\ xx$.

```
$x x$
$x \mathatomskip \textstyle   1 1 x$
$x \mathatomskip \textstyle   0 2 x$
$x \mathatomskip \scriptstyle 1 1 x$
$x \mathatomskip \scriptstyle 0 2 x$
```

773 \mathbackwardpenalties

See \mathforwardpenalties for an explanation.

774 \mathbeginclass

This variable can be set to signal the class that starts the formula (think of an imaginary leading atom).

775 \mathbin

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘binary’.

776 \mathboundary

This primitive is part of an experiment with granular penalties in math. When set nested fences will use the `\mathdisplaypenaltyfactor` or `\mathinlinepenaltyfactor` to increase nested penalties. A bit more control is possible with `\mathboundary`:

0	begin	factor 1000
1	end	factor 1000
2	begin	given factor
3	end	given factor

These will be used when the mentioned factors are zero. The last two variants expect factor to be given.

777 \mathchar

Replaced by `\Umathchar` this old one takes a four byte number: one byte for the class, one for the family an two for the index. The specified character is appended to to the list.

778 \mathcharclass

Returns the slot (in the font) of the given math character.

```
\the\mathcharclass\Umathchar 4 2 123
```

The first passed number is the class, so we get: 4.

779 \mathchardef

Replaced by `\Umathchardef` this primitive relates a control sequence with a four byte number: one byte for the class, one for the family an two for the index. The defined command will insert that character.

780 \mathcharfam

Returns the family number of the given math character.

```
\the\mathcharfam\Umathchar 4 2 123
```

The second passed number is the family, so we get: 2.

781 \mathcharslot

Returns the slot (or index in the font) of the given math character.

```
\the\mathcharslot\Umathchar 4 2 123
```

The third passed number is the slot, so we get: 123.

782 \mathcheckfencesmode

When set to a positive value there will be no warning if a right fence (`\right` or `\Uright`) is missing.

783 \mathchoice

This command expects four subformulas, for display, text, script and scriptscript and it will eventually use one of them depending on circumstances later on. Keep in mind that a formula is first scanned and when that is finished the analysis and typesetting happens.

784 \mathclass

There are build in classes and user classes. The first possible user class is 20 and the last one is 60. You can better not touch the special classes 'all' (61), 'begin' (62) and 'end' (63). The basic 8 classes that original TEX provides are of course also present in LuaMetaTEX. In addition we have some that relate to constructs that the engine builds.

ordinary	ord	0	the default
operator	op	1	small and large operators
binary	bin	2	
relation	rel	3	
open		4	
close		5	
punctuation	punct	6	
variable		7	adapts to the current family
active		8	character marked as such becomes active
inner		9	this class is not possible for characters
under		10	
over		11	
fraction		12	
radical		13	
middle		14	
accent		16	
fenced		17	
ghost		18	
vcenter		19	

There is no standard for user classes but ConTEXt users should be aware of quite some additional ones that are set up. The engine initialized the default properties of classes (spacing, penalties, etc.) the same as original TEX.

Normally characters have class bound to them but you can (temporarily) overload that one. The `\mathclass` primitive expects a class number and a valid character number or math character and inserts the symbol as if it were of the given class; so the original class is replaced.

```
\ruledhbox{$(x)$} and \ruledhbox{$\mathclass 1 `(x\mathclass 1 `)$}
```

Changing the class is likely to change the spacing, compare $\boxed{(x)}$ and $\boxed{(x)}$.

785 \mathclose

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘close’.

786 \mathcode

This maps a character to one in a family: the assigned value has one byte for the class, one for the family and two for the index. It has little use in an OpenType math setup.

787 \mathdictgroup

This is an experimental feature that in due time will be explored in ConTEXt. It currently has no consequences for rendering.

788 \mathdictionary

This is an experimental feature that in due time will be explored in ConTEXt. It currently has no consequences for rendering.

789 \mathdictproperties

This is an experimental feature that in due time will be explored in ConTEXt. It currently has no consequences for rendering.

790 \mathdirection

When set to 1 this will result in `r2l` typeset math formulas but of course you then also need to set up math accordingly (which is the case in ConTEXt).

791 \mathdiscretionary

The usual `\discretionary` command is supported in math mode but it has the disadvantage that one needs to make sure that the content triplet does the math right (especially the style). This command takes an optional class specification.

```
\mathdiscretionary                      {+} {+} {+}
\mathdiscretionary class \mathbinarycode {+} {+} {+}
```

It uses the same logic as `\mathchoice` but in this case we handle three snippets in the current style.

A fully automatic mechanism kicks in when a character has a `\hmcode` set:

bit	meaning	explanation
1	normal	a discretionary is created with the same components
2	italic	following italic correction is kept with the component

So we can say:

```
\hmcode `+ 3
```

When the `italic` bit is set italic correction is kept at a linebreak.

792 \mathdisplaymode

Display mode is entered with two dollars (other characters can be used but the dollars are a convention). Mid paragraph display formulas get a different treatment with respect to the width and indentation than stand alone. When `\mathdisplaymode` is larger than zero the double dollars (or equivalents) will behave as inline formulas starting out in `\displaystyle` and with `\everydisplay` expanded.

793 \mathdisplaypenaltyfactor

This one is simular to `\mathinlinepenaltyfactor` but is used when we're in display style.

794 \mathdisplayskipmode

A display formula is preceded and followed by vertical glue specified by `\abovedisplayskip` and `\belowdisplayskip` or `\abovedisplayshortskip` and `\belowdisplayshortskip`. Spacing 'above' is always inserted, even when zero, but the spacing 'below' is only inserted when it is non-zero. There's also `\baselineskip` involved. The way spacing is handled can be influenced with `\mathdisplayskipmode`, which takes the following values:

value	meaning
0	does the same as any TEX engine
1	idem
2	only insert spacing when it is not zero
3	never insert spacing

795 \mathdoublescriptmode

When this parameter has a negative value double scripts trigger an error, so with `\superscript`, `\nosuperscript`, `\indexedsuperscript`, `\superprescript`, `\nosuperprescript`, `\indexedsuperprescript`, `\subscript`, `\nosubscript`, `\indexedsubscript`, `\subprescript`, `\nosubprescript`, `\indexedsubprescript` and `\primescript`, as well as their (multiple) `_` and `^` aliases.

A value of zero does the normal and inserts a dummy atom (basically a `{}`) but a positive value is more interesting. Compare these:

```
{\mathdoublescriptmode 0      $x_x_x$}
{\mathdoublescriptmode"000000 $x_x_x$}
{\mathdoublescriptmode"030303 $x_x_x$}
{$x_x_x$}
```

The three pairs of bytes indicate the main class, left side class and right side class of the inserted atom, so we get this: $x_{x\,x}$ $x_{x\,x}$ $x_{x\,x}$ $x_{x\,x}$. The last line gives what ConTEXt is configured for.

796 \mathendclass

This variable can be set to signal the class that ends the formula (think of an imaginary trailing atom).

797 \matheqnogapstep

The display formula number placement heuristic puts the number on the same line when there is place and then separates it by a quad. In LuaTEX we decided to keep that quantity as it can be tight into the math font metrics but introduce a multiplier `\matheqnogapstep` that defaults to 1000.

798 \mathfontcontrol

This bitset controls how the math engine deals with fonts, and provides a way around dealing with inconsistencies in the way they are set up. The `\fontmathcontrol` makes it possible to bind options ot a specific math font. In practice, we just set up the general approach which ii possible because we normalize the math fonts and 'fix' issues at runtime.

`0x00000001`	usefontcontrol
`0x00000002`	overrule
`0x00000004`	underrule
`0x00000008`	radicalrule
`0x00000010`	fractionrule
`0x00000020`	accentskewhalf
`0x00000040`	accentskewapply
`0x00000080`	applyordinarykernpair
`0x00000100`	applyverticalitalickern
`0x00000200`	applyordinaryitalickern
`0x00000400`	applycharitalickern
`0x00000800`	reboxcharitalickern
`0x00001000`	applyboxeditalickern
`0x00002000`	staircasekern
`0x00004000`	applytextitalickern
`0x00008000`	checktextitalickern
`0x00010000`	checkspaceitalickern
`0x00020000`	applyscriptitalickern
`0x00040000`	analyzescriptnucleuschar
`0x00080000`	analyzescriptnucleuslist
`0x00100000`	analyzescriptnucleusbox
`0x00200000`	accenttopskewwithoffset
`0x00400000`	ignorekerndimensions
`0x00800000`	ignoreflataccents
`0x01000000`	extendaccents
`0x02000000`	extenddelimiters

799 \mathforwardpenalties

Inline math can have multiple atoms and constructs and one can configure the penalties between then bases on classes. In addition it is possible to configure additional penalties starting from the beginning or end using `\mathforwardpenalties` and `\mathbackwardpenalties`. This is one the features that we added in the perspective of breaking paragraphs heavy on math into lines. It not that easy to come up with useable values.

These penalties are added to the regular penalties between atoms. Here is an example, as with other primitives that take more arguments the first number indicates how much follows.

```
$ a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = x $\par
\mathforwardpenalties  3 300 200 100
\mathbackwardpenalties 3 250 150  50
$ a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = x $\par
```

You'll notice that we apply more severe penalties at the edges:

$$a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = x$$

$$a + b + c + d + e + f + g + h = x$$

800 \mathgluemode

We can influence the way math glue is handled. By default stretch and shrink is applied but this variable can be used to change that. The limit option ensures that the stretch and shrink doesn't go beyond their natural values.

0x01 stretch
0x02 shrink
0x04 limit

801 \mathgroupingmode

Normally a {} or \bgroup-\egroup pair in math create a math list. However, users are accustomed to using it also for grouping and then a list being created might not be what a user wants. As an alternative to the more verbose \begingroup-\endgroup or even less sensitive \beginmathgroup-\endmathgroup you can set the math grouping mode to a non zero value which makes curly braces (and the aliases) behave as expected.

802 \mathinlinepenaltyfactor

A math formula can have nested (sub)formulas and one might want to discourage a line break inside those. If this value is non zero it becomes a mulitiplier, so a value of 1000 will make an inter class penalty of 100 into 200 when at nesting level 2 and 500 when at level 5.

803 \mathinner

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class 'inner'. In LuaMetaTEX we have more classes and this general wrapper one is therefore kind of redundant.

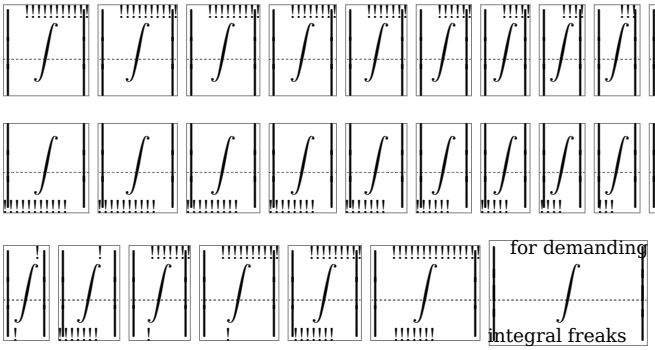
804 \mathleftclass

When set this class will be used when a formula starts.

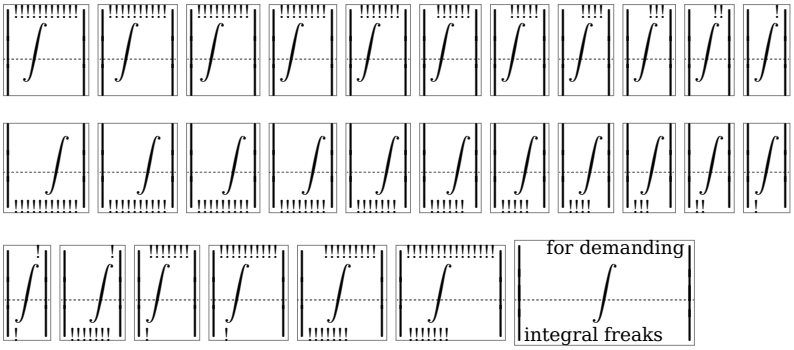
805 \mathlimitsmode

When this parameter is set to a value larger than zero real dimensions are used and longer limits will not stick out, which is a traditional TEX feature. We could have more advanced control but this will do.

Compare the zero setting:



with the positive variant:



Here we switched to Latin Modern because it's font dependent how serious this issue is. In Pagella all is fine in both modes.

806 \mathmainstyle

This inspector returns the outermost math style (contrary to `\mathstyle`), as we can see in the next examples where use these snippets:

```
\def\foo{(\the\mathmainstyle,\the\mathstyle)}
\def\oof{\sqrt[\foo]{\foo}}
\def\ofo{\frac{\foo}{\foo}}
\def\fof{\mathchoice{\foo}{\foo}{\foo}{\foo}}
```

When we use the regular math triggers we get this:

```
$\displaystyle      \foo + \oof + \ofo$
$\textstyle         \foo + \oof + \ofo$
$\displaystyle      \foo + \fof$
$\textstyle         \foo + \fof$
$\scriptstyle       \foo + \fof$
$\scriptscriptstyle\foo + \fof$
```

$(2, 0) + \sqrt[(2,0)]{(2, 0)} + \frac{(2,5)}{(2,5)}$
$(2, 2) + \sqrt[(2,2)]{(2, 2)} + \frac{(2,5)}{(2,5)}$
$(2, 0) + (2, 0)$
$(2, 2) + (2, 2)$
$(2,4)+(2,4)$
$(2,6)+(2,6)$

But we can also do this:

```
\Ustartmathmode \displaystyle      \foo + \oof + \ofo \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \textstyle         \foo + \oof + \ofo \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \displaystyle      \foo + \fof \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \textstyle         \foo + \fof \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \scriptstyle       \foo + \fof \Ustopmathmode
\Ustartmathmode \scriptscriptstyle\foo + \fof \Ustopmathmode
```

$(0,0) + \sqrt[(0,0)]{(0,0)} + \frac{(0,5)}{(0,5)}$
$(2,2) + \sqrt[(2,2)]{(2,2)} + \frac{(2,5)}{(2,5)}$
$(0,0) + (0,0)$
$(2,2) + (2,2)$
$(4,4)+(4,4)$
$(6,6)+(6,6)$

807 \mathop

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘operator’.

808 \mathopen

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘open’.

809 \mathoptions

The math renderer can set some options in the process and these are kept with the result in the math nodes. The snapping options in this set can be controlled by the user. The engine itself doesn’t anything with these.

0x00	normal	0x08	cramped
0x01	short	0x10	snapping
0x02	orphaned	0x20	nosnapping
0x04	display	0x40	text

810 \mathord

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class ‘ordinary’.

811 \mathparentstyle

This inspector returns the math style used in a construct, so is is either equivalent to `\mathmainstyle` or a nested `\mathstyle`. For instance in a nested fraction we get this (in ConTEXt) in display formulas:

$$\frac{\frac{(0,1,5)}{(0,1,5)}}{\frac{(0,1,5)}{(0,1,5)}} + (0,0,0)$$

but this in inline formulas:

$\frac{\frac{(2,5,7)}{(2,5,7)}}{\frac{(2,5,7)}{(2,5,7)}} + (2, 2, 2)$

where the first element in a nested fraction.

812 \mathpenaltiesmode

Normally the TEX math engine only inserts penalties when in textstyle. You can force penalties in displaystyle with this parameter. In inline math we always honor penalties, with mode 0 and mode 1 we get this:

$x \mathop{+}_{\text{MP:0}} 2x \mathop{=}_{\text{MP:700}} 0$
$x \mathop{+}_{\text{MP:0}} 2x \mathop{=}_{\text{MP:700}} 1$

However in ConTEXt, where all is done in inline math mode, we set this this parameter to 1, otherwise we wouldn't get these penalties, as shown next:

$$x + 2x = 0$$

$$x \mathop{+}_{\text{MP:700}} 2x \mathop{=}_{\text{MP:500}} 1$$

If one uses a callback it is possible to force penalties from there too.

813 \mathpretolerance

This is used instead of `\pretolerance` when a breakpoint is calculated when a math formula starts.

814 \mathpunct

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class 'punctuation'.

815 \mathrel

This operation wraps following content in a atom with class 'relation'.

816 \mathrightclass

When set this class will be used when a formula ends.

817 \mathrulesfam

When set, this family will be used for setting rule properties in fractions, under and over.

818 \mathrulesmode

When set to a non zero value rules (as in fractions and radicals) will be based on the font parameters in the current family.

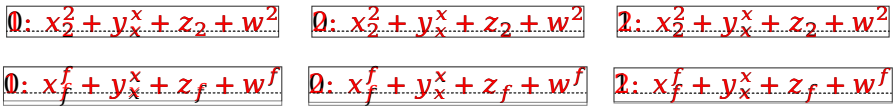
819 \mathscale

In LuaMetaTEX we can either have a family of three (text, script and scriptscript) fonts or we can use one font that we scale and where we also pass information about alternative shapes for the smaller sizes. When we use this more compact mode this primitive reflects the scale factor used.

What gets reported depends on how math is implemented, where in ConTEXt we can have either normal or compact mode: 1000 700 550 1000 700 550. In compact mode we have the same font three times so then it doesn't matter which of the three is passed.

820 \mathscriptsmode

There are situations where you don't want TEX to be clever and optimize the position of super- and subscripts by shifting. This parameter can be used to influence this.



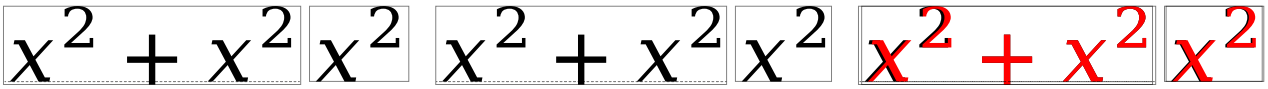
1 over 0 2 over 0 2 over 1

The next table shows what parameters kick in when:

	or (1)	and (2)	otherwise
super	sup shift up	sup shift up	sup shift up, sup bot min
sub	sub shift down	sub sup shift down	sub shift down, sub top max
both	sub shift down	sub sup shift down	sub sup shift down, sub sup vgap, sup sub bot max

821 \mathslackmode

When positive this parameter will make sure that script spacing is discarded when there is no reason to add it.



disabled (0) enabled (1) enabled over disabled

822 \mathsnapping

This parameter relates to `\linesnapping` and is applied to (inline) math.

823 \mathspacingmode

Zero inter-class glue is not injected but setting this parameter to a positive value bypasses that check. This can be handy when checking (tracing) how (and what) spacing is applied. Keep in mind that glue in math is special in the sense that it is not a valid breakpoint. Line breaks in (inline) math are driven by penalties.

824 \mathstack

There are a few commands in TEX that can behave confusing due to the way they are scanned. Compare these:

```
$ 1 \over 2 $
$ 1 + x \over 2 + x$
$ {1 + x} \over {2 + x}$
$ {{1 + x} \over {2 + x}}$
```

A single 1 is an atom as is the curly braced 1 + *x*. The two arguments to `\over` eventually will get typeset in the style that this fraction constructor uses for the numerator and denominator but on might actually also like to relate that to the circumstances. It is comparable to using a `\mathchoice`. In order not to waste runtime on four variants, which itself can have side effects, for instance when counters are involved, LuaTEX introduced `\mathstack`, used like:

```
$\mathstack {1 \over 2}$
```

This `\mathstack` command will scan the next brace and opens a new math group with the correct (in this case numerator) math style. The `\mathstackstyle` primitive relates to this feature that defaults to 'smaller unless already scriptscript'.

825 \mathstackstyle

This returns the (normally) numerator style but the engine can be configured to default to another style. Although all these in the original TEX engines hard coded style values can be changed in LuaMetaTEX it is unlikely to happen. So this primitive will normally return the (current) style 'smaller unless already scriptscript'.

826 \mathstyle

This returns the current math style, so `$\the\mathstyle$` gives 2.

827 \mathstylefontid

This returns the font id (a number) of a style/family combination. What you get back depends on how a macro package implements math fonts.

```
(\the\mathstylefontid\textstyle        \fam)
(\the\mathstylefontid\scriptstyle      \fam)
(\the\mathstylefontid\scriptscriptstyle\fam)
```

In ConTEXt gives: (2) (2) (2).

828 \mathsurround

The kern injected before and after an inline math formula. In practice it will be set to zero, if only because otherwise nested math will also get that space added. We also have `\mathsurroundskip` which, when set, takes precedence. Spacing is controlled by `\mathsurroundmode`.

829 \mathsurroundmode

The possible ways to control spacing around inline math formulas in other manuals and mostly serve as playground.

830 \mathsurroundskip

When set this one wins over \mathsurround.

831 \maththreshold

This is a glue parameter. The amount determines what happens: when it is non zero and the inline formula is less than that value it will become a special kind of box that can stretch and/ or shrink within the given specification. The par builder will use these stretch and/ or shrink components but it is up to one of the Lua callbacks to deal with the content eventually (if at all). As this is somewhat specialized, more details can be found on ConTEXt documentation.

832 \mathtolerance

This is used instead of \tolerance when a breakpoint is calculated when a math formula starts.

833 \maxdeadcycles

When the output routine is called this many times and no page is shipped out an error will be triggered. You therefore need to reset its companion counter \deadcycles if needed. Keep in mind that LuaMetaTEX has no real \shipout because providing a backend is up to the macro package.

834 \maxdepth

The depth of the page is limited to this value.

835 \meaning

We start with a primitive that will be used in the following sections. The reported meaning can look a bit different than the one reported by other engines which is a side effect of additional properties and more extensive argument parsing.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaning\foo
```

tolerant protected macro:[#1]#*[#2]->(#1)(#2)

836 \meaningasis

Although it is not really round trip with the original due to information being lost this primitive tries to return an equivalent definition.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningasis\foo
```

\global \permanent \tolerant \protected \def \foo [#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)}

837 \meaningful

This one reports a bit less than \meaningful.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningful\foo
```

global permanent tolerant protected macro

838 \meaningfull

This one reports a bit more than \meaning.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningfull\foo
```

global permanent tolerant protected macro:[#1]#*[#2]->(#1)(#2)

839 \meaningles

This one reports a bit less than \meaningless.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningles\foo
```

[#1]#*[#2]

840 \meaningless

This one reports a bit less than \meaning.

```
\tolerant\permanent\protected\gdef\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)} \meaningless\foo
```

[#1]#*[#2]->(#1)(#2)

841 \medmuskip

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is `4.0mu plus 2.0mu minus 2.0mu`. In traditional TEX most inter atom spacing is hard coded using the predefined registers.

842 \message

Prints the serialization of the (tokenized) argument to the log file and/or console.

843 \middle

Inserts the given delimiter as middle fence in a math formula. In LuaMetaTEX it is a full blown fence and not (as in e-TEX) variation of \open.

844 \mkern

This one injects a kern node in the current (math) list and expects a value in so called mu units.

845 \month

This internal number starts out with the month that the job started.

846 \moveleft

This primitive takes two arguments, a dimension and a box. The box is moved to the left. The operation only succeeds in vertical mode.

847 \moveright

This primitive takes two arguments, a dimension and a box. The box is moved to the right. The operation only succeeds in vertical mode.

848 \mskip

The given math glue (in mu units) is injected in the horizontal list. For this to succeed we need to be in math mode.

849 \muexpr

This is a companion of \glueexpr so it handles the optional stretch and shrink components. Here math units (mu) are expected.

850 \mugluespecdef

A variant of \gluespecdef that expects mu units is:

```
\mugluespecdef\MyGlue = 3mu plus 2mu minus 1mu
```

The properties are comparable to the ones described in the previous sections.

851 \multiply

The given quantity is multiplied by the given integer (that can be preceded by the keyword 'by', like:

```
\scratchdimen=10pt \multiply\scratchdimen by 3
```

852 \multiplyby

This is slightly more efficient variant of \multiply that doesn't look for by. See previous section.

853 \muskip

This is the accessor for an indexed muskip (muglue) register.

854 \muskipdef

This command associates a control sequence with a muskip (math skip) register (accessed by number).

855 \mutable

This prefix flags what follows can be adapted and is not subjected to overload protection.

856 \mutoglue

The sequence **\the\mutoglue** 20mu plus 10mu minus 5mu gives 20.0pt plus 10.0pt minus 5.0pt.

857 \mvlcurrentlyactive

This numeric state variable hold the id of the currently active mvl. Unless one is in \beginmlv it's zero (regular page).

858 \nestedloopiterator

This is one of the accessors of loop iterators:

```
\expandedrepeat 2 {%
    \expandedrepeat 3 {%
        (n=\the\nestedloopiterator  1,
         p=\the\previousloopiterator1,
         c=\the\currentloopiterator)
    }%
}%
```

Gives:

(n=1, p=1, c=1) (n=2, p=1, c=2) (n=3, p=1, c=3) (n=1, p=2, c=1) (n=2, p=2, c=2) (n=3, p=2, c=3)

Where a nested iterator starts relative to innermost loop, the previous one is relative to the outer loop (which is less predictable because we can already be in a loop).

859 \newlinechar

When something is printed to one of the log channels the character with this code will trigger a linebreak. That also resets some counters that deal with suppressing redundant ones and possible indentation. Contrary to other engines LuaMetaTEX doesn't bother about the length of lines.

860 \noalign

The token list passed to this primitive signals that we don't enter a table row yet but for instance in a \halign do something between the lines: some calculation or injecting inter-row material. In LuaMetaTEX this primitive can be used nested.

This command accepts keywords, like anchor, source and target and other boxlike properties xoffset, yoffset, xmove, ymove, shift (when add was given beforehand, shifts will accumulate) and orientation. With reset the attributes get wiped. It forgets what has been set after the row.

The alignment options can be changed for the following row with \alignoption. It accepts firstskip, lastskip, nofirstskip, nolastskip and prune.

861 \noaligned

The alignment mechanism is kind of special when it comes to expansion because it has to look ahead for a \noalign. This interferes with for instance protected macros, but using this prefix we get around

that. Among the reasons to use protected macros inside an alignment is that they behave better inside for instance `\expanded`.

862 \noarguments

Sometimes picking up arguments can interfere with intentions, for instance when an optional argument uses square brackets but the ones following the command are to be typeset. The `\noarguments` command is a variant on `\relax` (and `\norelax`) but doesn't push back that command when seen. This permits for instance usage in an `\edef` comparable context where one doesn't want to end up with such artifacts.

863 \noatomruling

Spacing in math is based on classes and this primitive inserts a signal that there is no ruling in place here. Basically we have a zero skip glue tagged as non breakable because in math mode glue is not a valid breakpoint unless we have configured inter-class penalties.

864 \noboundary

This inserts a boundary node with no specific property. It can still serve as boundary but is not interpreted in special ways, like the others.

865 \noexpand

This prefix prevents expansion in a context where expansion happens. Another way to prevent expansion is to define a macro as `\protected`.

```
          \def\foo{foo} \edef\oof{we expanded      \foo} \meaning\oof
          \def\foo{foo} \edef\oof{we keep \noexpand\foo} \meaning\oof
\protected\def\foo{foo} \edef\oof{we keep          \foo} \meaning\oof
```

macro:we expanded foo
macro:we keep \foo
macro:we keep \foo

866 \nohrule

This is a rule but flagged as empty which means that the dimensions kick in as for a normal rule but the backend can decide not to show it.

867 \noindent

This starts a paragraph. In LuaTEX (and LuaMetaTEX) a paragraph starts with a so called par node (see `\indent` on how control that. After that comes either `\parindent` glue or a horizontal box. The `\indent` makes gives them some width, while `\noindent` keeps that zero.

868 \nolimits

This is a modifier: it flags the previous math atom to have its scripts after the the atom (contrary to `\limits`. In LuaMetaTEX this can be any atom (that is: any class). In display mode the location defaults to above and below.

869 \nomathchar

This can be used when a math character is expected but not available (or needed).

870 \nonscript

This prevents TEX from adding inter-atom glue at this spot in script or scriptscript mode. It actually is a special glue itself that serves as signal.

871 \nonstopmode

This directive omits all stops.

872 \nooutputboxerror

Setting this a positive value will silence the error triggered by a still somewhat full output box after the output routine returns. It is a bitset:

0x1 when firing up
0x2 after output

where values larger than two will always silence,

873 \norelax

The rationale for this command can be shown by a few examples:

```
\dimen0 1pt \dimen2 1pt \dimen4 2pt
\edef\testa{\ifdim\dimen0=\dimen2\norelax N\else Y\fi}
\edef\testb{\ifdim\dimen0=\dimen2\relax   N\else Y\fi}
\edef\testc{\ifdim\dimen0=\dimen4\norelax N\else Y\fi}
\edef\testd{\ifdim\dimen0=\dimen4\relax   N\else Y\fi}
\edef\teste{\norelax}
```

The five meanings are:

```
\testa  macro:N
\testb  macro:\relax N
\testc  macro:Y
\testd  macro:Y
\teste  macro:
```

So, the \norelax acts like \relax but is not pushed back as usual (in some cases).

874 \normalizelinemode

The TEX engine was not designed to be opened up, and therefore the result of the linebreak effort can differ depending on the conditions. For instance not every line gets the left- or rightskip. The first and last lines have some unique components too. When LuaTEX made it possible too get the (intermediate) result manipulating the result also involved checking what one encountered, for instance glue and its origin. In LuaMetaTEX we can normalize lines so that they have for instance balanced skips.

0x0001	normalizeline	0x0040	clipwidth
0x0002	parindentskip	0x0080	flattendiscretionaries
0x0004	swaphangindent	0x0100	discardzerotabskips
0x0008	swapparshape	0x0200	flattenhleaders
0x0010	breakafterdir	0x0400	balanceinlinemath
0x0020	removemarginkerns		

The order in which the skips get inserted when we normalize is as follows:

\lefthangskip	the hanging indentation (or zero)
\leftskip	the value even when zero
\parfillleftskip	only on the last line
\parinitleftskip	only on the first line
\indentskip	the amount of indentation
...	the (optional) content
\parinitrightskip	only on the first line
\parfillrightskip	only on the last line
\correctionskip	the correction needed to stay within the \hsize
\rightskip	the value even when zero
\righthangskip	the hanging indentation (or zero)

The init and fill skips can both show up when we have a single line. The correction skip replaces the traditional juggling with the right skip and shift of the boxed line.

For now we leave the other options to your imagination. Some of these can be achieved by callbacks (as we did in older versions of ConTEXt) but having the engine do the work we get a better performance.

875 \normalizeparmode

For now we just mention the few options available. It is also worth mentioning that LuaMetaTEX tries to balance the direction nodes.

0x01	normalizepar	0x08	keepinterlinepenalties
0x02	flattenvleaders	0x10	removetrailingspaces
0x04	limitprevgraf		

876 \noscript

In math we can have multiple pre- and postscript. These get typeset in pairs and this primitive can be used to skip one. More about multiple scripts (and indices) can be found in the ConTEXt math manual.

877 \nospaces

When \nospaces is set to 1 no spaces are inserted, when its value is 2 a zero space is inserted. The default value is 0 which means that spaces become glue with properties depending on the font, specific parameters and/or space factors determined preceding characters. A value of 3 will inject a glyph node with code \spacechar. The values 4, 5 and 6 insert a fixed space. With 5 there is no stretch and 6 sets the width to the width of a zero.

878 \nosubprescript

This processes the given script in the current style, so:

comes out as: ${}_2x + {}_2x + {}_2x$.

879 \nosubscript

This processes the given script in the current style, so:

comes out as: $x_2 + x_2 + x_2$.

880 \nosuperprescript

This processes the given script in the current style, so:

comes out as: ${}^2x + {}^2x + {}^2x$.

881 \nosuperscript

This processes the given script in the current style, so:

comes out as: $x^2 + {}^2x + {}^2x$.

882 \notexpanded

This is an equivalent of `\unexpanded` which happens to be a ConTEXt prefix (the pre-e-TEX equivalent of `\protected`). It permits us to transition to a regular primitive with the benefits that comes with primitives, line overload protection, syntax highlighting, etc.

883 \novrule

This is a rule but flagged as empty which means that the dimensions kick in as for a normal rule but the backend can decide not to show it.

884 \nulldelimiterspace

In fenced math delimiters can be invisible in which case this parameter determines the amount of space (width) that ghost delimiter takes.

885 \nullfont

This a symbolic reference to a font with no glyphs and a minimal set of font dimensions.

886 \number

This TEX primitive serializes the next token into a number, assuming that it is indeed a number, like

```
\number`A
\number65
\number\scratchcounter
```

For counters and such the \the primitive does the same, but when you're not sure if what follows is a verbose number or (for instance) a counter the \number primitive is a safer bet, because **\the** 65 will not work.

887 \numericscale

This primitive can best be explained by a few examples:

```
\the\numericscale 1323
\the\numericscale 1323.0
\the\numericscale 1.323
\the\numericscale 13.23
```

In several places TEX uses a scale but due to the lack of floats it then uses 1000 as 1.0 replacement. This primitive can be used for 'real' scales:

1323000
1323000
1323
13230

888 \numericscaled

This is a variant if \numericscale:

```
\scratchcounter 1000
\the\numericscaled 1323   \scratchcounter
\the\numericscaled 1323.0 \scratchcounter
\the\numericscaled 1.323  \scratchcounter
\the\numericscaled 13.23  \scratchcounter
```

The second number gets multiplied by the first fraction:

1323000
1323000
1323
13230

889 \numexperimental

Where \numexpr (from e-TEX) only does simple addition, subtraction, multiplication and division, \numexpression does some more. A next step in functionality is provided by \numexperimental. That one is discussed in more detail in the the ConTEXt lowlevel manual about expressions.

890 \numexpr

This primitive was introduced by e-TEX and supports a simple expression syntax:

```
\the\numexpr 10 * (1 + 2 - 5) / 2 \relax
```

gives: -10. You can mix in symbolic integers and dimensions.

891 \numexpression

The normal \numexpr primitive understands the +, -, * and / operators but in LuaMetaTEX we also can use : for a non rounded integer division (think of Lua's //). if you want more than that, you can use the new expression primitive where you can use the following operators.

add	+	
subtract	-	
multiply	*	
divide	/ :	
mod	%	mod
band	&	band
bxor	^	bxor
bor	| v	bor
and	&&	and
or	||	or
setbit	<undecided>	bset
resetbit	<undecided>	breset
left	<<	
right	>>	
less	<	
lessequal	<=	
equal	= ==	
moreequal	>=	
more	>	
unequal	<> != ~=	
not	! ~	not

An example of the verbose bitwise operators is:

```
\scratchcounter = \numexpression
    "00000 bor "00001 bor "00020 bor "00400 bor "08000 bor "F0000
\relax
```

In the table you might have notices that some operators have equivalents. This makes the scanner a bit less sensitive for catcode regimes.

When \tracingexpressions is set to one or higher the intermediate 'reverse polish notation' stack that is used for the calculation is shown, for instance:

```
4:8: {numexpression rpn: 2 5 > 4 5 > and}
```

When you want the output on your console, you need to say:

```
\tracingexpressions 1
\tracingonline      1
```

Here are some things that \numexpr is not suitable for but \numexpression can handle:

```
\scratchcounter = \numexpression
    "00000 bor "00001 bor "00020 bor "00400 bor "08000 bor "F0000
\relax
```

```
\ifcase \numexpression
    (\scratchcounterone > 5) && (\scratchcountertwo > 5)
\relax yes\else nop\fi
```

892 \omit

This primitive cancels the template set for the upcoming cell. Often it is used in combination with `\span`.

893 \optionalboundary

This boundary is used to mark optional content. An positive `\optionalboundary` starts a range and a zero one ends it. Nesting is not supported. Optional content is considered when an additional paragraph pass enables it as part of its recipe.

894 \optionspar

You can set this register with options for the upcoming paragraph. Of course you have to make sure that it indeed concerns that paragraph and not one that gets rendered as side effect before that paragraph is typeset.

895 \or

This traditional primitive is part of the condition testing mechanism and relates to an `\ifcase` test (or a similar test to be introduced in later sections). Depending on the value, TEX will do a fast scanning till the right `\or` is seen, then it will continue expanding till it sees a `\or` or `\else` or `\orelse` (to be discussed later). It will then do a fast skipping pass till it sees an `\fi`.

896 \orelse

This primitive provides a convenient way to flatten your conditional tests. So instead of

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
    too small
\else\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
    too large
\else
    just right
\fi\fi
```

You can say this:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
    too small
\orelse\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
    too large
\else
    just right
\fi
```

You can mix tests and even the case variants will work in most cases[14]

```
\ifcase\scratchcounter          zero
\or                             one
\or                             two
\orelse\ifnum\scratchcounter<10 less than ten
\else                           ten or more
\fi
```

Performance wise there are no real benefits although in principle there is a bit less housekeeping involved than with nested checks. However you might like this:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
    \expandafter\toosmall
\orelse\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
    \expandafter\toolarge
\else
    \expandafter\justright
\fi
```

over:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
    \expandafter\toosmall
\else\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
    \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\toolarge
\else
    \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter\justright
\fi\fi
```

or the more ConTEXt specific:

```
\ifnum\scratchcounter<-10
    \expandafter\toosmall
\else\ifnum\scratchcounter>10
    \doubleexpandafter\toolarge
\else
    \doubleexpandafter\justright
\fi\fi
```

But then, some TEXies like complex and obscure code and throwing away working old code that took ages to perfect and get working and also showed that one masters TEX might hurt.

There is a nice side effect of this mechanism. When you define:

```
\def\quitcondition{\orelse\iffalse}
```

you can do this:

```
\ifnum\count0<10
    less
```

[14] I just play safe because there are corner cases that might not work yet.

```
\orelse\ifnum\count0=10
    equal
    \quitcondition
    indeed
\else
    more
\fi
```

Of course it is only useful at the right level, so you might end up with cases like

```
\ifnum\count0<10
    less
\orelse\ifnum\count0=10
    equal
    \ifnum\count2=30
        \expandafter\quitcondition
    \fi
    indeed
\else
    more
\fi
```

897 \orphanlinefactors

Normally this (specification) parameter is set in a `\parpasses` as it supports multiple orphan penalties with a different weight (starting from the last candidate).

898 \orphanpenalties

This an (single entry) array parameter: first the size is given followed by that amount of penalties. These penalties are injected before spaces, going backward from the end of a paragraph. When we see a math node with a penalty set then we take the max and jump over a (preceding) skip.

899 \orunless

This is the negated variant of `\orelse` (prefixing that one with `\unless` doesn't work well.

900 \outer

An outer macro is one that can only be used at the outer level. This property is no longer supported. Like `\long`, the `\outer` prefix is now an no-op (and we don't expect this to have unfortunate side effects).

901 \output

This token list register holds the code that will be expanded when TEX enters the output routine. That code is supposed to do something with the content in the box with number `\outputbox`. By default this is box 255 but that can be changed with `\outputbox`.

902 \outputbox

This is where the split off page contend ends up when the output routine is triggered.

903 \outputpenalty

This is the penalty that triggered the output routine.

904 \over

This math primitive is actually a bit of a spoiler for the parser as it is one of the few that looks back. The \Uover variant is different and takes two arguments. We leave it to the user to predicts the results of:

```
$    {1} \over {x}    $
$     1  \over  x     $
$    12  \over  x / y $
$ a + 1  \over {x}    $
```

and:

```
$  \textstyle 1  \over x  $
$ {\textstyle 1} \over x  $
$  \textstyle {1 \over x} $
```

It's one of the reasons why macro packages provide \frac.

905 \overfullrule

When an overfull box is encountered a rule can be shown in the margin and this parameter sets its width. For the record: ConTEXt does it different.

906 \overline

This is a math specific primitive that draws a line over the given content. It is a poor mans replacement for a delimiter. The thickness is set with \Umathoverbarrule, the distance between content and rule is set by \Umathoverbarvgap and \Umathoverbarkern is added above the rule. The style used for the content under the rule can be set with \Umathoverlinevariant.

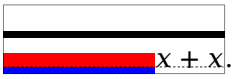
Because ConTEXt set up math in a special way, the following example:

```
\normaloverline {
    \blackrule[color=red, height=1ex,depth=0ex,width=2cm]%
    \kern-2cm
    \blackrule[color=blue,height=0ex,depth=.5ex,width=2cm]
    x + x
}
```

gives:  , while:

```
\mathfontcontrol\zerocount
```

```
\Umathoverbarkern\allmathstyles10pt
\Umathoverbarvgap\allmathstyles5pt
\Umathoverbarrule\allmathstyles2.5pt
\Umathoverlinevariant\textstyle\scriptstyle
```

gives this:  . We have to disable the related `\mathfontcontrol` bits because otherwise the thickness is taken from the font. The variant is just there to overload the (in traditional TEX engines) default.

907 \overloaded

This prefix can be used to overload a frozen macro.

908 \overloadmode

The overload protection mechanism can be used to prevent users from redefining a control sequence. The mode can have several values, the higher the more strict we are:

		immutable	permanent	primitive	frozen	instance
1	warning	+	+	+		
2	error	+	+	+		
3	warning	+	+	+	+	
4	error	+	+	+	+	
5	warning	+	+	+	+	+
6	error	+	+	+	+	+

When you set a high error value, you can of course temporary lower or even zero the mode. In ConTEXt all macros and quantities are tagged so there setting the mode to 6 gives a proper protection against overloading. We need to zero the mode when we load for instance tikz, so when you use that generic package, you loose some.

909 \overshoot

This primitive is a companion to `\badness` and reports how much a box overflows.

```
\setbox0\hbox to 1em {mmm} \the\badness\quad\the\overshoot
\setbox0\hbox         {mm} \the\badness\quad\the\overshoot
\setbox0\hbox to 3em   {m} \the\badness\quad\the\overshoot
```

This reports:

```
1000000   18.44727pt
0   0.0pt
10000   0.0pt
```

And:

```
\hbox to 2cm {does it fit}                \the\overshoot
\hbox to 2cm {does it fit in here}        \the\overshoot
\hbox to 2cm {how much does fit in here} \the\overshoot
```

gives:

does it fit
0.0pt
does it fit in here
0.0pt
how much does fit in here
69.53004pt

When traditional TEX wraps up the lines in a paragraph it uses a mix of shift (a box property) to position the content suiting the hanging indentation and/or paragraph shape, and fills up the line using right skip glue, also in order to silence complaints in packaging. In LuaMetaTEX the lines can be normalized so that they all have all possible skips to the left and right (even if they're zero). The `\overshoot` primitive fits into this picture and is present as a compensation glue. This all fits better in a situation where the internals are opened up via Lua.

910 \overwithdelims

This is a variant of `\over` but with delimiters. It has a more advanced upgrade in `\Uoverwithdelims`.

911 \pageboundary

In order to avoid side effects of triggering the page builder with a specific penalty we can use this primitive which expects a value that actually gets inserted as zero penalty before triggering the page builder callback. Think of adding a no-op to the contribution list. We fake a zero penalty so that all gets processed. The main rationale is that we get a better indication of what we do. Of course a callback can remove this node so that it is never seen. Triggering from the callback is not doable. Consider this experimental code (which is actually used in ConTEXt anyway).

912 \pagedepth

This page property holds the depth of the page.

913 \pagediscards

The left-overs after a page is split of the main vertical list when glue and penalties are normally discarded. The discards can be pushed back in (for instance) trial runs.

914 \pageexcess

This page property hold the amount of overflow when a page break occurs.

915 \pageextragoal

This (experimental) dimension will be used when the page overflows but a bit of overshoot is considered okay.

916 \pagefilllstretch

The accumulated amount of third order stretch on the current page.

917 \pagefillstretch

The accumulated amount of second order stretch on the current page.

918 \pagefilstretch

The accumulated amount of first order stretch on the current page.

919 \pagefistretch

The accumulated amount of zero order stretch on the current page.

920 \pagegoal

The target height of a page (the running text). This value will be decreased by the height of inserts something to keep into mind when messing around with this and other (pseudo) page related parameters like \pagetotal.

921 \pagelastdepth

The accumulated depth of the current page.

922 \pagelastfilllstretch

The accumulated amount of third order stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagefilllstretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

923 \pagelastfillstretch

The accumulated amount of second order stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagefillstretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

924 \pagelastfilstretch

The accumulated amount of first order stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagefilstretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

925 \pagelastfistretch

The accumulated amount of zero order stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagefistretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

926 \pagelastheight

The accumulated height of the current page.

927 \pagelastshrink

The accumulated amount of shrink on the current page. Contrary to \pageshrink this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

928 \pagelaststretch

The accumulated amount of stretch on the current page. Contrary to \pagestretch this is the really contributed amount, not the upcoming.

929 \pageshrink

The accumulated amount of shrink on the current page.

930 \pagestretch

The accumulated amount of stretch on the current page.

931 \pagetotal

The accumulated page total (height) of the current page.

932 \pagevsize

This parameter, when set, is used as the target page height. This lessens the change of \vsize interfering.

933 \par

This is the explicit 'finish paragraph' command. Internally we distinguish a par triggered by a new line, as side effect of another primitive or this \par command.

934 \parametercount

The number of parameters passed to the current macro.

935 \parameterdef

Here is an example of binding a variable to a parameter. The alternative is of course to use an \edef.

```
\def\foo#1#2%
  {\parameterdef\MyIndexOne\plusone % 1
   \parameterdef\MyIndexTwo\plustwo % 2
   \oof{P}\oof{Q}\oof{R}\norelax}

\def\oof#1%
  {<1:\MyIndexOne><1:\MyIndexOne>%
   #1%
   <2:\MyIndexTwo><2:\MyIndexTwo>}

\foo{A}{B}
```

The outcome is:

<1:A><1:A>P<2:B><2:B><1:A><1:A>Q<2:B><2:B><1:A><1:A>R<2:B><2:B>

936 \parameterindex

This gives the zero based position on the parameter stack. One reason for introducing \parameterdef is that the position remains abstract so there we don't need to use \parameterindex.

937 \parametermark

The meaning of primitive \parametermark is equivalent to # in a macro definition, just like \alignmark is in an alignment. It can be used to circumvent catcode issues. The normal "duplicate them when nesting" rules apply.

```
\def\foo\parametermark1%
  {\def\oof\parametermark\parametermark1%
     {[\parametermark1:\parametermark\parametermark1]}}
```

Here \foo{X}\oof{Y} gives: [X:Y].

938 \parametermode

Setting this internal integer to a positive value (best use 1 because future versions might use bit set) will enable the usage of # for escaped in the main text and body of macros.

939 \parattribute

This primitive takes an attribute index and value and sets that attribute on the current paragraph.

940 \pardirection

This set the text direction for the whole paragraph which in the case of r2l (1) makes the right edge the starting point.

941 \parfillleftskip

The glue inserted at the start of the last line.

942 \parfillmode

This mode configures native ragged left and right justification: left 1, right 2, middle 3.

943 \parfillrightskip

The glue inserted at the end of the last line (aka \parfillskip).

944 \parfillskip

The glue inserted at the end of the last line.

945 \parindent

The amount of space inserted at the start of the first line. When bit 2 is set in `\normalizelinemode` a glue is inserted, otherwise an empty `\hbox` with the given width is inserted.

946 \parinitleftskip

The glue inserted at the start of the first line.

947 \parinitrightskip

The glue inserted at the end of the first line.

948 \paroptions

This adds options to already set options in a paragraph. It is used for experiments so for now just forget about it.

949 \parpasses

Specifies one or more recipes for additional second linebreak passes. Examples can be found in the ConTEXt distribution.

950 \parpassesexception

Specifies al alternative parpass to use in the upcoming paragraph, for instance one with a specific looseness that then demands for instance more emergency stretch.

951 \parshape

Stores a shape specification. The first argument is the length of the list, followed by that amount of indentation-width pairs (two dimensions).

952 \parshapedimen

This oddly named (e-TEX) primitive returns the width component (dimension) of the given entry (an integer). Obsoleted by `\parshapewidth`.

953 \parshapeindent

Returns the indentation component (dimension) of the given entry (an integer).

954 \parshapelength

Returns the number of entries (an integer).

955 \parshapewidth

Returns the width component (dimension) of the given entry (an integer).

956 \parskip

This is the amount of glue inserted before a new paragraph starts.

957 \patterns

The argument to this primitive contains hyphenation patterns that are bound to the current language. In LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX we can also manage this at the Lua end. In LuaMetaTEX we don't store patterns in te format file

958 \pausing

In LuaMetaTEX this variable is ignored but in other engines it can be used to single step thought the input file by setting it to a positive value.

959 \penalty

The given penalty (a number) is inserted at the current spot in the horizontal or vertical list. We also have `\vpenalty` and `\hpenalty` that first change modes.

960 \permanent

This is one of the prefixes that is part of the overload protection mechanism. It is normally used to flag a macro as being at the same level as a primitive: don't touch it. primitives are flagged as such but that property cannot be set on regular macros. The similar `\immutable` flag is normally used for variables.

961 \pettymuskip

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is `1.0mu minus 0.5mu`. This one complements `\thinmuskip`, `\medmuskip`, `\thickmuskip` and the new `\tinymuskip`.

962 \positdef

The engine uses 32 bit integers for various purposes and has no (real) concept of a floating point quantity. We get around this by providing a floating point data type based on 32 bit unums (posits). These have the advantage over native floats of more precision in the lower ranges but at the cost of a software implementation.

The `\positdef` primitive is the floating point variant of `\integerdef` and `\dimensiondef`: an efficient way to implement named quantities other than registers.

```
\positdef     \MyFloatA 5.678
\positdef     \MyFloatB 567.8
[\the\MyFloatA] [\todimension\MyFloatA] [\tointeger\MyFloatA]
[\the\MyFloatB] [\todimension\MyFloatB] [\tointeger\MyFloatB]
```

For practical reasons we can map posit (or float) onto an integer or dimension:

[5.678000003] [5.678pt] [6]
[567.800003052] [567.80005pt] [568]

963 \postdisplaypenalty

This is the penalty injected after a display formula.

964 \postexhyphenchar

This primitive expects a language number and a character code. A negative character code is equivalent to ignore. In case of an explicit discretionary the character is injected at the beginning of a new line.

965 \posthyphenchar

This primitive expects a language number and a character code. A negative character code is equivalent to ignore. In case of an automatic discretionary the character is injected at the beginning of a new line.

966 \postinlinepenalty

When set this penalty is inserted after an inline formula unless we have a short formula and `\postshortinlinepenalty` is set.

967 \postshortinlinepenalty

When set this penalty is inserted after a short inline formula. The criterium is set by `\shortinlinemaththreshold` but only applied when it is enabled for the class involved.

968 \prebinoppenalty

This internal quantity is a compatibility feature because normally we will use the inter atom spacing variables.

969 \predisplaydirection

This is the direction that the math sub engine will take into account when dealing with right to left typesetting.

970 \predisplaygapfactor

The heuristics related to determine if the previous line in a formula overlaps with a (display) formula are hard coded but in LuaTEX to be two times the quad of the current font. This parameter is a multiplier set to 2000 and permits you to change the overshoot in this heuristic.

971 \predisplaypenalty

This is the penalty injected before a display formula.

972 \predisplaysize

This parameter holds the length of the last line in a paragraph when a display formula is part of it.

973 \preexhyphenchar

This primitive expects a language number and a character code. A negative character code is equivalent to ignore. In case of an explicit discretionary the character is injected at the end of the line.

974 \prehyphenchar

This primitive expects a language number and a character code. A negative character code is equivalent to ignore. In case of an automatic discretionary the character is injected at the end of the line.

975 \preinlinepenalty

When set this penalty is inserted before an inline formula unless we have a short formula and `\preshortinlinepenalty` is set. These are not real penalties but properties of the math begin and end markers. Just as with spacing as such property, these penalties are not visible as nodes in the list.

976 \prerelpenalty

This internal quantity is a compatibility feature because normally we will use the inter atom spacing variables.

977 \prerollmvl

This primitive does a preroll of a specific balancing stream. It returns a list with empty lines. Its argument in an index.

978 \preshortinlinepenalty

When set this penalty is inserted before a short inline formula. The criterium is set by `\shortinlinemaththreshold` but only applied when it is enabled for the class involved.

979 \pretolerance

When the badness of a line in a paragraph exceeds this value a second linebreak pass will be enabled.

980 \prevdepth

The depth of current list. It can also be set to special (signal) values in order to inhibit line corrections. It is not an internal dimension but a (current) list property.

981 \prevgraf

The number of lines in a previous paragraph.

982 \previousloopiterator

```
\edef\testA{
    \expandedrepeat 2 {%
        \expandedrepeat 3 {%
            (\the\previousloopiterator1:\the\currentloopiterator)
        }%
    }%
}
\edef\testB{
    \expandedrepeat 2 {%
        \expandedrepeat 3 {%
            (#P:#I) % #G is two levels up
        }%
    }%
}
```

These give the same result:

```
\def \testA { (1:1) (1:2) (1:3) (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) }
\def \testB { (1:1) (1:2) (1:3) (2:1) (2:2) (2:3) }
```

The number indicates the number of levels we go up the loop chain.

983 \primescript

This is a math script primitive dedicated to primes (which are somewhat troublesome on math). It complements the six script primitives (like `\subscript` and `\presuperscript`).

984 \protected

A protected macro is one that doesn't get expanded unless it is time to do so. For instance, inside an `\edef` it just stays what it is. It often makes sense to pass macros as-is to (multi-pass) file (for tables of contents).

In ConTEXt we use either `\protected` or `\unexpanded` because the later was the command we used to achieve the same results before e-TEX introduced this protection primitive. Originally the `\protected` macro was also defined but it has been dropped.

985 \protecteddetokenize

This is a variant of `\protecteddetokenize` that uses some escapes encoded as body parameters, like `#H` for a hash.

986 \protectedexpandeddetokenize

This is a variant of `\expandeddetokenize` that uses some escapes encoded as body parameters, like `#H` for a hash.

987 \protrudechars

This variable controls protrusion (into the margin). A value 2 is comparable with other engines, while a value of 3 does a bit more checking when we're doing right-to-left typesetting.

988 \protrusionboundary

This injects a boundary with the given value:

```
0x00  skipnone
0x01  skipnext
0x02  skipprevious
0x03  skipboth
```

This signal makes the protrusion checker skip over a node.

989 \pxdimen

The current numeric value of this dimension is 65781, 1.00374pt: one `bp`. We kept it around because it was introduced in pdfTEX and made it into LuaTEX, where it relates to the resolution of included images. In ConTEXt it is not used.

990 \quitloop

There are several loop primitives and they can be quit with `\quitloop` at the next the *next* iteration. An immediate quit is possible with `\quitloopnow`. An example is given with `\localcontrolledloop`.

991 \quitloopnow

There are several loop primitives and they can be quit with `\quitloopnow` at the spot.

992 \quitvmode

This primitive forces horizontal mode but has no side effects when we're already in that mode. Characters (glyphs) and rules force horizontal mode but for instance boxes will take a whole line when they start a paragraph.

993 \radical

This old school radical constructor is replaced by `\Uradical`. It takes a number where the first byte is the small family, the next two index of this symbol from that family, and the next three the family and index of the first larger variant.

994 \raise

This primitive takes two arguments, a dimension and a box. The box is moved up. The operation only succeeds in horizontal mode.

995 \rdivide

This is variant of \divide that rounds the result. For integers the result is the same as \edivide.

```
\the\dimexpr .4999pt                    : 2 \relax           =.24994pt
\the\dimexpr .4999pt                    / 2 \relax           =.24995pt
\the\dimexpr .4999pt                    ; 2 \relax           =.00002pt
\scratchdimen.4999pt \divide \scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen =.24994pt
\scratchdimen.4999pt \edivide\scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen =.24995pt
\scratchdimen 4999pt \rdivide\scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen =2500.0pt
\scratchdimen 5000pt \rdivide\scratchdimen 2 \the\scratchdimen =2500.0pt

\the\numexpr   1001                     : 2 \relax             =500
\the\numexpr   1001                     / 2 \relax             =501
\the\numexpr   1001                     ; 2 \relax             =1
\scratchcounter1001 \divide \scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=500
\scratchcounter1001 \edivide\scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=501
\scratchcounter1001 \rdivide\scratchcounter 2 \the\scratchcounter=501
```

```
0.24994pt=.24994pt
0.24995pt=.24995pt
0.00002pt=.00002pt
0.24994pt=.24994pt
0.24995pt=.24995pt
2500.0pt=2500.0pt
2500.0pt=2500.0pt

500=500
501=501
1=1
500=500
501=501
501=501
```

The integer division : and modulo ; are an addition to the e-TEX compatible expressions.

996 \rdivideby

This is the by-less companion to \rdivide.

997 \realign

Where \omit suspends a preamble template, this one overloads is for the current table cell. It expects two token lists as arguments.

998 \relax

This primitive does nothing and is often used to end a verbose number or dimension in a comparison, for example:

```
\ifnum \scratchcounter = 123\relax
```

which prevents a lookahead. A variant would be:

```
\ifnum \scratchcounter = 123 %
```

assuming that spaces are not ignored. Another application is finishing an expression like `\numexpr` or `\dimexpr`. I is also used to prevent lookahead in cases like:

```
\vrule height 3pt depth 2pt width 5pt\relax
\hskip 5pt plus 3pt minus 2pt\relax
```

Because `\relax` is not expandable the following:

```
\edef\foo{\relax}   \meaningfull\foo
\edef\oof{\norelax} \meaningfull\oof
```

gives this:

macro:\relax
macro:

A `\norelax` disappears here but in the previously mentioned scenarios it has the same function as `\relax`. It will not be pushed back either in cases where a lookahead demands that.

999 \relpenalty

This internal quantity is a compatibility feature because normally we will use the inter atom spacing variables.

1000 \resetlocalboxes

Its purpose should be clear from the name.

1001 \resetmathspacing

This initializes all parameters to their initial values.

1002 \restorecatcodetable

This is an experimental feature that should be used with care. The next example shows usage. It was added when debugging and exploring a side effect.

```
\tracingonline1

\bgroup

    \catcode`6 = 11 \catcode`7 = 11

    \bgroup

    \tracingonline1

    current: \the\catcodetable
```

```
    original: \the\catcode`6\quad \the\catcode`7

    \catcode`6 = 11 \catcode`7 = 11

    \showcodestack\catcode

    assigned: \the\catcode`6\quad \the\catcode`7

    \showcodestack\catcode

    \catcodetable\ctxcatcodes switched: \the\catcodetable

    stored: \the\catcode`6\quad \the\catcode`7

    \showcodestack\catcode

    \restorecatcodetable\ctxcatcodes

    \showcodestack\catcode

    restored: \the\catcode`6\quad \the\catcode`7

    \showcodestack\catcode

    \egroup

    \catcodetable\ctxcatcodes

    inner: \the\catcode`6\quad\the\catcode`7

\egroup

outer: \the\catcode`6\quad\the\catcode`7
```

In ConTEXt this typesets:

```
current: 9
original: 11 11
assigned: 11 11
switched: 9
stored: 11 11
restored: 12 12
inner: 11 11
outer; 12 12
```

and on the console we see:

```
3:3: [codestack 1, size 3]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]
3:3: [codestack 1, size 3]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
```

```
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]
3:3: [codestack 1, size 3]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]
3:3: [codestack 1, size 7]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [5: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [6: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [7: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [8: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]
3:3: [codestack 1, size 7]
3:3: [1: level 2, code 54, value 12]
3:3: [2: level 2, code 55, value 12]
3:3: [3: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [4: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [5: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [6: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [7: level 3, code 55, value 11]
3:3: [8: level 3, code 54, value 11]
3:3: [codestack 1 bottom]
```

So basically `\restorecatcodetable` brings us (temporarily) back to the global settings.

1003 `\retained`

When a value is assigned inside a group TEX pushes the current value on the save stack in order to be able to restore the original value after the group has ended. You can reach over a group by using the `\global` prefix. A mix between local and global assignments can be achieved with the `\retained` primitive.

```
\MyDim 15pt \bgroup \the\MyDim \space
\bgroup
    \bgroup
        \bgroup \advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
        \bgroup \advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \egroup
    \bgroup
        \bgroup \advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
        \bgroup \advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \egroup
```

```
\egroup
\egroup \the\MyDim

\MyDim 15pt \bgroup \the\MyDim \space
\bgroup
    \bgroup
        \bgroup \global\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
        \bgroup \global\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \egroup
    \bgroup
        \bgroup \global\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
        \bgroup \global\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \egroup
\egroup
\egroup \the\MyDim

\MyDim 15pt \bgroup \the\MyDim \space
    \constrained\MyDim\zeropoint
    \bgroup
        \bgroup \retained\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
        \bgroup \retained\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \egroup
    \bgroup
        \bgroup \retained\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
        \bgroup \retained\advance\MyDim10pt \the\MyDim \egroup\space
    \egroup
\egroup \the\MyDim
```

These lines result in:

15.0pt 25.0pt 25.0pt 25.0pt 25.0pt 15.0pt
15.0pt 25.0pt 35.0pt 45.0pt 55.0pt 55.0pt
15.0pt 10.0pt 20.0pt 30.0pt 40.0pt 15.0pt

Because LuaMetaTEX avoids redundant stack entries and reassignments this mechanism is a bit fragile but the `\constrained` prefix makes sure that we do have a stack entry. If it is needed depends on the usage pattern.

1004 \retokenized

This is a companion of `\tokenized` that accepts a catcode table, so the whole repertoire is:

```
\tokenized                          {test $x$ test: current}
\tokenized   catcodetable \ctxcatcodes {test $x$ test: context}
\tokenized   catcodetable \vrbcatcodes {test $x$ test: verbatim}
\retokenized              \ctxcatcodes {test $x$ test: context}
\retokenized              \vrbcatcodes {test $x$ test: verbatim}
```

Here we pass the numbers known to ConTEXt and get:

test x test: current

test x test: context
test x test: verbatim
test x test: context
test x test: verbatim

1005 \right

Inserts the given delimiter as right fence in a math formula.

1006 \righthyphenmin

This is the minimum number of characters before the first hyphen in a hyphenated word.

1007 \rightmarginkern

The dimension returned is the protrusion kern that has been added (if at all) to the left of the content in the given box.

1008 \rightskip

This skip will be inserted at the right of every line.

1009 \righttwindemerits

Additional demerits for a glyph sequence at the right edge when a previous line also has that sequence.

1010 \romannumeral

This converts a number into a sequence of characters representing a roman numeral. Because the Romans had no zero, a zero will give no output, a fact that is sometimes used for hacks and showing off ones macro coding capabilities. A large number will for sure result in a long string because after thousand we start duplicating.

1011 \romannumerical

This is a variant of `\romanumeral` that doesn't suffer from the excessive generation of `m`'s when we cross the 4000 boundary, so 1234567 will give you `((i))(ccxxxiv)dlxvii` instead of 1234 `m`'s in front of `dlxvii`.

1012 \rpcode

This is the companion of `\lpcode` (see there) and also takes three arguments: font, character code and factor.

1013 \savecatcodetable

This primitive stores the currently set catcodes in the current table.

1014 \savinghyphcodes

When set to non-zero, this will trigger the setting of \hjcodes from \lccodes for the current font. These codes determine what characters are taken into account when hyphenating words.

1015 \savingvdiscards

When set to a positive value the page builder will store the discarded items (like glues) so that they can later be retrieved and pushed back if needed with \pagediscards or \splitdiscards.

1016 \scaledemwidth

Returns the current (font specific) emwidth scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphxscale.

1017 \scaledexheight

Returns the current (font specific) exheight scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphyscale.

1018 \scaledextraspace

Returns the current (font specific) extra space value scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphxscale.

1019 \scaledfontcharba

Returns the bottom accent position of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphyscale.

1020 \scaledfontchardp

Returns the depth of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphyscale.

1021 \scaledfontcharht

Returns the height of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphyscale.

1022 \scaledfontcharic

Returns the italic correction of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphxscale. This property is only real for traditional fonts.

1023 \scaledfontcharlb

This command returns the left-bottom math kern of a glyph. scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphxscale. These kerns are set by ConTEXtfont goodies and more reliable than the OPENTYPE staircase kerns.

1024 \scaledfontcharlt

See \scaledfontcharlb, here we return the left-top kern.

1025 \scaledfontcharrb

See \scaledfontcharlb, here we return the right-bottom kern.

1026 \scaledfontcharrt

See \scaledfontcharlb, here we return the right-top kern.

1027 \scaledfontcharta

Returns the top accent position of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphxscale.

1028 \scaledfontcharwd

Returns width of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphxscale.

1029 \scaledfontdimen

Returns value of a (numeric) font dimension of the given font-character pair scaled according to \glyphscale and \glyphxscale and/or \glyphyscale. Valid (text font) dimension are:

#	font dimension
1	slant per point
2	interword space
3	interword stretch
4	interword shrink
5	ex height
6	em width
7	extra space

Some traditional TEX fonts provide more and math fonts also have plenty although in OpenType all is different.

1030 \scaledfontemwidth

This primitive takes a font identifier and returns the em width scaled by the current glyph scales.

1031 \scaledfontexheight

This primitive takes a font identifier and returns the ex height scaled by the current glyph scales.

1032 \scaledfontextraspace

This primitive takes a font identifier and returns the extra space property scaled by the current glyph scales.

1033 \scaledfontinterwordshrink

This primitive takes a font identifier and returns the shrink component of a space scaled by the current glyph scales.

1034 \scaledfontinterwordspace

This primitive takes a font identifier and returns the fixed component of a space scaled by the current glyph scales.

1035 \scaledfontinterwordstretch

This primitive takes a font identifier and returns the stretch component of a space scaled by the current glyph scales.

1036 \scaledfontslantperpoint

This primitive takes a font identifier and (normally only for an italic font) returns the slant scaled by the current glyph scales.

1037 \scaledinterwordshrink

Returns the current (font specific) shrink of a space value scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

1038 \scaledinterwordspace

Returns the current (font specific) space value scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

1039 \scaledinterwordstretch

Returns the current (font specific) stretch of a space value scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

1040 \scaledmathaxis

This primitive returns the math axis of the given math style. It's a dimension.

1041 \scaledmathemwidth

Returns the emwidth of the given style scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphxscale`.

1042 \scaledmathexheight

Returns the exheight of the given style scaled according to `\glyphscale` and `\glyphyscale`.

1043 \scaledmathstyle

This command inserts a signal in the math list that tells how to scale the (upcoming) part of the formula.

```
$ x + {\scaledmathstyle900 x} + x$
```

We get: $x + x + x$. Of course using this properly demands integration in the macro packages font system.

1044 \scaledslantperpoint

This primitive is equivalent to `\scaledfontdimen1\font` where 'scaled' means that we multiply by the glyph scales.

1045 \scantextokens

This primitive scans the input as if it comes from a file. In the next examples the `\detokenize` primitive turns tokenized code into verbatim code that is similar to what is read from a file.

```
\edef\whatever{\detokenize{This is {\bf bold} and this is not.}}
\detokenize   {This is {\bf bold} and this is not.}\crlf
\scantextokens{This is {\bf bold} and this is not.}\crlf
\scantextokens{\whatever}\crlf
\scantextokens\expandafter{\whatever}\par
```

This primitive does not have the end-of-file side effects of its precursor `\scantokens`.

This is {\bf bold} and this is not.
This is **bold** and this is not.
This is {\bf bold} and this is not.
This is **bold** and this is not.

1046 \scantokens

Just forget about this e-TEX primitive, just take the one in the previous section.

1047 \scriptfont

This primitive is like `\font` but with a family number as (first) argument so it is specific for math. It is the middle one of the three family members; its relatives are `\textfont` and `\scriptscriptfont`.

1048 \scriptscriptfont

This primitive is like `\font` but with a family number as (first) argument so it is specific for math. It is the smallest of the three family members; its relatives are `\textfont` and `\scriptfont`.

1049 \scriptscriptstyle

One of the main math styles, normally one size smaller than `\scriptstyle`: integer representation: 6.

1050 \scriptspace

The math engine will add this amount of space after subscripts and superscripts. It can be seen as compensation for the often too small widths of characters (in the traditional engine italic correction is used too). It prevents scripts from running into what follows.

1051 \scriptspaceafterfactor

This is a (1000 based) multiplier for \Umathspaceafterscript.

1052 \scriptspacebeforefactor

This is a (1000 based) multiplier for \Umathspacebeforescript.

1053 \scriptspacebetweenfactor

This is a (1000 based) multiplier for \Umathspacebetweenscript.

1054 \scriptstyle

One of the main math styles, normally one size smaller than \displaystyle and \textstyle; integer representation: 4.

1055 \scrollmode

This directive omits error stops.

1056 \semiexpand

This command expands the next macro when it is protected with \semprotected. See that primitive there for an example.

1057 \semiexpanded

This command expands the tokens in the given list including the macros protected by with \semprotected. See that primitive there for an example.

1058 \semiprotected

The working of this prefix can best be explained with an example. We define a few macros first:

```
              \def\TestA{A}
\semiprotected\def\TestB{B}
    \protected\def\TestC{C}

\edef\TestD{\TestA           \TestB           \TestC}
\edef\TestE{\TestA\semiexpand\TestB\semiexpand\TestC}
\edef\TestF{\TestA\expand    \TestB\expand    \TestC}

\edef\TestG{\expanded    {\TestA\TestB\TestC}}
\edef\TestH{\semiexpanded{\TestA\TestB\TestC}}
```

The meaning of the macros that are made from the other three are:

Here we use the \normal.. variants because (currently) we still have the macro with the \expanded in the ConTEXt core.

```
A\TestB \TestC
AB\TestC
ABC
A\TestB \TestC
AB\TestC
```

1059 \setbox

This important primitive is used to set a box register. It expects a number and a box, like \hbox or \box. There is no \boxdef primitive (analogue to other registers) because it makes no sense but numeric registers or equivalents are okay as register value.

1060 \setdefaultmathcodes

This sets the math codes of upper- and lowercase alphabet and digits and the delimiter code of the period. It's not so much a useful feature but more just an accessor to the internal initializer.

1061 \setfontid

Internally a font instance has a number and this number is what gets assigned to a glyph node. You can get the number with \fontid an set it with \setfontid.

\setfontid\fontid\font

The code above shows both primitives and effectively does nothing useful but shows the idea.

1062 \setlanguage

In LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX this is equivalent to \language because we carry the language in glyph nodes instead of putting triggers in the list.

1063 \setmathatomrule

The math engine has some built in logic with respect to neighboring atoms that change the class. The following combinations are intercepted and remapped:

old first	old second	new first	new second
begin	binary	ordinary	ordinary
operator	binary	operator	ordinary
open	binary	open	ordinary
punctuation	binary	punctuation	ordinary
binary	end	ordinary	ordinary
binary	binary	binary	ordinary
binary	close	ordinary	close
binary	punctuation	ordinary	punctuation
binary	relation	ordinary	relation

relation	binary	relation	ordinary
relation	close	ordinary	close
relation	punctuation	ordinary	punctuation

You can change this logic if needed, for instance:

```
\setmathatomrule 1 2 \allmathstyles 1 1
```

Keep in mind that the defaults are what users expect. You might set them up for additional classes that you define but even then you probably clone an existing class and patch its properties. Most extra classes behave like ordinary anyway.

1064 \setmathdisplaypostpenalty

This penalty is inserted after an item of a given class but only in inline math when display style is used, for instance:

```
\setmathdisplayprepenalty 2 750
```

1065 \setmathdisplayprepenalty

This penalty is inserted before an item of a given class but only in inline math when display style is used, for instance:

```
\setmathdisplayprepenalty 2 750
```

1066 \setmathignore

You can flag a math parameter to be ignored, like:

```
\setmathignore \Umathxscale             2
\setmathignore \Umathyscale             2
\setmathignore \Umathspacebeforescript  1
\setmathignore \Umathspacebetweenscript 1
\setmathignore \Umathspaceafterscript   1
```

A value of two will not initialize the variable, so its old value (when set) is kept. This is somewhat experimental and more options might show up.

1067 \setmathoptions

This primitive expects a class (number) and a bitset.

0x00000001	nopreslack	0x00000100	checkligature
0x00000002	nopostslack	0x00000200	checkitaliccorrection
0x00000004	lefttopkern	0x00000400	checkkernpair
0x00000008	righttopkern	0x00000800	flatten
0x00000010	leftbottomkern	0x00001000	omitpenalty
0x00000020	rightbottomkern	0x00002000	unpack
0x00000040	lookaheadforend	0x00004000	raiseprime
0x00000080	noitaliccorrection	0x00008000	carryoverlefttopkern

0x00010000	carryoverrighttopkern	0x00400000	operatoritaliccorrection
0x00020000	carryoverleftbottomkern	0x00800000	shortinline
0x00040000	carryoverrightbottomkern	0x01000000	pushnesting
0x00080000	preferdelimiterdimensions	0x02000000	popnesting
0x00100000	autoinject	0x04000000	obeynesting
0x00200000	removeitaliccorrection		

1068 \setmathpostpenalty

This penalty is inserted after an item of a given class but only in inline math when text, script or scriptscript style is used, for instance:

```
\setmathpostpenalty 2 250
```

1069 \setmathprepenalty

This penalty is inserted before an item of a given class but only in inline math when text, script or scriptscript style is used, for instance:

```
\setmathprepenalty 2 250
```

1070 \setmathspacing

More details about this feature can be found in ConTEXt but it boils down to registering what spacing gets inserted between a pair of classes. It can be defined per style or for a set of styles, like:

```
\inherited\setmathspacing
  \mathimplicationcode \mathbinarycode
  \alldisplaystyles \thickermuskip
\inherited\setmathspacing
  \mathradicalcode \mathmiddlecode
  \allunsplitstyles \pettymuskip
```

Here the `\inherited` prefix signals that a change in for instance `\pettymuskip` is reflected in this spacing pair. In ConTEXt there is a lot of granularity with respect to spacing and it took years of experimenting (and playing with examples) to get at the current stage. In general users are not invited to mess around too much with these values, although changing the bound registers (here `\pettymuskip` and `thickermuskip`) is no problem as it consistently makes related spacing pairs follow.

1071 \sfcode

You can set a space factor on a character. That factor is used when a space factor is applied (as part of spacing). It is (mostly) used for adding a different space (glue) after punctuation. In some languages different punctuation has different factors.

1072 \shapingpenaltiesmode

Shaping penalties are inserted after the lines of a `\parshape` and accumulate according to this mode, a bitset of:

0x01 interlinepenalty
0x02 widowpenalty
0x04 clubpenalty
0x08 brokenpenalty

1073 \shapingpenalty

In order to prevent a \parshape to break in unexpected ways we can add a dedicated penalty, specified by this parameter.

1074 \shipout

Because there is no backend, this is not supposed to be used. As in traditional TEX a box is grabbed but instead of it being processed it gets shown and then wiped. There is no real benefit of turning it into a callback.

1075 \shortinlinemaththreshold

This parameter determines when an inline formula is considered to be short. This criterium is used for for \preshortinlinepenalty and \postshortinlinepenalty.

1076 \shortinlineorphanpenalty

Short formulas at the end of a line are normally not followed by something other than punctuation. This penalty will discourage a break before a short inline formula. In practice one can set this penalty to e.g. a relatively low 200 to get the desired effect.

1077 \show

Prints to the console (and/or log) what the token after it represents.

1078 \showbox

The given box register is shown in the log and on te console (depending on \tracingonline. How much is shown depends on \showboxdepth and \showboxbreadth. In LuaMetaTEX we show more detailed information than in the other engines; some specific information is provided via callbacks.

1079 \showboxbreadth

This primitives determine how much of a box is shown when asked for or when tracing demands it.

1080 \showboxdepth

This primitives determine how deep tracing a box goes into the box. Some boxes, like the ones that has the assembled page.

1081 \showcodestack

This inspector is only useful for low level debugging and reports the current state of for instance the current catcode table: **\showcodestack\catcode**. See \restorecatcodes for an example.

1082 \showgroups

This primitive reports the group nesting. At this spot we have a not so impressive nesting:

```
2:3: simple group entered at line 9375:
1:3: semisimple group: \begingroup
0:3: bottomlevel
```

1083 \showifs

This primitive will show the conditional stack in the log file or on the console (assuming `\tracingonline` being non-zero). The shown data is different from other engines because we have more conditionals and also support a more flat nesting model

1084 \showlists

This shows the currently built list.

1085 \shownodedetails

When set to a positive value more details will be shown of nodes when applicable. Values larger than one will also report attributes. What gets shown depends on related callbacks being set.

1086 \showstack

This tracer is only useful for low level debugging of macros, for instance when you run out of save space or when you encounter a performance hit.

```
  test\scratchcounter0 \showstack
 {test\scratchcounter1 \showstack}
{{test\scratchcounter1 \showstack}}
```

reports

```
1:3: [savestack size 0]
1:3: [savestack bottom]

2:3: [savestack size 2]
2:3: [1: restore, level 1, cs \scratchcounter=integer 1]
2:3: [0: boundary, group 'bottomlevel', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 0]
2:3: [savestack bottom]

3:3: [savestack size 3]
3:3: [2: restore, level 1, cs \scratchcounter=integer 1]
3:3: [1: boundary, group 'simple', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 12]
3:3: [0: boundary, group 'bottomlevel', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 0]
3:3: [savestack bottom]
```

while

```
  test\scratchcounter1 \showstack
```

```
 {test\scratchcounter1 \showstack}
{{test\scratchcounter1 \showstack}}
```

shows this:

```
1:3: [savestack size 0]
1:3: [savestack bottom]

2:3: [savestack size 1]
2:3: [0: boundary, group 'bottomlevel', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 0]
2:3: [savestack bottom]

3:3: [savestack size 2]
3:3: [1: boundary, group 'simple', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 16]
3:3: [0: boundary, group 'bottomlevel', boundary 0, attrlist 3600, line 0]
3:3: [savestack bottom]
```

Because in the second example the value of `\scratchcounter` doesn't really change inside the group there is no need for a restore entry on the stack. In LuaMetaTEX there are checks for that so that we consume less stack space. We also store some states (like the line number and current attribute list pointer) in a stack boundary.

1087 \showthe

Prints to the console (and/or log) the value of token after it.

1088 \showtokens

This command expects a (balanced) token list, like

```
\showtokens{a few tokens}
```

Depending on what you want to see you need to expand:

```
\showtokens\expandafter{\the\everypar}
```

which is equivalent to `\showthe\everypar`. It is an e-TEX extension.

1089 \singlelinepenalty

This is a penalty that gets injected before a paragraph that has only one line. It is a one-shot parameter, so like `\looseness` it only applies to the upcoming (or current) paragraph.

1090 \skewchar

This is an (imaginary) character that is used in math fonts. The kerning pair between this character and the current one determines the top anchor of a possible accent. In OpenType there is a dedicated character property for this (but for some reason not for the bottom anchor).

1091 \skip

This is the accessor for an indexed skip (glue) register.

1092 \skipdef

This command associates a control sequence with a skip register (accessed by number).

1093 \snapshotpar

There are many parameters involved in typesetting a paragraph. One complication is that parameters set in the middle might have unpredictable consequences due to grouping, think of:

```
text  text <some setting> text   text \par
text {text <some setting> text } text \par
```

This makes in traditional TEX because there is no state related to the current paragraph. But in LuaTEX we have the initial so called par node that remembers the direction as well as local boxes. In LuaMetaTEX we store way more when this node is created. That means that later settings no longer replace the stored ones.

The \snapshotpar takes a bitset that determine what stored parameters get updated to the current values.

0x00000001	hsize	0x00000800	linepenalty	0x00400000	toddlerpenalty
0x00000002	skip	0x00001000	clubpenalty	0x00800000	emergency
0x00000004	hang	0x00002000	widowpenalty	0x01000000	parpasses
0x00000008	indent	0x00004000	displaypenalty	0x02000000	linesnapping
0x00000010	parfill	0x00008000	brokenpenalty	0x04000000	singlelinepenalty
0x00000020	adjust	0x00010000	demerits	0x08000000	hyphenpenalty
0x00000040	protrude	0x00020000	shape	0x10000000	linebreakchecks
0x00000080	tolerance	0x00040000	line	0x20000000	twindemerits
0x00000100	stretch	0x00080000	hyphenation	0x40000000	fitnessclasses
0x00000200	looseness	0x00100000	shapingpenalty		
0x00000400	lastline	0x00200000	orphanpenalty		

One such value covers multiple values, so for instance skip is good for storing the current \leftskip and \rightskip values. More about this feature can be found in the ConTEXt documentation.

The list of parameters that gets reset after a paragraph is longer than for pdfTEX and LuaMetaTEX: \emergencyleftskip, \emergencyrightskip, \hangafter, \hangindent, \interlinepenalties, \localbrokenpenalty, \localinterlinepenalty, \localpretolerance, \localtolerance, \looseness, \parshape and \singlelinepenalty.

1094 \spacechar

When \nospaces is set to 3 a glyph node with the character value of this parameter is injected.

1095 \spacefactor

The space factor is a somewhat complex feature. When during scanning a character is appended that has a \sfcode other than 1000, that value is saved. When the time comes to insert a space triggered glue, and that factor is 2000 or more, and when \xspaceskip is nonzero, that value is used and we're done.

If these criteria are not met, and \spaceskip is nonzero, that value is used, otherwise the space value from the font is used. Now, it if the space factor is larger than 2000 the extra space value from the font is added to the set value. Next the engine is going to tweak the stretch and shrink if that value and in LuaMetaTEX that can be done in different ways, depending on \spacefactormode, \spacefactorstretchlimit and \spacefactorshrinklimit.

First the stretch. When the set limit is 1000 or more and the saved space factor is also 1000 or more, we multiply the stretch by the limit, otherwise the saved space factor is used.

Shrink is done differently. When the shrink limit and space factor are both 1000 or more, we will scale the shrink component by the limit, otherwise we multiply by the saved space factor but here we have three variants, determined by the value of \spacefactormode.

In the first case, when the limit kicks in, a mode value 1 will multiply by limit and divides by 1000. A value of 2 multiplies by 2000 and divides by the limit. Other mode values multiply by 1000 and divide by the limit. When the limit is not used, the same happens but with the saved space factor.

If this sounds complicated, here is what regular TEX does: stretch is multiplied by the factor and divided by 1000 while shrink is multiplied by 1000 and divided by the saved factor. The (new) mode driven alternatives are the result of extensive experiments done in the perspective of enhancing the rendering of inline math as well as additional par builder passes. For sure alternative strategies are possible and we can always add more modes.

A better explanation of the default strategy around spaces can be found in (of course) The TEXbook and TEX by Topic.

1096 \spacefactormode

Its setting determines the way the glue components (currently only shrink) adapts itself to the current space factor (determined by by the character preceding a space).

1097 \spacefactoroverload

When set to value between zero and thousand, this value will be used when TEX encounters a below thousand space factor situation (usually used to suppress additional space after a period following an uppercase character which then gets (often) a 999 space factor. This feature only kicks in when the overload flag is set in the glyph options, so it can be applied selectively.

1098 \spacefactorshrinklimit

This limit is used when \spacefactormode is set. See \spacefactor for a bit more explanation.

1099 \spacefactorstretchlimit

This limit is used when \spacefactormode is set. See \spacefactor for a bit more explanation.

1100 \spaceskip

Normally the glue inserted when a space is encountered is taken from the font but this parameter can overrule that.

1101 \spaceskipfactor

This is a multiplier, with the usual 1000 meaning 1.000, that get applied to the amount, stretch and shrink components of space glue. It is mostly there for demonstration purposes, and usually giving it a value other that 1000 gives less optimal results.

1102 \spaceskipmode

Space skip refers to specific spacing after for instance punctuation. A bitset determines what components of the glue are ignored: amount (1), stretch (2), shrink (4).

1103 \span

This primitive combined two upcoming cells into one. Often it is used in combination with `\omit`. However, in the preamble it forces the next token to be expanded, which means that nested `\tabskips` and align content markers are seen.

1104 \spcode

This is a variation on `\sfcode` and it works in combination with the `\textspacing` feature. The code relates a character to a category, like:

```
\spcode\periodasciicode          1
\spcode\commaasciicode           2
\spcode\questionmarkasciicode    3
\spcode\exclamationmarkasciicode 3
\spcode\colonasciicode           4
\spcode\semicolonasciicode       5
```

These categories can get a space factor assigned as well as a penalty:

```
\specificationdef \nonpenalizedspacingmap \textspacing 5
    3000 -50 % .
    1250 -50 % ,
    3000 -50 % ! ?
    2000 -50 % :
    1500 -50 % ;
\relax
```

After this `\textspacing\nonpenalizedspacingmap` will enable this mapping. When not set the usual `\sfcode`'s will be used.

1105 \specificationcount

See section 2.28 for more about specifications. This primitive returns an integer indicating how many entries the specification has.

```
\the\specificationcount\widowpenalties
```

Gives in ConTEXt: 1.

1106 \specificationdef

There are some datastructures that are like arrays: \adjacentdemerits, \brokenpenalties, \clubpenalties, \displaywidowpenalties, \fitnessclasses, \interlinepenalties, \mathbackwardpenalties, \mathforwardpenalties, \orphanpenalties, \parpasses, \parshape and \widowpenalties. They accept a counter than tells how many entries follow and depending in the specification options, keywords and/or just values are expected.

With \specificationdef you can define a command that holds such an array and that can be used afterwards as a fast way to enable that specification. The way it work is as follows:

```
\specificationdef\MyWidowPenalties
    \widowpenalties 4 2000 1000 500 250
\relax
```

where the relax is optional but a reasonabel way to make sure we end the definition (when keywords are used, as in \parpasses it prevents running into unexpected keywords.

1107 \specificationfirst

See section 2.28 for more about specifications. This primitive returns an integer or dimension.

```
\the\specificationfirst\widowpenalties 1
```

Gives in ConTEXt: 2000.

1108 \specificationoptions

```
0x\tohexadecimal\specificationoptions\widowpenalties
```

Gives in ConTEXt: 0x20.

1109 \specificationsecond

```
\the\specificationsecond\widowpenalties 1
```

Gives in ConTEXt: 2000.

1110 \splitbotmark

This is a reference to the last mark on the currently split off box, it gives back tokens.

1111 \splitbotmarks

This is a reference to the last mark with the given id (a number) on the currently split off box, it gives back tokens.

1112 \splitdiscards

When a box is split off, items like glue are discarded. This internal register keeps the that list so that it can be pushed back if needed.

1113 \splitextraheight

A possible (permissive) overrun of the split off part in a `\vsplit`.

1114 \splitfirstmark

This is a reference to the first mark on the currently split off box, it gives back tokens.

1115 \splitfirstmarks

This is a reference to the first mark with the given id (a number) on the currently split off box, it gives back tokens.

1116 \splitlastdepth

This returns the last depth in a `vsplit`.

1117 \splitlastheight

This returns the last (accumulated) height in a `vsplit`.

1118 \splitlastshrink

This returns the last (accumulated) shrink in a `vsplit`.

1119 \splitlaststretch

This returns the last (accumulated) stretch in a `vsplit`.

1120 \splitmaxdepth

The depth of the box that results from a `\vsplit`.

1121 \splittopskip

This is the amount of glue that is added to the top of a (new) split of part of a box when `\vsplit` is applied.

1122 \srule

This inserts a rule with no width. When a `font` and a `char` are given the height and depth of that character are taken. Instead of a font `fam` is also accepted so that we can use it in math mode.

1123 \string

We mention this original primitive because of the one in the next section. It expands the next token or control sequence as if it was just entered, so normally a control sequence becomes a backslash followed by characters and a space.

1124 \subprescript

Instead of three or four characters with catcode 8 (__ or ____) this primitive can be used. It will add the following argument as lower left script to the nucleus.

1125 \subscript

Instead of one or two characters with catcode 7 (_ or __) this primitive can be used. It will add the following argument as upper left script to the nucleus.

1126 \superprescript

Instead of three or four characters with catcode 7 (^^^ or ^^^^) this primitive can be used. It will add the following argument as upper left script to the nucleus.

1127 \superscript

Instead of one or two character with catcode 7 (^ or ^^)t his primitive can be used. It will add the following argument as upper right script to the nucleus.

1128 \supmarkmode

As in other languages, TEX has ways to escape characters and get whatever character needed into the input. By default multiple ^ are used for this. The dual ^^ variant is a bit weird as it is not continuous but ^^^^ and ^^^^^^ provide four or six byte hexadecimal references ot characters. The single ^ is also used for superscripts but because we support prescripts and indices we get into conflicts with the escapes.

When this internal quantity is set to zero, multiple ^'s are interpreted in the input and produce characters. Other values disable the multiple parsing in text and/or math mode:

```
\normalsupmarkmode0 $ X^58 \quad X^^58 $
\normalsupmarkmode1 $ X^58 \quad X^^58 $ ^^58
\normalsupmarkmode2 $ X^58 \quad X^^58 $ % ^^58 : error
```

In ConTEXt we default to one but also have the \catcode set to 12, and the \amcode to 7.

X^58 XX
X^58 X^58 X
X^58 X^58

1129 \swapcsvalues

Because we mention some def and let primitives here, it makes sense to also mention a primitive that will swap two values (meanings). This one has to be used with care. Of course that what gets swapped has to be of the same type (or at least similar enough not to cause issues). Registers for instance store their values in the token, but as soon as we are dealing with token lists we also need to keep an eye on reference counting. So, to some extend this is an experimental feature.

```
\scratchcounterone 1 \scratchcountertwo 2
```

```
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
\swapcsvalues \scratchcounterone \scratchcountertwo
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
\swapcsvalues \scratchcounterone \scratchcountertwo
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)

\scratchcounterone 3 \scratchcountertwo 4
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
\bgroup
\swapcsvalues \scratchcounterone \scratchcountertwo
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
\egroup
(\the\scratchcounterone,\the\scratchcountertwo)
```

We get similar results:

(1,2)
(2,1)
(1,2)

(3,4)
(4,3)
(3,4)

1130 \tabsize

This primitive can be used in the preamble of an alignment and sets the size of a column, as in:

```
\halign{%
    \aligncontent             \aligntab
    \aligncontent\tabsize 3cm \aligntab
    \aligncontent             \aligntab
    \aligncontent\tabsize 0cm \cr
    1  \aligntab 111\aligntab 1111\aligntab 11\cr
    222\aligntab 2  \aligntab 2222\aligntab 22\cr
}
```

As with \tabskip you need to reset the value explicitly, so that is why we get two wide columns:

1	111	1111	11
222	2	2222	22

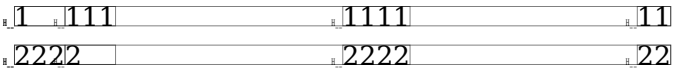
1131 \tabskip

This traditional primitive can be used in the preamble of an alignment and sets the space added between columns, for example:

```
\halign{%
    \aligncontent             \aligntab
    \aligncontent\tabskip 3cm \aligntab
    \aligncontent             \aligntab
```

```
    \aligncontent\tabskip 0cm \cr
    1  \aligntab 111\aligntab 1111\aligntab 11\cr
    222\aligntab 2  \aligntab 2222\aligntab 22\cr
}
```

You need to reset the skip explicitly, which is why we get it applied twice here:



1132 \textdirection

This set the text direction to `l2r` (0) or `r2l` (1). It also triggers additional checking for balanced flipping in node lists.

1133 \textfont

This primitive is like `\font` but with a family number as (first) argument so it is specific for math. It is the largest one of the three family members; its relatives are `\scriptfont` and `\scriptscriptfont`.

1134 \textspacing

This sets a text spacing vectors that determine space factors and penalties per category; see `\spcode`.

1135 \textspacingfactor

This primitive reports the spacing factor of the given character code.

1136 \textspacingpenalty

This primitive reports the spacing penalty of the given character code.

1137 \textstyle

One of the main math styles; integer representation: 2.

1138 \the

The `\the` primitive serializes the following token, when applicable: integers, dimensions, token registers, special quantities, etc. The catcodes of the result will be according to the current settings, so in **`\the\dimen`**`0`, the `pt` will have catcode 'letter' and the number and period will become 'other'.

1139 \thewithoutunit

The `\the` primitive, when applied to a dimension variable, adds a `pt` unit. because dimensions are the only traditional unit with a fractional part they are sometimes used as pseudo floats in which case `\thewithoutunit` can be used to avoid the unit. This is more convenient than stripping it off afterwards (via an expandable macro).

1140 \thickmuskip

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is `5.0mu plus 3.0mu minus 1.0mu`. In traditional TEX most inter atom spacing is hard coded using the predefined registers.

1141 \thinmuskip

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is `3.0mu`. In traditional TEX most inter atom spacing is hard coded using the predefined registers.

1142 \time

This internal number starts out with minute (starting at midnight) that the job started.

1143 \tinymuskip

A predefined mu skip register that can be used in math (inter atom) spacing. The current value is `2.0mu minus 1.0mu`. This one complements `\thinmuskip`, `\medmuskip`, `\thickmuskip` and the new `\pettymuskip`

1144 \tocharacter

The given number is converted into an utf-8 sequence. In LuaTEX this one is named **\Uchar**.

1145 \toddlerpenalties

This an (possible double entry) array parameter: first the size is given followed by that amount of penalties (can be pairs). These penalties are injected after (and before) single glyphs bounded by spaces, going backward from the end of a sequence of them.

1146 \todimension

The following code gives this: 1234.0pt and like its numeric counterparts accepts anything that resembles a number this one goes beyond (user, internal or pseudo) registers values too.

```
\scratchdimen = 1234pt \todimension\scratchdimen
```

1147 \tohexadecimal

The following code gives this: 4D2 with uppercase letters.

```
\scratchcounter = 1234 \tohexadecimal\scratchcounter
```

1148 \tointeger

The following code gives this: 1234 and is equivalent to `\number`.

```
\scratchcounter = 1234 \tointeger\scratchcounter
```

1149 \tokenized

Just as \expanded has a counterpart \unexpanded, it makes sense to give \detokenize a companion:

```
\edef\foo{\detokenize{\inframed{foo}}}
\edef\oof{\detokenize{\inframed{oof}}}

\meaning\foo \crlf \dontleavehmode\foo

\edef\foo{\tokenized{\foo\foo}}

\meaning\foo \crlf \dontleavehmode\foo

\dontleavehmode\tokenized{\foo\oof}
```

```
macro:\inframed {foo}
\inframed {foo}

macro:\inframed {foo}\inframed {foo}
```

foo	foo

foo	foo	oof

This primitive is similar to:

```
\def\tokenized#1{\scantextokens\expandafter{\expanded{#1}}}
```

and should be more efficient, not that it matters much as we don't use it that much (if at all).

1150 \toks

This is the accessor of a token register so it expects a number or \toksdef'd macro.

1151 \toksapp

One way to append something to a token list is the following:

```
\scratchtoks\expandafter{\the\scratchtoks more stuff}
```

This works all right, but it involves a copy of what is already in \scratchtoks. This is seldom a real issue unless we have large token lists and many appends. This is why LuaTEX introduced:

```
\toksapp\scratchtoks{more stuff}
\toksapp\scratchtoksone\scratchtokstwo
```

At some point, when working on LuaMetaTEX, I realized that primitives like this one and the next appenders and prependers to be discussed were always on the radar of Taco and me. Some were even implemented in what we called eetex: extended e-TEX, and we even found back the prototypes, dating from pre-pdfTEX times.

1152 \toksdef

The given name (control sequence) will be bound to the given token register (a number). Often this primitive is hidden in a high level macro that manages allocation.

1153 \tokspre

Where appending something is easy because of the possible \expandafter trickery a prepend would involve more work, either using temporary token registers and/or using a mixture of the (no)expansion added by e-TEX, but all are kind of inefficient and cumbersome.

```
\tokspre\scratchtoks{less stuff}
\tokspre\scratchtoksone\scratchtokstwo
```

This prepends the token list that is provided.

1154 \tolerance

When the par builder runs into a line with a badness larger than this value and when \emergencystretch is set a third pass is enabled. In LuaMetaTEX we can have more than one second pass and there are more parameters that influence the process.

1155 \tolerant

This prefix tags the following macro as being tolerant with respect to the expected arguments. It only makes sense when delimited arguments are used or when braces are mandate.

```
\tolerant\def\foo[#1]#*[#2]{(#1)(#2)}
```

This definition makes \foo tolerant for various calls:

```
\foo \foo[1] \foo [1] \foo[1] [2] \foo [1] [2]
```

these give: ()()(1)()(1)()(1)(2) (1)(2). The spaces after the first call disappear because the macro name parser gobbles it, while in the second case the #* gobbles them. Here is a variant:

```
\tolerant\def\foo[#1]#,[#2]{!#1!#2!}

\foo[?] x
\foo[?] [?] x

\tolerant\def\foo[#1]#*[#2]{!#1!#2!}

\foo[?] x
\foo[?] [?] x
```

We now get the following:

!?!! x !?!?! x

!?!!x !?!?! x

Here the #, remembers that spaces were gobbles and they will be put back when there is no further match. These are just a few examples of this tolerant feature. More details can be found in the lowlevel manuals.

1156 \tolimitedfloat

This one is somewhat special: it limits the precision to 5 digits which is what TEX at most will give you. Here are some examples:

```
\tolimitedfloat 1223.456789
\tolimitedfloat 1223.50100
\tolimitedfloat 1223.46
\the            \floatexpr2.1 * 4.2\relax
\tolimitedfloat \floatexpr2.1 * 4.2\relax
\tolimitedfloat \floatexpr11111111111111111\relax
```

You'll notice that accuracy is far from perfect which has to do with the fact that at some point for instance large integers have to be mapped onto a double.

1223.45679
1223.50101
1223.45999
8.819999933
8.82
11110380280723013632

Something similar happens in Lua:

```
\startluacode
    context("%.20f\\par",.11111111111111111111)
    context("%.10f\\par",.11111111111111111111)
    context("%.20g\\par",.11111111111111111111)
    context("%.10g\\par",.11111111111111111111)
    context("%.20N\\par",.11111111111111111111)
    context("%.10N\\par",.11111111111111111111)
    context("%.20f\\par",11111111111111111111)
    context("%.10f\\par",11111111111111111111)
    context("%.20g\\par",11111111111111111111)
    context("%.10g\\par",11111111111111111111)
    context("%.20N\\par",11111111111111111111)
    context("%.10N\\par",11111111111111111111)
\stopluacode
```

Fortunately we seldom have weird numbers in a TEX run, so the results are maybe sub-optimal but seldom so extreme because a TEX integer fits into a double.

0.11111111111111100000
0.1111111111
0.11111111111111110494
0.1111111111
0.111111111111111
0.1111111111
111111111111111100000.00000000000000000000
111111111111111100000.0000000000
11111111111111110656
1.111111111e+19
11111111111111100000
11111111111111100000

1157 \tomathstyle

Internally math styles are numbers, where \displaystyle is 0 and \crampedscriptscriptstyle is 7. You can convert the verbose style to a number with \tomathstyle.

1158 \topmark

This is a reference to the last mark on the previous (split off) page, it gives back tokens.

1159 \topmarks

This is a reference to the last mark with the given id (a number) on the previous page, it gives back tokens.

1160 \topskip

This is the amount of glue that is added to the top of a (new) page.

1161 \toscaled

The following code gives this: 1234.0 is similar to \todimension but omits the pt so that we don't need to revert to some nasty stripping code.

```
\scratchdimen = 1234pt \toscaled\scratchdimen
```

1162 \tosparsedimension

The following code gives this: 1234pt where 'sparse' indicates that redundant trailing zeros are not shown.

```
\scratchdimen = 1234pt \tosparsedimension\scratchdimen
```

1163 \tosparsescaled

The following code gives this: 1234 where 'sparse' means that redundant trailing zeros are omitted.

```
\scratchdimen = 1234pt \tosparsescaled\scratchdimen
```

1164 \tpack

This primitive is like \vtop but without the callback overhead.

1165 \tracingadjusts

In LuaMetaTEX the adjust feature has more functionality and also is carried over. When set to a positive values \vadjust processing reports details. The higher the number, the more you'll get.

1166 \tracingalignments

When set to a positive value the alignment mechanism will keep you informed about what is done in various stages. Higher values unleash more information, including what callbacks kick in.

1167 \tracingassigns

When set to a positive values assignments to parameters and variables are reported on the console and/or in the log file. Because LuaMetaTEX avoids redundant assignments these don't get reported.

1168 \tracingbalancing

When set to a positive some insight in the balancing process is given, kind of like with the par builder, so it can be noisy.

1169 \tracingcommands

When set to a positive values the commands (primitives) are reported on the console and/or in the log file.

1170 \tracingexpressions

The extended expression commands like `\numexpression` and `\dimexpression` can be traced by setting this parameter to a positive value.

1171 \tracingfitness

Because we have more fitness classes we also have (need) a (bit) more detailed tracing.

1172 \tracingfullboxes

When set to a positive value the box will be shown in case of an overfull box. When a quality callback is set this will not happen as all reporting is then delegated.

1173 \tracinggroups

When set to a positive values grouping is reported on the console and/or in the log file.

1174 \tracinghyphenation

When set to a positive values the hyphenation process is reported on the console and/or in the log file.

1175 \tracingifs

When set some details of what gets tested and what results are seen is reported.

1176 \tracinginserts

A positive value enables tracing where values larger than 1 will report more details.

1177 \tracinglevels

The lines in a log file can be prefixed with some details, depending on the bits set:

`0x1` current group
`0x2` current input
`0x4` catcode table

1178 \tracinglists

At various stages the lists being processed can be shown. This is mostly an option for developers.

1179 \tracingloners

With loners we mean ‘widow’ and ‘club’ lines. This tracer can be handy when `\doublepenaltymode` is set and facing pages have different penalty values.

1180 \tracinglooseness

This tracer reports some details about the decision made towards a possible loose result.

1181 \tracinglostchars

When set to one characters not present in a font will be reported in the log file, a value of two will also report this on the console. In ConTEXt we use the `missing_character` instead. Contrary to in LuaTEX values larger than two have no special meaning and we don’t error.

1182 \tracingmacros

This parameter controls reporting of what macros are seen and expanded.

1183 \tracingmarks

Marks are information blobs that track states that can be queried when a page is handled over to the shipout routine. They travel through the system in a bit different than traditionally: like like adjusts and inserts deeply buried ones bubble up to outer level boxes. This parameters controls what progress gets reported.

1184 \tracingmath

The higher the value, the more information you will get about the various stages in rendering math. Because tracing of nodes is rather verbose you need to know a bit what this engine does. Conceptually there are differences between the LuaMetaTEX and traditional engine, like more passes, inter-atom spacing, different low level mechanisms. This feature is mostly meant for developers who tweak the many available parameters.

1185 \tracingmvl

When set to a positive value mvl switching is reported.

1186 \tracingnesting

A positive value triggers log messages about the current level.

1187 \tracingnodes

When set to a positive value more details about nodes (in boxes) will be reported. Because this is also controlled by callbacks what gets reported is macro package dependent.

1188 \tracingonline

The engine has two output channels: the log file and the console and by default most tracing (when enabled) goes to the log file. When this parameter is set to a positive value tracing will also happen in the console. Messages from the Lua end can be channeled independently.

1189 \tracingorphans

When set to a positive value handling of orphans is shown.

1190 \tracingoutput

Values larger than zero result in some information about what gets passed to the output routine.

1191 \tracingpages

Values larger than one result in some information about the page building process. In LuaMetaTEX there is more info for higher values.

1192 \tracingparagraphs

Values larger than one result in some information about the par building process. In LuaMetaTEX there is more info for higher values.

1193 \tracingpasses

In LuaMetaTEX you can configure additional second stage par builder passes and this parameter controls what gets reported on the console and/or in the log file.

1194 \tracingpenalties

This setting triggers reporting of actions due to special penalties in the page builder.

1195 \tracingraggedness

This tracker keep track of how ragged a paragraph is. It relates to `\justificationskip`.

1196 \tracingrestores

When set to a positive values (re)assignments after grouping to parameters and variables are reported on the console and/or in the log file. Because LuaMetaTEX avoids redundant assignments these don't get reported.

1197 \tracingsnapping

This is an experimental feature what we occasionally come back to, so it's currently undocumented.

1198 \tracingstats

This parameter is a dummy in LuaMetaTEX. There are anyway some statistic reported when the format is made but for a regular run it is up to the macro package to come up with useful information.

1199 \tracingtoddlers

When set to a positive value handling of toddlers is shown.

1200 \tsplit

This splits like `\vsplit` but it returns a `\vtop` box instead.

1201 \uccode

When the `\uppercase` operation is applied the uppercase code of a character is used for the replacement. This primitive is used to set that code, so it expects two character number.

1202 \uchyph

When set to a positive number words that start with a capital will be hyphenated.

1203 \uleaders

This leader adapts itself after a paragraph has been typeset. Here are a few examples:

```
test \leaders  \hbox      {x}\hfill\              test
test \uleaders \hbox{x x x x}\hfill\              test
test           \hbox{x x x x}\hskip 3cm plus 1cm\ test
test \uleaders \hbox{x x x x}\hskip 3cm plus 1cm\ test
```

When an `\uleaders` is used the glue in the given box will be adapted to the available space.

test xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx test
test x x x test
test x x x x test
test x x x x test

Optionally the `callback` followed by a number can be given, in which case a callback kicks in that gets that the node, a group identifier, and the number passed. It permits (for instance) adaptive graphics: 1=i 6=vi 11=xi 16=xvi 21=xxi 26=xxvi 31=xxxi 36=xxxvi 41=xli 46=xlvi 51=li 56=lvi 61=lxi 66=lxvi 71=lxxi 76=lxxvi 81=lxxxi 86=lxxxvi 91=xci 96=xcvi .

These `\uleaders` can be used in horizontal and vertical mode so we give a few more examples.

```
\unexpandedloop 1 30 1 {x           \hbox{1 2 3}
                                                                           x }
\unexpandedloop 1 30 1 {x {\uleaders \hbox{1 2 3}\hskip 0pt plus 10pt
                                                        minus 10pt\relax}        x }
\unexpandedloop 1 30 1 {x {\uleaders \hbox{1 2 3}\hskip 0pt plus  \interwordstretch
                                                        minus \interwordshrink}  x }
\unexpandedloop 1 30 1 {x {\uleaders \hbox{1 2 3}\hskip 0pt plus 2\interwordstretch
                                                        minus 2\interwordshrink} x }
```

This renders as:

x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x
x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x
x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x x 1 2 3 x

It is clear that the flexibility of the box plays a role in the line break calculations. But in the end the backend has to do the work which is why it's a 'user' leader. Here is an example of a vertical one. Compare:

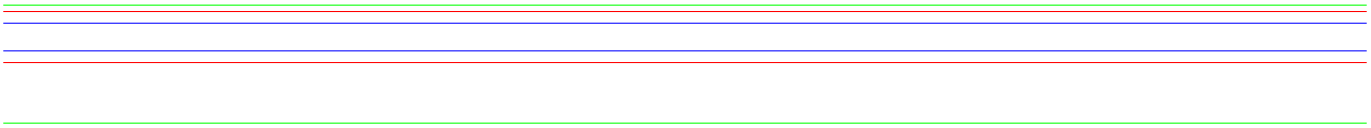
```
{\green \hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
\vbox to 40pt {
    {\red\hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
    \vbox {
        \vskip2pt {\blue\hrule width \hsize} \par
        \vskip 10pt plus 10pt minus 10pt
        {\blue\hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
    }
    \vskip2pt {\red\hrule width \hsize} \par
}
\vskip2pt {\green \hrule width \hsize} \par
```

with:

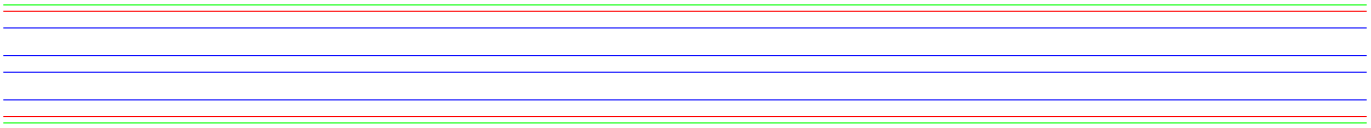
```
{\green \hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
\vbox to 40pt {
    {\red\hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
    \uleaders\vbox {
        \vskip2pt {\blue\hrule width \hsize} \par
        \vskip 10pt plus 10pt minus 10pt
        {\blue\hrule width \hsize} \par \vskip2pt
    }\vskip 0pt plus 10pt minus 10pt
    \vskip2pt {\red\hrule width \hsize} \par
```

```
}
\vskip2pt {\green \hrule width \hsize} \par
```

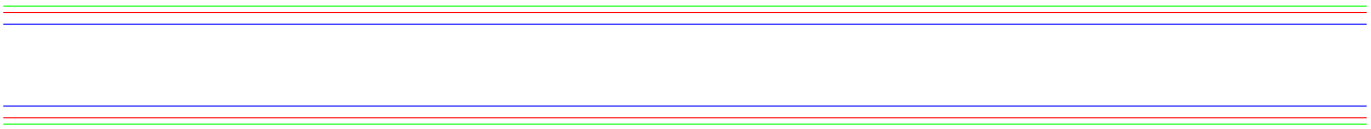
In the first case we get the this:



but with `\uleaders` we get:



or this:



In the second case we flatten the leaders in the engine by setting the second bit in the `\normalizeparmode` parameter (`0x2`). We actually do the same with `\normalizelinemode` where bit 10 is set (`0x200`). The `delay` keyword can be passed with a box to prevent flattening. If we don't do this in the engine, the backend has to take care of it. In principle this permits implementing variants in a macro package. Eventually there will be plenty examples in the ConTEXt code base and documentation. Till then, consider this experimental.

1204 `\unboundary`

When possible a preceding boundary node will be removed.

1205 `\undent`

When possible the already added indentation will be removed.

1206 `\underline`

This is a math specific primitive that draws a line under the given content. It is a poor mans replacement for a delimiter. The thickness is set with `\Umathunderbarrule`, the distance between content and rule is set by `\Umathunderbarvgap` and `\Umathunderbarkern` is added above the rule. The style used for the content under the rule can be set with `\Umathunderlinevariant`. See `\overline` for what these parameters do.

1207 `\unexpanded`

This is an e-TEX enhancement. The content will not be expanded in a context where expansion is happening, like in an `\edef`. In ConTEXt you need to use `\normalunexpanded` because we already had a macro with that name.

```
\def \A{!}                          \meaning\A
\def \B{?}                          \meaning\B
\edef\C{\A\B}                       \meaning\C
\edef\C{\normalunexpanded{\A}\B} \meaning\C
```

```
macro:!
macro:?
macro:!?
macro:\A ?
```

1208 \unexpandedendless

This one loops forever so you need to quit explicitly.

1209 \unexpandedloop

As follow up on \expandedloop we now show its counterpart:

```
\edef\whatever
  {\unexpandedloop 1 10 1
     {\scratchcounter=\the\currentloopiterator\relax}}

\meaningasis\whatever
```

```
\def \whatever {\scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter
=0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter
=0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax \scratchcounter =0\relax }
```

The difference between the (un)expanded loops and a local controlled one is shown here. Watch the out of order injection of A's.

```
\edef\TestA{\localcontrolledloop 1 5 1 {A}} % out of order
\edef\TestB{\expandedloop        1 5 1 {B}}
\edef\TestC{\unexpandedloop      1 5 1 {C\relax}}
```

AAAAA

We show the effective definition as well as the outcome of using them

```
\meaningasis\TestA
\meaningasis\TestB
\meaningasis\TestC

A: \TestA
B: \TestB
C: \TestC
```

```
\def \TestA {}
\def \TestB {BBBBB}
\def \TestC {C\relax C\relax C\relax C\relax C\relax }

A:
```

```
B: BBBBB
C: CCCCC
```

Watch how because it is empty `\TestA` has become a constant macro because that's what deep down empty boils down to.

1210 \unexpandedrepeat

This one takes one instead of three arguments which looks better in simple loops.

1211 \unhbox

A box is a packaged list and once packed travels through the system as a single object with properties, like dimensions. This primitive injects the original list and discards the wrapper.

1212 \unhcopy

This is like `\unhbox` but keeps the original. It is one of the more costly operations.

1213 \unhpack

This primitive is like `\unhbox` but without the callback overhead.

1214 \unkern

This removes the last kern, if possible.

1215 \unless

This e-TEX prefix will negate the test (when applicable).

```
      \ifx\one\two YES\else NO\fi
\unless\ifx\one\two NO\else YES\fi
```

This primitive is hardly used in ConTEXt and we probably could get rid of these few cases.

1216 \unletfrozen

A frozen macro cannot be redefined: you get an error. But as nothing in TEX is set in stone, you can do this:

```
\frozen\def\MyMacro{...}
\unletfrozen\MyMacro
```

and `\MyMacro` is no longer protected from overloading. It is still undecided to what extend ConTEXt will use this feature.

1217 \unletprotected

The complementary operation of `\letprotected` can be used to unprotect a macro, so that it gets expandable.

```
              \def  \MyMacroA{alpha}
\protected    \def  \MyMacroB{beta}
              \edef \MyMacroC{\MyMacroA\MyMacroB}
\unletprotected     \MyMacroB
              \edef \MyMacroD{\MyMacroA\MyMacroB}
\meaning            \MyMacroC\crlf
\meaning            \MyMacroD\par
```

Compare this with the example in the previous section:

```
macro:alpha\MyMacroB
macro:alphabeta
```

1218 \unpenalty

This removes the last penalty, if possible.

1219 \unskip

This removes the last glue, if possible.

1220 \untraced

Related to the meaning providers is the `\untraced` prefix. It marks a macro as to be reported by name only. It makes the macro look like a primitive.

```
        \def\foo{}
\untraced\def\oof{}

\scratchtoks{\foo\foo\oof\oof}

\tracingall \the\scratchtoks \tracingnone
```

This will show up in the log as follows:

```
1:4: {\the}
1:5: \foo ->
1:5: \foo ->
1:5: \oof
1:5: \oof
```

This is again a trick to avoid too much clutter in a log. Often it doesn't matter to users what the meaning of a macro is (if they trace at all).[15]

1221 \unvbox

A box is a packaged list and once packed travels through the system as a single object with properties, like dimensions. This primitive injects the original list and discards the wrapper.

[15] An earlier variant could also hide the expansion completely but that was just confusing.

1222 \unvcopy

This is like \unvbox but keeps the original. It is one of the more costly operations.

1223 \unvpack

This primitive is like \unvbox but without the callback overhead.

1224 \uppercase

See its counterpart \lowercase for an explanation.

1225 \vadjust

This injects a node that stores material that will injected before or after the line where it has become part of. In LuaMetaTEX there are more features, driven by keywords.

1226 \valign

This command starts vertically aligned material. Its counterpart \halign is used more frequently. Most macro packages provide wrappers around these commands. First one specifies a preamble which is then followed by entries (rows and columns).

1227 \variablefam

In traditional TEX sets the family of what are considered variables (class 7) to the current family (which often means that they adapt to the current alphabet) and then injects a math character of class ordinary. This parameter can be used to obey the given class when the family set for a character is the same as this parameter. So we then use the given class with the current family. It is mostly there for compatibility with LuaTEX and experimenting (outside ConTEXt).

1228 \vbadness

This sets the threshold for reporting a (vertical) badness value, its current value is 0.

1229 \vbadnessmode

This parameter determines what gets reported when the (in the vertical packer) badness exceeds some limit. The current value of this bitset is "F.

0x01	underfull	0x02	loose	0x04	tight	0x08	overfull

1230 \vbalance

In addition to the page builder and vbox splitter we have what's called a balancer. This routine splits a vertical list in pieces (slots) according to a specification (see **\balanceshape**). It can do so in multiple passes (see **\balancepasses**). The balancing 'framework' operates independently from the page builder and vsplitter.

Because there are multiple primitives involved and because one will normally write decent wrapper, wd delegate a more detailed explanation to a ConTEXt low level manual.

```
\setbox 0 \vbox\bgroup \hsize 10em
  line 1\par line 2\par line 3\par
  line 4\par line 5\par line 6\par
  line 7\par line 8\par
\egroup
\balancetopskip          \strutht
\balancebottomskip       \strutht
\balancevsize            3\lineheight
\balancetolerance        100
\balanceemergencystretch 0pt
\setbox 2 \vbalance 0
\hbox \bgroup
    \vbalancedbox 2 \hskip2em
    \vbalancedbox 2 \hskip2em
    \vbalancedbox 2
\egroup
```

Here we use a simple specification (no shape). The balancer does a whole list optimization so it does honor penalties and works with some tolerance too. Decisions are made on badness and demerits. Like the par builder you can get overfull slots so in practice one might rebalance with different specifications if that happens.

The results are collected in a box (in this example box register 2) which destroys the original. With

```
\setbox 2 \vbalance trial 0
```

we keep the original and the result will have empty boxes with the dimensions of the slots. You can loop over the result and check the real height with **\balanceshapevsize**.

line 1 line 3 line 5

line 2 line 4 line 6

1231 \vbalancedbox

This command take the topmost balanced slot from the given balanced box and wraps it in a **\vbox**. When there is is no more to fetch the result is void.

1232 \vbalanceddeinsert

This will convert the inserts in the given balancing result into a form that is useable for the balancer. This is not mandate but needed if you want split insertions. The keyword `descend` will locate the relevant box and `forcedepth` will make sure that we get constant depths (but expects `\insertlinedepth` being set.

1233 \vbalanceddiscard

One of the features of balancing is that we can can have discardable content at the top and/or bottom of slots. This primitive will remove discarded content from the given result of **\vbalance**, like:

```
\setbox 2 \vbalance 0
\vbalanceddiscard 2
```

1234 \vbalancedinsert

This one fetches the inserts from a balanced slot result. This happens per insert class.

```
\setbox 4 \vbalancedinsert 2 4
```

Instead you can give:

```
\setbox 4 \vbalancedinsert 2 index 4 descend \relax
```

Here `descend` will locate the relevant slot box which is handy in case one already wrapped the result in a box.

1235 \vbalancedreinsert

This will convert the inserts in the given balancing slot result into a more original form, assuming that `\vbalanceddeinsert` was applied.. This is not mandate and depends on what is expected further down the line (read: this is macro package specific). You can use the keyword `descend` to locate the relevant slot box.

1236 \vbalancedtop

This command take the topmost balanced slot from the given balanced box and wraps it in a **\vbox**. When there is is no more to fetch the result is void.

1237 \vbox

This creates a vertical box. In the process callbacks can be triggered that can preprocess the content, influence line breaking as well as assembling the resulting paragraph. More can be found in dedicated manuals. The baseline is at the bottom.

1238 \vcenter

In traditional TEX this box packer is only permitted in math mode but in LuaMetaTEX it also works in text mode. The content is centered in the vertical box.

1239 \vfil

This is a shortcut for **\vskip** `plus 1 fil` (first order filler).

1240 \vfill

This is a shortcut for **\vskip** `plus 1 fill` (second order filler).

1241 \vfilneg

This is a shortcut for **\vskip** `plus - 1 fil` so it can compensate `\vfil`.

1242 \vfuzz

This dimension sets the threshold for reporting vertical boxes that are under- or overfull. The current value is 0.1pt.

1243 \virtualhrule

This is a horizontal rule with zero dimensions from the perspective of the frontend but the backend can access them as set.

1244 \virtualvrule

This is a vertical rule with zero dimensions from the perspective of the frontend but the backend can access them as set.

1245 \vkern

This primitive is like `\kern` but will force the engine into vertical mode if it isn't yet.

1246 \vpack

This primitive is like `\vbox` but without the callback overhead.

1247 \vpenalty

This primitive is like `\penalty` but will force the engine into vertical mode if it isn't yet.

1248 \vrule

This creates a vertical rule. Unless the height and depth are set they will stretch to fix the available space. In addition to the traditional `width`, `height` and `depth` specifiers some more are accepted. These are discussed in other manuals. See `\hrule` for a simple example.

1249 \vsize

This sets (or gets) the current vertical size. While setting the `\hsize` inside a `\vbox` has consequences, setting the `\vsize` mostly makes sense at the outer level (the page).

1250 \vskip

The given glue is injected in the vertical list. If possible vertical mode is entered.

1251 \vsplit

This operator splits a given amount from a vertical box. In LuaMetaTEX we can split `to` but also `upto`, so that we don't have to repack the result in order to see how much is actually in there.

1252 \vsplitchecks

This parameter is passed to the `show_vsplit` callback.

1253 \vss

This is the vertical variant of `\hss`. See there for what it means.

1254 \vtop

This creates a vertical box. In the process callbacks can be triggered that can preprocess the content, influence line breaking as well as assembling the resulting paragraph. More can be found in dedicated manuals. The baseline is at the top.

1255 \wd

Returns the width of the given box.

1256 \widowpenalties

This is an array of penalty put before the last lines in a paragraph. High values discourage (or even prevent) a lone line at the beginning of a next page. This command expects a count value indicating the number of entries that will follow. The first entry is ends up before the last line.

1257 \widowpenalty

This is the penalty put before a widow line in a paragraph. High values discourage (or even prevent) a lone line at the beginning of a next page.

1258 \wordboundary

The hypenation routine has to decide where a word begins and ends. If you want to make sure that there is a proper begin or end of a word you can inject this boundary.

1259 \wrapuppar

What this primitive does can best be shown with an example:

```
some text\wrapuppar{one} and some\wrapuppar{two} more
```

We get:

some text and some more twoone

So, it is a complementary command to `\everypar`. It can only be issued inside a paragraph.

1260 \xdef

This is an alternative for **`\global\edef`**:

```
\xdef\MyMacro{...}
```

1261 \xdefcsname

This is the companion of \xdef:

```
\expandafter\xdef\csname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
            \xdefcsname MyMacro:1\endcsname{...}
```

1262 \xleaders

See \gleaders for an explanation.

1263 \xspaceskip

Normally the glue inserted when a space is encountered after a character with a space factor other than 1000 is taken from the font (fontdimen 7) unless this parameter is set in which case its value is added.

1264 \xtoks

This is the global variant of \etoks.

1265 \xtoksapp

This is the global variant of \etoksapp.

1266 \xtokspre

This is the global variant of \etokspre.

1267 \year

This internal number starts out with the year that the job started.

6.4 Syntax

6.4.1 accent

tex : \accent
[xoffset *dimension*] [yoffset *dimension*] *integer character*

6.4.2 aftersomething

luametatex : \afterassigned
{ *tokens* }
tex : \afterassignment
token
tex : \aftergroup
token
luametatex : \aftergrouped
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \atendoffile
token
luametatex : \atendoffiled
[reverse] { *tokens* }
luametatex : \atendofgroup
token
luametatex : \atendofgrouped
{ *tokens* }

6.4.3 alignmenttab

luatex : \aligntab

6.4.4 alignproperty

luametatex : \alignoption
n *
((firstskip | lastskip | nofirstskip | nolastskip | prune))
: *integer*

6.4.5 arithmic

tex : \advance
quantity [by] *quantity*
luametatex : \advanceby
quantity quantity
tex : \divide
quantity [by] *quantity*
luametatex : \divideby
quantity quantity
luametatex : \edivide
quantity quantity
luametatex : \edivideby
quantity quantity
tex : \multiply
quantity [by] *quantity*
luametatex : \multiplyby
quantity quantity
luametatex : \rdivide
quantity quantity
luametatex : \rdivideby
quantity quantity

6.4.6 association

luametatex : \associateunit
\cs [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*

6.4.7 auxiliary

luametatex : \insertmode
integer
: *integer*
etex : \interactionmode
integer
: *integer*
tex : \prevdepth
dimension
: *dimension*
tex : \prevgraf
integer
: *integer*
tex : \spacefactor
integer
: *integer*

6.4.8 begingroup

tex : \begingroup
luametatex : \beginmathgroup
luametatex : \beginsimplegroup

6.4.9 beginlocal

luametatex : \beginlocalcontrol
luametatex : \expandedendless
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \expandedloop
integer integer integer { *tokens* }
luametatex : \expandedrepeat
integer { *tokens* }
luametatex : \localcontrol
tokens\endlocalcontrol
luametatex : \localcontrolled
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \localcontrolledendless
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \localcontrolledloop
see \expandedloop
luametatex : \localcontrolledrepeat
integer { *tokens* }
luametatex : \unexpandedendless
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \unexpandedloop
see \expandedloop
luametatex : \unexpandedrepeat
integer { *tokens* }

6.4.10 beginparagraph

tex : \indent
tex : \noindent
luametatex : \optionspar
[=] *integer*
luametatex : \parattribute
integer [=] *integer*
luatex : \quitvmode
luametatex : \snapshotpar
integer
: *integer*
luametatex : \undent
luametatex : \wrapuppar
[reverse] { *tokens* }

6.4.11 boundary

luametatex : \attributeboundary
integer integer
luametatex : \balanceboundary
integer integer
luametatex : \boundary
integer
luametatex : \insertboundary
integer integer
luametatex : \luaboundary
integer integer
luametatex : \mathboundary
integer [*integer*]
luametatex : \noboundary
luametatex : \optionalboundary
integer
luametatex : \pageboundary
integer integer
luametatex : \protrusionboundary
integer
luametatex : \wordboundary

6.4.12 boxproperty

luametatex : \boxadapt
(index | *box*) [=] *integer*
> (index | *box*) : *integer*
luametatex : \boxanchor
see \boxadapt
luametatex : \boxanchors
(index | *box*) [=] *integer integer*
> (index | *box*) : *integer*
luametatex : \boxattribute
(index | *box*) *integer* [=] *integer*
> (index | *box*) *integer* : *integer*
luatex : \boxdirection
see \boxadapt
luametatex : \boxfinalize
(index | *box*) *integer*
> (index | *box*) : *dimension*
luametatex : \boxfreeze
see \boxadapt
luametatex : \boxgeometry
see \boxadapt
luametatex : \boxinserts
(index | *box*)
> (index | *box*) : *integer*
luametatex : \boxlimit
see \boxinserts
luametatex : \boxlimitate
see \boxadapt
luametatex : \boxmigrate
see \boxadapt

luametatex : \boxorientation
see \boxadapt
luametatex : \boxrepack
see \boxinserts
luametatex : \boxshift
(index | *box*) [=] *dimension*
> (index | *box*) : *dimension*
luametatex : \boxshrink
see \boxinserts
luametatex : \boxsnapping
(index | *box*) *tokens*\relax
> (index | *box*) : *dimension*
luametatex : \boxsource
see \boxadapt
luametatex : \boxstretch
see \boxinserts
luametatex : \boxsubtype
see \boxinserts
luametatex : \boxtarget
see \boxadapt
luametatex : \boxtotal
see \boxinserts
luametatex : \boxvadjust
(index | *box*) [pre] [post] [baseline] [before] [index *integer*] [after] [attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [depth (after *dimension* | before *dimension* | check | last)] [except *dimension*] { *tokens* }
> (index | *box*) : *integer*
luametatex : \boxxmove
see \boxshift
luametatex : \boxxoffset
see \boxshift
luametatex : \boxymove
see \boxshift
luametatex : \boxyoffset
see \boxshift
tex : \dp
see \boxshift
tex : \ht
see \boxshift
tex : \wd
see \boxshift

6.4.13 breakproperty

luametatex : \breaklasthangindent
dimension
: *dimension*
luametatex : \breaklasthangleftindent
dimension
: *dimension*
luametatex : \breaklasthangleftslack
integer
: *integer*
luametatex : \breaklasthangrightindent
dimension
: *dimension*
luametatex : \breaklasthangrightslack
integer
: *integer*
luametatex : \breaklasthangslack
integer
: *integer*
luametatex : \breaklastlinecount
integer
: *integer*
luametatex : \breaklastlinewidth
dimension
: *dimension*

6.4.14 caseshift

tex : \lowercase
{ *tokens* }
tex : \uppercase
{ *tokens* }

6.4.15 catcodetable

luatex : \initcatcodetable
integer
luametatex : \restorecatcodetable
integer
luatex : \savecatcodetable
integer

6.4.16 charnumber

tex : \char
integer

luametatex : \glyph
[xoffset *dimension*] [yoffset *dimension*] [scale *integer*] [xscale *integer*] [yscale *integer*] [left *dimension*] [right *dimension*] [raise *dimension*] [slant *integer*] [weight *integer*] [options *integer*] [*font* (*font* | *integer*)] [id *integer*] [keepspacing] *integer*

6.4.17 combinetoks

luametatex : \etoks
toks { *tokens* }
luatex : \etoksapp
toks { *tokens* }
luatex : \etokspre
toks { *tokens* }
luatex : \gtoksapp
toks { *tokens* }
luatex : \gtokspre
toks { *tokens* }
luatex : \toksapp
toks { *tokens* }
luatex : \tokspre
toks { *tokens* }
luametatex : \xtoks
toks { *tokens* }
luatex : \xtoksapp
toks { *tokens* }
luatex : \xtokspre
toks { *tokens* }

6.4.18 convert

luametatex : \csactive
> *token* : *tokens*
luametatex : \csnamestring
: *tokens*
luatex : \csstring
> *token* : *tokens*
luametatex : \detokened
> (\cs | { *tokens* } | *toks* | *token*) : *tokens*
luametatex : \detokenized
> { *tokens* } : *tokens*
luatex : \directlua
> { *tokens* } : *tokens*
luatex : \expanded
> { *tokens* } : *tokens*
luametatex : \fontidentifier
> (*font* | *integer*) : *tokens*
tex : \fontname
> (*font* | *integer*) : *tokens*
luametatex : \fontspecifiedname
> (*font* | *integer*) : *tokens*
luatex : \formatname
: *tokens*
tex : \jobname
: *tokens*
luatex : \luabytecode
> *integer* : *tokens*
luatex : \luaescapestring
> { *tokens* } : *tokens*
luatex : \luafunction
> *integer* : *tokens*
luametatex : \luametatexbanner
: *tokens*
tex : \meaning
> *token* : *tokens*
luametatex : \meaningasis
> *token* : *tokens*
luametatex : \meaningful
> *token* : *tokens*
luametatex : \meaningfull
> *token* : *tokens*
luametatex : \meaningles
> *token* : *tokens*
luametatex : \meaningless
> *token* : *tokens*
tex : \number
> *integer* : *tokens*
tex : \romannumeral
> *integer* : *tokens*
luametatex : \romannumerical
> *integer* : *tokens*
luametatex : \semiexpanded
> { *tokens* } : *tokens*
tex : \string
> *token* : *tokens*
luametatex : \tocharacter
> *integer* : *tokens*
luametatex : \todimension
> *dimension* : *tokens*
luametatex : \tohexadecimal
> *integer* : *tokens*
luametatex : \tointeger
> *integer* : *tokens*

luametatex : \tolimitedfloat
> *float* : *tokens*
luametatex : \tomathstyle
> *mathstyle* : *tokens*
luametatex : \toscaled
> *dimension* : *tokens*
luametatex : \tosparsedimension
> *dimension* : *tokens*
luametatex : \tosparsescaled
> *dimension* : *tokens*

6.4.19 csname

luatex : \begincsname
tokens\endcsname
tex : \csname
tokens\endcsname
luatex : \futurecsname
tokens\endcsname
luatex : \lastnamedcs

6.4.20 def

luametatex : \cdef
\cs [*preamble*] {*tokens*}
luametatex : \cdefcsname
tokens\endcsname [*preamble*] {*tokens*}
tex : \def
\cs [*preamble*] {*tokens*}
luametatex : \defcsname
tokens\endcsname [*preamble*] {*tokens*}
tex : \edef
\cs [*preamble*] {*tokens*}
luametatex : \edefcsname
tokens\endcsname [*preamble*] {*tokens*}
tex : \gdef
\cs [*preamble*] {*tokens*}
luametatex : \gdefcsname
tokens\endcsname [*preamble*] {*tokens*}
tex : \xdef
\cs [*preamble*] {*tokens*}
luametatex : \xdefcsname
tokens\endcsname [*preamble*] {*tokens*}

6.4.21 definecharcode

luatex : \Udelcode
integer [=] *integer* *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luatex : \Umathcode
integer [=] *integer* *integer* *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \amcode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
tex : \catcode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \cccode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
tex : \delcode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luatex : \hccode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luatex : \hmcode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
tex : \lccode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
tex : \mathcode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
tex : \sfcode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
tex : \spcode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
tex : \uccode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*

6.4.22 definefamily

tex : \scriptfont
family [=] (*font* | *integer*)
> family : *integer*
tex : \scriptscriptfont
see \scriptfont
tex : \textfont
see \scriptfont

6.4.23 definefont

tex : \font
\cs [=] ({ filename } | filename) [(at *dimension* | scaled *integer*)]
: *tokens*

6.4.24 delimiternumber

luatex : \Udelimiter
integer integer integer
tex : \delimiter
integer

6.4.25 discretionary

tex : \-
luatex : \automaticdiscretionary
tex : \discretionary
[penalty *integer*] [postword]
[preword] [break] [nobreak]
[options *integer*] [class *integer*]
[standalone] { *tokens* } { *tokens* }
{ *tokens* }
luatex : \explicitdiscretionary

6.4.26 endcsname

tex : \endcsname

6.4.27 endgroup

tex : \endgroup
luametatex : \endmathgroup
luametatex : \endsimplegroup

6.4.28 endjob

tex : \dump
tex : \end

6.4.29 endlocal

luatex : \endlocalcontrol

6.4.30 endparagraph

luametatex : \localbreakpar
tex : \par

6.4.31 endtemplate

luametatex : \aligncontent
luametatex : \alignloop
tex : \cr
tex : \crcr
tex : \noalign
{ *tokens* }
tex : \omit
luametatex : \realign
{ *tokens* } { *tokens* }
tex : \span

6.4.32 equationnumber

tex : \eqno
{ *tokens* }
tex : \leqno
{ *tokens* }

6.4.33 expandafter

luametatex : \expand
token
luametatex : \expandactive
token
tex : \expandafter
token token
luametatex : \expandafterpars
token
luametatex : \expandafterspaces
token
luametatex : \expandcstoken
token
luametatex : \expandedafter
token { *tokens* }
luametatex : \expandparameter
integer
luametatex : \expandtoken
token
luametatex : \expandtoks
{ *tokens* }

luametatex : \futureexpand
token token token
luametatex : \futureexpandis
token token token
luametatex : \futureexpandisap
token token token
luametatex : \semiexpand
token
etex : \unless

6.4.34 explicitspace

**tex : **
luametatex : \explicitspace

6.4.35 fontproperty

luametatex : \cfcode
(*font* | *integer*) *integer* [=] *integer*
> (*font* | *integer*) *integer* : *integer*
luatex : \efcode
see \cfcode
tex : \fontdimen
integer (*font* | *integer*) [=] *dimension*
> *integer* (*font* | *integer*) : *dimension*
tex : \hyphenchar
(*font* | *integer*) [=] *integer*
> (*font* | *integer*) : *integer*
luatex : \lpcode
see \cfcode
luatex : \rpcode
see \cfcode
luametatex : \scaledfontdimen
see \fontdimen
luametatex : \scaledfontemwidth
(*font* | *integer*) [=] *dimension*
> (*font* | *integer*) : *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledfontexheight
see \scaledfontemwidth
luametatex : \scaledfontextraspace
see \scaledfontemwidth
luametatex : \scaledfontinterwordshrink
see \scaledfontemwidth
luametatex : \scaledfontinterwordspace
see \scaledfontemwidth
luametatex : \scaledfontinterwordstretch
see \scaledfontemwidth
luametatex : \scaledfontslantperpoint
see \scaledfontemwidth
tex : \skewchar
see \hyphenchar

6.4.36 getmark

tex : \botmark
etex : \botmarks
integer
luametatex : \currentmarks
integer
tex : \firstmark
etex : \firstmarks
integer
tex : \splitbotmark
etex : \splitbotmarks
integer
tex : \splitfirstmark
etex : \splitfirstmarks
integer
tex : \topmark
etex : \topmarks
integer

6.4.37 halign

tex : \halign
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [callback *integer*] [callbacks *integer*] [combine] [discard] [*glue*mode *integer*] [mindepth *dimension*] [minheight *dimension*] [noskips] [nolastskip] [nofirstskip] [prune] [reverse] [split] [to *dimension*] [spread *dimension*] { *tokens* }

6.4.38 hmove

tex : \moveleft
dimension box
tex : \moveright
dimension box

6.4.39 hrule

tex : \hrule
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [width

dimension] [height *dimension*] [depth *dimension*] [pair *dimension* *dimension*] [xoffset *dimension*] [yoffset *dimension*] [linesnapping linesnapping\or] [snapping] [nosnapping] [running] [discardable] [keepspacing] [resetspacing] [*font* (*font* | *integer*)] [fam *integer*] [char *integer*] [left *dimension*] [right *dimension*] [top *dimension*] [bottom *dimension*] [on *dimension*] [off *dimension*]

luatex : \nohrule
see \hrule

luametatex : \virtualhrule
see \hrule

6.4.40 hskip

tex : \hfil
tex : \hfill
tex : \hfilneg
tex : \hskip
dimension [plus (*dimension* | fi [n*l])] [minus (*dimension* | fi [n*l])] [limit] [space] [penalty *integer*]
tex : \hss

6.4.41 hyphenation

luatex : \hjcode
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
tex : \hyphenation
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \hyphenationmin
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \patterns
{ *tokens* }
luatex : \postexhyphenchar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \posthyphenchar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \preexhyphenchar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \prehyphenchar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

6.4.42 iftest

tex : \else
tex : \fi
tex : \if
luatex : \ifabsdim
dimension
(! | < | = | > | ∈ | ∉ | ≠ | ≤ | ≥ | ≮ | ≯)
dimension
luametatex : \ifabsfloat
float (! | < | = | > | ∈ | ∉ | ≠ | ≤ | ≥ | ≮ | ≯)
float
luatex : \ifabsnum
integer
(! | < | = | > | ∈ | ∉ | ≠ | ≤ | ≥ | ≮ | ≯)
integer
luametatex : \ifarguments
luametatex : \ifboolean
integer
tex : \ifcase
integer
tex : \ifcat
token
luametatex : \ifchkdim
tokens\or
luametatex : \ifchkdimension
tokens\or
luametatex : \ifchkdimexpr
tokens\or
luametatex : \ifchknum
tokens\or
luametatex : \ifchknumber
tokens\or
luametatex : \ifchknumexpr
tokens\or
luametatex : \ifcmpdim
dimension *dimension*
luametatex : \ifcmpnum
integer *integer*
luatex : \ifcondition
\if...

luametatex : \ifcramped
mathstyle
etex : \ifcsname
tokens\endcsname
luametatex : \ifcstok
tokens\relax
etex : \ifdefined
token
tex : \ifdim
see \ifabsdim
luametatex : \ifdimexpression
tokens\relax
luametatex : \ifdimval
tokens\or
luametatex : \ifempty
(*token* | { *tokens* })
tex : \iffalse
luametatex : \ifflags
\cs *token*
luametatex : \iffloat
see \ifabsfloat
etex : \iffontchar
(*font* | *integer*) *integer*
luametatex : \ifhaschar
token { *tokens* }
luametatex : \ifhastok
token { *tokens* }
luametatex : \ifhastoks
tokens\relax
luametatex : \ifhasxtoks
tokens\relax
tex : \ifhbox
(index | *box*)
tex : \ifhmode
luametatex : \ifinalignment
luametatex : \ifincsname
tokens\endcsname
tex : \ifinner
luatex : \ifinsert
integer
luametatex : \ifintervaldim
dimension dimension dimension
luametatex : \ifintervalfloat
float float float
luametatex : \ifintervalnum
integer integer integer
luametatex : \iflastnamedcs
luametatex : \iflist
see \ifhbox
luametatex : \ifmathparameter
mathparameter *mathstyle*
luametatex : \ifmathstyle
tex : \ifmmode
tex : \ifnum
see \ifabsnum
luametatex : \ifnumexpression
tokens\relax
luametatex : \ifnumval
tokens\or
tex : \ifodd
integer
luametatex : \ifparameter
parameter\or
luametatex : \ifparameters
luametatex : \ifrelax
token
luametatex : \ifspecification
token
luametatex : \iftok
tokens\relax
tex : \iftrue
tex : \ifvbox
see \ifhbox
tex : \ifvmode
tex : \ifvoid
see \ifhbox
tex : \ifx
token
luametatex : \ifzerodim
dimension
luametatex : \ifzerofloat
float
luametatex : \ifzeronum
integer
tex : \or
luametatex : \orelse
luametatex : \orunless

6.4.43 ignoresomething

luatex : \ignorearguments
luatex : \ignorenestedupto
token
luatex : \ignorepars
luametatex : \ignorerest
tex : \ignorespaces
luametatex : \ignoreupto
token

6.4.44 input

tex : \endinput
luametatex : \eofinput
    { *tokens* } ({ filename } | filename)
luametatex : \ignoretokens
    { *tokens* }
tex : \input
    ({ filename } | filename)
luametatex : \quitloop
luametatex : \quitloopnow
luametatex : \retokenized
    integer { *tokens* }
luatex : \scantextokens
    { *tokens* }
etex : \scantokens
    { *tokens* }
luametatex : \tokenized
    [catcodetable *integer*] { *tokens* }

6.4.45 insert

tex : \insert
    [callback *integer*] [data *integer*]
    (index *integer* | *integer*) { *tokens* }

6.4.46 interaction

tex : \batchmode
tex : \errorstopmode
tex : \nonstopmode
tex : \scrollmode

6.4.47 internaldimension

luametatex : \balanceemergencyshrink
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
luametatex : \balanceemergencystretch
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
luametatex : \balancelineheight
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
luametatex : \balancevsize
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \boxmaxdepth
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \delimitershortfall
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \displayindent
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \displaywidth
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \emergencyextrastretch
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \emergencystretch
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
luametatex : \glyphxoffset
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
luametatex : \glyphyoffset
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \hangindent
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \hfuzz
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \hsize
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
luatex : \ignoredepthcriterion
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \lineskiplimit
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
luametatex : \linesnappingtolerance
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
luametatex : \localhangindent
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*
tex : \mathsurround
    [=] *dimension*
  : *dimension*

tex : \maxdepth
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \nulldelimiterspace
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \overfullrule
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luatex : \pageextragoal
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \parindent
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \predisplaysize
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luatex : \pxdimen
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \scriptspace
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luatex : \shortinlinemaththreshold
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \splitextraheight
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \splitmaxdepth
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \tabsize
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \vfuzz
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \vsize
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*

6.4.48 internalglue

tex : \abovedisplayshortskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \abovedisplayskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \additionalpageskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \balancebottomskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \balancetopskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \baselineskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \belowdisplayshortskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \belowdisplayskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \bottomskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \emergencyleftskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \emergencyrightskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \initialpageskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \initialtopskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \justificationskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \leftskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \lineskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luatex : \mathsurroundskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*

luametatex : \maththreshold
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \parfillleftskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \parfillrightskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \parfillskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \parinitleftskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
luametatex : \parinitrightskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \parskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \rightskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \spaceskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \splittopskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \tabskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \topskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*
tex : \xspaceskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*

6.4.49 internalinteger

tex : \adjdemerits
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \adjustspacing
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \adjustspacingshrink
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \adjustspacingstep
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \adjustspacingstretch
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \alignmentcellsource
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \alignmentwrapsource
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \automatichyphenpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \automigrationmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \autoparagraphmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \balanceadjdemerits
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \balancebreakpasses
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \balancechecks
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \balancelooseness
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \balancepenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \balancetolerance
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \binoppenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \boxlimitmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \brokenpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \catcodetable
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \clubpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \day
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \defaulthyphenchar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \defaultskewchar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \delimiterfactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \discretionaryoptions
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \displaywidowpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \doublehyphendemerits
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \doublepenaltymode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \emptyparagraphmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \endlinechar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \errorcontextlines
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \errorrecoverymode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \escapechar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \etexexprmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \eufactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \exapostrophechar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \exceptionpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \exhyphenchar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \exhyphenpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \explicithyphenpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \fam
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \finalhyphendemerits
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \firstvalidlanguage
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \floatingpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \globaldefs
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphdatafield
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphoptions
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphscale
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphscriptfield
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \glyphscriptscale
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphscriptscriptscale
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphslant
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphstatefield
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphtextscale
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphweight
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphxscale
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \glyphyscale
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \hangafter
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \hbadness
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \hbadnessmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \holdinginserts
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \holdingmigrations
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \hyphenationmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \hyphenpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \insertoptions
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \interlinepenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \language
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
etex : \lastlinefit
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \lefthyphenmin
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \lefttwindemerits
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \linebreakchecks
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \linebreakoptional
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \linebreakpasses
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \linedirection
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \linepenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \linesnappingdpfactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \linesnappinghtfactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \localbrokenpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \localhangafter
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \localinterlinepenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \localpretolerance
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \localtolerance
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \looseness
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \luacopyinputnodes
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathbeginclass
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathcheckfencesmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathdictgroup
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathdictproperties
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \mathdirection
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathdisplaymode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathdisplaypenaltyfactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \mathdisplayskipmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathdoublescriptmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathendclass
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \matheqnogapstep
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathfontcontrol
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathgluemode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathgroupingmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathinlinepenaltyfactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathleftclass
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathlimitsmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathoptions
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \mathpenaltiesmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathpretolerance
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathrightclass
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \mathrulesfam
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \mathrulesmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \mathscriptsmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathslackmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathspacingmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathsurroundmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathtolerance
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \maxdeadcycles
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \month
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \newlinechar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \nooutputboxerror
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \normalizelinemode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \normalizeparmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \nospaces
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \outputbox
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \outputpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \overloadmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \parametermode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \pardirection
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \parfillmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \paroptions
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \pausing
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \postdisplaypenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \postinlinepenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \postshortinlinepenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \prebinoppenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \predisplaydirection
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \predisplaygapfactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \predisplaypenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \preinlinepenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \prerelpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \preshortinlinepenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \pretolerance
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \protrudechars
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \relpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \righthyphenmin
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \righttwindemerits
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
etex : \savinghyphcodes
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
etex : \savingvdiscards
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \scriptspaceafterfactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \scriptspacebeforefactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \scriptspacebetweenfactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luatex : \setfontid
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \setlanguage
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \shapingpenaltiesmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \shapingpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \shortinlineorphanpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \showboxbreadth
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \showboxdepth
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \shownodedetails
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \singlelinepenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \spacechar
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \spacefactormode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \spacefactoroverload
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \spacefactorshrinklimit
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \spacefactorstretchlimit
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \spaceskipfactor
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \spaceskipmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \supmarkmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luatex : \textdirection
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \time
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \tolerance
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \tracingadjusts
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \tracingalignments
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

etex : \tracingassigns
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \tracingbalancing
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \tracingcommands
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \tracingexpressions
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \tracingfitness
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \tracingfullboxes
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

etex : \tracinggroups
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \tracinghyphenation
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

etex : \tracingifs
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracinginserts
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracinglevels
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracinglists
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \tracingloners
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracinglooseness
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \tracinglostchars
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \tracingmacros
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingmarks
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingmath
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingmvl
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
etex : \tracingnesting
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingnodes
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \tracingonline
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingorphans
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \tracingoutput
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \tracingpages
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \tracingparagraphs
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingpasses
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingpenalties
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingraggedness
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \tracingrestores
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingsnapping
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \tracingstats
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \tracingtoddlers
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \uchyph
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \variablefam
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \vbadness
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \vbadnessmode
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \vsplitchecks
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \widowpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \year
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

6.4.50 internalmuglue

tex : \medmuskip
[=] *muglue*
: *muglue*
luametatex : \pettymuskip
[=] *muglue*
: *muglue*
tex : \thickmuskip
[=] *muglue*
: *muglue*
tex : \thinmuskip
[=] *muglue*
: *muglue*
luametatex : \tinymuskip
[=] *muglue*
: *muglue*

6.4.51 internaltoks

tex : \errhelp
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
luametatex : \everybeforepar
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
tex : \everycr
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
tex : \everydisplay
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
etex : \everyeof
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
tex : \everyhbox
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
tex : \everyjob
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
tex : \everymath
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
luametatex : \everymathatom
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
tex : \everypar
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
luametatex : \everyparbegin
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
luametatex : \everyparend
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
luametatex : \everytab
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
tex : \everyvbox
[=] *toks*
: *toks*
tex : \output
[=] *toks*
: *toks*

6.4.52 italiccorrection

tex : \/
luametatex : \explicititaliccorrection
luametatex : \forcedleftcorrection
luametatex : \forcedrightcorrection

6.4.53 kern

tex : \hkern
dimension
tex : \kern
dimension
tex : \vkern
dimension

6.4.54 leader

tex : \cleaders
(*box* | *rule* | glyph) *glue*
luatex : \gleaders
see \cleaders
tex : \leaders
see \cleaders
luametatex : \uleaders
[callback *integer*] [line] [nobreak]
(*box* | *rule* | glyph) *glue*
tex : \xleaders
see \cleaders

6.4.55 legacy

tex : \shipout
{ *tokens* }

6.4.56 let

luametatex : \futuredef
\cs \cs
tex : \futurelet
\cs [=] \cs
luametatex : \glet
\cs
luametatex : \gletcsname
tokens\endcsname
luametatex : \glettonothing
\cs
tex : \let
\cs
luametatex : \letcharcode
\cs
luametatex : \letcsname
tokens\endcsname
luametatex : \letfrozen
\cs
luametatex : \letprotected
\cs
luametatex : \lettolastnamedcs
\cs
luametatex : \lettonothing
\cs
luametatex : \swapcsvalues
\cs \cs
luametatex : \unletfrozen
\cs
luametatex : \unletprotected
\cs

6.4.57 localbox

luatex : \localleftbox
[always] [index *integer*] [keep] [local] [move] [par] [retain] *box*
luametatex : \localmiddlebox
see \localleftbox
luatex : \localrightbox
see \localleftbox
luametatex : \resetlocalboxes

6.4.58 luafunctioncall

luatex : \luabytecodecall
integer
luatex : \luafunctioncall
integer

6.4.59 makebox

tex : \box
(index | *box*)
tex : \copy
see \box
luametatex : \dbox
[target [=] *integer*] [to *dimension*] [adapt *integer*] [attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [anchor *integer*] [anchors *integer integer*] [axis *integer*] [alignsplit] [shift *dimension*] [spread *dimension*] [source [=] *integer*] [direction *integer*] [delay] [discardable] [orientation *integer*] [xoffset *dimension*] [xmove *dimension*] [yoffset *dimension*] [ymove *dimension*] [linesnapping linesnapping\or] [snapping] [limit] [reverse] [retain *integer*] [container] [mathtext] [nokerning] [nosnapping] [noprofiling] [keepspacing] [class *integer*] [swap] [prune] { *tokens* }
luametatex : \dpack
see \dbox
luametatex : \dsplit
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [to *dimension*] [upto *dimension*] { *tokens* }
luametatex : \flushmvl
integer
tex : \hbox
see \dbox
luametatex : \hpack
see \dbox
luametatex : \insertbox
integer
luametatex : \insertcopy
integer
tex : \lastbox
luametatex : \localleftboxbox

luametatex : \localmiddleboxbox
luametatex : \localrightboxbox
luametatex : \prerollmvl
integer
luametatex : \tpack
see \dbox
luametatex : \tsplit
see \dsplit
luametatex : \vbalance
(index | *box*) [exactly] [additional] [trial]
luametatex : \vbalancedbox
see \box
luametatex : \vbalanceddeinsert
(index | *box*) [descend] [force (forceheight | forcedepth)]
luametatex : \vbalanceddiscard
(index | *box*) [descend] [remove]
luametatex : \vbalancedinsert
(index | *box*) [descend] (index *integer* | *integer*)
luametatex : \vbalancedreinsert
(index | *box*) [descend]
luametatex : \vbalancedtop
see \box
tex : \vbox
see \dbox
luatex : \vpack
see \dbox
tex : \vsplit
see \dsplit
tex : \vtop
see \dbox

6.4.60 mark

luatex : \clearmarks
integer
luametatex : \flushmarks
tex : \mark
{ *tokens* }
etex : \marks
integer { *tokens* }

6.4.61 mathaccent

luatex : \Umathaccent
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [callback *integer*] [center] [class *integer*] [exact] [source *integer*] [stretch] [shrink] [fraction *integer*] [keepbase] [nooverflow] [base] [single] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback] (both [fixed] *character* [fixed] *character* | bottom [fixed] *character* | top [fixed] *character* | overlay [fixed] *character* | fixed *character* | *character*)
tex : \mathaccent
integer (mathatom | { *tokens* })

6.4.62 mathcharnumber

luatex : \Umathchar
integer integer integer
tex : \mathchar
integer
luametatex : \mathclass
integer (*integer* | *token*)
luametatex : \mathdictionary
integer integer integer integer integer integer
luametatex : \nomathchar

6.4.63 mathchoice

tex : \mathchoice
{ *tokens* } { *tokens* } { *tokens* } { *tokens* }
luametatex : \mathdiscretionary
[class *integer*] { *tokens* } { *tokens* } { *tokens* }
luametatex : \mathstack
{ *tokens* }

6.4.64 mathcomponent

luametatex : \mathatom
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [all *integer*] [leftclass *integer*] [limits] [rightclass *integer*] [class *integer*] [carryover] [unpack] [unroll] [single] [source *integer*] [text*font*] [math*font*] [options *integer*] [nolimits] [nooverflow]

[void] [phantom] [continuation] [*integer*] (mathatom | { *tokens* })

tex : \mathbin
{ *tokens* }

tex : \mathclose
{ *tokens* }

tex : \mathinner
{ *tokens* }

tex : \mathop
{ *tokens* }

tex : \mathopen
{ *tokens* }

tex : \mathord
{ *tokens* }

tex : \mathpunct
{ *tokens* }

tex : \mathrel
{ *tokens* }

tex : \overline
{ *tokens* }

tex : \underline
{ *tokens* }

6.4.65 mathfence

luametatex : \Uleft
[auto] [attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [axis] [bottom *dimension*] [depth *dimension*] [factor *integer*] [height *dimension*] [noaxis] [nocheck] [nolimits] [nooverflow] [callback *integer*] [leftclass *integer*] [limits] [middle] [exact] [void] [phantom] [class *integer*] [rightclass *integer*] [scale] [single] [source *integer*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [top] [usecallback] [variant *integer*] delimiter

luametatex : \Umiddle
see \Uleft

luametatex : \Uoperator
see \Uleft

luametatex : \Uright
see \Uleft

luatex : \Uvextensible
see \Uleft

tex : \left
see \Uleft

tex : \middle
see \Uleft

tex : \right
see \Uleft

6.4.66 mathfraction

luametatex : \Uabove
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [class *integer*] [callback *integer*] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [*font*] [thickness *dimension*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback] *dimension*

luametatex : \Uabovewithdelims
delimiter delimiter [attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [class *integer*] [callback *integer*] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [*font*] [thickness *dimension*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback] *dimension*

luametatex : \Uatop
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [class *integer*] [callback *integer*] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [*font*] [thickness *dimension*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback]

luametatex : \Uatopwithdelims
delimiter delimiter [attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [class *integer*] [callback *integer*] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [*font*] [thickness *dimension*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback]

luametatex : \Uover
see \Uatop

luametatex : \Uoverwithdelims
see \Uatopwithdelims

luatex : \Uskewed
delimiter [attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [class *integer*] [callback *integer*] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [*font*] [thickness *dimension*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback]
luatex : \Uskewedwithdelims
delimiter delimiter delimiter [attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [class *integer*] [callback *integer*] [exact] [proportional] [noaxis] [nooverflow] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [hfactor *integer*] [vfactor *integer*] [*font*] [thickness *dimension*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback]
luametatex : \Ustretched
see \Uskewed
luametatex : \Ustretchedwithdelims
see \Uskewedwithdelims
tex : \above
dimension
tex : \abovewithdelims
delimiter delimiter *dimension*
tex : \atop
tex : \atopwithdelims
delimiter delimiter
tex : \over
tex : \overwithdelims
delimiter delimiter

6.4.67 mathmodifier

luametatex : \Umathadapttoleft
luametatex : \Umathadapttoright
luametatex : \Umathlimits
luametatex : \Umathnoaxis
luametatex : \Umathnolimits
luametatex : \Umathopenupdepth
dimension
luametatex : \Umathopenupheight
dimension
luametatex : \Umathphantom
luametatex : \Umathsource
[nucleus] *integer*
luametatex : \Umathuseaxis
luametatex : \Umathvoid
tex : \displaylimits
tex : \limits
tex : \nolimits

6.4.68 mathparameter

luametatex : \Umathaccentbasedepth
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \Umathaccentbaseheight
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \Umathaccentbottomovershoot
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*
luametatex : \Umathaccentbottomshiftdown
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \Umathaccentextendmargin
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*
luametatex : \Umathaccentsuperscriptdrop
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*
luametatex : \Umathaccenttopovershoot
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*
luametatex : \Umathaccenttopshiftup
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \Umathaccentvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*
luatex : \Umathaxis
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \Umathbottomaccentvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*
luatex : \Umathconnectoroverlapmin
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \Umathdegreevariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luametatex : \Umathdelimiterextendmargin
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathdelimiterovervariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luametatex : \Umathdelimiterpercent
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*

luametatex : \Umathdelimitershortfall
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathdelimiterundervariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luametatex : \Umathdenominatorvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathexheight
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathextrasubpreshift
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathextrasubprespace
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathextrasubshift
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathextrasubspace
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathextrasuppreshift
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathextrasupprespace
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathextrasupshift
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathextrasupspace
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathflattenedaccentbottomshift-down
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathfractiondelsize
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathfractiondenomdown
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathfractiondenomvgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathfractionnumup
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathfractionnumvgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathfractionrule
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathfractionvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luametatex : \Umathhextensiblevariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathlimitabovebgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathlimitabovekern
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathlimitabovevgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathlimitbelowbgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathlimitbelowkern
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathlimitbelowvgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathnolimitsubfactor
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathnolimitsupfactor
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathnumeratorvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathoperatorsize
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathoverbarkern
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathoverbarrule
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathoverbarvgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathoverdelimiterbgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathoverdelimitervariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathoverdelimitervgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathoverlayaccentvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luametatex : \Umathoverlinevariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luametatex : \Umathprimeraise
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*

luametatex : \Umathprimeraisecomposed
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*

luametatex : \Umathprimeshiftdrop
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathprimeshiftup
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathprimespaceafter
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathprimevariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathquad
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathradicaldegreeafter
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathradicaldegreebefore
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathradicaldegreeraise
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*

luametatex : \Umathradicalextensibleafter
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathradicalextensiblebefore
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathradicalkern
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathradicalrule
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathradicalvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathradicalvgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathruledepth
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathruleheight
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathskeweddelimitertolerance
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathskewedfractionhgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathskewedfractionvgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathspaceafterscript
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathspacebeforescript
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathspacebetweenscript
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathstackdenomdown
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathstacknumup
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathstackvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathstackvgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathsubscriptsnap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathsubscriptvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathsubshiftdown
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathsubshiftdrop
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathsubsupshiftdown
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathsubsupvgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathsubtopmax
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathsupbottommin
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathsuperscriptsnap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathsuperscriptvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathsupshiftdrop
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathsupshiftup
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathsupsubbottommax
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathtopaccentvariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathunderbarkern
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathunderbarrule
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathunderbarvgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luatex : \Umathunderdelimiterbgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathunderdelimitervariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luatex : \Umathunderdelimitervgap
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*

luametatex : \Umathunderlinevariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luametatex : \Umathvextensiblevariant
[=] *mathstyle*
: *mathstyle*

luametatex : \Umathxscale
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*

luametatex : \Umathyscale
mathstyle [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* : *integer*
luametatex : \copymathatomrule
integer [=] *integer*
luametatex : \copymathparent
integer [=] *integer*
luametatex : \copymathspacing
integer [=] *integer*
luametatex : \letmathatomrule
integer [=] *integer* *integer* *integer* *integer*
luametatex : \letmathparent
see \letmathatomrule
luametatex : \letmathspacing
see \letmathatomrule
luametatex : \resetmathspacing
luametatex : \setdefaultmathcodes
luametatex : \setmathatomrule
integer *integer* *mathstyle* [=] *integer*
luametatex : \setmathdisplaypostpenalty
integer [=] *integer*
luametatex : \setmathdisplayprepenalty
integer [=] *integer*
luametatex : \setmathignore
mathparameter [=] *integer*
luametatex : \setmathoptions
integer [=] *integer*
luametatex : \setmathpostpenalty
integer [=] *integer*
luametatex : \setmathprepenalty
integer [=] *integer*
luametatex : \setmathspacing
integer *integer* *mathstyle* [=] *muglue*

6.4.69 mathradical

luametatex : \Udelimited
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [callback *integer*] [bottom] [exact] [top] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [stretch] [shrink] [width *dimension*] [height *dimension*] [depth *dimension*] [left] [middle] [right] [reflected] [size *integer*] [nooverflow] [no*rule*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback] delimiter delimiter [delimiter] [delimiter] (mathatom | { *tokens* })
luatex : \Udelimiterover
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [callback *integer*] [bottom] [exact] [top] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [stretch] [shrink] [width *dimension*] [height *dimension*] [depth *dimension*] [left] [middle] [right] [reflected] [size *integer*] [nooverflow] [no*rule*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback] delimiter [delimiter] [delimiter] (mathatom | { *tokens* })
luatex : \Udelimiterunder
see \Udelimiterover
luatex : \Uhextensible
see \Udelimiterover
luatex : \Uoverdelimiter
see \Udelimiterover
luatex : \Uradical
see \Udelimiterover
luatex : \Uroot
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [callback *integer*] [bottom] [exact] [top] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [stretch] [shrink] [width *dimension*] [height *dimension*] [depth *dimension*] [left] [middle] [right] [reflected] [size *integer*] [nooverflow] [no*rule*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback] delimiter [delimiter] [delimiter] (mathatom | { *tokens* }) (mathatom | { *tokens* })
luametatex : \Urooted
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [callback *integer*] [bottom] [exact] [top] [style *mathstyle*] [source *integer*] [stretch] [shrink] [width *dimension*] [height *dimension*] [depth *dimension*] [left] [middle] [right] [reflected] [size *integer*] [nooverflow] [no*rule*] [symbolattr *integer* [=] *integer*] [usecallback] delimiter delimiter [delimiter] [delimiter] (mathatom | { *tokens* }) (mathatom | { *tokens* })
luatex : \Uunderdelimiter
see \Udelimiterover
tex : \radical
see \Udelimiterover

6.4.70 mathscript

luametatex : \indexedsubprescript
(mathatom | { *tokens* })
luametatex : \indexedsubscript
see \indexedsubprescript
luametatex : \indexedsuperprescript
see \indexedsubprescript
luametatex : \indexedsuperscript
see \indexedsubprescript
luametatex : \noatomruling
tex : \nonscript
luatex : \noscript
luametatex : \nosubprescript
luametatex : \nosubscript
luametatex : \nosuperprescript
luametatex : \nosuperscript
luametatex : \primescript
see \indexedsubprescript
luametatex : \subprescript
see \indexedsubprescript
luatex : \subscript
see \indexedsubprescript
luametatex : \superprescript
see \indexedsubprescript
luatex : \superscript
see \indexedsubprescript

6.4.71 mathshiftcs

luatex : \Ustartdisplaymath
luatex : \Ustartmath
luametatex : \Ustartmathmode
luatex : \Ustopdisplaymath
luatex : \Ustopmath
luametatex : \Ustopmathmode

6.4.72 mathstyle

luametatex : \allcrampedstyles
luametatex : \alldisplaystyles
luametatex : \allmainstyles
luametatex : \allmathstyles
luametatex : \allscriptscriptstyles
luametatex : \allscriptstyles
luametatex : \allsplitstyles
luametatex : \alltextstyles
luametatex : \alluncrampedstyles
luametatex : \allunsplitstyles
luatex : \crampeddisplaystyle
luatex : \crampedscriptscriptstyle
luatex : \crampedscriptstyle
luatex : \crampedtextstyle
luametatex : \currentlysetmathstyle
tex : \displaystyle
luametatex : \givenmathstyle
mathstyle
> *mathstyle* : *integer*
luametatex : \scaledmathstyle
integer
tex : \scriptscriptstyle
tex : \scriptstyle
tex : \textstyle

6.4.73 message

tex : \errmessage
{ *tokens* }
tex : \message
{ *tokens* }

6.4.74 mkern

tex : \mkern
dimension

6.4.75 mskip

luametatex : \mathatomskip
muglue
tex : \mskip
muglue

6.4.76 mvl

luametatex : \beginmvl
[index *integer*] [options *integer*]
[prevdepth *dimension*] [*integer*]
luametatex : \endmvl

6.4.77 noexpand

tex : \noexpand
token

6.4.78 pageproperty

tex : \deadcycles
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \insertcategory
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \insertdepth
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \insertdirection
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \insertdistance
integer [=] *glue*
> *integer* : *glue*
luametatex : \insertheight
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \insertheights
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \insertlimit
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \insertlinedepth
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \insertlineheight
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \insertmaxdepth
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \insertmaxplaced
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \insertmultiplier
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \insertonlycount
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \insertpenalties
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \insertpenalty
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \insertplaced
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \insertshrink
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \insertstorage
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \insertstoring
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \insertstretch
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \insertwidth
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \mvlcurrentlyactive
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
tex : \pagedepth
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pageexcess
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \pagefilllstretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \pagefillstretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \pagefilstretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pagefistretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \pagegoal
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pagelastdepth
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pagelastfilllstretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*

luametatex : \pagelastfillstretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pagelastfilstretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pagelastfistretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pagelastheight
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pagelastshrink
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pagelaststretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \pageshrink
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \pagestretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
tex : \pagetotal
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \pagevsize
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \splitlastdepth
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \splitlastheight
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \splitlastshrink
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \splitlaststretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*

6.4.79 parameter

luatex : \alignmark
luametatex : \parametermark

6.4.80 penalty

luametatex : \hpenalty
integer
tex : \penalty
integer
luametatex : \vpenalty
integer

6.4.81 prefix

luametatex : \aliased
luametatex : \constant
luametatex : \constrained
luametatex : \deferred
luametatex : \enforced
luametatex : \frozen
tex : \global
luatex : \immediate
luametatex : \immutable
luametatex : \inherited
luametatex : \instance
tex : \long
luametatex : \mutable
luametatex : \noaligned
tex : \outer
luametatex : \overloaded
luametatex : \permanent
etex : \protected
luametatex : \retained
luametatex : \semiprotected
luametatex : \tolerant
luatex : \untraced

6.4.82 register

luatex : \attribute
(index | *box*) [=] *integer*
> (index | *box*) : *integer*
tex : \count
see \attribute
tex : \dimen
(index | *box*) [=] *dimension*
> (index | *box*) : *dimension*
luametatex : \float
(index | *box*) [=] *float*
> (index | *box*) : *float*

tex : \muskip
(index | *box*) [=] *muglue*
> (index | *box*) : *muglue*
tex : \skip
(index | *box*) [=] *glue*
> (index | *box*) : *glue*
tex : \toks
(index | *box*) [=] { *tokens* }
> (index | *box*) : { *tokens* }

6.4.83 relax

luametatex : \noarguments
luametatex : \norelax
tex : \relax

6.4.84 removeitem

tex : \unboundary
tex : \unkern
tex : \unpenalty
tex : \unskip

6.4.85 setbox

tex : \setbox
(index | *box*) [=]

6.4.86 setfont

tex : \nullfont
: *tokens*

6.4.87 shorthanddef

luatex : \Umathchardef
\cs [=] *integer integer integer*
luatex : \Umathdictdef
\cs [=] *integer integer integer*
integer integer integer
luatex : \attributedef
\cs [=] *integer*
tex : \chardef
\cs [=] *integer*
tex : \countdef
\cs [=] *integer*
tex : \dimendef
\cs [=] *integer*
luametatex : \dimensiondef
\cs [=] *dimension*
luametatex : \floatdef
\cs [=] *integer*
luametatex : \fontspecdef
\cs [=] (*font* | *integer*) [all *integer*
integer integer integer integer]
[scale *integer*] [xscale *integer*]
[yscale *integer*] [slant *integer*]
[weight *integer*] [oblique *integer*]
luametatex : \gluespecdef
\cs [=] *glue*
luametatex : \integerdef
\cs [=] *integer*
luatex : \luadef
\cs [=] *integer*
tex : \mathchardef
\cs [=] *integer*
luametatex : \mugluespecdef
\cs [=] *muglue*
tex : \muskipdef
\cs [=] *integer*
luametatex : \parameterdef
\cs [=] *integer*
luametatex : \positdef
\cs [=] *float*
tex : \skipdef
\cs [=] *integer*
luametatex : \specificationdef
\cs [=] *tokens*\relax
tex : \toksdef
\cs [=] *integer*

6.4.88 someitem

tex : \badness
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \balanceshapebottomspace
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \balanceshapetopspace
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*

luametatex : \balanceshapevsize
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
luametatex : \currentalignmentcolumn
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \currentalignmentrow
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \currentalignmenttabskip
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
etex : \currentgrouplevel
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
etex : \currentgrouptype
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
etex : \currentifbranch
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
etex : \currentiflevel
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
etex : \currentiftype
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \currentloopiterator
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \currentloopnesting
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \currentstacksize
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \dimexperimental
(*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) [=]
dimension
> (*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) : *dimension*
etex : \dimexpr
see \dimexperimental
luametatex : \dimexpression
see \dimexperimental
luametatex : \floatexpr
(*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) [=] *float*
> (*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) : *float*
luametatex : \fontcharba
(*font* | *integer*) *integer* [=] *dimension*
> (*font* | *integer*) *integer* : *dimension*
etex : \fontchardp
see \fontcharba
etex : \fontcharht
see \fontcharba
etex : \fontcharic
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \fontcharlb
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \fontcharlt
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \fontcharrb
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \fontcharrt
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \fontcharta
see \fontcharba
etex : \fontcharwd
see \fontcharba
luatex : \fontid
(*font* | *integer*) [=] *integer*
> (*font* | *integer*) : *integer*
luametatex : \fontmathcontrol
see \fontid
luametatex : \fontspecid
*font*spec [=] *integer*
> *font*spec : *integer*
luametatex : \fontspecifiedsize
(*font* | *integer*) [=] *dimension*
> (*font* | *integer*) : *dimension*
luametatex : \fontspecscale
*font*spec [=] *integer*
> *font*spec : *integer*
luametatex : \fontspecslant
*font*spec [=] *integer*
> *font*spec : *integer*
luametatex : \fontspecweight
*font*spec [=] *integer*
> *font*spec : *integer*
luametatex : \fontspecxscale
*font*spec [=] *integer*
> *font*spec : *integer*
luametatex : \fontspecyscale
*font*spec [=] *integer*
> *font*spec : *integer*
luametatex : \fonttextcontrol
see \fontid
etex : \glueexpr
(*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) [=] *glue*

> (*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) : *glue*

etex : \glueshrink
glue [=] *dimension*
> *glue* : *dimension*

etex : \glueshrinkorder
glue [=] *integer*
> *glue* : *integer*

etex : \gluestretch
glue [=] *dimension*
> *glue* : *dimension*

etex : \gluestretchorder
glue [=] *integer*
> *glue* : *integer*

etex : \gluetomu
glue [=] *muglue*
> *glue* : *muglue*

luatex : \glyphxscaled
dimension [=] *dimension*
> *dimension* : *dimension*

luatex : \glyphyscaled
dimension [=] *dimension*
> *dimension* : *dimension*

luatex : \indexofcharacter
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*

luatex : \indexofregister
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*

tex : \inputlineno
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \insertprogress
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*

luametatex : \lastalignmentcolumn
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastalignmentrow
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastarguments
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastatomclass
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastboundary
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastchkdimension
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*

luametatex : \lastchknumber
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \lastkern
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*

luametatex : \lastleftclass
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastloopiterator
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastnodesubtype
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

etex : \lastnodetype
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastpageextra
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastparcontext
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastpartrigger
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \lastpenalty
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \lastrightclass
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

tex : \lastskip
[=] *glue*
: *glue*

luatex : \leftmarginkern
[strict] *integer* [=] *dimension*
> [strict] *integer* : *dimension*

luametatex : \luametatexmajorversion
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \luametatexminorversion
[=] *integer*
: *integer*

luametatex : \luametatexrelease
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \luametatexversion
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathatomglue
mathstyle integer integer [=] *muglue*
> *mathstyle integer integer* : *muglue*
luametatex : \mathcharclass
(*integer* | *token*) [=] *integer*
> (*integer* | *token*) : *integer*
luametatex : \mathcharfam
see \mathcharclass
luametatex : \mathcharslot
see \mathcharclass
luametatex : \mathmainstyle
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathparentstyle
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathscale
see \fontid
luametatex : \mathstackstyle
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \mathstyle
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \mathstylefontid
mathstyle family [=] *integer*
> *mathstyle* family : *integer*
etex : \muexpr
(*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) [=] *muglue*
> (*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) : *muglue*
etex : \mutoglue
muglue [=] *glue*
> *muglue* : *glue*
luametatex : \nestedloopiterator
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \numericscale
(*integer* | *float*) [=] *integer*
> (*integer* | *float*) : *integer*
luametatex : \numericscaled
see \numericscale
luametatex : \numexperimental
(*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) [=] *integer*
> (*tokens*\relax | { *tokens* }) : *integer*
etex : \numexpr
see \numexperimental
luametatex : \numexpression
see \numexperimental
luametatex : \overshoot
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \parametercount
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \parameterindex
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
etex : \parshapedimen
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
etex : \parshapeindent
integer [=] *dimension*
> *integer* : *dimension*
etex : \parshapelength
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luametatex : \parshapewidth
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \previousloopiterator
[=] *integer*
: *integer*
luatex : \rightmarginkern
see \leftmarginkern
luametatex : \scaledemwidth
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledexheight
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledextraspace
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledfontcharba
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \scaledfontchardp
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \scaledfontcharht
see \fontcharba

luametatex : \scaledfontcharic
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \scaledfontcharlb
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \scaledfontcharlt
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \scaledfontcharrb
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \scaledfontcharrt
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \scaledfontcharta
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \scaledfontcharwd
see \fontcharba
luametatex : \scaledinterwordshrink
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledinterwordspace
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledinterwordstretch
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledmathaxis
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledmathemwidth
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledmathexheight
mathstyle [=] *dimension*
> *mathstyle* : *dimension*
luametatex : \scaledslantperpoint
[=] *dimension*
: *dimension*
luametatex : \specificationcount
tokens\relax [=] *integer*
> *tokens*\relax : *integer*
luametatex : \specificationfirst
tokens\relax *integer* [=] *quantity*
> *tokens*\relax *integer* : *quantity*
luametatex : \specificationoptions
tokens\relax [=] *integer*
> *tokens*\relax : *integer*
luametatex : \specificationsecond
see \specificationfirst
luametatex : \textspacingfactor
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*
luametatex : \textspacingpenalty
integer [=] *integer*
> *integer* : *integer*

6.4.89 specification

luametatex : \adjacentdemerits
integer n * ((options
integer | double | constant)) n *
(*integer*)
: *integer*
luametatex : \alignsnapping
integer n * ((options
integer | factors | global | constant))
n * ([next] [height
(*integer* | *dimension*)] [depth
(*integer* | *dimension*)] [httolerance
(*integer* | *dimension*)] [dptolerance
(*integer* | *dimension*)] [step *integer*]
[top] [bottom])
: *integer*
luametatex : \balancefinalpenalties
integer n * ((options
integer | constant)) n * (*integer*)
: *integer*
luametatex : \balancepasses
integer [options *integer*] n * ([next]
[quit] [adjdemerits *integer*]
[classes *integer*] [demerits *integer*]
[emergencyfactor *integer*]
[emergencypercentage *integer*]
[emergencystretch *dimension*]
[emergencyshrink *dimension*]
[fitnessclasses <fitnessclasses>]
[identifier *integer*]
[ifemergencystretch]
[ifemergencyshrink] [iflooseness]
[looseness *integer*] [threshold
dimension] [tolerance *integer*]
[pagebreakchecks *integer*]
[pagepenalty *integer*])
: *integer*
luametatex : \balanceshape
integer [options *integer*] n * ([next]
[index *integer*] [identifier *integer*]
[vsize *dimension*] [topskip *glue*]
[bottomskip *glue*] [options *integer*])
: *integer*

luametatex : \brokenpenalties
see \adjacentdemerits
etex : \clubpenalties
integer n * ((options *integer* | double | largest | final | constant)) n * (*integer*)
: *integer*
etex : \displaywidowpenalties
see \clubpenalties
luametatex : \fitnessclasses
see \balancefinalpenalties
etex : \interlinepenalties
integer n * ((options *integer* | final | constant)) n * (*integer*)
: *integer*
luametatex : \linesnapping
see \alignsnapping
luametatex : \mathbackwardpenalties
see \balancefinalpenalties
luametatex : \mathforwardpenalties
see \balancefinalpenalties
luametatex : \mathsnapping
see \alignsnapping
luametatex : \orphanlinefactors
see \balancefinalpenalties
luametatex : \orphanpenalties
see \balancefinalpenalties
luametatex : \parpasses
integer [options *integer*] n * ([next] [quit] [skip] [adjdemerits *integer*] [adjacentdemerits <adjacentdemerits>] [adjustspacing *integer*] [adjustspacingshrink *integer*] [adjustspacingstep *integer*] [adjustspacingstretch *integer*] [callback *integer*] [classes *integer*] [demerits *integer*] [doublehyphendemerits *integer*] [emergencyfactor *integer*] [emergencyleftextra *integer*] [emergencypercentage *integer*] [emergencyrightextra *integer*] [emergencystretch *dimension*] [emergencyunit *integer*] [emergencywidthextra *integer*] [extrahyphenpenalty *integer*] [finalhyphendemerits *integer*] [fitnessclasses <fitnessclasses>] [hyphenation *integer*] [identifier *integer*] [ifadjustspacing] [ifemergencystretch] [iffactor] [if*glue*] [iflooseness] [ifmath] [iftext] [lefttwindemerits *integer*] [linebreakchecks *integer*] [linebreakoptional *integer*] [linepenalty *integer*] [looseness *integer*] [mathpenaltyfactor *integer*] [orphanpenalties] [toddlerpenalties <toddlerpenalties>] [righttwindemerits *integer*] [raggedness *integer*] [sffactor *integer*] [sfstretchfactor *integer*] [threshold *dimension*] [tolerance *integer*] [unlessmath])
: *integer*
luametatex : \parpassesexception
see \type{\parpasses}
: *integer*
tex : \parshape
integer n * ((options *integer* | repeat)) n * (*dimension* *dimension*)
: *integer*
luametatex : \textspacing
integer n * ((options *integer* | constant)) n * (*integer* *integer*)
: *integer*
luametatex : \toddlerpenalties
see \balancefinalpenalties
etex : \widowpenalties
see \clubpenalties

6.4.90 the

etex : \detokenize
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \expandeddetokenize
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \notexpanded
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \protecteddetokenize
{ *tokens* }
luametatex : \protectedexpandeddetokenize
{ *tokens* }
tex : \the
dimension

luametatex : \thewithoutunit
quantity
etex : \unexpanded
{*tokens*}

6.4.91 unhbox

tex : \unhbox
integer
tex : \unhcopy
integer
luametatex : \unhpack
integer

6.4.92 unvbox

luametatex : \copysplitdiscards
luametatex : \insertunbox
integer
luametatex : \insertuncopy
integer
etex : \pagediscards
etex : \splitdiscards
tex : \unvbox
integer
tex : \unvcopy
integer
luametatex : \unvpack
integer

6.4.93 vadjust

tex : \vadjust
[pre] [post] [baseline] [before] [index *integer*] [after] [attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [depth (after *dimension* | before *dimension* | check | last)] [except *dimension*] {*tokens*}

6.4.94 valign

tex : \valign
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [callback *integer*] [callbacks *integer*] [combine] [discard] [*glue*mode *integer*] [mindepth *dimension*] [minheight *dimension*] [noskips] [nolastskip] [nofirstskip] [prune] [reverse] [split] [to *dimension*] [spread *dimension*] {*tokens*}

6.4.95 vcenter

tex : \vcenter
[target [=] *integer*] [to *dimension*] [adapt *integer*] [attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [anchor *integer*] [anchors *integer integer*] [axis *integer*] [alignsplit] [shift *dimension*] [spread *dimension*] [source [=] *integer*] [direction *integer*] [delay] [discardable] [orientation *integer*] [xoffset *dimension*] [xmove *dimension*] [yoffset *dimension*] [ymove *dimension*] [linesnapping linesnapping\or] [snapping] [limit] [reverse] [retain *integer*] [container] [mathtext] [nokerning] [nosnapping] [noprofiling] [keepspacing] [class *integer*] [swap] [prune] {*tokens*}

6.4.96 vmove

tex : \lower
dimension box
tex : \raise
dimension box

6.4.97 vrule

luatex : \novrule
[attr *integer* [=] *integer*] [width *dimension*] [height *dimension*] [depth *dimension*] [pair *dimension dimension*] [xoffset *dimension*] [yoffset *dimension*] [linesnapping linesnapping\or] [snapping] [nosnapping] [running] [discardable] [keepspacing] [resetspacing] [*font* (*font* | *integer*)] [fam *integer*] [char

integer] [left *dimension*] [right *dimension*] [top *dimension*] [bottom *dimension*] [on *dimension*] [off *dimension*]

luametatex : \srule
see \novrule

luametatex : \virtualvrule
see \novrule

tex : \vrule
see \novrule

6.4.98 vskip

tex : \vfil

tex : \vfill

tex : \vfilneg

tex : \vskip
dimension [plus (*dimension* | fi [n*l])] [minus (*dimension* | fi [n*l])] [limit] [space] [penalty *integer*]

tex : \vss

6.4.99 xray

tex : \show
token

tex : \showbox
(index | *box*)

luametatex : \showcodestack

etex : \showgroups

etex : \showifs

tex : \showlists

luametatex : \showstack

tex : \showthe
quantity

etex : \showtokens
{ *tokens* }


callbacks

7 Callbacks

Contents

7.1 Introduction **343**

7.2 Files **346**

7.2.1 find_log_file 346
7.2.2 find_format_file 346
7.2.3 open_data_file 346
7.2.4 start_file 347
7.2.5 stop_file 347

7.3 Running **347**

7.3.1 process_jobname 347
7.3.2 pre_dump 348
7.3.3 start_run 348
7.3.4 stop_run 348
7.3.5 intercept_tex_error 348
7.3.6 intercept_lua_error 349
7.3.7 show_error_message 349
7.3.8 show_warning_message 349
7.3.9 wrapup_run 349
7.3.10 handle_overload 349

7.4 Fonts **352**

7.4.1 define_font 352
7.4.2 quality_font 353

7.5 Typesetting **353**

7.5.1 pre_output 353
7.5.2 buildpage 353
7.5.3 hpack 354
7.5.4 vpack 354
7.5.5 hyphenate 355
7.5.6 ligaturing 355
7.5.7 kerning 355
7.5.8 glyph_run 356
7.5.9 pre_linebreak 356
7.5.10 linebreak 357
7.5.11 post_linebreak 357
7.5.12 append_to_vlist 357
7.5.13 alignment 358
7.5.14 local_box 358
7.5.15 packed_vbox 359
7.5.16 handle_uleader 359
7.5.17 italic_correction 359
7.5.18 insert_par 360
7.5.19 append_line 360
7.5.20 insert_distance 360
7.5.21 begin_paragraph 360
7.5.22 paragraph_context 361
7.5.23 missing_character 361
7.5.24 process_character 361
7.5.25 tail_append 362
7.5.26 append_adjust 362
7.5.27 append_migrate 362
7.5.28 handle_uinsert 362
7.5.29 insert_check_split 363
7.5.30 page_boundary 363
7.5.31 insert_boundary 363

7.6 Tracing **364**

7.6.1 hpack_quality 364
7.6.2 vpack_quality 364
7.6.3 line_break 364
7.6.4 show_build 367
7.6.5 show_whatsit 368
7.6.6 linebreak_quality 369
7.6.7 show_loners 369
7.6.8 get_attribute 369
7.6.9 get_noad_class 370
7.6.10 get_math_dictionary 370
7.6.11 show_lua_call 370
7.6.12 trace_memory 370

7.6.13 paragraph_pass 370
7.6.14 show_vsplit 371
7.6.15 linebreak_check 371
7.6.16 balance_check 372

7.7 Math 372

7.7.1 mlist_to_hlist 372
7.7.2 math_rule 372
7.7.3 make_extensible 373
7.7.4 register_extensible 373
7.7.5 balance 373
7.7.6 balance_insert 374
7.7.7 balance_boundary 374

7.1 Introduction

Right from the start of the LuaTEX project callbacks were the way to extend the engine. At various places in processing the document source and typesetting the text the engine checks if there is a callback set and if so, calls out to Lua. Here we collect the various callbacks. For examples you can consult the ConTEXt code base.

The `callback` library has functions that register, find and list callbacks. Callbacks are Lua functions that are called in well defined places. There are two kinds of callbacks: those that mix with existing functionality, and those that (when enabled) replace functionality. In most cases the second category is expected to behave similar to the built in functionality because in a next step specific data is expected. For instance, you can replace the hyphenation routine. The function gets a list that can be hyphenated (or not). The final list should be valid and is (normally) used for constructing a paragraph. Another function can replace the ligature builder and/or kern routine. Doing something else is possible but in the end might not give the user the expected outcome.

In order for a callback to kick in you need register it. This can be permanent or temporarily. One can use names as well as id's:

```
function callback.register (
    <t:string>   name,
    <t:function> action | <t:false> | <t:nil>
)
    return <t:integer> -- id
end

function callback.register (
    <t:integer>  id,
    <t:function> action | <t:false> | <t:nil>
)
    return <t:integer> -- id
end
```

Here the `name` is a predefined callback name as discussed in following sections. The function returns the internal `id` of the callback when registration succeeds or `nil` if the callback could not be registered. Callback assignments are always global. You can use the `nil` or `false` instead of a function for clearing the callback. LuaMetaTEX internalizes the callback function in such a way that it does not matter if you redefine a function accidentally.

There are two ways to figure out what callbacks are available. The first one returns a hash with the names as key and the boolean value indicating of the callback is known.

```
function callback.list ( )
    return <t:hash> -- active
end
```

The list of available callbacks is: `test_only`, `find_log_file`, `find_format_file`, `open_data_file`, `process_jobname`, `start_run`, `stop_run`, `define_font`, `quality_font`, `pre_output`, `buildpage`, `hpack`, `vpack`, `hyphenate`, `ligaturing`, `kerning`, `glyph_run`, `pre_linebreak`, `linebreak`, `post_linebreak`, `append_to_vlist`, `alignment`, `local_box`, `packed_vbox`, `mlist_to_hlist`, `pre_dump`, `start_file`, `stop_file`, `intercept_tex_error`, `intercept_lua_error`, `show_error_message`, `show_warning_message`, `hpack_quality`, `vpack_quality`, `linebreak_check`, `balance_check`, `show_vsplit`, `show_build`, `insert_par`, `append_adjust`, `append_migrate`, `append_line`, `insert_distance`, `insert_boundary`, `insert_check_split`, `wrapup_run`, `begin_paragraph`, `paragraph_context`, `math_rule`, `make_extensible`, `register_extensible`, `show_whatsit`, `get_attribute`, `get_noad_class`, `get_math_dictionary`, `show_lua_call`, `trace_memory`, `handle_overload`, `missing_character`, `process_character`, `linebreak_quality`, `paragraph_pass`, `handle_uleader`, `handle_uinsert`, `italic_correction`, `show_loners`, `tail_append`, `balance_boundary`, `balance_insert` and `page_boundary`.

```
function callback.names ( )
    return <t:table> -- available
end
```

This list is in order of id but that order might change which us why using names might be better. A quick way to get the id is:

```
function callback.getindex ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer> -- id
end
```

If the callback is not set, `find` returns `nil`. The `known` function can be used to check if a callback is supported. That function can actually be used but changing it will of course not affect the callback that uses it.

```
function callback.find (name) return
    <t:function> | <t:nil>
end

if callback.known("foo") then
    -- do what is needed
end
```

If you use ConTEXt you should use the interfaces that it provides. Some of the built-in `callback` functions are overloaded anyway.

You can use the `callback.getoptionvalues` and `callback.getstatevalues` functions to get tables of some of the possible properties. The options are just for diagnostics: Currently we have only a few:

value	bit	meaning
direct	`0x01`	operates on a direct node
trace	`0x02`	us used for tracing

A callback has a state bitset where the following bits can be set. This feature is very much related to the way ConTEXt wants to protect itself against users messing up the many callbacks it needs to function properly.

value	bit	meaning
set	0x01	can be used
disabled	0x02	temporarily disabled
frozen	0x04	can never be set or changed again
private	0x08	don't return the function
touched	0x10	set (or unset) by the user
tracing	0x20	only called when tracing
selective	0x40	only called when there is a need
fundamental	0x80	need to be set and kick in on demand

Both have a setter and getter. In the case op states, some set stated can inhibit changes.

```
function callback.setstate (
    <t:string> name | <t:integer> id,
    <t:integer> state
)
    -- no return value
end

function callback.getstate (
    <t:string> name | <t:integer> id
)
    return <t:integer> -- state
end

function callback.setoptions (
    <t:string> name | <t:integer> id,
    <t:integer> option
)
    -- no return value
end

function callback.getoptions (
    <t:string> name | <t:integer> id
)
    return <t:integer> -- options
end
```

You can emulate a callback with:

```
function callback.testonly ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

but you need to register the `test_only` callback for that to work. The set function gets the state as first argument. When the function crashes, the `callback.testonly` call will return `false`, otherwise you get back `true`.

7.2 Files

7.2.1 find_log_file

This is one of the callbacks that has to be set in order for the engine to work at all. If it's not set, the run will abort with a message.

```
function (
    <t:string> askedname
)
    return <t:string> foundname
end
```

7.2.2 find_format_file

A format file is an efficient memory dump of the (in our case ConTEXt) macro package. In LuaTEX it can have a mix of TEXand Lua code but one should be aware that storing the Lua state is not up to the engine.

```
function (<t:string> askedname)
    return <t:string> foundname
end
```

A format file can be read from any valid location but is always written in the current directory. When written the number of bytes for each section is reported. When read all kind of checks take place in order to intercept corruption or incompatibilities. Contrary to LuaTEX, the LuaMetaTEX is not (zip) compressed so, in spite of more aggressive compression of data otherwise the file is a bit larger.[16]

7.2.3 open_data_file

This callback function gets a filename passed. The return value is either the boolean value false or a table with two functions. A mandate `reader` function fill be called once for each new line to be read, the optional `close` function will be called once LuaTEX is done with the file.

```
function (
    <t:string> filename
)
    return <table> {
        <function> reader(<table> environment) end,
        <function> close (<table> environment) end,
    }
end
```

LuaMetaTEX never looks at the rest of the table, so we can use it to store additional per-file data. Both the callback functions will receive the table as their only argument.

[16] This is not that true for ConTEXt because it is more efficient than MkIV so the uncompressed MkIV format file is much larger than MkXL, although the later grows as we preload more functionality.

7.2.4 start_file

This callback replaces the code that LuaMetaTEX prints when a file is opened like `(filename` for regular files. The category is a number:

```
function (
    <t:integer> category,
    <t:string>  filename
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The following categories can occur:

value	meaning
1	a normal data file, like a TEX source
2	a font map coupling font names to resources
3	an image file (`png`, `pdf`, etc)
4	an embedded font subset
5	a fully embedded font

7.2.5 stop_file

This callback replaces the code that LuaMetaTEX prints when a file is closed like the `)` for regular files.

```
function (
    <t:integer> category
)
    -- no return values
end
```

7.3 Running

7.3.1 process_jobname

This callback allows you to change the jobname given by **`\jobname`** in TEX and `tex.jobname` in Lua. It does not affect the internal job name or the name of the output or log files.

```
function (
    <t:string> jobname
)
    return <t:string> adjusted_jobname
end
```

The only argument is the actual job name; you should not use `tex.jobname` inside this function or infinite recursion may occur. If you return `nil`, LuaMetaTEX will pretend your callback never happened. This callback does not replace any internal code.

7.3.2 pre_dump

This function is called just before dumping to a format file starts. It does not replace any code and there are neither arguments nor return values. It can be used to do some cleanup and other housekeeping.

```
function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

7.3.3 start_run

```
function(
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

This callback replaces the code that prints LuaTEX's banner. Note that for successful use, this callback has to be set in the Lua initialization script, otherwise it will be seen only after the run has already started.

7.3.4 stop_run

```
function(
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

This callback replaces the code that prints LuaTEX's statistics and 'output written to' messages. The engine can still do housekeeping and therefore you should not rely on this hook for post-processing the pdf or log file.

7.3.5 intercept_tex_error

This callback is run from inside the TEX error function, and the idea is to allow you to do some extra reporting on top of what TEX already does, for instance recovering. You may find some of the values in the `status` table useful. The TEX related callback gets two arguments: the current processing mode and a boolean indicating if there was a runaway argument.

```
function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

When TEX was written, when computers were slower, running a batch hob could involve a terminal, and startup-time mattered, it made sense to enter an edit mode and try to fix the error, for instance

by inserting in or deleting from the input. In LuaMetaTEX we don't have these features. A quit, fix, restart cycle makes more sense that is what we do in ConTEXt.

7.3.6 intercept_lua_error

This callback is similar to the one discussed in the previous section but for Lua. Of course we should end up in a recoverable state for this to work well so in practice you could as well just quit the run.

```
function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

7.3.7 show_error_message

This callback replaces the code that prints the error message. As mentioned before it probably makes sense to quit the run after reporting.

```
function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

7.3.8 show_warning_message

This callback replaces the code that prints a (non fatal) warning message. Contrary to an error one will likely continue the run.

```
function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

7.3.9 wrapup_run

This callback is called after the pdf and log files are closed. Use it at your own risk because after all you need to make sure that the user is not surprised by for instance bad result.

```
function (
    -- no arguments
)
    -- no return values
end
```

7.3.10 handle_overload

One characteristic of TEX is that you have quite some control over what a control sequence triggers. For instance, `\hbox` normally starts a horizontal box but a user can redefine this primitive as macro

to do whatever is required. This means that when other macros use this primitive their behavior will change. One way out of this is using aliases, for instance:

```
\normalsetbox0\normalhbox{test}
\normalifdim\normalwd0>10pt \normalbox0 \normalfi
```

But even these normal aliases can be redefined. Of course you can use special characters like _ in names but once you start doing this:

```
\p_setbox0\p_hbox{test}
\p_ifdim\p_wd0>10pt \p_box0 \p_fi
```

you should wonder if you still offer the user TEX as a programming language. It's not the route that ConTEXt takes.

In LuaMetaTEX every macro (including primitives) can be flagged and that happens with so called prefixes. Traditional TEX offers:

```
\global\def\foo{...}
\long  \def\foo{...} % no-op
\outer \def\foo{...} % no-op
```

The **\long** and **\outer** made sense at that time but are no-ops in LuaMetaTEX: every macro can take **\par** equivalents as arguments and can be defined at every level. The e-TEX extensions introduced this prefix:

```
\protected\def\foo{...}
```

which prevents expansion unless the value is really expected (needed). The LuaMetaTEX engine added:

```
\semiprotected\def\foo{...}
```

but when eventually I see no reason to use it in ConTEXt it might be dropped. A special prefix is:

```
\constant\def\foo{...}
```

This effectively is equivalent to **\edef** but signals that in some scenarios (like an **\csname** equivalent situation) no expansion and checking has to happen which improves performance.

These two prefixes are just signals to Lua driven functionality:

```
\deferred  \foo
\immediate \foo
```

The prefixes do nothing except when \foo are Lua calls that can use this information to adapt behavior. Because we have no backend the macro package has to come up with equivalents for e.g. **\write** than can be immediate or deferred (default) operations.

Another prefix relates to alignments:

```
\noaligned\protected\def\foo{...}
```

Which makes a macro accepted between alignment rows where otherwise protected macros will trigger an error due to look ahead.

A definition with **\def** or **\gdef** can take arguments and these can be made optional with:

```
\def\tolerant[#1]{...}
```

but there are more features related to tolerant:

```
\def\tolerant[#1]#*[#2]{...}
```

that are discusses in low level manuals. Users can define macros that are reported (in tracing) as if they were primitives:

```
\untraced\protected\def\foo{...}
```

The prefixes **\constrained** and **\retained** relate to register values being saved and restored in groups. The **\inherited** is used in for instance math spacing assignments where we need dynamic binding to for instance **\muskip** registers (instead of values).

Although not related to the callback discussed here we mentioned these prefixes because they belong to the `prefixed_cmd` operator/operand pair. So to come back to users being able to use primitives instead of funny unreadable aliases. It's good to keep in mind that one can combine prefixes like the following:

```
\frozen    \foo{...}
\immutable \foo{...}
\instance  \foo{...}
\mutable   \foo{...}
\overloaded\foo{...}
\permanent \foo{...}
```

so this is valid too:

```
\global\permanent\untraced\tolerant\protected\def\foo[#1]#*[#2]{...}
```

So what do these prefixes do? It depends on the value of an internal integer **\overloadmode** where the following values have meaning:

		immutable	permanent	primitive	frozen	instance
1	warning	*	*	*		
2	error	*	*	*		
3	warning	*	*	*	*	
4	error	*	*	*	*	
5	warning	*	*	*	*	*
6	error	*	*	*	*	*

The **\enforced** prefix can be used to bypass this mechanism:

```
\permanent\protected\def\foo{...}

\protected\def\oof{\enforced\def\foo{...}}
```

But only in so called quote ini mode, that is when the format file is created. In order to save work we also have:

```
\aliased\let\foo\relax
```

This makes `\foo` a copy (or more precise, a reference) including all flags, so in this case it will be flagged a a primitive which is `\permanent` too. You cannot define primitives yourself but when reported in a trace you see it being a primitive indeed.

Of course this all means that one has to define basically all relevant macros with a combination of prefixes and that happens to be the case in ConTEXt, which in the end makes this callback a rather ConTEXt specific one.

```
function (
    <t:boolean> error,
    <t:integer> overload,
    <t:string>  csname,
    <t:integer> flags
)
    -- no return values
end
```

7.4 Fonts

7.4.1 define_font

The engine has no font loader but it does need some information about the glyphs that are uses like width, height and depth, possibly italic correction, kerns, and ligatures. And for math some more information is needed. Keep in mind that for instance italic correction is something specific for TEX and that kerns and ligatures only are needed when you leave them to the engine. For modern OpenType fonts we let Lua deal with this.

```
function (
    <t:string>  name,
    <t:integer> size
)
    return <t:integer> id
end
```

The string `name` is the filename part of the font specification, as given by the user, for instance when `\font` is used for defining an instance. The number `size` is a bit special:

- If it is positive, it specifies an 'at size' in scaled points.
- If it is negative, its absolute value represents a 'scaled' setting relative to the design size of the font.

The font can be defined with `font.define` which returns a font identifier that can be returned in the callback. Contrary to LuaTEX, in LuaMetaTEX we only accept a number.

The internal structure of the `font` table that is passed to `font.define` is explained elsewhere but there can be much more in that table. Likely the macro package will keep the passes table around for other usage, for instance for usage in the backend.

Setting this callback to `false` is pointless because it will prevent font loading completely because without fonts there is little to do for the engine.

7.4.2 quality_font

When you use font expansion you will normally pass the glyph specific expansion and compression values along with the dimensions. However, this can be delayed. When we use par passes (or otherwise set one of the adjust parameters) and a font has not yet bee setup for expansion this callback will kick in but only once per font.

```
function (
    <t:integer> id
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The function can set additional parameters in the font and pass them to TEX using helpers from the font library.

7.5 Typesetting

7.5.1 pre_output

This callback is called when TEX is ready to start boxing the box 255 for `\output`. The callback does not replace any internal code.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  groupcode,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:string>  packtype,
    <t:integer> maxdepth,
    <t:integer> direction
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

7.5.2 buildpage

This callback is called whenever LuaMetaTEX is ready to move stuff to the main vertical list. You can use this callback to do specialized manipulation of the page building stage like imposition or column balancing.

```
function (
    <t:string> extrainfo
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The string `extrainfo` gives some additional information about what TEX's state is with respect to the 'current page'. The possible values for this callback are:

value	explanation

alignment	a (partial) alignment is being added
after_output	an output routine has just finished
new_graf	the beginning of a new paragraph
vmode_par	**\par** was found in vertical mode
hmode_par	**\par** was found in horizontal mode
insert	an insert is added
penalty	a penalty (in vertical mode)
before_display	immediately before a display starts
after_display	a display is finished
end	LuaMetaTEX is terminating (it's all over)

7.5.3 hpack

This callback is called when TEX is ready to start boxing some horizontal mode material. Math items and line boxes are ignored at the moment. The callback does not replace any internal code.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  groupcode,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:string>  packtype
    <t:integer> direction,
    <t:node>    attributelist
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

The packtype is either additional or exactly. If additional, then the size is a **\hbox** spread ... argument. If exactly, then the size is a **\hbox** to .... In both cases, the number is in scaled points.

7.5.4 vpack

This callback is called when TEX is ready to start boxing some vertical mode material. Math displays are ignored at the moment. The callback does not replace any internal code.

This function is very similar to hpack. Besides the fact that it is called at different moments, there is an extra variable that matches TEX's **\maxdepth** setting.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  groupcode,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:string>  packtype,
    <t:integer> maxdepth,
    <t:integer> direction,
    <t:node>    attributelist
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

7.5.5 hyphenate

This callback is supposed to insert discretionary nodes in the node list it receives.

```
function (
    <t:node> head,
    <t:node> tail
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Setting this callback to `false` will prevent the internal discretionary insertion pass.

7.5.6 ligaturing

This callback, which expects no return values, has to apply ligaturing to the node list it receives.

```
function (
    <t:node> head,
    <t:node> tail
)
    -- no return values
end
```

You don't have to worry about return values because the `head` node that is passed on to the callback is guaranteed not to be a glyph_node (if need be, a temporary node will be prepended), and therefore it cannot be affected by the mutations that take place. After the callback, the internal value of the 'tail of the list' will be recalculated.

The `next` of `head` is guaranteed to be non-nil. The `next` of `tail` is guaranteed to be nil, and therefore the second callback argument can often be ignored. It is provided for orthogonality, and because it can sometimes be handy when special processing has to take place.

Setting this callback to `false` will prevent the internal ligature creation pass. You must not ruin the node list. For instance, the head normally is a local par node, and the tail a glue. Messing too much can push LuaTEX into panic mode.

7.5.7 kerning

This callback has to apply kerning between the nodes in the node list it receives. See `ligaturing` for calling conventions.

```
function (
    <t:node> head,
    <t:node> tail
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Setting this callback to `false` will prevent the internal kern insertion pass. You must not ruin the node list. For instance, the head normally is a local par node, and the tail a glue. Messing too much can push LuaTEX into panic mode.

7.5.8 glyph_run

When set this callback is triggered when TEX normally handles the ligaturing and kerning. In LuaTEX you use the hpack and pre_linebreak callbacks for that (where each passes different arguments). This callback doesn't get triggered when there are no glyphs (in LuaTEX this optimization is controlled by a a variable).

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  groupcode,
    <t:integer> direction
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

The traditional TEX font processing is bypassed so you need to take care of that with the helpers. (For the moment we keep the ligaturing and kerning callbacks but they are kind of obsolete.)

7.5.9 pre_linebreak

This callback is called just before LuaTEX starts converting a list of nodes into a stack of **\hbox**es, after the addition of **\parfillskip**. The callback does not replace any internal code.

```
function (
    <t:node>   head,
    <t:string> groupcode
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

The string called groupcode identifies the nodelist's context within TEX's processing. The range of possibilities is given in the table below, but not all of those can actually appear here, some are for the hpack and vpack callbacks.

value	explanation
<empty>	main vertical list
hbox	**\hbox** in horizontal mode
adjusted_hbox	**\hbox** in vertical mode
vbox	**\vbox**
vtop	**\vtop**
align	**\halign** or **\valign**
disc	discretionaries
insert	packaging an insert
vcenter	**\vcenter**
local_box	**\localleftbox** or **\localrightbox**
split_off	top of a **\vsplit**
split_keep	remainder of a **\vsplit**
align_set	alignment cell
fin_row	alignment row

As for all the callbacks that deal with nodes, the return value can be one of three things:

- boolean `true` signals successful processing
- `<t:node>` signals that the 'head' node should be replaced by the returned node
- boolean `false` signals that the 'head' node list should be ignored and flushed from memory

7.5.10 linebreak

This callback replaces LuaTEX's line breaking algorithm. The callback does not replace any internal code.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:boolean> is_display
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

The returned node is the head of the list that will be added to the main vertical list, the boolean argument is true if this paragraph is interrupted by a following math display.

If you return something that is not a `<t:node>`, LuaTEX will apply the internal linebreak algorithm on the list that starts at `<head>`. Otherwise, the `<t:node>` you return is supposed to be the head of a list of nodes that are all allowed in vertical mode, and at least one of those has to represent an `\hbox`. Failure to do so will result in a fatal error.

Setting this callback to `false` is possible, but dangerous, because it is possible you will end up in an unfixable 'deadcycles loop'.

7.5.11 post_linebreak

This callback is called just after LuaTEX has converted a list of nodes into a stack of `\hbox`es.

```
function (
    <t:node>   head,
    <t:string> groupcode
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

7.5.12 append_to_vlist

This callback is called whenever LuaTEX adds a box to a vertical list (the `mirrored` argument is obsolete):

```
function (
    <t:node>    box,
    <t:string>  locationcode,
    <t:integer> prevdepth
)
```

```
    return <t:node> list [, <t:integer> prevdepth [, <t:boolean> checkdepth ] ]
end
```

It is ok to return nothing or `nil` in which case you also need to flush the box or deal with it yourself. The prevdepth is also optional. Locations are `box`, `alignment`, `equation`, `equation_number` and `post_linebreak`. When the third argument returned is `true` the normal prevdepth correction will be applied, based on the first node.

7.5.13 alignment

This is an experimental callback that when set is called several times during the construction of an alignment. The context values are available in `tex.getalignmentcontextvalues()`.

```
function (
    <t:node>   head,
    <t:string> context,
    <t:node>   attributes,
    <t:node>   preamble
)
    -- no return values
end
```

There are no sanity checks so if a user messes up the passed node lists the results can be unpredictable and, as with other node related callbacks, crash the engine.

7.5.14 local_box

Local boxes are a somewhat tricky and error prone feature so use this callback with care because the paragraph is easily messed up. A line can have a left, right and middle box where the middle one has no width. This callback does not replace any internal code. The callback gets quite some parameters passed:

```
function (
    <t:node>    linebox,
    <t:node>    leftbox,
    <t:node>    rightbox,
    <t:node>    middlebox,
    <t:integer> linenumber,
    <t:integer> leftskip,
    <t:integer> rightskip,
    <t:integer> lefthang,
    <t:integer> righthang,
    <t:integer> indentation,
    <t:integer> parinitleftskip,
    <t:integer> parinitrightskip,
    <t:integer> parfillleftskip,
    <t:integer> parfillrightskip,
    <t:integer> overshoot
)
    -- no return values
```

```
end
```

This is an experimental callback that will be tested in different ConTEXt mechanisms before it will be declared stable.

7.5.15 packed_vbox

After the `vpack` callback (see previous section) is triggered the box get packed and after that this callback can be configured to kick in.

```
function (
    <t:node>   head,
    <t:string> groupcode
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

7.5.16 handle_uleader

The **\uleaders** command inserts a user leader into the list. When a list get packed and has such leaders, a run over the list happens after packing so that it can be finalized.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  context,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:node>    box,
    <t:integer> location
)
    return <t:node> head
end
```

7.5.17 italic_correction

The concept of italic correction is very much related to traditional TEX fonts. At least in 2024 it is absent from OpenType although it has some meaning in OpenType math. In TEX this correction is normally inserted by \/ although in LuaMetaTEX we also have **\explicititaliccorrection** as well as **\forcedleftcorrection** and **\forcedrightcorrection**.

When this callback is enabled it gets triggered when one of left or right correction commands is given and the returned kern is then used as correction.

```
function (
    <t:node>    glyph,
    <t:integer> kern,
    <t:integer> subtype,
)
    return <t:integer> kern
end
```

7.5.18 insert_par

Each paragraph starts with a local par node that keeps track of for instance the direction. You can hook a callback into the creator:

```
function (
    <t:node>   par,
    <t:string> location
)
    -- no return values
end
```

There is no return value and you should make sure that the node stays valid as otherwise TEX can get confused.

7.5.19 append_line

Every time a line is added this callback is triggered, when set. migrated material and adjusts also qualify as such and the detail relates to the adjust index.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:node>    tail,
    <t:string>  context,
    <t:integer> detail
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

A list of possible context values can be queried with `tex.getappendlinecontextvalues()`.

7.5.20 insert_distance

This callback is called when the page builder adds an insert. There is not much control over this mechanism but this callback permits some last minute manipulations of the spacing before an insert, something that might be handy when for instance multiple inserts (types) are appended in a row.

```
function (
    <t:integer> class,
    <t:integer> order
)
    return <t:integer> register
end
```

The return value is a number indicating the skip register to use for the prepended spacing. This permits for instance a different top space (when `class` equals one) and intermediate space (when `class` is larger than one). Of course you can mess with the insert box but you need to make sure that LuaTEX is happy afterwards.

7.5.21 begin_paragraph

Every time a paragraph starts this callback, when configured, will kick in:

```
function (
    <t:boolean> invmode,
    <t:boolean> indented,
    <t:string>  context
)
    return <t:boolean> indented
end
```

There are many places where a new paragraph can be triggered:

0x00	normal	0x04	dbox	0x08	output	0x0C	math
0x01	vmode	0x05	vcenter	0x09	align	0x0D	lua
0x02	vbox	0x06	vadjust	0x0A	noalign	0x0E	reset
0x03	vtop	0x07	insert	0x0B	span		

7.5.22 paragraph_context

When the return value of this callback is `false` the paragraph related settings, when they have been updated, will not be updated.

```
function (
    <t:string> context
)
    return <t:boolean> ignore
end
```

7.5.23 missing_character

This callback is triggered when a character node is created and the font doesn't have the requested character.

```
function (
    <t:integer> location,
    <t:node>    glyph,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> character
)
    -- no return value
end
```

When `\tracinglostchars` is set to a positive value a message goes to the log and a value larger than one also makes it show up non the terminal. In the callback, the location is one of:

0x01	textglyph	0x02	mathglyph	0x03	mathkernel

7.5.24 process_character

This callback is experimental and gets called when a glyph node is created and the callback field in a character is set.

```
function (
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> character
)
    -- no return value
end
```

7.5.25 tail_append

7.5.26 append_adjust

This callback can be used to inject something based on an adjust node. The return value is a node (or head of a list) that gets injected. The whereabouts are `preadjust` and `postadjust`.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:node>    tail,
    <t:integer> where,
    <t:integer> index
)
    return <t:node> -- head
end
```

7.5.27 append_migrate

This callback can be used to inject something based on an migrated node (mark or insert). The return value is a node (or head of a list) that gets injected. The whereabouts are `premigrated` and `postmigrated`.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:node>    tail,
    <t:integer> where
)
    return <t:node> -- head
end
```

7.5.28 handle_uinsert

Balancing is something specific to LuaMetaTEX (and thereby ConTEXt) and so are these user inserts. The `\insert` command has two optional parameters: `callback` and `index`. When the first is set, a callback is triggered when the inserts gets packaged. This permits some additional processing (for instance, in our case, of top and bottom floats).

```
function (
    <t:integer> callback,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> order,
```

```
    <t:node>    packed,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:integer> amount
)
    return <t:node> -- packed
end
```

7.5.29 insert_check_split

In ConTEXt we use this callback for tracing. The callback gets the lines of an insert before and after a split. You can manipulate the line but be aware of side effect because the caller is not ware of what you do.

```
function (
    <t:integer> where,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:node>    box
)
    -- no return value
end
```

7.5.30 page_boundary

A \pageboundary takes two arguments. In its simplest form we have a zero and a penalty. It is a way to trigger the page builder without side effects. When the first value is larger than zero, a callback is triggered that gets the two values and expects a result.

```
function (
    <t:integer> action,
    <t:integer> detail
)
    return <t:node> -- to be appended
end
```

When there is a result, that will be the next node seen in the builder. The boundary node is of course discarded. So we basically have three outcomes: a penalty, a node, and discard.

7.5.31 insert_boundary

This is a rather dumb callback: it gets two values and that's it. In ConTEXt we use this to change some parameters that control insert handling on-the-spot.

```
function (
    <t:integer> action,
    <t:integer> detail
)
    -- no return value
end
```

7.6 Tracing

7.6.1 hpack_quality

This callback can be used to intercept the overfull messages that can result from packing a horizontal list (as happens in the par builder). The function takes a few arguments:

```
function (
    <t:string>  incident,
    <t:integer> detail,
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:integer> first,
    <t:integer> last
 )
    return <t:node> whatever
end
```

The incident is one of `overfull`, `underfull`, `loose` or `tight`. The detail is either the amount of overflow in case of `overfull`, or the badness otherwise. The head is the list that is constructed (when protrusion or expansion is enabled, this is an intermediate list). Optionally you can return a node, for instance an overfull rule indicator. That node will be appended to the list (just like TEX's own rule would).

7.6.2 vpack_quality

This callback can be used to intercept the overfull messages that can result from packing a vertical list (as happens in the page builder). The function takes a few arguments:

```
function (
    <t:string>  incident,
    <t:integer> detail,
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:integer> first,
    <t:integer> last
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The incident is one of `overfull`, `underfull`, `loose` or `tight`. The detail is either the amount of overflow in case of `overfull`, or the badness otherwise. The head is the list that is constructed.

7.6.3 line_break

This callback is actually a set of callbacks that has to be deals with as a whole. The main reason why we have this callback is that we wanted to be able to see what the par builder is doing, especially when we implement multiple paragraph building passes. This makes the callback pretty much a rather ConTEXt specific one.

We can also consider fetching the passive and active lists because we now keep much more info around.

```
function(
```

```
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    ...
)
    -- no return values
end

function initialize (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> subpasses
)
    -- no return values
end

function start (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> pass,
    <t:integer> subpass,
    <t:integer> classes,
    <t:integer> decent
)
    -- no return values
end

function stop (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> demerits
)
    -- no return values
end

function collect (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks
)
    -- no return values
end

function line (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> box,
    <t:integer> badness,
    <t:integer> overshoot,
    <t:integer> shrink,
    <t:integer> stretch,
    <t:integer> line,
    <t:integer> serial
```

```
)
    -- no return values
end

function delete (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> serial
)
    -- no return values
end

function wrapup (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> demerits,
    <t:integer> looseness
)
    -- no return values
end

function check (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> pass,
    <t:integer> subpass,
    <t:integer> serial,
    <t:integer> prevserial,
    <t:integer> linenumber,
    <t:integer> nodetype,
    <t:integer> fitness,,
    <t:integer> demerits,
    <t:integer> classes,
    <t:integer> badness,
    <t:integer> demerits,
    <t:node>    breakpoint,
    <t:integer> short,
    <t:integer> glue,
    <t:integer> linewidth
)
    return <t:integer> demerits  -- optional
end

function list (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:integer> checks,
    <t:integer> serial
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Every one of these gets a `context` and `checks` passes. Possible contexts are:

`0x00`	initialize	`0x03`	stop	`0x06`	delete
`0x01`	start	`0x04`	collect	`0x07`	report
`0x02`	list	`0x05`	line	`0x08`	wrapup

The `checks` parameters is the value of **`\linebreakchecks`** which makes it possible to plug in actions depending on that number. To give an idea if what gets called, this is what you get when typesetting `tufte.tex`: initialize, start, report, delete, delete, stop, start, report, report, delete, report, report, report, delete, delete, report, report, report, delete, report, delete, delete, report, report, report, delete, report, delete, delete, report, report, delete, report, report, delete, delete, delete, report, delete, report, delete, delete, report, report, report, delete, delete, report, delete, report, report, delete, report, delete, delete, delete, report, report, delete, report, report, delete, report, delete, report, delete, report, delete, report, delete, delete, report, report, report, report, delete, delete, delete, delete, delete, delete, delete, delete, delete, report, stop, collect, list, list, list, list, list, list, list, list, list, line, line, line, line, line, line, line, line, wrapup.

7.6.4 show_build

You can trace (and even influence) the page builder with this callback. It comes in several variants that are called during the process. Callbacks like these assume that one knows what is going on in the engine.

```
function initialize (
    <t:integer> context
)
    -- no return values
end

function step (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:node>    current,
    <t:integer> pagegoal,
    <t:integer> pagetotal
)
    -- no return values
end

function check (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:node>    current,
    <t:boolean> moveon,
    <t:boolean> fireup,
    <t:integer> badness,
    <t:integer> costs,
    <t:integer> penalty
)
    return <t:boolean> moveon, <t:boolean> fireup
end

function skip (
```

```
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:node>    current,
)
    -- no return values
end

function move (
    <t:integer> context,
        <t:node>    current,
        <t:integer> lastheight,
        <t:integer> lastdepth,
        <t:integer> laststretch,
        <t:integer> lastshrink,
        <t:boolean> hasstretch
)
    -- no return values
end

function fireup (
    <t:integer> context,
    <t:node> current
)
    -- no return values
end

function wrapup (
    <t:integer> context
)
    -- no return values
end
```

7.6.5 show_whatsit

Because we only have a generic whatsit it is up to the macro package to provide details when tracing them.

```
function (
    <t:node>    whatsit,
    <t:integer> indentation,
    <t:integer> tracinglevel,
    <t:integer> currentlevel,
    <t:integer> inputlevel
)
    -- no return value
end
```

Here `indentation` tells how many periods are to be typeset if you want to be compatible with the rest of tracing. The `tracinglevel` indicates if the current level and/or input level are shown cf. **`\tracinglevels`**. Of course one is free to show whatever in whatever way suits the whatsit best.

7.6.6 linebreak_quality

```
function (
    <t:node>    par,
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:integer> pass,
    <t:integer> subpass,
    <t:integer> subpasses,
    <t:integer> state,
    <t:integer> overfull,
    <t:integer> underfull,
    <t:integer> verdict,
    <t:integer> classified,
    <t:integer> line
)
    return <t:node> result
end
```

7.6.7 show_loners

In spite of widow, club, broken and shaping penalties we can have single lines in the result. When set, this callback replaces the output that normally **\tracingloners** produces.

```
function (
    <t:integer> options,
    <t:integer> penalty
)
    return <t:node> result
end
```

The options are those set on the encountered penalty:

0x0000	normal	0x0020	toddlered	0x0800	doubleused
0x0001	mathforward	0x0040	widow	0x1000	factorused
0x0002	mathbackward	0x0080	club	0x2000	endofpar
0x0004	orphaned	0x0100	broken	0x4000	ininsert
0x0008	widowed	0x0200	shaping	0x8000	finalbalance
0x0010	clubbed	0x0400	double		

7.6.8 get_attribute

Because attributes are abstract pairs of indices and values the reported properties makes not much sense and are very macro package (and user) dependent. This callback permits more verbose reporting by the engine when tracing is enabled.

```
function (
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> value
)
    return <t:string>, <t:string>
```

```
end
```

7.6.9 get_noad_class

We have built-in math classes but there can also be user defined ones. This callback can be used to report more meaningful strings instead of numbers when tracing.

```
function (
    <t:integer> class
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

7.6.10 get_math_dictionary

todo

7.6.11 show_lua_call

When the engine traces something that involves a Lua call it makes sense to report something more meaningful than just that. This callback can be used provide a meaningful string (like the name of a function).

```
function (
    <t:string>  name,
    <t:integer> index
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

7.6.12 trace_memory

When the engine starts all kind of memory is pre-allocated> depending on the configuration more gets allocated when a category runs out of memory. The LuaMetaTEX engine is more dynamic than LuaTEX. If this callback is set it will get called as follows:

```
function (
    <t:string>  category,
    <t:boolean> success
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The boolean indicates if the allocation has been successful. One can best quit the run when this one is `false` which the engine is likely to do that anyway, be in in a less graceful way that you might like.

7.6.13 paragraph_pass

When a subpass is checked this callback kicks in when we trigger the next pass based on various criteria. When the first returned boolean is `true` we continue. The second boolean let us retry the pass.

The first return value can be a table with some new parameters but this is only used for experiments; we might pick up that thread some day.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:integer> subpass,
    <t:integer> callback,
    <t:integer> overfull,
    <t:integer> underfull,
    <t:integer> verdict,
    <t:integer> classified,
    <t:integer> threshold,
    <t:integer> badness,
    <t:integer> classes
)
    return
        <t:boolean> success,
        <t:boolean> repeat

end
```

The `callback` argument comes from the set value in a pass so one can let actions depend on it.

7.6.14 show_vsplit

Callbacks like this were introduced when we were experimenting with new features. Their usage pattern is therefore pretty much determined by ConTEXt. When set, the callback is triggered several times and the arguments differ:

location	arguments
initialize	where checks current height depth extra
continue	where checks current height depth total penalty
check	where checks current height depth total penalty badness costs
quit	where checks current height depth total penalty badness costs
wrapup	where checks best height depth stretch shrink

When a so called vertical break if triggered the `initialize` kicks in, and a split loop is entered. There a penalty triggers either a `quit` or `check` event and other nodes a `continue`. After the (possibly quit) job the `wrapup` happens.

7.6.15 linebreak_check

This is also a rather (ConTEXt) specific callback, one that is triggered at various places in the line break routine.

location	arguments
initialize	checks subpasses
start	checks pass subpass classes decent
report	checks pass subpass currentserial previousserial line kind class classes

```
            badness demerits breakpoint short glue width
stop        checks demerits
collect
line        checks line badness overshoot shrink stretch linumber serial
list        checks currentserial refcount
delete      checks currentserial refcount
wrapup      checks demerits looseness
```

We `initialize` when we start breaking a paragraph into lines. When a break is investigated (tried) the `report` kicks in. It returns the (new) 'active total demerits' so you can influence the results. When at some point a passive node is removed the `delete` is triggered. The `start` and `stop` events happen before and after each sub path. When done we `wrapup`. The `collect` is called in the post line break routine, so when the resulting lines are wrapped and added to the vertical list; here every line added triggers a `line`. All this assumes that you have an understanding of how the builder works.

7.6.16 balance_check

This callback is similar to the `linebreak_check` but with pages instead of lines. It is available when we balance using balance shapes and passes.

7.7 Math

7.7.1 mlist_to_hlist

This callback replaces LuaTEX's math list to node list conversion algorithm.

```
function (
    <t:node>    head,
    <t:string>  display_type,
    <t:boolean> need_penalties
)
    return <t:node> newhead
end
```

The returned node is the head of the list that will be added to the vertical or horizontal list, the string argument is either 'text' or 'display' depending on the current math mode, the boolean argument is `true` if penalties have to be inserted in this list, `false` otherwise.

Setting this callback to `false` is bad, it will almost certainly result in an endless loop.

7.7.2 math_rule

In math rules are used for fractions, radicals and accents. In the case of radicals rules mix with glyphs to build the symbol. In ConTEXt we can enable an alternate approach that uses glyphs instead of rules so that we can have more consistent shapes, for instance with slopes or non square endings. This callback takes care of that.

```
function (
    <t:integer> subtype,
```

```
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:node>    attributes
)
    return <t:node> rule
end
```

7.7.3 make_extensible

Like `math_rule` this callback is used to construct nicer extensibles in ConTEXt math support. It can optionally be followed by `register_extensible`.

```
function (
    <t:node>    extensible,
    <t:integer> fnt,
    <t:integer> chr,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:integer> depth,
    <t:integer> linewidth,
    <t:integer> axis,
    <t:integer> exheight,
    <t:integer> emwidth
)
    return <t:node> -- boxed extensible
end
```

7.7.4 register_extensible

This callback is a possible follow up on `make_extensible` and it can be used to share pre-build extensibles or package them otherwise (for instance as Type3 glyph).

```
function (
    <t:integer> fnt,
    <t:integer> chr,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:node>    attributes,
    <t:node>    extensible
)
    return <t:node> -- boxed
end
```

7.7.5 balance

This callback is comparable with the `line_break` callback. We use it for tracing in ConTEXt during development (as well as for documentation).

7.7.6 balance_insert

This is callback kicks in every time an insert is seen when balancing.

```
function (
    <t:node>    current,
    <t:integer> callback,
    <t:integer> insert_index,
    <t:integer> insert_identifier
)
    -- no return value
end
```

7.7.7 balance_boundary

When balancing, this is callback kicks in every time a node resulting from `\balanceboundary` is seen.

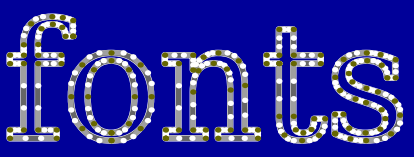
```
function (
    <t:integer> boundary_data,
    <t:integer> boundary_reserved,
    <t:integer> shape_identifier,
    <t:integer> shape_slot
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- action
        <t:integer>, -- penalty
        <t:integer>  -- extra
end
```

What happens after the callback returns control to TEX depends on the first return value:

getbalancecallbackvalues

there is no function 'getgetbalancecallbackvalues' in tex, node or token

This is an experimental feature. In due time there will be a bit more explanation here.


fonts

8 Fonts

Contents

8.1 Introduction 377
8.2 Primitives 378

8.2.1 Basic properties 378
8.2.2 Specifications 379
8.2.3 Offsets 380
8.2.4 Math scales and identifiers 380
8.2.5 Scaled fontdimensions 381
8.2.6 Character properties 381
8.2.7 Glyph options 382

8.3 Nodes 382
8.4 Loading 383
8.5 Helpers 388
8.6 Virtual fonts 391
8.7 Callbacks 393
8.8 Protrusion 393
8.9 Spaces 393

8.1 Introduction

The LuaTEX engine changed the approach to loading fonts and processing kerns and ligatures by introducing a Lua loader and callbacks for processing replacement and positioning features. In LuaMetaTEX we go a step further and no longer load fonts otherwise than with Lua. In the end, all that TEX needs are a few dimensions and optionally ligature and kerning tables. Of course for math a bit more is needed but even there we can safely delegate all loading to Lua. In LuaMetaTEX we still have the traditional kerning and ligature built in because after all that method is the reference for traditional fonts and the amount of code needed is relatively small.

The backend is gone, so here the final font inclusion is also done by Lua. This means that in the engine the amount of code involved in that is zero. In the engine we have glyphs and glyphs traditionally carry a font identifier (an number) and a glyph reference (also a number). Both are used to fetch the width, height, depth, italic correction ans some more from the fonts registered in the engine. For TEX a font is more of an abstraction that from Lua, where we can manipulate details and deal with the real shapes.

In LuaMetaTEX the situation is simplified on the one hand, read: no font loader, but complicated on the other, for instance because we have dynamic scaling. In this chapter we discuss what data is stored in glyphs, what primitives are involved, and how loading takes place. Because a lot can be done in Lua and because there are no standards involved, we don't need to discuss how a macro package is supposed to deal with all this; one can consider ConTEXt as a reference implementation if needed.

Removing the font loader and backend had relatively little impact on ConTEXt because we already did most in Lua, but as we developed LuaMetaTEX both subsystems evolved further. Especially moving more backend processing to Lua had some impact on performance but in the end the engine is much faster so we gained that back. Additions to the font system, like dynamic scaling of course have impact too but we could also limit the amount of fonts that get loaded which compensates for any loss in performance. The most complicated and demanding part of the backend code is that what

deals with fonts: sharing, subsetting, devirtualizing, scaling, effects like weight, slanting, expansion, accuracy, accessibility, . . . , all of that has to be dealt with.

In this chapter we discuss a few aspects like primitives, defining fonts, Lua helpers, and virtual fonts, but for a more complete picture one really has to read the documents that describe how all evolved, how fonts are used in ConTEXt as well as look at how we apply all this. There is no reason to repeat everything here, especially because for most users this is not something they need to know. There are dedicated manuals and articles that cover different aspects.

8.2 Primitives

8.2.1 Basic properties

Although primitives are discusses in their own chapter we repeat some here because it impacts following sections. Let's start with the commands that change the look and feel of a font:

```
\begingroup                   glyphs represent characters \endgroup
\begingroup \glyphscale  1200 glyphs represent characters \endgroup
\begingroup \glyphxscale 1200 glyphs represent characters \endgroup
\begingroup \glyphyscale  800 glyphs represent characters \endgroup
\begingroup \glyphslant   200 glyphs represent characters \endgroup
\begingroup \glyphweight  200 glyphs represent characters \endgroup
```

This results in:

glyphs represent characters
glyphs represent characters
glyphs represent characters
glyphs represent characters
glyphs represent characters
glyphs represent characters

These parameters are applied to glyphs that get added to the current list of nodes. Whenever the engine (or the Lua end) needs a dimension, two scales have to be applied, depending on the dimension being horizontal or vertical. Sometimes the slant and weight also have to be taken into account. Later we will see that we have additional math scaling so you can imagine that applying a handful of scales has a bit of impact on the code and also performance. However, the later will not be noticed because computers are fast enough.

Here is how we can apply the scaling factors to dimensions:

```
{\glyphxscale 1500                  \the\glyphxscaled 100pt} and
{\glyphyscale  750                  \the\glyphyscaled 100pt} and
{\glyphscale  1500 \glyphxscale 500 \the\glyphxscaled 100pt}
```

We get: **150.0pt** and 75.0pt and 75.0pt. In scenarios like these you need to keep in mind that the currently set scales also apply. The main reason why we use these 1000 based factor is that it is the way TEX does things. We could have used posits instead but those were added later so for now it's factors that dominate.

8.2.2 Specifications

A font is loaded at a specific size, so these properties start from that: the design size and the requested size which results in a scaling factor. Every font has a number so here we have:

```
\tf \the \fontid \font \hskip1cm
\bf \the \fontid \font \hskip1cm
\sl \the \fontid \font
```

1 **4** *7*

A set of settings can be combined in specification, here **\font** is the current font, from which the specification takes the identifier.

```
\fontspecdef \MyFontA \font xscale 2000 yscale 800 weight 200 slant 200 \relax
\fontspecdef \MyFontB \font all 1000 1500 800 250 150 \relax

\begingroup \MyFontA Is this neat or not? \endgroup
\begingroup \MyFontB Is this neat or not? \endgroup
```

Is this neat or not?
Is this neat or not?

Instead of an id an already defined specification can be given in which case we start from a copy:

```
\fontspecdef \MyFontA 2 all 1000
\fontspecdef \MyFontB \MyFontA xscale 1200
```

Say that we have:

```
\fontspecdef\MyFoo\font xscale 1200 \relax
```

The four properties of such a specification can then be queried as follows:

```
[\the\fontspecid       \MyFoo]
[\the\fontspecscale    \MyFoo]
[\the\fontspecxscale   \MyFoo]
[\the\fontspecyscale   \MyFoo]
[\the\fontspecifiedsize\MyFoo]
[\fontspecifiedname    \MyFoo]
```

[1] [1000] [1200] [1000] [10.0pt] [Serif sa 1]

A font specification obeys grouping but is not a register. Like **\integerdef** and **\dimendef** it is just a control sequence with a special meaning.

If you read about compact font mode in ConTEXt, this is what we're using there. It started out by more aggressive sharing and scaling but eventually all five properties were integrated in a fast font switch. However, setting these five properties, even with one command has some overhead because they are saved on the save stack. Okay, that was a bit if a lie: no one will notice that overhead:

```
\fontspecdef \MyFontA \font
    scale 1100 xscale 2000 yscale 800 weight 200 slant 200
\relax
```

```
\fontspecdef \MyFontB \font
    scale 1200 xscale 1000 yscale 200 weight 100 slant 100
\relax
```

A 100.000 times {\MyFontA\MyFontB} grouped expansion takes 0.02 seconds runtime on my 2018 laptop, which is just noise once we start processing text: 100.000 times {\MyFontA efficient \MyFontB efficient} takes 1.4 seconds and 100.000 times {\MyFontA test \MyFontB test} takes 0.4 seconds. Guess why.

8.2.3 Offsets

These two parameters control the horizontal and vertical shift of glyphs with, when applied to a stretch of them, the horizontal offset probably being the least useful. The values default to the currently set values. Here is a ConTEXt example:

```
\ruledhbox \bgroup
    \ruledhbox {\glyph yoffset 1ex xoffset -.5em 123}
    \ruledhbox {\glyph yoffset 1ex               125}
    \ruledhbox \bgroup
        baseline
        \glyphyoffset 1ex \glyphxscale 800 \glyphyscale \glyphxscale
        raised%
    \egroup
\egroup
```

Visualized:

{ } baseline raised

8.2.4 Math scales and identifiers

More details about fonts in math mode can be found in the chapters about math and primitives so here we just mention a few of these primitives. The internal **\glyphtextscale**, **\glyphscriptscale** and **\glyphscriptscriptscale** registers can be set to enforce additional scaling of math, like this:

```
$                            a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
$\glyphtextscale          800 a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
$\glyphscriptscale        800 a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
$\glyphscriptscriptscale  800 a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
```

You can of course set them all in any mix as long as the value is larger than zero and doesn't exceed 1000. In ConTEXt we use this for special purposes so don't mess with it there. as there can be unexpected (but otherwise valid) side effects.

$a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
$a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
$a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$
$a = b^2 = c^{d^2}$

The next few reported values depend on the font setup. A math font can be loaded at a certain scale and further scaled on the fly. An open type math font comes with recommended script and script script scales and gets passed to the engine scaled. The values reported by **\mathscale** are *additional* scales.

```
$\the\mathscale\textfont        \zerocount$
$\the\mathscale\scriptfont      \zerocount$
$\the\mathscale\scriptscriptfont\zerocount$
```

gives: 1000 1000 1000

In math mode the font id depends on the style because there we have a family of three related fonts or the same font with different scales. In this document we get the following identifiers:

```
$\the\mathstylefontid\scriptscriptstyle \fam$
$\the\mathstylefontid\scriptstyle       \fam$
$\the\mathstylefontid\textstyle         \fam$
```

Gives: 2 2 2, which is no surprise because we use the same font for all sizes combined with the `smaller` field options discusses later. In ConTEXt math uses compact font mode with in-place scaling by default.

8.2.5 Scaled fontdimensions

When you use **\glyphscale**, **\glyphxscale** and/or **\glyphyscale** the font dimensions also scale. The values that are currently used can be queried:

dimension	scale	xscale	yscale
\scaledemwidth	*	*	
\scaledexheight	*		*
\scaledextraspace	*	*	
\scaledinterwordshrink	*	*	
\scaledinterwordspace	*	*	
\scaledinterwordstretch	*	*	
\scaledslantperpoint	*	*	

The next table shows the effective sized when we scale by 2000. The last two columns scale twice: the shared scale and the x or y scale.

\scaledemwidth	20.0	20.0	10.0	40.0	20.0
\scaledexheight	10.38086	5.19043	10.38086	10.38086	20.76172
\scaledextraspace	2.11914	2.11914	1.05957	4.23828	2.11914
\scaledinterwordshrink	2.11914	2.11914	1.05957	4.23828	2.11914
\scaledinterwordspace	6.35742	6.35742	3.17871	12.71484	6.35742
\scaledinterwordstretch	3.17871	3.17871	1.58936	6.35742	3.17871
\scaledslantperpoint	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0

8.2.6 Character properties

The **\fontcharwd**, **\fontcharht**, **\fontchardp** and **\fontcharic** give access to character properties. To this repertoire LuaMetaTEX adds the top and bottom accent accessors **\fontcharta** and **\fontcharba** that came in handy for tracing. You pass a font reference and character code. Normally only OpenType math fonts have this property.

8.2.7 Glyph options

In LuaTEX the \noligs and \nokerns primitives suppress these features but in LuaMetaTEX these primitives are gone. They are replace by a more generic control primitive **\glyphoptions**. This numerical parameter is a bitset with the following fields:

0x00000000	normal	0x00000800	mathsitalicstoo
0x00000001	noleftligature	0x00001000	mathartifact
0x00000002	norightligature	0x00002000	weightless
0x00000004	noleftkern	0x00004000	spacefactoroverload
0x00000008	norightkern	0x00008000	checktoddler
0x00000010	noexpansion	0x00010000	checktwin
0x00000020	noprotrusion	0x00020000	istoddler
0x00000040	noitaliccorrection	0x00040000	iscontinuation
0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection	0x00080000	keepspacing
0x00000100	applyxoffset	0x01000000	userfirst
0x00000200	applyyoffset	0x40000000	userlast
0x00000400	mathdiscretionary		

The effects speak for themselves. They provide detailed control over individual glyph, this because the current value of this option is stored with glyphs. In ConTEXt we have commands that set flags like that and also make sure that there is no interference in setting them. it's good to know that some of these options are there so that we can properly demonstrate, discuss and document LuaMetaTEX behavior. The current value of this parameter is 0x1018080 but that can of course change because we experiment with options and bit positions might change over time, which is why we can query the engine.

8.3 Nodes

This chapter is not about nodes so we keep this section short. A glyph node is an important one and a page easily has a few thousand of them. When a list that has glyphs nodes is processed, depending on the font quite some passes over that list are made in order to sort out substitutions, alternatives and ligatures as well as font kerning and anchoring. When the paragraph is constructed these glyphs are consulted and dimensions and expansion properties are accessed and scaling can happen. These glyph nodes are among the largest and have many fields. To what extend you can use these fields depends on the macro package and the reason is that some of these fields also affect the backend and the backend is provided by the macro package. When the script/language combination that you use supports hyphenation, there can be discretionary nodes that have a pre, post and/or replace component set that are node lists that can contain glyph nodes and whenever we mess around with glyphs we also need to check these.

The most important fields are font and character, as these uniquely point to what shape is used. That also means that at the Lua end we can have more information than TEX needs and can do things that TEX in its role as constructor is unaware of. The par builder doesn't really care what it deals with, it only needs dimensions and maybe some properties.

The data, state, script and protected fields are used for instance by ConTEXt and in particular the font handler. There are primitives that can query and set these fields, like **\glyphdatafield**, **\glyphscriptfield** and **\glyphstatefield**.

These primitives can be used to set an additional glyph properties. Of course it's very macro package dependent what is done with that. It started with just the first one as experiment, simply because we

had some room left in the glyph data structure. It's basically an single attribute. Then, when we got rid of the ligature pointer we could either drop it or use that extra field for some more, and because ConTEXt already used the data field, that is what happened. The script and state fields are shorts, that is, they run from zero to `0xFFFF` where we assume that zero means 'unset'. Although they can be used for whatever purpose their use in ConTEXt is fixed. So far for a historical note.

The `language` field is used by the hyphenator but can also be used by the macro package. The `lhmin` and `rhmin` are only useful for the hyphenator and these values are set by the language mechanisms and primitives. The `discpart` bitset registers what the engine did which can be handy for tracing.

We already mentioned scales, slant and weight and these go to fields `scale`, `xscale`, `yscale`, `slant` and `weight`. The `expansion`, `raise`, `left`, `right`, `xoffset` and `yoffset` can be set by TEX but also by the font handler. Messing with any of these fields at the TEX end is easy but one really should take into account what the macro packages needs them for and does with them at the Lua end and in the backend. In that respect LuaMetaTEX lets the user free but it also means that you cannot expect macro packages (assuming that ConTEXt is not the only user) to behave the same.

The various math subsystems use `properties`, `group` and `index` and again this also macro package specific. The `options` bitset controls all kind of processes in the engine when it comes to using glyphs (user level **`\glyphoptions`**) as do `control` and `hyphenate`.

It would take many pages to explain all this so again we just refer to how ConTEXt uses these fields, the way they can be set from TEX and accessed in Lua. In the end, all the users see of this is shapes anyway, while macro packages integrate and present these as features.

8.4 Loading

A font is normally defined by **`\font`** which in LuaMetaTEX is just a trigger for a callback. You can even do without that primitive because you can load a font and then use **`\setfontid`** or the previously mentioned specification to switch to a font. The callback, discussed in the callbacks chapter, gets a name and size, and is supposed to return a font identifier. You can use the name to locate and load a font, register the font using the following function, which gives you an identifier that satisfies the callback.

```
function font.define ( <t:table> font, <t:integer> id )
    return <t:integer> id
end
```

with respect to **`\font`** it's good to know that the engine accept a braced argument as a font name:

```
\font\myfont = {My Fancy Font}
```

This allows for embedded spaces, without the need for double quotes. Macro expansion takes place inside the argument. Although in ConTEXt LMTX we don't use the **`\font`** for defining fonts, it still can be uses.

The font table is mandate but the identifier is optional. The table has the following fields, most of which concern math. The `name` field is mandate because it is needed in various feedback scenarios.

key	type	description
`name`	string	metric (file) name

`original`	string	the name used in logging and feedback
`designsize`	number	expected size (default: 655360 == 10pt)
`size`	number	the required scaling (by default the same as `designsize`)
`compactmath`	boolean	use the `smaller` fields in lookups
`mathcontrol`	bitset	this controls various options in the math engine
`textcontrol`	bitset	this controls various options in the text engine
`nomath`	boolean	don't check for math parameters and properties
`characters`	table	the defined glyphs of this font
`fonts`	table	locally used fonts
`parameters`	table	parameters by index and/or key
`MathConstants`	table	OpenType math parameter
`hyphenchar`	number	default: TEX's **`\hyphenchar`**
`skewchar`	number	default: TEX's **`\skewchar`**
`textscale`	number	scale applied to math text
`scriptscale`	number	scale applied to math script
`scriptscriptscale`	number	scale applied to math script script
`textxscale`	number	horizontal scale applied to math text
`scriptxscale`	number	horizontal scale applied to math script
`scriptxscriptscale`	number	horizontal scale applied to math script script
`textyscale`	number	vertical scale applied to math text
`scriptyscale`	number	vertical scale applied to math script
`scriptyscriptscale`	number	vertical scale applied to math script script
`textweight`	number	weight applied to math text
`scriptweight`	number	weight applied to math script
`scriptscriptweight`	number	weight applied to math script script

There are three tables that need their own explanation. The `parameters` table is a hash with mixed key types. There are seven possible string keys, as well as a number of integer indices. The seven strings are actually used instead of the bottom seven indices, because that gives a nicer user interface. There are additional indexed entries possible for math fonts but nowadays one will use OpenType math fonts so these no longer make sense.

name	index
`slant`	1
`space`	2
`spacestretch`	3
`spaceshrink`	4
`xheight`	5
`quad`	6
`extraspace`	7

The `characters` table can be pretty large when we have OpenType fonts. In ConTEXt we use Unicode as encoding which means that glyphs are organized as such. This also means that we have a hash and not an indexed array due to gaps. There can be more data in the glyph sub tables than the engine needs because the engine only picks up those that it needs. You can also later decide to pass additional properties and even glyphs to the engine, but changes can of course have consequences because at

some point the backend will pick up data and use that. Additions are fine but changes have to be consistent. Of course it all depends on how you implement a backend.

When a character in the input is turned into a glyph node, it gets a character code that normally refers to an entry in that table. For proper paragraph building and math rendering the fields in the tables below can best be present in an entry in the `characters` table. As said, you can of course add all kind of extra fields. The engine only uses those that it needs for typesetting a paragraph or formula. The sub tables that define ligatures and kerns are also hashes with integer keys, and these indices should point to entries in the main characters table. The fields common to text and math chartacters are: `callback`, `compression`, `depth`, `expansion`, `height`, `italic`, `kerns`, `leftprotrusion`, `ligatures`, `rightprotrusion`, `tag`, `width`.

Providing ligatures and kerns via this table permits TEX to construct ligatures and add inter-character kerning. However, normally you will use an OpenType font in combination with Lua code that does this. In ConTEXt we have base mode that uses the engine, and node mode that uses Lua. A mono spaced font normally has no ligatures and inter character kerns and is normally not processed at all.

We can group the parameters. All characters have the following base set. It must be noted here that OpenType doesn't have a italic property and that the height and depth are also not part of the design: one can choose to derive them from the bounding box.

key	type	description
`width`	number	width in sp (default 0)
`height`	number	height in sp (default 0)
`depth`	number	depth in sp (default 0)
`italic`	number	italic correction in sp (default 0)

There are four parameters that are more optional and relate to advanced optical paragraph optimization:

key	type	description
`leftprotruding`	number	left protruding factor (**`\lpcode`**)
`rightprotruding`	number	right protruding factor (**`\rpcode`**)
`expansion`	number	expansion factor (**`\efcode`**)
`compression`	number	compression factor (**`\cfcode`**)

The left and right protrusion factors as well as the expansion factor are comparable to the ones introduced by pdfTEX, but compression is new and complements expansion. In LuaMetaTEX the expansion mechanism is also available in math. You might have noticed that we don't have expansion related parameters in the main font table. This is because we have a more dynamic model. These values are anyway only used when **`\protrudechars`** and/or **`\adjustspacing`** are set. The later can also be controlled by so called par passes and thereby applied more selectively. Because setting these fields using specific glyph properties can take time, it is also possible to delay these settings till a dedicated callback is triggered when they are needed.

From TEX we inherit the following tables. Ligatures are only used in so call base mode, when the engine does the font magic. Kerns are used in base mode text and optionally in math.

key	type	description
`ligatures`	table	ligaturing information
`kerns`	table	kerning information

The next fields control the engine and are a variant on TEX's tfm tag property. In a future we might provide a bit more (local) control although currently we see no need. Originally the `tag` and `next` field were combined into a packed integer but in current LuaMetaTEX we have a 32 bit tag and the next field moved to the math blob as it only is used as variant selector.

key	type	description
`tag`	number	a bitset, currently not really exposed

In a math font characters have many more fields: `bottomanchor`, `bottomleft`, `bottommargin`, `bottomovershoot`, `bottomright`, `extensible`, `flataccent`, `innerlocation`, `innerxoffset`, `inneryoffset`, `keepbase`, `leftmargin`, `mathkerns`, `mirror`, `parts`, `rightmargin`, `smaller`, `topanchor`, `topleft`, `topmargin`, `topovershoot`, `topright`.

key	type	description
`smaller`	number	the next smaller math size character
`mirror`	number	a right to left alternative
`flataccent`	number	an accent alternative with less height (OpenType)
`next`	number	'next larger' character index
`topleft`	number	alternative script kern
`topright`	number	alternative script kern
`bottomleft`	number	alternative script kern
`bottomright`	number	alternative script kern
`topmargin`	number	alternative accent calculation margin
`bottomargin`	number	alternative accent calculation margin
`leftmargin`	number	alternative accent calculation margin
`rightmargin`	number	alternative accent calculation margin
`topovershoot`	number	accent width tolerance
`bottomovershoot`	number	accent width tolerance
`topanchor`	number	horizontal top accent alignment position
`bottomanchor`	number	horizontal bottom accent alignment position
`innerlocation`	string	`left` or `right`
`innerxoffset`	number	radical degree horizontal position
`inneryoffset`	number	radical degree vertical position
`parts`	table	constituent parts of an extensible
`partsitalic`	number	the italic correction applied with the extensible
`partsorientation`	number	`horizontal` or `vertical`
`mathkerns`	table	math cut-in specifications
`extensible`	table	stretch a fixed width accent to fit

In LuaMetaTEX combined with ConTEXt MkXL we go beyond OpenType math and have more fields here than in LuaTEX. In ConTEXt those values are set with so called tweaks and defined in so called font goody files. This relates to the extended math rendering engine in LuaMetaTEX.

Bidirectional math is also supported and driven by (in ConTEXt speak) tweaks which means that it has to be set up explicitly as it uses a combination of fonts. The `mirror` field points to an alternative glyph. The `smaller` field points to a script glyph alternative and that glyph can then point to a script script one (in OpenType speak `ssty` alternates respectively one 1 and 2). In ConTEXt is also uses specific

features of the font subsystems that hook into the backend where we have a more advanced virtual font subsystem than in LuaTEX. Because this is macro package dependent it will not be discussed here.

Here is the character 'f' (decimal 102) in the font `cmr10 at 10pt`. The numbers that represent dimensions are in scaled points. Of course you will use Latin Modern OpenType instead but the principles are the same:

```
[102] = {
    ["width"]  = 200250,
    ["height"] = 455111,
    ["depth"]  = 0,
    ["italic"] = 50973,
    ["kerns"]  = {
        [63] = 50973,
        [93] = 50973,
        [39] = 50973,
        [33] = 50973,
        [41] = 50973
    },
    ["ligatures"] = {
        [102] = { ["char"] = 11, ["type"] = 0 },
        [108] = { ["char"] = 13, ["type"] = 0 },
        [105] = { ["char"] = 12, ["type"] = 0 }
    }
}
```

In ConTEXt, when they are really needed, we normally turn these traditional eight bit fonts into emulated OpenType (Unicode) fonts so there you will only encounter tables like this when we process a font in base mode.

Two very special string indexes can be used also: `leftboundary` is a virtual character whose ligatures and kerns are used to handle word boundary processing. `rightboundary` is similar but not actually used for anything (yet).

The values of `topanchor`, `bottomanchor` and `mathkern` are used only for math accent and superscript placement, see page `??` in this manual for details. The italic corrections are a story in themselves and discussed in detail in other manuals. The additional parameters that deal with kerns, margins, overshoots, inner anchoring, etc. are engine specific and not part of OpenType. More information can be found in the ConTEXt distribution; they relate the upgraded math engine project by Mikael and Hans.

A math character can have a `next` field that points to a next larger shape. However, the presence of `extensible` will overrule `next`, if that is also present. The `extensible` field in turn can be overruled by `parts`, the OpenType version. The `extensible` table is very simple:

key	type	description
`top`	number	top character index
`mid`	number	middle character index
`bot`	number	bottom character index
`rep`	number	repeatable character index

The `parts` entry is an arrays of components. Each of those components is itself a hash of up to five keys:

key	type	description
`glyph`	number	character index
`extender`	number	(1) if this part is repeatable, (0) otherwise
`start`	number	maximum overlap at the starting side (scaled points)
`end`	number	maximum overlap at the ending side (scaled points)
`advance`	number	advance width of this item (width is default)

The traditional (text and math) `kerns` table is a hash indexed by character index (and 'character index' is defined as either a non-negative integer or the string value `rightboundary`), with the values of the kerning to be applied, in scaled points.

The traditional (text) `ligatures` table is a hash indexed by character index (and 'character index' is defined as either a non-negative integer or the string value `rightboundary`), with the values being yet another small hash, with two fields:

key	type	description
`type`	number	the type of this ligature command (default 0)
`char`	number	the character index of the resultant ligature

The `char` field in a ligature is required. The `type` field inside a ligature is the numerical or string value of one of the eight possible ligature types supported by TEX. When TEX inserts a new ligature, it puts the new glyph in the middle of the left and right glyphs. The original left and right glyphs can optionally be retained, and when at least one of them is kept, it is also possible to move the new 'insertion point' forward one or two places. The glyph that ends up to the right of the insertion point will become the next 'left'.

textual (Knuth)	number	string	result
`l + r =: n`	0	`=:`	`|n`
`l + r =:| n`	1	`=:|`	`|nr`
`l + r |=: n`	2	`|=:`	`|ln`
`l + r |=:| n`	3	`|=:|`	`|lnr`
`l + r =:|> n`	5	`=:|>`	`n|r`
`l + r |=:> n`	6	`|=:>`	`l|n`
`l + r |=:|> n`	7	`|=:|>`	`l|nr`
`l + r |=:|>> n`	11	`|=:|>>`	`ln|r`

The default value is 0, and can be left out. That signifies a 'normal' ligature where the ligature replaces both original glyphs. In this table the `|` indicates the final insertion point.

The third table has the `MathConstants` as the camel case name suggests. These are not discussed here. The `fonts` table relates to virtual fonts that are discussed later.

8.5 Helpers

Without argument this function returns the current font identifier and when an identifier is passed that one is made current.

```
function font.current ( <t:nil> | <t:integer> )
    -- no return value
end
```

This returns the maximum font identifier in use:

```
function font.max ( )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end
```

This one defines a font but needs an identifier, for instance reserved by `font.nextid`. The table is the same as with `font.define`.

```
function font.setfont ( <t:integer> identifier, <t:table> data )
    -- no return value
end
```

The next function can be used to add characters to a font. The table is the same as the table used when defining the characters in a font. The identifier must be known.

```
function font.addcharacters ( <t:integer> identifier, <t:table> characters )
    -- no return value
end
```

When protrusion or expansion data is needed for a character in a font and the relevant values are not yet known, a callback can be triggered and the next function can then be used to assign these.

```
function font.addquality (
    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:table>   characters
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The table looks like this:

```
{
    [index] = {
        leftprotrusion  = <t:integer>,
        rightprotrusion = <t:integer>,
        expansion       = <t:integer>,
        compression     = <t:integer>,
    },
    ...
}
```

Sometimes it can be handy to check what the next identifier will be. The optional boolean, when true, makes that the font is allocated.

```
function font.nextid ( <t:nil> | <t:boolean> )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end
```

This function does a lookup by name and returns the font identifier when it's known:

```
function font.id ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end
```

The value that gets returned or is assigned is always an integer because that is what these parameters are: scaled dimensions, percentages, factors.

```
function font.getfontdimen (
    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:integer> parameter
)
    return <t:integer> -- value
end

function font.setfontdimen (
    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:integer> parameter,
    <t:integer> value
)
    -- no return value
end
```

This one returns the properties that relate to a **\fontspecdef**:

```
function font.getfontspec ( <t:string> name )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- identifier
        <t:integer>, -- scale
        <t:integer>, -- xscale
        <t:integer>, -- yscale
        <t:integer>, -- slant
        <t:integer>  -- weight
end
```

Math characters are not really defined along with a font but their family can bind them to one. However, in ConTEXt we have them decoupled and families are assigned fonts when the need is there.

```
function font.getmathspec ( )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- class
        <t:integer>, -- family
        <t:integer>  -- character

end
```

Internally a math font parameter has a number. This function returns that number plus a boolean indicating if we have an variable that is not officially in OpenType math but an addition to the LuaMetaTEX engine.

```
function font.getmathindex ( <t:string> | <t:number> )
```

```
    return
        <t:number>  -- index
        <t:boolean> -- engine
end
```

These two don't operate on a font but multiply the given value by the **\glyphscale** and **\glyphxscale** respectively **\glyphyscale**.

```
function font.xscaled ( <t:number> value)
    return <t:number> -- scaled value
end

function font.yscaled ( <t:number> value)
    return <t:number> -- scaled value
end
```

Like in other places the engine can report what fields we have, which is handy when we want to check manuals like this one.

```
function font.getparameterfields     ( ) return <t:table> end
function font.getfontfields          ( ) return <t:table> end
function font.gettextcharacterfields ( ) return <t:table> end
function font.getmathcharacterfields ( ) return <t:table> end
```

8.6 Virtual fonts

Virtual fonts have been introduced in TEX because they permit combining fonts and constructing for instance accented characters from several glyphs and they are what one nowadays tags as a 'cool' feature, especially because in LuaTEX we can use this mechanism runtime. The nice thing is that because all that TEX needs is dimensions, the hard work is delegated to the backend which means that the front end can be agnostic when it comes to virtual fonts.

So, in the beginning they were mostly used for providing a direct mapping from for instance accented characters onto a glyph btu we use it for a lot of other situations, like math. But keep in mind that because we basically define the backend ourselves and because we also control everything fonts, we can go way further in ConTEXt than in other engines and macro packages.

A character is virtual when it has a `commands` array as part of the data. A virtual character can itself point to virtual characters but be careful with nesting as you can create loops and overflow the stack (which often indicates an error anyway).

At the font level there can be a an (indexed) `fonts` table. The values are one- or two-key hashes themselves, each entry indicating one of the base fonts in a virtual font. In case your font is referring to itself in for instance a virtual font, you can use the `slot` command with a zero font reference, which indicates that the font itself is used. So, a table looks like this:

```
fonts = {
  { name = "ptmr8a", size = 655360 }, -- referenced as font 1
  { name = "psyr", size = 600000 },   -- referenced as font 2
  { id = 38 }                         -- referenced as font 3
}
```

The first referenced font (at index 1) in this virtual font is `ptrmr8a` loaded at 10pt, and the second is `psyr` loaded at a little over 9pt. The third one is a previously defined font that is known to LuaMetaTEX as font id 38. The array index numbers are used by the character command definitions that are part of each character.

However, the only place in ConTEXt where we really need this `fonts` table is in some math fonts where we, also as illustration and as recognition of past work, assemble a Unicode math font from sort of obsolete Type1 fonts. In most cases the virtual glyphs use glyphs that are also in the font. In that case we can use `id` zero which is resolved to the font identifiers of the font itself.

The `commands` array is a hash where each item is another small array, with the first entry representing a command and the extra items being the parameters to that command. The frontend is only interested in the dimensions, ligatures and kerns of a font, which is the reason why the TEX engine didn't have to be extended when virtual fonts showed up: dealing with it is up to the driver that comes after the backend. The first block in the next table is what the standard mentions. These two engines also support the `special` and LuaTEX brings the `pdf` and `pdfmode` commands but in LuaMetaTEX we dropped all three and also LuaTEX's `image`.

But ... in LuaMetaTEX there is no backend built in but we might assume that the one provided deals with the standard entries. However, a provided backend can provide more and that is indeed what happens in ConTEXt. Because we no longer have compacting (of passed tables) and unpacking (when embedding) of these tables going on we stay in the Lua domain. None of the virtual specification is ever seen in the engine.

command	arguments	type	description
`font`	1	number	select a new font from the local `fonts` table
`char`	1	number	typeset this character number from the current font, and move right by the character's width
`slot`	2	2 numbers	a shortcut for the combination of a font and char command
`push`	0		save current position
`pop`	0		pop position
`rule`	2	2 numbers	output a rule $ht * wd$, and move right.
`down`	1	number	move down on the page
`right`	1	number	move right on the page
`nop`	0		do nothing
`node`	1	node	output this node (list), and move right by the width of this list
`lua`	1	string, function	execute a Lua script when the glyph is embedded; in case of a function it gets the font id and character code passed
`comment`	any	any	the arguments of this command are ignored

The default value for `font` is always 1 at the start of the `commands` array. Therefore, if the virtual font is essentially only a re-encoding, then you do usually not have created an explicit 'font' command in the array. Rules inside of `commands` arrays are built up using only two dimensions: they do not have depth. For correct vertical placement, an extra `down` command may be needed. Regardless of the amount of movement you create within the `commands`, the output pointer will always move by exactly the width that was given in the `width` key of the character hash. Any movements that take place inside the `commands` array are ignored on the upper level.

In addition to the above in ConTEXt we have `use`, `left`, `up`, `offset`, `stay`, `compose`, `frame`, `line`, `inspect`, `trace` and a plugin feature so that we can add more commands (which we do). These not

only provide more advanced trickery but also make for smaller command tables. For some features we don't even need virtual magic but have additional parameters in the glyph tables. But all that is not part of the engine and its specification so it will be discussed elsewhere.

8.7 Callbacks

The traditional TEX ligature and kerning routines are build into the engine but anything more (like OpenType rendering) has to be implemented in Lua. The same is true for math: the engine has some expectations, for instance with respect to script and script script sizes, larger sizes and extensibles and needs to know at least dimensions and slots in fonts in order to assemble the math. Actually there are additional scaling factors in play here because math has its own scaling demands.

8.8 Protrusion

This is more an implementation note. Compared to pdfTEX and LuaTEX the protrusion detection mechanism is enhanced a bit to enable a bit more complex situations. When protrusion characters are identified some nodes are skipped:

- zero glue
- penalties
- empty discretionaries
- normal zero kerns
- rules with zero dimensions
- math nodes with a surround of zero
- dir nodes
- empty horizontal lists
- local par nodes
- inserts, marks and adjusts
- boundaries
- whatsits

Because this can not be enough, you can also use a protrusion boundary node to make the next node being ignored. When the value is 1 or 3, the next node will be ignored in the test when locating a left boundary condition. When the value is 2 or 3, the previous node will be ignored when locating a right boundary condition (the search goes from right to left). This permits protrusion combined with for instance content moved into the margin:

```
\protrusionboundary1\llap{!\quad}«Who needs protrusion?»
```

8.9 Spaces

There are officially no spaces in TEX, there is only glue. This is not problem, on the contrary, it is what makes the rendering so good. In ConTEXt the backend can convert glue to spaces in a font but that's not an engine feature.

The **\nospaces** primitive can be used to overrule the usual **\spaceskip** related heuristics when a space character is seen in a text flow. The value 1 triggers no injection while 2 results in injection of a zero skip. In figure 8.1 we see the results for four characters separated by a space.

You can, in ConTEXt see where spaces are added by enabling a visualizer: `\showmakeup[space]` does the trick, as in this paragraph. We see regular spaces as well as spaces that have a space factor applied (after punctuation).

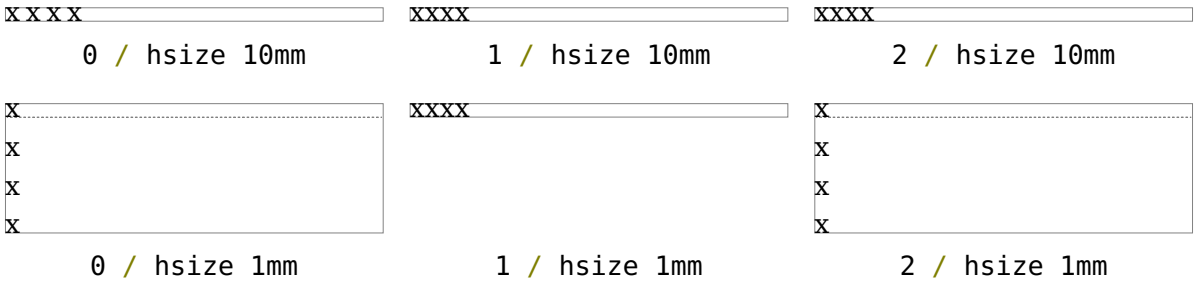


Figure 8.1 The nospaces options.


languages

9 Languages

Contents

9.1 Introduction **396**
9.2 Evolution **396**
9.3 Characters, glyphs and discretionaries **397**
9.4 Controlling hyphenation **403**
9.5 The main control loop **403**
9.6 Loading patterns and exceptions **405**
9.7 Applying hyphenation **407**
9.8 Applying ligatures and kerning **408**
9.9 Breaking paragraphs into lines **409**
9.10 The `language` library **409**
9.11 Math **413**
9.12 Tracing **413**

9.1 Introduction

Although languages play an important role in a macro package that doesn't mean that TEX is busy with it. The engine only needs to know how to hyphenate and for that a number that identifies what patterns to use is sufficient. All the action happens in the hyphenator: what characters make words, how many characters are kept at the left and right, which symbols end up at the end or beginning of a line, what input combine into (normally) dashes, how do we penalize a hyphenation point, etc.

Where in regular TEX we have special nodes that signal a language switch, and some shared variables that determine mentioned details, in LuaTEX every glyph carries the language information, including those minima. In LuaMetaTEX we put even more in a glyph by using a bitset of options. We also have some more character code bound properties. The LuaTEX engines store the current state in the glyph and discretionary nodes.

You can find more practical information about languages in ConTEXt manuals than in this document because users seldom go low level. Before we discuss these low level aspect anyway, we discuss how we came thus far; for that we borrow from the LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX manuals.

9.2 Evolution

LuaTEX's internal handling of the characters and glyphs that eventually become typeset is quite different from the way TEX82 handles those same objects. The easiest way to explain the difference is to focus on unrestricted horizontal mode (i.e. paragraphs) and hyphenation first. Later on, it will be easy to deal with the differences that occur in horizontal and math modes.

In TEX82, the characters you type are converted into `char` node records when they are encountered by the main control loop. TEX attaches and processes the font information while creating those records, so that the resulting 'horizontal list' contains the final forms of ligatures and implicit kerning. This packaging is needed because we may want to get the effective width of for instance a horizontal box. No hyphenation is needed in that case.

When it becomes necessary to hyphenate words in a paragraph, TEX converts (one word at time) the `char` node records into a string by replacing ligatures with their components and ignoring the kerning. Then it runs the hyphenation algorithm on this string, and converts the hyphenated result back into a 'horizontal list' that is consecutively spliced back into the paragraph stream. Keep in mind that the paragraph may contain unboxed horizontal material, which then already contains ligatures and kerns and the words therein are part of the hyphenation process.

Lets stress this: before LuaTEX ligaturing and kerning took place during input, and hyphenation, combined with temporarily juggling ligatures and kerns, took place while building the paragraph. It's a selective process where hyphenation only takes place where it is expected to influence the line breaks.

Those `char` node records are somewhat misnamed, as they are glyph positions in specific fonts, and therefore not really 'characters' in the linguistic sense. In TEX82 there is no language information inside the `char` node records at all. Instead, language information is passed along using `language whatsit` nodes inside the horizontal list.

In LuaTEX and thereby LuaMetaTEX the situation is quite different. The characters you type are always converted into `glyph` node records with a special subtype to identify them as being intended as linguistic characters. LuaTEX stores the needed language information in those records, but does not do any font-related processing at the time of node creation. It only stores the index of the current font and a reference to a character in that font.

When it becomes necessary to typeset a paragraph, LuaTEX first inserts all hyphenation points right into the whole node list. Next, it processes all the font information in the whole list, creating ligatures and adjusting kerning, and finally it adjusts all the subtype identifiers so that the records are 'glyph nodes' from now on. Actually in LuaMetaTEX the subtype is no longer used to store the state but that is not relevant here.

In LuaMetaTEX we also have this separation but there is more control over when hyphenation is applied, what becomes en- and em-dashes, hoe penalties kick in, etc. There are some additional callbacks that can manipulate words as they are encountered and exceptions can be handled differently.

9.3 Characters, glyphs and discretionaries

TEX82 (including pdfTEX) differentiates between `char` nodes and `lig` nodes. The former are simple items that contained nothing but a 'character' and a 'font' field, and they lived in the same memory as tokens did. The latter also contained a list of components, and a subtype indicating whether this ligature was the result of a word boundary, and it was stored in the same place as other nodes like boxes and kerns and glues.

In LuaMetaTEX we no longer keep the list of components with the glyph node because we have to deal with more advanced scenarios in 'node mode', for instance in attaching vowels to stepwise constructed ligatures. Also, in OpenType ligatures are just a many to one mapping and the kind of ligatures that we see TEX fonts in OpenType often are achieved by kerning substituted single glyphs.

In LuaTEX, these two types are merged into one, somewhat larger structure called a `glyph` node. Besides having the old character, font, and component fields there are a few more, like 'attr', these nodes also contain a subtype, that codes four main types and two additional ghost types. For ligatures, multiple bits can be set at the same time (in case of a single-glyph word).

- `character`, for characters to be hyphenated: the lowest bit (bit 0) is set to 1.
- `glyph`, for specific font glyphs: the lowest bit (bit 0) is not set.
- `ligature`, for constructed ligatures bit 1 is set.

But while TEX86 has this construct, deconstruct and reconstruct model in LuaTEX we don't do that so in the end this made little sense do we dropped it. We still have a (small) protection field that fulfills the job of signaling that we're done with processing glyphs.

We now arrive at languages. The `glyph` nodes also contain language data, split into four items that were current when the node was created: the **`\setlanguage`** (15 bits), **`\lefthyphenmin`** (8 bits), **`\righthyphenmin`** (8 bits), and **`\uchyph`** (1 bit). In LuaMetaTEX we just use small dedicated fields instead.

Incidentally, LuaTEX allows 16383 separate languages, and words can be 256 characters long. The language is stored with each character. You can set **`\firstvalidlanguage`** to for instance 1 and make thereby language 0 an ignored hyphenation language. In LuaMetaTEX we have a more reasonable allowance because we don't expect that many languages in one document, but we do permits longer words.

The new primitive **`\hyphenationmin`** can be used to signal the minimal length of a word. This value is stored with the (current) language.

Because the **`\uchyph`** value is saved in the actual nodes, its handling is subtly different from TEX82: changes to **`\uchyph`** become effective immediately, not at the end of the current partial paragraph. But this is true for more properties: for instance we store a penalty in a discretionary node and freeze glue in spaces, of course all at the price of using more memory.

Typeset boxes now always have their language information embedded in the nodes themselves, so there is no longer a possible dependency on the surrounding language settings. In TEX82, a mid-paragraph statement like **`\unhbox`**`0` would process the box using the current paragraph language unless there was a **`\setlanguage`** issued inside the box. In LuaTEX, all language variables are already frozen. Also, every list is hyphenated so that the font handler can do it's job taking that into account.

In traditional TEX the process of hyphenation is driven by **`\lccode`**s. In LuaTEX we made this dependency less strong. There are several strategies possible. When you do nothing, the currently used **`\lccode`**s are used, when loading patterns, setting exceptions or hyphenating a list.

When you set **`\savinghyphcodes`** to a value greater than zero the current set of **`\lccode`**s will be saved with the language. In that case changing a **`\lccode`** afterwards has no effect. However, you can adapt the set with:

```
\hjcode`a=`a
```

This change is global which makes sense if you keep in mind that the moment that hyphenation happens is (normally) when the paragraph or a horizontal box is constructed. When **`\savinghyphcodes`** was zero when the language got initialized you start out with nothing, otherwise you already have a set.

When a **`\hjcode`** is greater than 0 but less than 32 the value indicates the to be used length. In the following example we map a character (x) onto another one in the patterns and tell the engine that

œ counts as two characters. Because traditionally zero itself is reserved for inhibiting hyphenation, a value of 32 counts as zero.

Here are some examples (we assume that French patterns are used):

```
                              foobar  foo-bar
\hjcode `x=`o                 fxxbar  fxx-bar
\lefthyphenmin 3              œdipus  œdi-pus
\lefthyphenmin 4              œdipus  œdipus
\hjcode `œ=2                  œdipus  œdi-pus
\hjcode `i=32 \hjcode `d=32   œdipus  œdipus
```

Carrying all this information with each glyph would give too much overhead and also make the process of setting up these codes more complex. A solution with **\hjcode** sets was considered but rejected because in practice the current approach is sufficient and it would not be compatible anyway.

Beware: the values are always saved in the format, independent of the setting of **\savinghyphcodes** at the moment the format is dumped.

We also have **\hccode** or hyphen code. A character can be set to non zero to indicate that it should be regarded as value visible hyphenation point. These examples show how that works (it is the second bit in **\hyphenationmode** that does the magic but we set them all here):

```
{\hsize 1mm \hccode"2014 \zerocount  \hyphenationmode "0000000 xxx\emdash xxx \par}
{\hsize 1mm \hccode"2014 "2014\relax \hyphenationmode "0000000 xxx\emdash xxx \par}

{\hsize 1mm \hccode"2014 \zerocount  \hyphenationmode "FFFFFFF xxx\emdash xxx \par}
{\hsize 1mm \hccode"2014 "2014\relax \hyphenationmode "FFFFFFF xxx\emdash xxx \par}

{\hyphenationmode "0000000 xxx--xxx---xxx \par}
{\hyphenationmode "FFFFFFF xxx--xxx---xxx \par}
```

Here we assign the code point because who knows what future extensions will bring. As with the other codes you can also set them from Lua. The feature is experimental and might evolve when ConTEXt users come up with reasonable demands.

xxx—xxx
xxx—
xxx
xxx—xxx
xxx—
xxx
xxx--xxx---xxx
xxx–xxx—xxx

A boundary node normally would mark the end of a word which interferes with for instance discretionary injection. For this you can use the **\wordboundary** as a trigger. Here are a few examples of usage:

```
discrete---discrete
```

dis-
crete—
dis-
crete

```
discrete\discretionary{}{}{---}discrete
```

discrete
discrete

```
discrete\wordboundary\discretionary{}{}{---}discrete
```

dis-
crete
discrete

```
discrete\wordboundary\discretionary{}{}{---}\wordboundary discrete
```

dis-
crete
dis-
crete

```
discrete\wordboundary\discretionary{---}{}{}\wordboundary discrete
```

dis-
crete—
dis-
crete

We only accept an explicit hyphen when there is a preceding glyph and we skip a sequence of explicit hyphens since that normally indicates a `--` or `---` ligature in which case we can in a worse case usage get bad node lists later on due to messed up ligature building as these dashes are ligatures in base fonts. This is a side effect of separating the hyphenation, ligaturing and kerning steps.

The start and end of a sequence of characters is signalled by a `glue`, `penalty`, `kern` or `boundary` node. But by default also a `hlist`, `vlist`, `rule`, `dir`, `whatsit`, `insert`, and `adjust` node indicate a start or end. You can omit the last set from the test by setting flags in **`\hyphenationmode`**:

`0x000001`	normal	`0x000400`	permitglue
`0x000002`	automatic	`0x000800`	permitall
`0x000004`	explicit	`0x001000`	permitmathreplace
`0x000008`	syllable	`0x002000`	forcecheck
`0x000010`	uppercase	`0x004000`	lazyligatures
`0x000020`	compound	`0x008000`	forcehandler
`0x000040`	strictstart	`0x010000`	feedbackcompound
`0x000080`	strictend	`0x020000`	ignorebounds
`0x000100`	automaticpenalty	`0x040000`	collapse
`0x000200`	explicitpenalty	`0x080000`	replaceapostrophe

The word start is determined as follows:

node	behaviour
boundary	yes when wordboundary
hlist	when the start bit is set
vlist	when the start bit is set
rule	when the start bit is set
dir	when the start bit is set

whatsit	when the start bit is set
glue	yes
math	skipped
glyph	exhyphenchar (one only) : yes (so no – —)
otherwise	yes

The word end is determined as follows:

node	behaviour
boundary	yes
glyph	yes when different language
glue	yes
penalty	yes
kern	yes when not italic (for some historic reason)
hlist	when the end bit is set
vlist	when the end bit is set
rule	when the end bit is set
dir	when the end bit is set
whatsit	when the end bit is set
ins	when the end bit is set
adjust	when the end bit is set

Figures 9.1 upto 9.5 show some examples. In all cases we set the min values to 1 and make sure that the words hyphenate at each character.

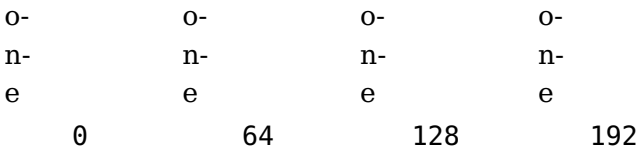


Figure 9.1 `one`

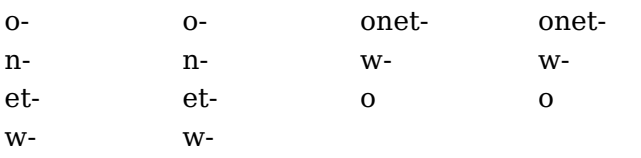


Figure 9.2 `one\null two`

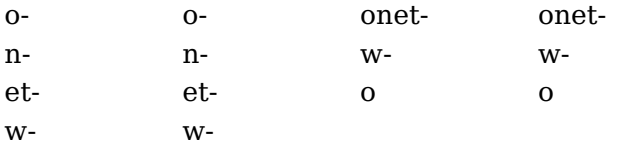


Figure 9.3 `\null one\null two`

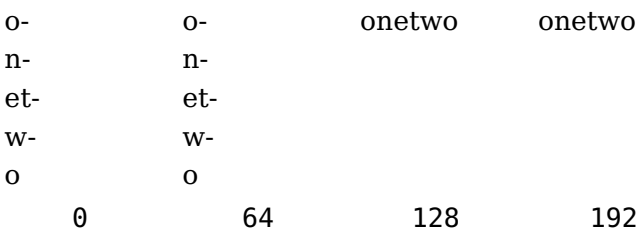


Figure 9.4 `one\null two\null`

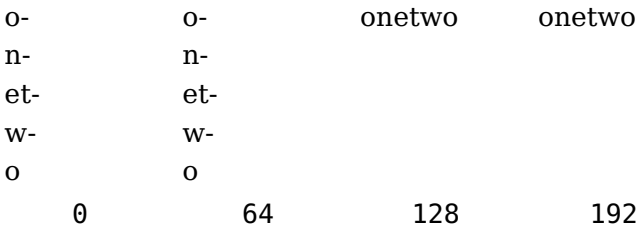


Figure 9.5 `\null one\null two\null`

In traditional TEX ligature building and hyphenation are interwoven with the line break mechanism. In LuaTEX these phases are isolated. As a consequence we deal differently with (a sequence of) explicit hyphens. We already have added some control over aspects of the hyphenation and yet another one concerns automatic hyphens (e.g. `-` characters in the input).

Hyphenation and discretionary injection is driven by a mode parameter which is a bitset made from the following values, some of which we saw in the previous examples.

1	honour (normal) **\discretionary**'s
2	turn `-` into (automatic) discretionaries
4	turn `\-` into (explicit) discretionaries
8	hyphenate (syllable) according to language
10	hyphenate uppercase characters too (replaces **\uchyph**
20	permit break at an explicit hyphen (border cases)
40	traditional TEX compatibility wrt the start of a word
80	traditional TEX compatibility wrt the end of a word
100	use **\automatichyphenpenalty**
200	use **\explicithyphenpenalty**
400	turn glue in discretionaries into kerns
800	okay, let's be even more tolerant in discretionaries
1000	and again we're more permissive
4000	controls how successive explicit discretionaries are handled in base mode
2000	treat all discretionaries equal when breaking lines (in all three passes)
8000	kick in the handler (experiment)
10000	feedback compound snippets

Some of these options are still experimental, simply because not all aspects and side effects have been explored. You can find some experimental use cases in ConTEXt.

There are also **\discretionaryoptions**. Some are set by the engine:

0x00000000	normalword	0x00000010	preferbreak
0x00000001	preword	0x00000020	prefernobreak
0x00000002	postword	0x00000040	noitaliccorrection

0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection	0x00010000	userfirst
0x00000100	standalone	0x40000000	userlast

9.4 Controlling hyphenation

The **\hyphenationmin** parameter can be used to set the minimal word length, so setting it to a value of 5 means that only words of 6 characters and more will be hyphenated, of course within the constraints of the **\lefthyphenmin** and **\righthyphenmin** values (as stored in the glyph node). This primitive accepts a number and stores the value with the language.

The **\noboundary** command is used to inject a whatsit node but now injects a normal node with type `boundary` and subtype 0. In addition you can say:

```
x\boundary 123\relax y
```

This has the same effect but the subtype is now 1 and the value 123 is stored. The traditional ligature builder still sees this as a cancel boundary directive but at the Lua end you can implement different behaviour. The added benefit of passing this value is a side effect of the generalization. The subtypes 2 and 3 are used to control protrusion and word boundaries in hyphenation and have related primitives.

9.5 The main control loop

In LuaTEX's main loop, almost all input characters that are to be typeset are converted into `glyph` node records with subtype 'character', but there are a few exceptions.

1. The **\accent** primitive creates nodes with subtype 'glyph' instead of 'character': one for the actual accent and one for the accentee. The primary reason for this is that **\accent** in TEX82 is explicitly dependent on the current font encoding, so it would not make much sense to attach a new meaning to the primitive's name, as that would invalidate many old documents and macro packages. A secondary reason is that in TEX82, **\accent** prohibits hyphenation of the current word. Since in LuaTEX hyphenation only takes place on 'character' nodes, it is possible to achieve the same effect. Of course, modern Unicode aware macro packages will not use the **\accent** primitive at all but try to map directly on composed characters.

   This change of meaning did happen with **\char**, that now generates 'glyph' nodes with a character subtype. In traditional TEX there was a strong relationship between the 8-bit input encoding, hyphenation and glyphs taken from a font. In LuaTEX we have utf input, and in most cases this maps directly to a character in a font, apart from glyph replacement in the font engine. If you want to access arbitrary glyphs in a font directly you can always use Lua to do so, because fonts are available as Lua table.

2. All the results of processing in math mode eventually become nodes with 'glyph' subtypes. In fact, the result of processing math is just a regular list of glyphs, kerns, glue, penalties, boxes etc.

3. Automatic discretionaries are handled differently. TEX82 inserts an empty discretionary after sensing an input character that matches the **\hyphenchar** in the current font. This test is wrong in our opinion: whether or not hyphenation takes place should not depend on the current font, it is a language property.[17]

[17] When TEX showed up we didn't have Unicode yet and being limited to eight bits meant that one sometimes had to compromise between supporting character input, glyph rendering, hyphenation.

The **\defaulthyphenchar** parameter is used as fallback when defining a font where that one is not explicitly set.

In LuaTEX, it works like this: if it senses a string of input characters that matches the value of the new integer parameter **\exhyphenchar**, it will insert an explicit discretionary after that series of nodes. Initially TEX sets the **\exhyphenchar=**`\-. Incidentally, this is a global parameter instead of a language-specific one because it may be useful to change the value depending on the document structure instead of the text language.

The insertion of discretionaries after a sequence of explicit hyphens happens at the same time as the other hyphenation processing, *not* inside the main control loop.

The only use LuaTEX has for **\hyphenchar** is at the check whether a word should be considered for hyphenation at all. If the **\hyphenchar** of the font attached to the first character node in a word is negative, then hyphenation of that word is abandoned immediately. This behaviour is added for backward compatibility only, and the use of **\hyphenchar=**-1 as a means of preventing hyphenation should not be used in new LuaTEX documents.

4. The **\setlanguage** command no longer creates whatsits. The meaning of **\setlanguage** is changed so that it is now an integer parameter like all others. That integer parameter is used in `glyph` node creation to add language information to the glyph nodes. In conjunction, the **\language** primitive is extended so that it always also updates the value of **\setlanguage**.

5. The **\noboundary** command (that prohibits word boundary processing where that would normally take place) now does create nodes. These nodes are needed because the exact place of the **\noboundary** command in the input stream has to be retained until after the ligature and font processing stages.

6. There is no longer a `main_loop` label in the code. Remember that TEX82 did quite a lot of processing while adding `char_nodes` to the horizontal list? For speed reasons, it handled that processing code outside of the 'main control' loop, and only the first character of any 'word' was handled by that 'main control' loop. In LuaTEX, there is no longer a need for that (all hard work is done later), and the (now very small) bits of character-handling code have been moved back inline. When **\tracingcommands** is on, this is visible because the full word is reported, instead of just the initial character.

Because we tend to make hard coded behavior configurable a few new primitives have been added:

\automatichyphenpenalty
\explicithyphenpenalty

These relate to:

\automaticdiscretionary % -
\explicitdiscretionary % \-

The usage of these penalties is controlled by the **\hyphenationmode** flags `0x100` and `0x200` and when these are not set **\exhyphenpenalty** is used.

You can use the **\tracinghyphenation** variable to get a bit more information about what happens.

value	effect
1	report redundant pattern (happens by default in LuaTEX)

2	report words that reach the hyphenator and got treated
3	show the result of a hyphenated word (a node list)

9.6 Loading patterns and exceptions

Although we keep the traditional approach towards hyphenation (which is still superior) the implementation of the hyphenation algorithm in LuaTEX is quite different from the one in TEX82.

After expansion, the argument for **\patterns** has to be proper utf8 with individual patterns separated by spaces, no **\char** or **\chardef**d commands are allowed. The current implementation is quite strict and will reject all non-Unicode characters. Likewise, the expanded argument for **\hyphenation** also has to be proper utf8, but here a bit of extra syntax is provided:

1. Three sets of arguments in curly braces (`{}{}{}`) indicate a desired complex discretionary, with arguments as in **\discretionary**'s command in normal document input.

2. A `-` indicates a desired simple discretionary, cf. `\-` and **\discretionary**`{-}{}{}` in normal document input.

3. Internal command names are ignored. This rule is provided especially for **\discretionary**, but it also helps to deal with **\relax** commands that may sneak in.

4. An `=` indicates a (non-discretionary) hyphen in the document input.

The expanded argument is first converted back to a space-separated string while dropping the internal command names. This string is then converted into a dictionary by a routine that creates key-value pairs by converting the other listed items. It is important to note that the keys in an exception dictionary can always be generated from the values. Here are a few examples:

value	implied key (input)	effect
`ta-ble`	table	`ta\-ble` (= `ta\discretionary{-}{}{}ble`)
`ba{k-}{}{c}ken`	backen	`ba\discretionary{k-}{}{c}ken`

The resultant patterns and exception dictionary will be stored under the language code that is the present value of **\language**.

In the last line of the table, you see there is no **\discretionary** command in the value: the command is optional in the TEX-based input syntax. The underlying reason for that is that it is conceivable that a whole dictionary of words is stored as a plain text file and loaded into LuaTEX using one of the functions in the Lua `language` library. This loading method is quite a bit faster than going through the TEX language primitives, but some (most?) of that speed gain would be lost if it had to interpret command sequences while doing so.

It is possible to specify extra hyphenation points in compound words by using `{-}{}{-}` for the explicit hyphen character (replace `-` by the actual explicit hyphen character if needed). For example, this matches the word 'multi-word-boundaries' and allows an extra break inbetween 'boun' and 'daries':

```
\hyphenation{multi{-}{}{-}word{-}{}{-}boun-daries}
```

The motivation behind the e-TEX extension **\savinghyphcodes** was that hyphenation heavily depended on font encodings. This is no longer true in LuaTEX, and the corresponding primitive is basically

ignored. Because we now have **\hjcode**, the case related codes can be used exclusively for **\uppercase** and **\lowercase**.

The three curly brace pair pattern in an exception can be somewhat unexpected so we will try to explain it by example. The pattern `foo{}{}{x}bar` pattern creates a lookup `fooxbar` and the pattern `foo{}{}{}bar` creates `foobar`. Then, when a hit happens there is a replacement text (x) or none. Because we introduced penalties in discretionary nodes, the exception syntax now also can take a penalty specification. The value between square brackets is a multiplier for **\exceptionpenalty**. Here we have set it to 10000 so effectively we get 30000 in the example.

x{a-}{-b}{}x{a-}{-b}{}x{a-}{-b}{}x{a-}{-b}{}xx			
10em	3em	0em	6em
123 xxxxxx 123	123 xxa- -bxa- -bxa- -bxx 123	123 xa- -bxa- -bxa- -bxa- -bxx 123	123 xxxxxx xxxxxx xxa- -bxxxx xxa- -bxxxx 123

x{a-}{-b}{}x{a-}{-b}{}[3]x{a-}{-b}{}[1]x{a-}{-b}{}xx			
10em	3em	0em	6em
123 xxxxxx 123	123 xa- -bxxxa- -bxx 123	123 xa- -bxxxa- -bxx 123	123 xxxxa- -bxx xxxxxx xxxxxx xa- -bxxxxx 123

z{a-}{-b}{z}{a-}{-b}{z}{a-}{-b}{z}{a-}{-b}{z}z			
10em	3em	0em	6em
123 zzzzzz 123	123 zza- -ba- -bzz 123	123 za- -ba- -ba- -ba- -bz 123	123 zzzzzz zzzzzz zzza- -bzz zzzzzz 123

z{a-}{-b}{z}{a-}{-b}{z}[3]{a-}{-b}{z}[1]{a-}{-b}{z}z			
10em	3em	0em	6em
123 zzzzzz 123	123 za- -bzza- -bz 123	123 za- -bzza- -bz 123	123 zzzza- -bz zzzzzz zzzzzz za- -bzzzz 123

9.7 Applying hyphenation

The internal structures LuaTEX uses for the insertion of discretionaries in words is very different from the ones in TEX82, and that means there are some noticeable differences in handling as well.

First and foremost, there is no 'compressed trie' involved in hyphenation. The algorithm still reads pattern files generated by Patgen, but LuaTEX uses a finite state hash to match the patterns against the word to be hyphenated. This algorithm is based on the 'libhnj' library used by OpenOffice, which in turn is inspired by TEX.

There are a few differences between LuaTEX and TEX82 that are a direct result of the implementation:

- LuaTEX happily hyphenates the full Unicode character range.
- Pattern and exception dictionary size is limited by the available memory only, all allocations are done dynamically. The trie-related settings in `texmf.cnf` are ignored.
- Because there is no 'trie preparation' stage, language patterns never become frozen. This means that the primitive **`\patterns`** (and its Lua counterpart `language.patterns`) can be used at any time, not only in iniTEX.
- Only the string representation of **`\patterns`** and **`\hyphenation`** is stored in the format file. At format load time, they are simply re-evaluated. It follows that there is no real reason to preload languages in the format file. In fact, it is usually not a good idea to do so. It is much smarter to load patterns no sooner than the first time they are actually needed.
- LuaTEX uses the language-specific variables **`\prehyphenchar`** and **`\posthyphenchar`** in the creation of implicit discretionaries, instead of TEX82's **`\hyphenchar`**, and the values of the language-specific variables **`\preexhyphenchar`** and **`\postexhyphenchar`** for explicit discretionaries (instead of TEX82's empty discretionary).
- The value of the two counters related to hyphenation, **`\hyphenpenalty`** and **`\exhyphenpenalty`**, are now stored in the discretionary nodes. This permits a local overload for explicit **`\discretionary`** commands. The value current when the hyphenation pass is applied is used. When no callbacks are used this is compatible with traditional TEX. When you apply the Lua `language.hyphenate` function the current values are used.
- The hyphenation exception dictionary is maintained as key-value hash, and that is also dynamic, so the `hyph_size` setting is not used either.

Because we store penalties in the disc node the **`\discretionary`** command has been extended to accept an optional penalty specification, so you can do the following:

```
\hsize1mm
1:foo{\hyphenpenalty 10000\discretionary{}{}{}}bar\par
2:foo\discretionary penalty 10000 {}{}{}bar\par
3:foo\discretionary{}{}{}bar\par
```

This results in:

1:foobar

2:foobar

3:foo
bar

Inserted characters and ligatures inherit their attributes from the nearest glyph node item (usually the preceding one, but the following one for the items inserted at the left-hand side of a word).

Word boundaries are no longer implied by font switches, but by language switches. One word can have two separate fonts and still be hyphenated correctly (but it can not have two different languages, the **\setlanguage** command forces a word boundary).

All languages start out with **\prehyphenchar**=`\-, **\posthyphenchar**=0, **\preexhyphenchar**=0 and **\postexhyphenchar**=0. When you assign the values of one of these four parameters, you are actually changing the settings for the current **\language**, this behaviour is compatible with **\patterns** and **\hyphenation**.

LuaTEX also hyphenates the first word in a paragraph. Words can be up to 256 characters long (up from 64 in TEX82). Longer words are ignored right now, but eventually either the limitation will be removed or perhaps it will become possible to silently ignore the excess characters (this is what happens in TEX82, but there the behaviour cannot be controlled).

If you are using the Lua function `language.hyphenate`, you should be aware that this function expects to receive a list of 'character' nodes. It will not operate properly in the presence of 'glyph', 'ligature', or 'ghost' nodes, nor does it know how to deal with kerning.

9.8 Applying ligatures and kerning

We discuss this base mode aspect here because in traditional TEX the process is interwoven with hyphenation. After all possible hyphenation points have been inserted in the list, LuaTEX will process the list to convert the 'character' nodes into 'glyph' and 'ligature' nodes. This is actually done in two stages: first all ligatures are processed, then all kerning information is applied to the result list. But those two stages are somewhat dependent on each other: If the used font makes it possible to do so, the ligaturing stage adds virtual 'character' nodes to the word boundaries in the list. While doing so, it removes and interprets **\noboundary** nodes. The kerning stage deletes those word boundary items after it is done with them, and it does the same for 'ghost' nodes. Finally, at the end of the kerning stage, all remaining 'character' nodes are converted to 'glyph' nodes.

This separation is worth mentioning because, if you overrule from Lua only one of the two callbacks related to font handling, then you have to make sure you perform the tasks normally done by LuaTEX itself in order to make sure that the other, non-overruled, routine continues to function properly.

Although we could improve the situation the reality is that in modern OpenType fonts ligatures can be constructed in many ways: by replacing a sequence of characters by one glyph, or by selectively replacing individual glyphs, or by kerning, or any combination of this. Add to that contextual analysis and it will be clear that we have to let Lua do that job instead. The generic font handler that we provide (which is part of ConTEXt) distinguishes between base mode (which essentially is what we describe here and which delegates the task to TEX) and node mode (which deals with more complex fonts.

In so called base mode, where TEX does the work, the ligature construction (normally) goes in small steps. An `f` followed by an `f` becomes an `ff` ligatures and that one followed by an `i` can become a `ffi` ligature. The situation can be complicated by hyphenation points between these characters. When there are several in a ligature collapsing happens. Flag `0x4000` in the **\hyphenationmode** variable

determines if this happens lazy or greedy, i.e. the first hyphen wins or the last one does. In practice a ConTEXt user won't have to deal with this because most fonts are processed in node mode.

9.9 Breaking paragraphs into lines

This code is almost unchanged, but because of the above-mentioned changes with respect to discretionaries and ligatures, line breaking will potentially be different from traditional TEX. The actual line breaking code is still based on the TEX82 algorithms, and there can be no discretionaries inside of discretionaries. But, as patterns evolve and font handling can influence discretionaries, you need to be aware of the fact that long term consistency is not an engine matter only.

But that situation is now fairly common in LuaTEX, due to the changes to the ligaturing mechanism. And also, the LuaTEX discretionary nodes are implemented slightly different from the TEX82 nodes: the `no_break` text is now embedded inside the disc node, where previously these nodes kept their place in the horizontal list. In traditional TEX the discretionary node contains a counter indicating how many nodes to skip, but in LuaTEX we store the pre, post and replace text in the discretionary node.

The combined effect of these two differences is that LuaTEX does not always use all of the potential breakpoints in a paragraph, especially when fonts with many ligatures are used. Of course kerning also complicates matters here. In practice that doesn't matter much because the par builder has enough solution space due to spaces; it's not like out of a sudden we wonder why paragraphs look worse.

The **\doublehyphendemerits** and **\finalhyphendemerits** parameters play a role in the par builder: they discourage a page break when there are two or more hyphens in a row and if there's one in the pre-last line. These are not bound to a language.

9.10 The `language` library

This library provides the interface to the internal structure representing a language, and the associated functions.

```
function language.new ( <t:nil> | <t:integer> identifier )
    return <t:userdata> -- language
end
```

This function creates a new userdata object. An object of type `<language>` is the first argument to most of the other functions in the `language` library. These functions can also be used as if they were object methods, using the colon syntax. Without an argument, the next available internal id number will be assigned to this object. With argument, an object will be created that links to the internal language with that id number. The number returned is the internal **\language** id number this object refers to.

```
function language.id ( <t:userdata> language )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end
```

You can load exceptions with:

```
function language.hyphenation( <t:userdata> language, <t:string> list)
```

```
    -- no return value
end
```

When no string is given (the first example) a string with all exceptions is returned.

```
function language.hyphenation ( <t:userdata> language )
    return <t:string> list
end
```

This either returns the current hyphenation exceptions for this language, or adds new ones. The syntax of the string is explained in section 9.6.

This call clears the exception dictionary (string) for this language:

```
function language.clearhyphenation( <t:userdata> language )
    --- no return value
end
```

This function creates a hyphenation key from the supplied hyphenation value. The syntax of the argument string is explained in section 9.6. The function is useful if you want to do something else based on the words in a dictionary file, like spell-checking.

```
function language.clean(<t:userdata> language, <t:string> str)
    return <t:string> cln
end

function language.clean(<t:string> str)
    return <t:string> cln
end
```

This adds additional patterns for this language object, or returns the current set. The syntax of this string is explained in section 9.6.

```
function language.patterns( <t:userdata> language, <string> list )
    -- no return value
end
```

The registered list can be fetched with:

```
function language.patterns( <t:userdata> language )
    return <t:string> -- list
end
```

This can be used to clear the pattern dictionary for a language.

```
function language.clearpatterns ( <t:userdata> language )
    -- no return value
end
```

This function sets (or gets) the value of the TEX parameter **\hyphenationmin**.

```
function language.hyphenationmin ( <t:userdata> language, <t:number> n )
    -- no return value
end
```

```
function language.hyphenationmin ( <t:userdata> language )
    return <t:integer> n
end
```

These two are used to get or set the ‘pre-break’ and ‘post-break’ hyphen characters for implicit hyphenation in this language. The initial values are decimal 45 (hyphen) and decimal 0 (indicating emptiness).

```
function language.prehyphenchar  ( <t:userdata> language, <t:integer> n) end
function language.posthyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language, <t:integer> n) end

function language.prehyphenchar  ( <t:userdata> language) return <t:integer> n end
function language.posthyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language) return <t:integer> n end
```

These gets or set the ‘pre-break’ and ‘post-break’ hyphen characters for explicit hyphenation in this language. Both are initially decimal 0 (indicating emptiness).

```
function language.preexhyphenchar  ( <t:userdata> language, <t:integer> n) end
function language.postexhyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language, <t:integer> n) end

function language.preexhyphenchar  ( <t:userdata> language) return <t:integer> n end
function language.postexhyphenchar ( <t:userdata> language) return <t:integer> n end
```

The next call inserts hyphenation points (discretionary nodes) in a node list. If `tail` is given as argument, processing stops on that node. Currently, `success` is always true if `head` (and optionally `tail`) are proper nodes, regardless of possible other errors.

```
function language.hyphenate( <t:node> head, <t:node> tail)
    return <t:boolean> success
end
```

Hyphenation works only on ‘characters’, a special subtype of all the glyph nodes with the node subtype having the value 1. Glyph modes with different subtypes are not processed. See section 9.3 for more details.

The following two commands can be used to set or query a **\hjcode**:

```
function language.sethjcode (
    <t:userdata> language,
    <t:number>   character,
    <t:number>   usedchar
)
    -- no return value
end

function language.gethjcode (
    <t:userdata> language,
    <t:number>   character
)
    return <t:number> -- usedchar
end
```

You can check if a node list has a language other than zero set:

```
function language.haslanguage( <t:node> head )
    return <t:boolean> indeed
end
```

The current language can be fetched with the following function, here we get '1' for English, but you can of course never really know what the macro package assigns to a specific language. In ConTEXt zero is a language without patterns.

```
function language.current()
    return <t:integer> language
end
```

A somewhat special feature is the word handler. You can register a function like this:

```
function language.setwordhandler(
    <t:userdata> language,
    <t:function> action
)
    return <t:integer> | <t:string>
end
```

The function is called with six arguments: the language id, the original (what the engine sees as) word, the remapped (codes applied) word, the length and a start and end node. The function returns a string or integer:

string	exception
1	restart (likely replaced)
2	exceptions & patterns
3	patterns & next word

We will not go into much detail here because this mechanism was made for ConTEXt language support. Here is a simple example:

```
\startluacode
local t = { }
local f = function(...) t[#t+1] = { ... } end
languages.setwordhandler("en",f);
languages.setwordhandler("sv",f);

document.words = t
\stopluacode

\setbox\scratchbox\vbox\bgroup
    This is English with
    {\nl wat nederlands}
    {\sv och svenska}
    mixed in.
\egroup

\box\scratchbox

\startluacode
```

```
languages.setwordhandler("en", false)
\stopluacode
```

This is English with wat nederlands och svenska mixed in.

The collected arguments are:

language	original	remapped	length	first	last
1	This	this	4	90904	19646
1	is	is	2	101119	159381
1	English	english	7	86644	84349
1	with	with	4	55699	100714
5	och	och	3	82399	81649
5	svenska	svenska	7	154986	71839
1	mixed	mixed	5	102394	94354
1	in	in	2	78694	67932

9.11 Math

For the record we mention that in math you can also have discretionaries:

```
$ 2x \mathdiscretionary{+}{+}{+} 1 = 3y $
```

these actually do relate to languages but are not stored in the language data but have to be handled by the macro package. It will be clear that there is a bit involved because we have spacing and penalties driven by math classes.

9.12 Tracing

There are several trackers in ConTEXt that can show where hyphenation was considered and where it got applied, but this is really macro package dependent. There is also a built in tracing command: **\tracinghyphenation**. When you say:

```
\tracinghyphenation2
\tracingonline     2
```

You get something like this:

```
1:3: [language: not hyphenated There]
1:3: [language: hyphenated several at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated trackers at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated where]
1:3: [language: hyphenated hyphenation at 2 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated considered at 2 positions]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated where]
1:3: [language: hyphenated applied at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated really at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated macro]
1:3: [language: hyphenated package at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated dependent at 2 positions]
```

```
1:3: [language: not hyphenated There]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated built]
1:3: [language: hyphenated tracing at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated command at 1 positions]
1:3: [language: hyphenated tracinghyphenation at 3 positions]
```

```
Higher values give more details, like the pre, post and replace lists so that
output is rather noisy. Contrary to \type {\tracinghyphenation} is verbatim we do
permit it \type {\tracinghyphenation} to be hyphenated.
```

renders as:

Higher values give more details, like the pre, post and replace lists so that output is rather noisy. Contrary to **\tracinghyphenation** is verbatim we do permit it **\tracinghyphenation** to be hyphenated.

and traces as:

```
1:3: [language: hyphenated renders at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: not hyphenated Higher]
1:4: [language: hyphenated values at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated details at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated replace at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: not hyphenated lists]
1:4: [language: hyphenated output at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: not hyphenated rather]
1:4: [language: not hyphenated noisy]
1:4: [language: hyphenated Contrary at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated verbatim at 2 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated permit at 1 positions]
1:4: [language: hyphenated hyphenated at 2 positions]
1:3: [language: not hyphenated traces]
```


lua

10 Lua

Contents

10.1 Introduction **417**
10.2 Initialization **417**

10.2.1 A bare bone engine 417
10.2.2 LuaMetaTEX as a Lua interpreter 418
10.2.3 Other commandline processing 418

10.3 Lua behaviour **420**

10.3.1 The Lua version 420
10.3.2 Locales 420

10.4 Lua modules **420**
10.5 Files **421**

10.5.1 File syntax 421
10.5.2 Writing to file 421

10.6 Testing **421**
10.7 Helpers **421**

10.7.1 Basics 421
10.7.2 Timers 423
10.7.3 Bytecode registers 423
10.7.4 Tables 424
10.7.5 Nibbles 425
10.7.6 Functions 426
10.7.7 Tracing 426

10.1 Introduction

In this chapter aspects of the Lua interfaces will be discusses. The `lua` module described here is rather low level and probably not of much interest to the average user as its functions are meant to be used in higher level interfaces.

10.2 Initialization

10.2.1 A bare bone engine

When the LuaMetaTEX program launches it will not do much useful. You can compare it to computer hardware without (high level) operating system with a TEX kernel being the bios. It can interpret TEX code but for typesetting you need a reasonable setup. You also need to load fonts, and for output you need a backend, and both can be implemented in Lua. If you don't like that and want to get up and running immediately, you will be more happy with LuaTEX, pdfTEX or XETEX, combined with your favorite macro package.

If you just want to play around you can install the ConTEXt distribution which (including manuals and some fonts) is tiny compared to a full TEXLive installation and can be run alongside it without problems. If there are issues you can go to the usual ConTEXt support platforms and seek help where you can find the people who made LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX.

If you use the engine as TEX interpreter you need to set up a few characters. Of course one can wonder why this is the case, but let's consider this to be educational of nature as it right from the start forces one to wonder what category codes are.

```
\catcode`\{=1 \catcode`\}=2 \catcode`\#=6
```

After that you can start defining macros. Contrary to LuaTEX the LuaMetaTEX engine initializes all the primitives but it will quit when the minimal set of callback is not initialized, like a logger. The lack of font loader and backend makes that it is not usable for loading an arbitrary macro package that doesn't set up these components. There is simply no argument for starting in in original TEX mode without e-TEX extensions and such.

10.2.2 LuaMetaTEX as a Lua interpreter

Although LuaMetaTEX is primarily meant as a TEX engine, it can also serve as a stand alone Lua interpreter and there are two ways to make LuaMetaTEX behave like one. The first method uses the command line option `--luaonly` followed by a filename. The second is more automatic: if the only non-option argument (file) on the command line has the extension `lmt` or `lua`. The `luc` extension has been dropped because bytecode compiled files are not portable and one can always load them indirectly. The `lmt` suffix is more ConTEXt specific and makes it possible to have files for LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX alongside.

In interpreter mode, the program will set Lua's `arg[0]` to the found script name, pushing preceding options in negative values and the rest of the command line in the positive values, just like the Lua interpreter does. The program will exit immediately after executing the specified Lua script and is thereby effectively just a somewhat bulky stand alone Lua interpreter with a bunch of extra preloaded libraries. But we still wanted and managed to keep the binary small, somewhere around 3MB, which is okay for a script engine.

When no argument is given, LuaMetaTEX will look for a Lua file with the same name as the binary and run that one when present. This makes it possible to use the engine as a stub. For instance, in ConTEXt a symlink from `mtxrun` to type luametatex will run the `mtxrun.lmt` or `mtxrun.lua` script when present in the same path as the binary itself. As mentioned before first checking for (ConTEXt) `lmt` files permits different files for different engines in the same path.

10.2.3 Other commandline processing

When the LuaMetaTEX executable starts, it looks for the `--lua` command line option. If there is no such option, the command line is interpreted in a similar fashion as the other TEX engines. All options are accepted but only some are understood by LuaMetaTEX itself:

commandline argument	explanation
`--credits`	display credits and exit
`--fmt=FORMAT`	load the format file `FORMAT`
`--help`	display help and exit
`--ini`	be `iniluatex`, for dumping formats
`--jobname=STRING`	set the job name to `STRING`
`--lua=FILE`	load and execute a Lua initialization script
`--version`	display version and exit
`--permitloadlib`	permits loading of external libraries

There are less options than with LuaTEX, because one has to deal with them in Lua anyway. So for instance there are no options to enter a safer mode or control executing programs because this can easily be achieved with a startup Lua script, which can interpret whatever options got passed.

Next the initialization script is loaded and executed. From within the script, the entire command line is available in the Lua table `arg`, beginning with `arg[0]`, containing the name of the executable. As consequence warnings about unrecognized options are suppressed. Command line processing happens very early on. So early, in fact, that none of TEX's initializations have taken place yet. The Lua libraries that don't deal with TEX are initialized rather soon so you have these available.

LuaMetaTEX allows some of the command line options to be overridden by reading values from the `texconfig` table at the end of script execution (see the description of the `texconfig` table later on in this document for more details on which ones exactly). The value to use for **`\jobname`** is decided as follows:

- If `--jobname` is given on the command line, its argument will be the value for **`\jobname`**, without any changes. The argument will not be used for actual input so it need not exist. The `--jobname` switch only controls the **`\jobname`** setting.

- Otherwise, **`\jobname`** will be the name of the first file that is read from the file system, with any path components and the last extension (the part following the last `.`) stripped off.

- There is an exception to the previous point: if the command line goes into interactive mode (by starting with a command) and there are no files input via **`\everyjob`** either, then the **`\jobname`** is set to `texput` as a last resort.

So let's summarize this. The handling of what is called job name is a bit complex. There can be explicit names set on the command line but when not set they can be taken from the `texconfig` table.

startup filename	`--lua`	`a Lua file`	
startup jobname	`--jobname`	`a TEX tex`	`texconfig.jobname`
startup dumpname	`--fmt`	`a format file`	`texconfig.formatname`

These names are initialized according to `--luaonly` or the first filename seen in the list of options. Special treatment of & and * as well as interactive startup is gone but we still enter TEX via an forced **`\input`** into the input buffer.[18]

When we are in TEX mode at some point the engine needs a filename, for instance for opening a log file. At that moment the set jobname becomes the internal one and when it has not been set which internalized to jobname but when not set becomes `texput`. When you see a `texput.log` file someplace on your system it normally indicates a bad run.

The command line option `--permitloadlib` has to be given when you load external libraries via Lua. Although you could manage this via Lua itself in a startup script, the reason for having this as option is the wish for security (at some point that became a demand for LuaTEX), so this might give an extra feeling of protection.

[18] This might change at some point into an explicit loading triggered via Lua.

10.3 Lua behaviour

10.3.1 The Lua version

We currently use Lua version and will follow developments of the language but normally with some delay. Therefore the user needs to keep an eye on (subtle) differences in successive versions of the language. Here are a few examples.

Luas `tostring` function (and `string.format`) may return values in scientific notation, thereby confusing the TEX end of things when it is used as the right-hand side of an assignment to a **`\dimen`** or **`\count`**. The output of these serializers also depend on the Lua version, so in Lua 5.3 you can get different output than from 5.2. It is best not to depend the automatic cast from string to number and vise versa as this can change in future versions.

When Lua introduced bitwise operators, instead of providing functions in the `bit32` library, we wanted to use these. The solution in ConTEXt was to implement a macro subsystem (kind of like what C does) and replace the function calls by native bitwise operations. However, because LuajitTEX didn't evolve we dropped that and when we split the code base between MkIV and MkXL we went native bitwise. The `bit32` library is still there but implemented in Lua instead.

10.3.2 Locales

In stock Lua, many things depend on the current locale. In LuaMetaTEX, we can't do that, because it makes documents non-portable. While LuaMetaTEX is running if forces the following locale settings:

```
LC_CTYPE=C
LC_COLLATE=C
LC_NUMERIC=C
```

There is no way to change that as it would interfere badly with the often language specific conversions needed at the TEX end.

10.4 Lua modules

Of course the regular Lua modules are present. In addition we provide the `lpeg` library by Roberto Ierusalimschy, This library is not Unicode-aware, but interprets strings on a byte-per-byte basis. This mainly means that `lpeg.S` cannot be used with utf8 characters that need more than one byte, and thus `lpeg.S` will look for one of those two bytes when matching, not the combination of the two. The same is true for `lpeg.R`, although the latter will display an error message if used with multi-byte characters. Therefore `lpeg.R('aä')` results in the message `bad argument #1 to 'R' (range must have two characters)`, since to `lpeg`, `ä` is two 'characters' (bytes), so `aä` totals three. In practice this is no real issue and with some care you can deal with Unicode just fine.

There are some more libraries present. For instance we embed `luasocket` but contrary to LuaTEX don't embed the related Lua code but some patched and extended variant. The `luafilesystem` module has been replaced by a more efficient one that also deals with the MS Windows file and environment properties better (Unicode support in MS Windows dates from before utf8 became dominant so we need to deal with wide Unicode16). We don't have a Unicode library because we always did conversions in Lua, but there are some helpers in the `string` library, which makes sense because Lua itself is now also becoming Unicode aware.

There are more extensive math libraries and there are libraries that deal with encryption and compression. There are also some optional libraries that we do interface but that are loaded on demand. The interfaces are as minimal as can be because we so much in Lua, which also means that one can tune behavior to usage better.

10.5 Files

10.5.1 File syntax

LuaMetaTEX will accept a braced argument as a file name:

```
\input {plain}
\openin 0 {plain}
```

This allows for embedded spaces, without the need for double quotes. Macro expansion takes place inside the argument. Keep in mind that as side effect of delegating io to Lua the `\openin` primitive is not provided by the engine and has to be implemented by the macro package. This also means that the limit on the number of open files is not enforced by the engine.

10.5.2 Writing to file

Writing to a file in TEX has two forms: delayed and immediate. Delayed writing means that the to be written text is anchored in the node list and flushed by the backend. As all io is delegated to Lua, this also means that it has to deal with distinction. In LuaTEX the number of open files was already bumped to 127, but in LuaMetaTEX it depends on the macro package. The special meaning of channel 18 was already dropped in LuaTEX because we have `os.execute`.

10.6 Testing

For development reasons you can influence the used startup date and time. By setting the `start_time` variable in the `texconfig` table; as with other variables we use the internal name there. When Universal Time is needed, set the entry `use_utc_time` in the `texconfig` table.

In ConTEXt we provide the command line argument `--nodates` that does a bit more than disabling dates; it avoids time dependent information in the output file for instance.

10.7 Helpers

10.7.1 Basics

The `lua` library is relatively small and only provides a few functions. There are many more helpers but these are organized in specific modules for file i/o, handling strings, and manipulating table.

The Lua interpreter is stack bases and when you put a lot of values on the stack it can overflow. However, if that is the case you're probably doing something wrong. The next function returns the current top and is mainly there for development reasons.

```
function lua.getstacktop ( )
```

```
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The next example:

```
\startluacode
context(lua.getstacktop())
context(lua.getstacktop(1,2,3))
context(lua.getstacktop(1,2,3,4,5,6))
\stopluacode
```

typesets: 036, so we're fine.

```
\startluacode
context(lua.getstacktop(unpack(token.getprimitives())))
\stopluacode
```

But even this one is okay: 1267, because some thousand plus entries is not bothering the engine. Of course it makes little sense because now one has to loop over the arguments.

This helper is for the profiler. These debug features (when enabled at all) are somewhat obscure and after writing the profiler I quickly forgot the details. When you're curious you can look at the ConTEXt source files.

```
function lua.getdebuginfo ( )
    return
        <t:string>, -- name
        <t:string>, -- file
        <t:integer> -- line
end
```

The engines exit code can be set with:

```
function lua.setexitcode ( <t:integer> )
    -- no return values
end
```

and queried with:

```
function lua.getexitcode ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The name of the startup file, in our case '`cont-en.lui`' with the path part stripped, can be fetched with:

```
function lua.getstartupfile ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

The current Lua version, as reported by the next helper, is Lua 5.5.

```
function lua.getversion ( )
```

```
    -- return todo
end
```

We provide high resolution timers so that we can more reliable do performance tests when needed and for that we have time related helpers. The `getruntime` function returns the time passed since startup. The `getcurrenttime` does what its name says. Just play with them to see how it pays off. The `getpreciseticks` returns a number that can be used later, after a similar call, to get a difference. The `getpreciseseconds` function gets such a tick (delta) as argument and returns the number of seconds. Ticks can differ per operating system, but one always creates a reference first and then use deltas to this reference.

10.7.2 Timers

```
function lua.getruntime ( )
    return <t:number> -- actually an integer
end

function lua.getcurrenttime ( )
    return <t:number> -- actually an integer
end

function lua.getpreciseticks ( )
    return <t:number> -- actually an integer
end

function lua.getpreciseseconds ( <t:number> ticks )
    return <t:number>
end
```

There is a little bit of duplication in the timers; here is what they report at this stage of the current run:

library	function	result
lua	getruntime	10.474754333496094
	getcurrenttime	1792615271.8478184
	getpreciseticks	5102197720350.0
	getpreciseseconds	510219.7721202
os	clock	10.474
	time	1792615271
	gettimeofday	1792615271.84782

10.7.3 Bytecode registers

Lua registers can be used to store Lua code chunks. The accepted values for assignments are functions and `nil`. Likewise, the retrieved value is either a function or `nil`.

```
function lua.setbytecode (
    <t:integer>  register,
    <t:function> loader,
    <t:boolean>  strip
```

```
)
    -- no return values
end
```

An example of a valid call is `lua.setbytecode(5,loadfile("foo.lua"))`. The complement of this helper is:

```
function lua.getbytecode ( <t:integer> register )
    retrurn <t:bytecode>
end
```

The codes are stored in the virtual table `lua.bytecode`. The contents of this array is stored inside the format file as actual Lua bytecode, so it can also be used to preload Lua code. The function must not contain any upvalues. The associated function calls are:

```
function lua.callbytecode ( <t:integer> register )
    -- <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Note that the path of the file is stored in the Lua bytecode to be used in stack backtraces and therefore dumped into the format file if the above code is used in iniTEX. If it contains private information, i.e. the user name, this information is then contained in the format file as well. This should be kept in mind when preloading files into a bytecode register in iniTEX.

10.7.4 Tables

You can preallocate tables with these two helpers. The first one preallocates the given amount of hash entries and index entries. The `newindex` function create an indexed table with default values:

```
function lua.newtable ( <t:integer> hashsize, <t:integer> indexsize )
    return <t:table>
end

function lua.newindex ( <t:integer> size, <t:whatever> default )
    return <t:table>
end
```

These helpers are just handy for larger helpers written in Lua in ConTEXt. They loop over a given table and return keys, indices or everything. When we have a hash, the list is unordered!

```
function lua.getstringkeys ( <t:table> t )
    return <t:table>
end

function lua.getnumerickeys ( <t:table> t )
    return <t:table>
end

function lua.getallkeys ( <t:table> t )
    return <t:table>
end
```

The next one is really ConTEXt specific. I returns a table with keys and an integer indicating the nature.

0	unknown	2	number
1	string	3	mixed

```
function lua.getcheckedkeys ( <t:table> t )
    return <t:table>, t:integer>
end
```

Based on the second return value one can decide what sorter is most efficient for the task. The most permissive one is:

```
function lua.comparekeys ( a, b )
    return <t:boolean> -- a < b
end
```

10.7.5 Nibbles

Nibbles are half bytes so they run from `0x0` upto `0xF`. When we needed this for math state fields, the helpers made it here.

```
function lua.setnibble (
    <t:integer> original,
    <t:integer> position,
    <t:integer> value
)
    return <t:integer>
end

function lua.getnibble (
    <t:integer> original,
    <t:integer> position
)
    return <t:integer>
end

function lua.addnibble (
    <t:integer> original,
    <t:integer> position,
    <t:integer> value
)
    return <t:integer>
end

function lua.subnibble (
    <t:integer> original,
    <t:integer> position,
    <t:integer> value
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

Here are a few examples (positions go from right to left and start at one):

```
lua.setnibble(0x0000,2,0x1)  0x0010
lua.setnibble(0x0000,4,0x7)  0x7000
lua.getnibble(0x1234,2)         0x3
lua.getnibble(0x1234,4)         0x1
lua.addnibble(0x0000,2)      0x0010
lua.addnibble(0x0030,2)      0x0040
lua.subnibble(0x00F0,2)      0x00E0
lua.subnibble(0x0080,2)      0x0070
```

10.7.6 Functions

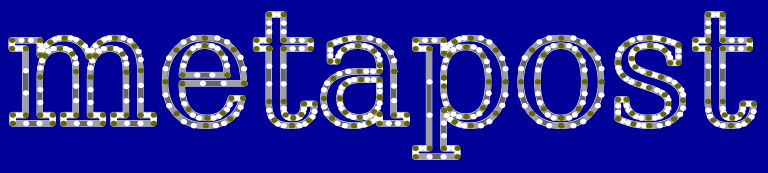
The functions table stores functions by index. The index can be used with the primitives that call functions by index. In order to prevent interferences a macro package should provide some interface to the function call mechanisms, just like it does with registers.

```
function lua.getfunctionstable ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

10.7.7 Tracing

The engine also includes the serializer from the `luac` program, just because it can be interesting to see what Lua does with your code.

```
function luac.print ( <t:string> bytecode, <t:boolean> detailed )
    -- nothing to return
end
```


metapost

11 Metapost

Contents

11.1 Introduction 428
11.2 The language 428
11.3 Instances 432
11.4 Processing 439
11.5 Internals 441
11.6 Information 444
11.7 Methods 444
11.8 Scanners 444
11.9 Injectors 447
11.10 Bytemaps 449
11.11 Experimental 451

11.1 Introduction

Four letters in the name LuaMetaTEX refer to the graphical subsystem MetaPost, originally writen by John Hobby as follow up on MetaFont. This library was introduced in LuaTEX in order to generate graphics runtime instead of via a separate system call. The library in LuaTEX is also used for the stand-alone program so it has a PostScript backend as well as font related frontend. The version used in LuaMetaTEX has neither. The lack of a backend can be explained from the fact that we have to provide one anyway: the pdf output is generated by Lua, which at that time was derived from the converter that I wrote for pdfTEX, although there the starting point is the PostScript output. Removing the font related code also makes sense, because in MkIV we never used it: we need to support OpenType and also want to use properly typeset text so we used a different approach (**textext** and friends).

Another difference with the LuaTEX library is that we don't support the binary number model, which removes a dependency. We kept decimal number support and also opened that up to the TEX end via Lua. In addition we support the posit number model, mostly because we also have that at the TEX end to suit the 32 bit model. The repertoire of scanners and injectors has been enlarged which makes it easier and more efficient to interface between the LuaMetaTEX subsystems. We also added functionality to MetaPost, the language and processor. From the users perspective the library is downward compatible but at the same time it offers more.

Just as LuaTEX is frozen, the MetaPost library that it uses can be considered frozen. In LuaMetaTEX we have plans for some more extensions and actually implemented as well as improved quite a bit in the meantime. We don't discuss the already present new functionality here in detail, for that we have separate manuals, organized under the LuaMetaFun umbrella. After all, most of what we did was done in the perspective of using ConTEXt. Users don't use the functions discussed below because they only make sense in a more integrated approach as with LuaMetaFun. There are some libraries in LuaMetaTEX that are only used for enhancing graphic capabilities, using a mix of Lua C, and of course MetaPost.

11.2 The language

When we added MetaPost to LuaTEX, the language was extended with the cmyk colorspace, Lua script support, various number systems etc. In the overview below, these LuaTEX extensions are rendered in

green. Those rendered in blue are additions in LuaMetaTEX. At the end we also mention the primitives that are not present in the library in LuaMetaTEX.

The commands are organize in groups. Internally every primitive belongs to a command group and within that group is an operation. These groups share for instance a syntax and priority level and therefore often share code.

addto addto

ampersand & && &&& &&&&

and and

assignment :=

atleast atleast

begingroup begingroup

btex btex verbatimtex

colon :

comma ,

controls controls firstcontrol secondcontrol

curl curl

cycle cycle nocycle recycle xabsolute xrelative xyabsolute xyrelative yabsolute yrelative

delimiters delimiters

endgroup endgroup

equals =

etex etex

everyjob everyjob

exittest exitif

expandafter expandafter

fiorelse else elseif fi

if if

input endinput input

interim interim

internal charcode chardp charht charic charwd day defaultcolormodel defaultzeroangle hour intersectionprecision jobname jointolerance lessdigits linecap linejoin minute miterlimit month numberprecision numbersystem overloadmode pausing pruneoptions restoreclipcolor showstopping

singlequotemode stacking texscriptmode time tracingcapsules tracingchoices tracingcommands tracingdependencies tracingequations tracingmacros tracingonline tracingoutput tracingrestores tracingspecs tracingstats tracingtitles truecorners warningcheck year

iteration endfor for forever forsuffixes

leftbrace {

leftbracket [

let let

macrodef def enddef primarydef secondarydef tertiarydef vardef

macrospecial #@ @ @# quote

maketext maketext

message errhelp errmessage message

mode batchmode errorstopmode nonstopmode scrollmode silentmode

newbytemap clipbytemap copybytemap newbytemap reducebytemap resetbytemap resetbytemaps setbyte setbytemap setbytemapoffset setbytemapoptions

newinternal newinternal

nullary false iteratorindex lastx lastxy lasty mpversion normaldeviate nullpen nullpicture pathdirection pathfirst pathindex pathlast pathlastindex pathlength pathpoint pathpostcontrol pathprecontrol pathstate pathunitdirection pathxpart pathypart pencircle previousx previousxy previousy readstring true

of of

ofbinary arcpoint arcpointlist arctime boundingpath bytefound bytemapbounds bytepath bytevalue direction directiontime envelope penoffset point postcontrol precontrol segment subarclength subpath substring unitdirection

onlyset maxknotpool randomseed

parametertype expr primary secondary suffix tertiary text

pathconnect --

pathjoin ..

plusorminus + -

primarybinary < <= <> > >=

property setproperty

protection inner outer

relax \

rightbrace }

rightbracket]

runscript runscript

save save

scantokens scantokens

secondarybinary * ^ bytemapscaled rotated scaled shifted slanted transformed xscaled xshifted xyscaled yscaled yshifted zscaled

semicolon ;

setbounds clip setbounds setgroup

shipout shipout

show show showdependencies showstats showtoken showvariable

slash /

step step

stop dump end

str str

tension tension

tertiarybinary ++ +-+ intersectiontimes intersectiontimeslist knowncrossprod knowndiv knowndotprod knownmod or

thingstoadd also contour doublepath

to to

typename boolean cmykcolor color nep numeric pair path pen picture rgbcolor string transform

unary ASCII angle arclength blackpart bluepart bounded centerof centerofmass char clipped closefrom colormodel convexed corners cosd cyanpart dashpart decimal deltaarclength deltadirection deltaiteratorindex deltapoint deltapostcontrol deltaprecontrol deltaunitdirection filled firstdirection firstpoint firstpostcontrol firstprecontrol firstunitdirection floor greenpart greypart grouped hex known knownnorm knownnormalize lastdirection lastpoint lastpostcontrol lastprecontrol lastunitdirection length llcorner lrcorner magentapart makenep makepath makepen mexp mlog nolength not oct odd pathpart penpart postscriptpart prescriptpart prunesingularities readfrom redpart reverse segments sind singularity sqrt stackingpart stroked turningnumber ulcorner uncontrolled uncycle uniformdeviate unknown urcorner wpart xpart xrange xxpart xypart yellowpart ypart yrange yxpart yypart zpart

until until

void void

with dashed withbytemap withcmykcolor withcolor withcurvature withgreyscale withlinecap withlinejoin withmesh withmiterlimit withnestedpostscript withnestedprescript withnothing withoutcolor withpen withpostscript withprescript withrgbcolor withstacking

within within

write write

obsolete primitives: :: =: =:| =:|> boundarychar charexists charext charlist designsize extensible filenametemplate fontdimen fontmaking fontmapfile fontmapline fontpart fontsize glyph headerbyte hppp infont kern ligtable mpprocset mpxbreak outputfilename outputtemplate prologues skipto special textpart textual tracinglostchars troffmode vppp |=: |=:> |=:| |=:|> |=:|>> ||:

11.3 Instances

Before you can process MetaPost code an instance needs to be created. There can be multiple instances active at the same time. They are isolated from each other so they can use different number models and macro sets. Although you can do without files, normally you will load (for instance) macros from a file. This means that we need to interface the library to the file system. If we want to run Lua, we need to be able to load Lua code. All this is achieved via callbacks that have to be set up when an instance is created.

```
function mplib.new (
    {
        random_seed    = <t:integer>,
        interaction    = <t:string>,
        job_name       = <t:string>,
        find_file      = <t:function>,
        open_file      = <t:function>,
        close_file     = <t:function>,
        read_file      = <t:function>,
        write_file     = <t:function>,
        run_script     = <t:function>,
        run_internal   = <t:function>,
        make_text      = <t:function>,
        math_mode      = <t:string>,
        utf8_mode      = <t:boolean>,
        text_mode      = <t:boolean>,
        show_mode      = <t:boolean>,
        halt_on_error  = <t:boolean>,
        bend_tolerance = <t:number>,
        move_tolerance = <t:number>,
    }
)
    return <t:mp>
end
```

The library is fed with MetaPost snippets via an `execute` function. We will discuss this in a while.

```
function mplib.execute ( <t:mp> instance )
    return <t:table> -- results
```

```
end
```

An instance can be released with:

```
function mplib.finish ( <t:mp> instance )
    return <t:table> -- results
end
```

Keeping an instance open is more efficient than creating one per graphic especially when a format has to be loaded. When you execute code, there can be results that for instance can be converted into pdf and included in the currently made document. If one closes an instance it can be that there are pending results to take care of, although in practice that is unlikely to happen.

When the `utf8_mode` parameter is set to `true` characters with codes 128 upto 255 can be part of identifiers. There is no checking if we have valid utf but it permits to use that encoding. In ConTEXt, of course, we enable this. When `text_mode` is `true` you can use the characters with ascii `STX` (2) and `ETC` (3) to fence string literals so that we can use double quotes in strings without the need to escape them. The `math_mode` parameter controls the number model that this instance will use. Valid values are `scaled` (default), `double` (default in ConTEXt), `binary` (not supported), `decimal` (less performing but maybe useful) and `posit` (so that we can complements the TEX end).

Valid `interaction` values are `batch`, `nonstop`, `scroll`, `errorstop` (default) and `silent` but in ConTEXt only the last one makes sense. Setting the `random_seed` parameter makes it possible to reproduce graphics and prevent documents to be different each run when the size of graphics are different due to randomization. The `job_name` parameter is used in reporting and therefore it is mandate.

Both tolerance parameters default to 131/65536 = 0.001998901 and help to make the output smaller: 'bend' relate to straight lines and 'move' to effectively similar points. You can adapt the tolerance any time with:

```
function mplib.settolerance (
    <t:mp>     instance,
    <t:number> bendtolerance,
    <t:number> movetolerance
)
    -- no return values
end

function mplib.gettolerance ( <t:mp> instance )
    return
        <t:number>, -- bendtolerance
        <t:number>  -- movetolerance
end
```

In ConTEXt we default to the 'double' number mode, but original MetaPost is of course 'scaled'. Recent versions of the library (also in LuaTEX) internally moved to double precision scaled integers because otherwise we can get errors due to inaccurate mapping from doubles to scaled when MetaPost switches to that mode for some features (even in other number systems). The `getscaledbits` helper returns the (internal) accuracy of a scaled.

Next we detail the functions that are hooked into the instance because without them being passed to the engine not that much will happen. We start with the finder. Here `mode` is `w` or `r`. Normally a

lookup of a file that is to be read from is done by a dedicated lookup mechanism that knows about the ecosystem the library operates in (like the TEX Directory Structure).

```
function find_file (
    <t:string> filename,
    <t:string> mode,
    <t:string> filetype | <t:integer> index
)
    return <t:string> -- foundname
end
```

A (located) file is opened with the `open_file` callback that has to return a table with a `close` method and a `reader` or a `writer` dependent of the `mode`.

```
function open_file (
    <t:string> filename,
    <t:string> mode,
    <t:string> filetype | <t:integer> index
)
    return {
        close  = function()
            -- return nothing
        end,
        reader = function()
            return <t:string>
        end,
        writer = function(<t:string>)
            -- return nothing
        end
    }
end
```

This approach is not that different from the way we do this at the TEX so like there a reader normally returns lines. The way MetaPost writes to and read from files using primitives is somewhat curious which is why the file type can be a number indicating what handle is used. However, apart from reading files that have code using **input** one hardly needs the more low level read and write related primitives.

The runner is what makes it possible to communicate between MetaPost and Lua and thereby TEX. There are two possible calls:

```
function run_script ( <t:string> code | <t:integer> reference )
    return <t:string> metapost
end
```

The second approach makes it possible to implement efficient interfaces where code is turned into functions that are kept around. At the MetaPost end we therefore have, as in LuaTEX:

```
runscript "some code that will be loaded and run"
% more code
runscript "some code that will be loaded and run"
```

which can of course be optimized by caching, but more interesting is:

```
newinternal my_function ; my_function := 123 ;
runscript my_function ;
% more code
runscript my_function ;
```

which of course has to be dealt with in Lua. The return value can be a string but also a direct object:

```
function run_script (
    <t:string> code | <t:integer> reference,
    <t:boolean> direct
)
    return
        <t:boolean> | <t:number> | <t:string> | <t:table>, -- result
        <t:boolean>                                        -- success
end
```

When the second argument is true, the results are injected directly and tables become pairs, colors, paths, transforms, depending on how many elements there are.

In MetaPost internal variables are quantities that are stored a bit differently and are accessed without using the expression scanner. The `run_internal` function triggers when internal MetaPost variables flagged with `runscript` are initialized, saved or restored. The first argument is an action, the second the value of internal. When we initialize an internal a third and fourth argument are passed.

```
function run_internal (
    <t:integer> action,
    <t:integer> internal,
    <t:integer> category,
    <t:string>  name
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The category is one of the types that MetaPost also uses elsewhere: integer, boolean, numeric or known. From this you can deduce that internals in LuaMetaTEX can not only be numbers but also strings or booleans. The possible actions are:

0 initialize
1 save
2 restore

There is of course bit extra overhead involved than normal but that can be neglected especially because we can have more efficient calls to Lua using references stored in internals. It also has the benefit that one can implement additional tracing.

MetaPost is a graphic language and system and typesetting text is not what it is meant for so that gets delegated to (for instance) TEX using **btex** which grabs text upto **etex** and passes it to this callback:

```
function make_text ( <t:string> str, <t:integer> mode )
    return <t:string> -- metapost
```

```
end
```

Here mode is only relevant if you want to intercept `verbatimtex` which is something that we don't recommend doing in ConTEXt, just like we don't recommend using **`btex`**. But, if you use these, keep in mind that spaces matter. The parameter **`texscriptmode`** controls how spaces and newlines get honored. The default value is 1. Possible values are:

value	meaning
0	no newlines
1	newlines in **`verbatimtex`**
2	newlines in **`verbatimtex`** and **`etex`**
3	no leading and trailing strip in **`verbatimtex`**
4	no leading and trailing strip in **`verbatimtex`** and **`btex`**

That way the Lua handler (assigned to `make_text`) can do what it likes. An **`etex`** has to be followed by a space or `;` or be at the end of a line and preceded by a space or at the beginning of a line. But let's repeat: these commands are kind of old school and not to be used in LuaMetaFun.

Logging, which includes the output of `message` and `show`, is also handled by a callback:

```
function run_logger ( <t:integer> target, <t:string> str )
    -- no return values
end
```

The possible log targets are:

```
0  void
1  terminal
2  file
3  both
4  error
```

An overload handler will take care of potentially dangerous overloading of for instance primitives, macro package definitions and special variables.

```
function run_overload ( <t:integer> property, <t:string> name, <t:integer> mode )
    return <t:boolean> -- resetproperty
end
```

The `mode` value is the currently set **`overloadmode`** internal. The MetaPost command **`setproperty`** can be used to relate an integer value to a quantity and when that value is positive a callback is triggered when that quantity gets redefined. Primitives get a property value 1 by the engine.

```
-3  mutable
 1  primitive
 2  permanent
 3  immutable
 4  frozen
```

Overload protect is something very ConTEXt and also present at the TEX end. All TEX and MetaPost quantities have such properties assigned.

When an error is issued it is often best to just quit the run and fix the issue, just because the instance can now be in a confused state,

```
function run_error (
    <t:string>  message,
    <t:string>  helpinfo,
    <t:integer> interactionmode
)
    -- no return values
end
```

You can get some statistics concerning an instance but in practice that is not so relevant for users. In ConTEXt these go to the log file.

```
function mplib.getstatistics ( <t:mp> instance )
    return <t:table>
end
```

The next set of numbers reflect for the current state of the `metafun:1` instance that is active for this specific run. Numeric entries are:

buffer	20071	input	17	strings	1288
bytes	0	maxopen	3		
characters	20885	parameters	42		

Memory usage is more detailed and comes in sub-tables:

	state	kept	max	pool	size	used
avlsymbols	persistent		6879		88	6879
bytemaps	persistent		25		40	0
colors	pooled	1000	50	4	48	46
dashes	pooled	250	1	0	72	1
dashobjects	pooled	250	0	0	24	0
edgeheaders	pooled	250	25	1	168	24
edgeobjects	pooled	250	16	0	96	16
identifiers	counted					3439
ifstack	pooled	250	3	3	24	0
internals	counted					544
knotobjects	pooled	1000	31957	0	72	31957
knots	pooled	1000	61884	0	120	61884
loopstate	pooled	250	2	2	136	0
pairs	pooled	1000	79	23	32	56
save	pooled	250	34	34	96	0
shapeobjects	pooled	1000	11477	0	152	11477
shapes	pooled	1000	22072	0	176	22072
start	pooled	1000	17	0	48	17
startobjects	pooled	250	30	0	56	30
stop	pooled	1000	17	0	24	17
stopobjects	pooled	250	30	0	56	30
subst	pooled	250	12	12	32	0
symbols	pooled	1000	51492	1000	72	50215

tokens	pooled	1000	3322	1000	72	2048
transforms	pooled	250	2	1	64	1
values	pooled	1000	3122	33	120	3089

In this version of mplib this is informational only. The objects are all allocated dynamically, so there is no chance of running out of space unless the available system memory is exhausted. There is no need to configure memory.

The scanner in an instance can be in a specific state:

```
function mplib.getstatus ( <t:mp> instance )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

where possible states are:

0	normal	2	flushing	4	var_defining	6	loop_defining
1	skipping	3	absorbing	5	op_defining		

Macro names and variable names are stored in a hash table. You can get a list with entries with `gethashentries`, which takes an instance as first argument. When the second argument is `true` more details will be provided. With `gethashentry` you get info about the given macro or variable.

```
function mplib.gethashentries ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> details )
    <t:table> hashentries
end

function mplib.gethashentry ( <t:mp> instance, <t:string> name )
    return
        <t:integer> -- command
        <t:integer> -- property
        <t:integer> -- subcommand
end
```

Say that we have defined:

```
numeric a ; numeric b ; numeric c ; a = b ; c := b ;
```

We get values like:

```
a           45  0  22
b           45  0  20
c           45  0  20
d           45  0
def         20  1   1
vardef      20  1   2
fullcircle  45  3  10
```

These numbers represent commands, properties and subcommands, and thereby also assume some knowledge about how MetaPost works internally. As this kind of information is only useful when doing low level development we leave it at that.

In LuaMetaTEX we have a lot of helpers that are just there to help us with documentation.

```
function mplib.getprimitives (
    <t:boolean> details
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

Primitives are a combination of a command, operator and string, but we also can report the origin (MetaPost, LuaTEX or LuaMetaTEX) and their state (like being discarded or obsolete). The optional boolean can be used to get more than just the names. These two relate to this:

```
function mplib.getprimitiveorigins  ( ) return <t:table> end
function mplib.getprimitivelegacies ( ) return <t:table> end
```

The `prunesingularities` features is controlled by options (numbers) like:

```
0                    1  collapse_regular_regular  2  collapse_begin_regular
```

11.4 Processing

It is up to the user to decide what to pass to the `execute` function as long as it is valid code. Think of each chunk being a syntactically correct file. Statements cannot be split over chunks.

```
function mplib.execute ( <t:mp> instance, <t:string> code )
    return {
        status = <t:integer>,
        fig    = <t:table>,
    }
end
```

In contrast with the normal stand alone `mpost` command, there is no implied 'input' at the start of the first chunk. When no string is passed to the execute function, there will still be one triggered because it then expects input from the terminal and you can emulate that channel with the callback you provide. In practice this is not something you need to be worry about.

When code is fed into the library at some point it will shipout a picture. The result always has a `status` field and an indexed `fig` table that has the graphics produced, although that is not mandate, for instance macro definitions can happen or variables can be set in which case graphics will be constructed later.

```
<t:userdata> o = <t:mpobj>:objects     ( )
<t:table>    b = <t:mpobj>:boundingbox ( )
<t:number>   w = <t:mpobj>:width       ( )
<t:number>   h = <t:mpobj>:height      ( )
<t:number>   d = <t:mpobj>:depth       ( )
<t:number>   i = <t:mpobj>:italic      ( )
<t:integer>  c = <t:mpobj>:charcode    ( )
<t:number>   t = <t:mpobj>:tolerance   ( )
<t:boolean>  s = <t:mpobj>:stacking    ( )
```

When you access a object that object gets processed before its properties are returned and in the process we loose the original. This means that some information concerning the whole graphic is also

no longer reliably available. For instance, you can check if a figure uses stacking with the `stacking` function but because objects gets freed after being accessed, no information about stacking is available then.

The `charcode`, `width`, `height`, `depth` and `italic` are a left-over from MetaFont. They are values of the MetaPost variables **`charcode`**, `fontcharwd`, `fontcharht`, `fontchardp` and `fontcharit` at the time the graphic is shipped out.

You can call `fig:objects()` only once for any one `fig` object! In the end the graphic is a list of such userdata objects with accessors that depends on what specific data we have at hand. You can check out what fields with the following helper:

```
function mplib.getfields ( <t:integer> object | <t:mpobj> object | <t:nil> )
    return <t:table>
end
```

You get a simple table with one list of fields, or a table with all possible fields, organized per object type. In practice this helper is only used for documentation.

```
1  fill          type path htap pen color linejoin miterlimit prescript postscript
                 stacking curvature mesh bytemap
2  outline       type path pen color linejoin miterlimit linecap dash prescript post-
                 script stacking curvature mesh bytemap
3  start_clip    type path prescript postscript stacking
4  start_group   type path prescript postscript stacking
5  start_bounds  type path prescript postscript stacking
6  stop_clip     type stacking
7  stop_group    type stacking
8  stop_bounds   type stacking
```

All graphical objects have a field `type` (the second column in the table above) that gives the object type as a string value. When you have a non circular pen an envelope is uses defined by `path` as well as `htap` and the backend has to make sure that this gets translated into the proper pdf operators. Discussing this is beyond this manual. A `color` table has one, three or four values depending on the color space used. The `prescript` and `postscript` strings are the accumulated values of these operators, separated by newline characters. The `stacking` number is just that: a number, which can be used to put shapes in front or other shapes, some order, but it depends on the macro package as well as the backend to deal with that; it's basically just a numeric tag.

Each `dash` is a hash with two items. We use the same model as PostScript for the representation of the dash list; `dashes` is an array of 'on' and 'off', values, and `offset` is the phase of the pattern.

There is helper function `getobjectpeninfo` that returns a table containing a bunch of vital characteristics of the used pen:

```
function mplib.getobjectpeninfo ( <t:mpobj> object )
    return {
        width = <t:number>,
        rx    = <t:number>,
        ry    = <t:number>,
        sx    = <t:number>,
        sy    = <t:number>,
```

```
        tx    = <t:number>,
        ty    = <t:number>,
    }
end
```

In order to know if stacking is needed, a helper can give the stacking level of an object. If you want to know if stacking is used at all, the `stacking` method of the pseudo objects array can be used.

```
function mplib.getobjectstacking ( <t:mpobj> object )
    return <t:number> | <t:false>
end
```

Instead of using the colon interface to objects we can get all fields in one call where of course the specific fields depend on the object:

```
function mplib.getobjectdata (
    <t:mpobj> object,
    <t:number> bendtolerance,
    <t:number> movetolerance
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

The tolerance parameters are optional and the defaults are often good enough for efficient output.

11.5 Internals

There are a couple of helpers that can be used to query the meaning of specific codes and states.

```
function mplib.gettype ( <mopobj> object )
    return <t:integer> -- typenumber
end

function mplib.gettypes ( )
    return <t:table> -- types
end
```

0	undefined	7	unknownpen	14	transform	21	protodependent
1	vacuous	8	nep	15	color	22	independent
2	boolean	9	unknownnep	16	cmykcolor	23	tokenlist
3	unknownboolean	10	path	17	pair	24	structured
4	string	11	unknownpath	18	numeric	25	unsuffixedmacro
5	unknownstring	12	picture	19	known	26	suffixedmacro
6	pen	13	unknownpicture	20	dependent		

```
function mplib.getcolormodels ( )
    return <t:table> -- colormodels
end
```

0	no	1	grey	2	rgb	3	cmyk

```
function mplib.getcodes ( )
```

```
    return <t:table> -- codes
end
```

0	undefined	22	addto	44	internal	66	macrospecial
1	btex	23	setbounds	45	tag	67	rightdelimiter
2	etex	24	protection	46	numeric	68	leftbracket
3	if	25	property	47	plusorminus	69	rightbracket
4	fiorelse	26	show	48	secondarydef	70	rightbrace
5	input	27	mode	49	tertiarybinary	71	with
6	iteration	28	onlyset	50	leftbrace	72	thingstoadd
7	repeatloop	29	message	51	pathjoin	73	of
8	exittest	30	everyjob	52	pathconnect	74	to
9	relax	31	delimiters	53	ampersand	75	step
10	scantokens	32	write	54	tertiarydef	76	until
11	runscript	33	typename	55	primarybinary	77	within
12	maketext	34	leftdelimiter	56	equals	78	assignment
13	expandafter	35	begingroup	57	and	79	colon
14	definedmacro	36	nullary	58	primarydef	80	comma
15	save	37	unary	59	slash	81	semicolon
16	interim	38	str	60	secondarybinary	82	endgroup
17	let	39	void	61	parametertype	83	stop
18	newinternal	40	cycle	62	controls	84	undefinedcs
19	newbytemap	41	ofbinary	63	tension		
20	macrodef	42	capsule	64	atleast		
21	shipout	43	string	65	curl		

```
function mplib.getstates ( )
    return <t:table> -- states
end
```

0	normal	2	flushing	4	var_defining	6	loop_defining
1	skipping	3	absorbing	5	op_defining		

When there is a result produces or what that fails, there is also a state but that one normally is then intercepted by the user interface so that we can recover and not end up in a confusing backend state.

```
function mplib.getresultstates ( )
    return <t:table> -- states
end
```

0	spotless	2	errorissued	4	systemerror
1	warningissued	3	fatalerror		

Knots is how the ‘points’ in a curve are called internally and in paths we can find these:

```
function mplib.getknotstates ( )
    return <t:table> -- knotstates
end
```

0	regular	1	begin	2	end	3	single

```
function mplib.getscantypes ( )
```

```
    return <t:table> -- scantypes
end
```

0	expression	1	primary	2	secondary	3	tertiary

As with TEX we can log to the console, a log file or both. But one will normally intercept log message anyway.

```
function mplib.getlogtargets ( )
    return <t:table> -- logtargets
end
```

0	void	2	file	4	error
1	terminal	3	both		

```
function mplib.getinternalactions ( )
    return <t:table> -- internalactions
end
```

0	initialize	1	save	2	restore

```
function mplib.getobjecttypes ( )
    return <t:table> -- objecttypes
end
```

0		3	start_clip	6	stop_clip
1	fill	4	start_group	7	stop_group
2	outline	5	start_bounds	8	stop_bounds

The next one is of course dependent on what one runs. These statistics are for all instances:

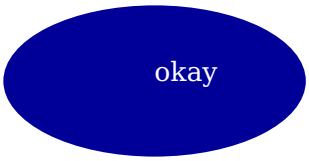
```
function mplib.getcallbackstate ( )
    return <t:table> -- callbackstate
end
```

count	52165	script	35898
error	0	status	0
file	16126	text	0
log	141	warning	0
overloaded	0		

The text counter is only counting what gets intercepted by MetaPost and as you can see below, the recommended `textext` is handled differently and not counted at all.



intercepted
by ConTEXt



intercepted
by MetaPost

So we get this now. The file count goes up because from the perspective of MetaPost code that gets executed and passed as string is just like reading from file. The relative high number that we see here reflects that we load quite some MetaFun macros when an instance is initialized.

count	52200	log	153	status	0
error	0	overloaded	0	text	1
file	16140	script	35906	warning	0

11.6 Information

The MetaPost library in LuaTEX starts with version 2 so in LuaMetaTEX we start with version 3, assuming that there will me no major update to the older library.

```
function mplib.version ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

When there is an error you can ask for some more context:

```
function mplib.showcontext ( <t:mp> instance )
    return <t:string>
end
```

11.7 Methods

For historical reasons we provide a few functions as methods to an instance: `execute`, `finish`, `getstatistics`, `getstatus` and `solvepath`, just in case someone goes low level.

11.8 Scanners

There are quite some scanners available and they all take an instance as first argument. Some have optional arguments that give some control. A very basic one is the following. Scanning for a next token in MetaPost is different from TEX because while TEX just gets the token, MetaPost can delay in cases where an expression is seen. This means that you can inspect what is coming but do some further scanning based on that. Examples of usage can be found in ConTEXt as it permits to come up with extensions that behave like new primitives or implement interfaces that are otherwise hard to do in pure MetaPost.

```
function mplib.scannext ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:integer> token, <t:integer> mode, <t:integer> kind
end
```

here the optional `keep` boolean argument default to false but when true we basically have a look ahead scan. Contrary to TEX a next token is not expanded. If we want to pick up the result from an expression we use the next one where again we can push back the result:

```
0  expression          1  primary             2  secondary           3  tertiary
```

```
function mplib.scanexpression ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:integer> -- kind
end
```

The difference between `scantoken` and `scannext` is that the first one scans for a token and the later for a value and yes, one has to play a bit with this to see when one gets what.

```
function mplib.scantoken ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> keep )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- token
        <t:integer>, -- mode
        <t:integer>  -- kind
end

function mplib.scansymbol ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> expand, <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:string>
end

function mplib.scanproperty ( <t:mp> instance )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

These are scanners for the simple data types:

```
function mplib.scannumeric ( <t:mp> instance ) return <t:number>  end -- scannumber
function mplib.scaninteger ( <t:mp> instance ) return <t:integer> end
function mplib.scanboolean ( <t:mp> instance ) return <t:boolean> end
function mplib.scanstring  ( <t:mp> instance ) return <t:string>  end
```

The scanners that return data types with more than one value can will return a table when the second argument is `true`:

```
function mplib.scanpair ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean astable )
    return
        <t:number>, -- x
        t:number>   -- y
end

function mplib.scancolor (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:boolean astable
)
    return
        <t:number>, -- r
        <t:number>, -- g
        <t:number>  -- b
end

function mplib.scancmykcolor ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean astable )
    return
        <t:number>, -- c
        <t:number>, -- m
        <t:number>, -- y
        <t:number>  -- k
end

function mplib.scantransform ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean astable )
    return
        <t:number>, -- x
```

```
        <t:number>, -- y
        <t:number>, -- xx
        <t:number>, -- yx
        <t:number>, -- xy
        <t:number>  -- yy
end
```

The path scanned is more complex. First an expression is scanned and when okay it is converted to a table. The compact option gives:

```
{
    cycle = <t:boolean>, -- close
    pen   = <t:boolean>,
    {
        <t:number>, -- x_coordinate
        <t:number>, -- y_coordinate
    },
    ...
}
```

otherwise we get the more detailed:

```
{
    curved = <t:boolean>,
    pen    = <t:boolean>,
    {
        [1]        = <t:number>,  -- x_coordinate
        [2]        = <t:number>,  -- y_coordinate
        [3]        = <t:number>,  -- x_left
        [4]        = <t:number>,  -- y_left
        [5]        = <t:number>,  -- x_right
        [6]        = <t:number>,  -- y_right
        left_type  = <t:integer>,
        right_type = <t:integer>,
        curved     = <t:boolean>,
        state      = <t:integer>,
    },
    ...
}
```

Possible (knot, the internal name for a point) states are:

0 regular 1 begin 2 end 3 single

The path scanner function that produces such tables is:

```
function mplib.scanpath (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:boolean> compact,
    <t:integer> kind,
    <t:boolean> check
)
```

```
    return <t:table>
end
```

This pen scanner returns similar tables:

```
function mplib.scanpen (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:boolean> compact,
    <t:integer> kind,
    <t:boolean> check
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

The next is not really a scanner. It skips a token that matches the given command and returns a boolean telling if that succeeded.

```
function mplib.skiptoken ( <t:mp> instance, <t:integer> command )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

11.9 Injectors

The scanners are complemented by injectors. Instead of strings that have to be parsed by MetaPost they inject the right data structures directly.

```
function mplib.injectnumeric ( <t:mp> instance, <t:number>  value ) end
function mplib.injectinteger ( <t:mp> instance, <t:integer> value ) end
function mplib.injectboolean ( <t:mp> instance, <t:boolean> value ) end
function mplib.injectstring  ( <t:mp> instance, <t:string>  value ) end
```

In following injectors accept a table as well as just the values. which can more efficient:

```
function mplib.injectpair      ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value ) end
function mplib.injectcolor     ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value ) end
function mplib.injectcmykcolor ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value ) end
function mplib.injecttransform ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value ) end
```

Injecting a path is not always trivial because we have to connect the points emulating `..`, `...`, `---` and even `&&` and `cycle`. A path is passed as table. The table can be nested and has entries like these:

```
{
    {
        x_coord       = <t:number>,
        y_coord       = <t:number>,
        x_left        = <t:number>,
        y_left        = <t:number>,
        x_right       = <t:number>,
        y_right       = <t:number>,
        left_curl     = <t:number>,
        right_curl    = <t:number>,
```

```
        left_tension  = <t:number>,
        right_tension = <t:number>,
        direction_x   = <t:number>,
        direction_y   = <t:number>,
    },
    {
        [1] = <t:number>, -- x_coordinate
        [2] = <t:number>, -- x_coordinate
        [3] = <t:number>, -- x_left
        [4] = <t:number>, -- y_left
        [5] = <t:number>, -- x_right
        [6] = <t:number>, -- y_right
    },
    "append",
    "cycle",
}
```

Here append is like **&&** which picks up the pen, and **cycle**, not surprisingly, behaves like the **cycle** operator.

```
function mplib.injectpath ( <t:mp> instance,  <t:table> value )
    -- return nothing
end

function mplib.injectwhatever ( <t:mp> instance, <t:hybrid> value )
    -- return nothing
end
```

When a path is entered and has to be injected some preparation takes place out of the users sight. A special variant of the path processor is the following, where the path is adapted and the boolean indicates success.

```
function mplib.solvepath ( <t:mp> instance, <t:table> value )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

A still somewhat experimental injectors is the following one, that can be used to fetch information from the TEX end. Valid values for expected are 1 (integer), 2 (cardinal, 3 (dimension), 5 (boolean) and 7 (string).

```
function mplib.expandtex (
    <t:mp>       instance,
    <t:integer>  expected,
    <t:string>   macro,
    <t:whatever> arguments
)
    return <t:whatever>
end
```

11.10 Bytemaps

The MetaPost graphic subsystem is mainly used for vector graphics but in LuaMetaTEX we also accommodate bitmaps or as we call them: bytemaps. A bytemap usually represents a gray scale of rgb matrix. We do have a Lua interface to them but as they originally were made for MetaPost there we integrated it into the language. They are (currently) not like other objects, so for instance they are not variables that can for instance be saved in a group. You define one, use it, and discard if afterwards. In ConTEXt the later is managed automatically. Because this is a rather special subsystem you should know what you're doing, for instance make sure that your bytemaps are not messed up by other features.

The implementation is lightweight, there can be multiple bytemaps, each indicated by an integer. A bytemap is eventually drawn by drawing a rectangle of given proportions and a `withbytemap` specifier. It is up to the backend to actually deal with the embedding in the final document. The following functions are normally only used in combination with Lua driven LuaMetaFun features.

A new bytemap is created by either copying an existing one or setting up a new one. They are stored in memory in an efficient way.

```
function mplib.newbytemap (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:bytemap> bytemap
)
    return <t:bytemap>
end
```

Here `nz` defaults to 1. The `data` string is optional. In various places in LuaMetaTEX we have some x/y or row/column helpers. Depending on how it evolved and in what subsystem we work we either pass the row first or the column.

```
function mplib.newbytemap (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> nx,
    <t:integer> ny,
    <t:integer> nz,
    <t:string>  data
)
    return <t:bytemap>
end
```

A specific byte or triplet is accessible with:

```
function mplib.setbytemap (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> x,
    <t:integer> y,
    <t:number>  r,
    <t:number>  g,
```

```
    <t:number>  b
)
    -- return nothing
end
```

and

```
function mplib.getbytemap (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> x,
    <t:integer> y
)
    return
        <t:integer>, <t:integer>, <t:integer>
end
```

Of course in the case of a gray scale (1 byte) you pass or get back one integer only. This is also the case for:

```
function mplib.fillbytemap (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:number>  r,
    <t:number>  g,
    <t:number>  b
)
    -- return nothing
end
```

You can get properties of a bytemap with the next helper, where the boolean determines of you also get back the bytes as string.

```
function mplib.getbytemapdata (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:boolean> bytestoo
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- nx
        <t:integer>, -- ny
        <t:integer>, -- nz
        <t:string>   -- bytes
end
```

In addition to these basics we have some helpers that one can best understand by looking at how they are used in ConTEXt. For instance `setbytemapoctave` was made when Mikael, Keith and Hans played with Perlin noise. It permits tuning such semi-random graphics with functions. It is part of the effects library.

Processing a bytemap with `processbytemap` hooks into the bytemap library and make function based manipulations possible. In a way the bytemap and effects libraries are just there to work with these LuaMetaFun features so they are related.

These two are a bit more generic:

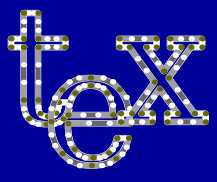
```
function mplib.downsamplebytemap (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:integer> source,
    <t:integer> target,
    <t:integer> factor
)
    -- return nothing
end
```

Downgrading is just going from rgb to gray scales.

```
function mplib.downgradebytemap (
    <t:mp>      instance,
    <t:integer> source,
    <t:integer> target
)
    -- return nothing
end
```

11.11 Experimental

The `injectvector` and `injectvectors` are experimental (and relate to meshing) but we need to pick up on that. The `getlastaddtype` is also not for users.



12 TEX

12.1 Introduction

Here we don't explain TEX itself but the interface between TEX and Lua. We don't need to talk nodes and tokens because they have their own chapters.

12.2 Status information

The `status` library provides information not only about the current run and system setup but also about all kind of variables and constants used in the engine. A difference between LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX is that every quantity that is hard coded is available as a constant to be used. The same is true for various bit sets for instance those use in setting options, as we will see in the `tex` library.

A number of run-time configuration items that you may find useful in message reporting, as well as an iterator function that gets all of the names and values as a table.

```
function status.list ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

The keys in the returned table are the known items, the value is the current value. There are top level items and items that are tables with sub entries. The current list gives:

toplevel statistics

banner	This is LuaMetaTeX, Version 2.11.10
copyright	Taco Hoekwater, Hans Hagen, Wolfgang Schuster & Mikael Sundqvist
distribution	regular
filename	luametatex-tex.tex
format_id	737
functionality	20261020
logfilename	luametatex.log
lua_format	6
lua_version	5.5
lua_version_major	5
lua_version_minor	5
lua_version_release	1
luametatex_engine	luametatex
luametatex_release	10
luametatex_verbose	2.11.10
luametatex_version	211
majorversion	2
minorversion	11
overload_state	1
permit_loadlib	false
permit_shebang	true
release	10
run_state	2

tex_memory_mode	1
used_compiler	gcc
used_cversion	23
used_likely	true
version	211.1

balancestate.*

callbacks	0
calls	286
checkedinserts	0
final	286
first	0
foundinserts	0
second	0
specification	0
sub	0

bufferstate.*

all	1000000
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	1
max	100000000
mem	1000000
min	1000000
ptr	0
set	10000000
stp	1000000
top	3182

callbackstate.*

bytecode	624
count	397363
direct	322
file	36560
function	179885
local	0
message	0
saved	158622
value	21350

enginestate.*

banner	This is LuaMetaTeX, Version 2.11.10
copyright	Taco Hoekwater, Hans Hagen, Wolfgang Schuster & Mikael Sundqvist
distribution	regular
format_id	737
functionality	20261020
logfilename	luametatex.log

luametatex_engine	luametatex
luametatex_release	10
luametatex_verbose	2.11.10
luametatex_version	211
overload_state	1
permit_loadlib	false
permit_shebang	true
run_state	2
tex_hash_size	262144
tex_memory_mode	1
used_compiler	gcc
used_cversion	23
used_likely	true
version	211.1

errorlinestate.*

max	255
min	132
set	250
top	0

errorstate.*

error	unset
errorcontext	unset
luaerror	unset

expandstate.*

max	1000000
min	10000
set	10000
top	10

filestate.*

all	16000
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	32
max	2000
mem	500
min	500
ptr	6
set	2000
stp	250
top	11

fontstate.*

all	17016164

ext	17014164
ini	-1
itm	8
max	100000
mem	250
min	250
ptr	66
set	100000
stp	250
top	250

halferrorlinestate.*

max	255
min	80
set	234
top	0

hashstate.*

all	2400000
ext	0
ini	0
itm	16
max	2097152
mem	150000
min	150000
ptr	6194
set	250000
stp	100000
top	495867

hyphenationstate.*

checked	35670
exceptions	316
hyphenated	34052
lists	35670
nothing	24430
words	46855

inputstate.*

all	320000
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	32
max	100000
mem	10000
min	10000
ptr	7
set	100000

stp	10000
top	51

insertstate.*

all	36000
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	72
max	500
mem	500
min	25
ptr	11
set	250
stp	25
top	500

languagestate.*

all	2192
ext	192
ini	0
itm	8
max	10000
mem	250
min	250
ptr	5
set	250
stp	250
top	250

linebreakstate.*

align	table: 00000420e19ff030
brokenlines	444
dbox	table: 00000420e19fe520
doubletwins	0
insert	table: 00000420e19fefd0
lefttwins	0
lua	table: 00000420e19ff0f0
math	table: 00000420e19ff0c0
noalign	table: 00000420e19ff060
normal	table: 00000420e19feee0
output	table: 00000420e19ff000
reset	table: 00000420e19ff120
righttwins	0
span	table: 00000420e19ff090
textlines	19604
vadjust	table: 00000420e19fefa0
vbox	table: 00000420e19fef70
vcenter	table: 00000420e19fe4f0

vmode	table: 00000420e19fef10
vtop	table: 00000420e19fef40

lookupstate.*

all	1
ext	0
ini	53567
itm	-1
max	2097152
mem	-1
min	150000
ptr	58785
set	250000
stp	100000
top	262146

luastate.*

bytecodebytes	16304
bytecodes	1018
functionsize	32768
propertiessize	10000
statebytes	340728655
statebytesmax	340728655

markstate.*

all	1400
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	28
max	10000
mem	50
min	50
ptr	28
set	250
stp	50
top	50

mvlstate.*

all	1160
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	116
max	500
mem	10
min	10
ptr	0
set	10

stp	10
top	10

neststate.*

all	116000
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	116
max	10000
mem	1000
min	1000
ptr	0
set	10000
stp	1000
top	19

nodestate.*

all	90005840
ext	5840
ini	0
itm	9
max	100000000
mem	10000000
min	10000000
ptr	-175717
set	100000000
stp	5000000
top	203106

parameterstate.*

all	80000
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	4
max	100000
mem	20000
min	20000
ptr	1
set	100000
stp	10000
top	60

poolstate.*

all	1094436
ext	0
ini	977304
itm	1
max	100000000

mem	1094436
min	10000000
ptr	-1
set	10000000
stp	1000000
top	-1

readstate.*

filename	luametatex-tex.tex
iocode	5
linenumber	95
skiplinenumber	57

savestate.*

all	160000
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	16
max	500000
mem	10000
min	100000
ptr	388
set	500000
stp	10000
top	1451

sparsestate.*

all	2384032
ext	0
ini	-1
itm	1
max	-1
mem	2384032
min	-1
ptr	-1
set	-1
stp	-1
top	-1

stringstate.*

all	2400000
ext	0
ini	2150736
itm	16
max	2097152
mem	150000
min	150000
ptr	58802

set	500000
stp	100000
top	58802

texstate.*	
approximate	134033224
hashmisses	6194
hashslots	262144

tokenstate.*	
all	16000000
ext	0
ini	591123
itm	8
max	10000000
mem	2000000
min	2000000
ptr	696512
set	10000000
stp	1000000
top	702628

warningstate.*	
warning	unset
warningtag	unset

The `getconstants` query gives back a table with all kind of internal quantities and again these are only relevant for diagnostic and development purposes. Many are good old TEX constants that are describes in the original documentation of the source but some are definitely LuaMetaTEX specific.

```
function status.getconstants ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

The returned table contains:

constants.*	
active_character_namespace	
all_fitness_values	255
assumed_math_control	4125694
awful_bad	1073741823
decent_criterion	12
default_catcode_table	-1
default_character_control	0
default_deadcycles	25
default_eqno_gap_step	1000
default_hangafter	1
default_output_box	255
default_pre_display_gap	2000

```
default_rule                          26214
default_space_factor                   1000
default_tolerance                     10000
deplorable                           100000
eject_penalty                        -10000
ignore_depth                      -65536000
infinite_bad                          10000
infinite_penalty                      10000
infinity                         2147483647
large_width_excess                  7230584
loose_criterion                          99
math_all_class                           61
math_begin_class                         62
math_default_penalty                  10001
math_end_class                           63
math_first_user_class                    20
math_last_user_class                     60
max_attribute_register_index           8191
max_box_register_index                32767
max_bytecode_index                    65535
max_calculated_badness                 8189
max_cardinal                     4294967295
max_character_code                  1114111
max_data_value                      2097151
max_dimen                        1073741823
max_dimen_register_index               8191
max_dimension                    1073741823
max_dimension_register_index           8191
max_endline_character                   127
max_float_register_index               8191
max_font_adjust_shrink_factor           500
max_font_adjust_step                    100
max_font_adjust_stretch_factor         1000
max_function_reference              2097151
max_glue_register_index                4095
max_half_value                        32767
max_halfword                     1073741823
max_int_register_index                 8191
max_integer                      2147483647
max_integer_register_index             8191
max_limited_scale                      1000
max_mark_index                         9999
max_math_class_code                      63
max_math_family_index                    63
max_math_scaling_factor                5000
max_math_style_scale                   2000
max_muglue_register_index              4095
max_mvl_index                           500
max_n_of_bytecodes                    65536
```

```
max_n_of_catcode_tables               256
max_n_of_fitness_values                15
max_n_of_fonts                     100000
max_n_of_languages                  10000
max_n_of_marks                      10000
max_n_of_math_families                 64
max_newline_character                 127
max_quarterword                     65535
max_scale_factor                   100000
max_size_of_word                    1000
max_space_factor                   32767
max_toks_register_index             8191
max_twin_length                       16
min_cardinal                           0
min_data_value                         0
min_dimen                  -1073741823
min_dimension              -1073741823
min_halfword               -1073741823
min_infinity               -2147483647
min_integer                -2147483647
min_mvl_index                          1
min_n_of_fitness_values                5
min_quarterword                        0
min_scale_factor                       0
min_space_factor                       0
no_catcode_table                      -2
null                                   0
null_flag                  -1073741824
null_font                              0
one_bp                             65781
preset_rule_thickness       1073741824
running_rule               -1073741824
sa_part_high                         128
sa_part_low                           64
sa_part_middle                       256
small_stretchability              1663497
special_space_factor                  999
tex_eqtb_size                      345867
tex_hash_prime                     262103
tex_hash_size                      262144
tex_memory_mode                         1
two                                131072
undefined_math_parameter    1073741823
unity                              65536
unused_attribute_value     -2147483647
unused_math_family                   255
unused_math_style                    255
unused_script_value                    0
```

```
unused_state_value                      0
zero_glue                               0
```

Most variables speak for themselves, some are more obscure. For instance the `runstate` variable indicates what the engine is doing:

`0x00` initializing
`0x01` updating
`0x02` production

These overviews can get asked for, for instance with `getrunstatevalues` in the `tex` library. Most of these constants are stable but especially for those that relate to evolving engine functionality there can be changes, so keep an eye on these mappings!

The individual states can be fetched with the following helpers:

```
function status.getbalancestate       ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getbufferstate        ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getcallbackstate      ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getdumpstate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.geterrorlinestate     ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.geterrorstate         ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getexpandstate        ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getfilestate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getfontstate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.gethalferrorlinestate ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.gethashstate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.gethyphenationstate   ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getinputstate         ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getinsertstate        ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getlanguagestate      ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getlinebreakstate     ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getlookupstate        ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getluastate           ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getmarkstate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getmvlstate           ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getneststate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getnodestate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getparameterstate     ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getpoolstate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getreadstate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getsavestate          ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getsparsestate        ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getstringstate        ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.gettexstate           ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.gettokenstate         ( ) return <t:table> end
function status.getwarningstate       ( ) return <t:table> end
```

The error and warning messages can be wiped with:

```
function status.resetmessages ( )
```

```
    -- no return values
end
```

12.3 Everything TEX

12.3.1 Introduction

The tex library contains a large list of (possibly virtual) internal TEX parameters that are partially writable. The designation 'virtual' means that these items are not properly defined in Lua, but are only front-ends that are handled by a metatable that operates on the actual TEX values. As a result, most of the Lua table operators (like pairs and #) do not work on such items. In addition to this kind of access we have getters and setters, which are the preferred way, but e keep the field like accessors around for compatibility reasons.

At the moment, it is possible to access almost every parameter that you can use after **\the**, is a single token or is sort of special in TEX. This excludes parameters that need extra arguments, like **\the\scriptfont**. The subset comprising simple integer and dimension registers are writable as well as readable (like **\tracingcommands** and **\parindent**).

12.3.2 Registers

Among of the oldest accessors to internals are tex.dimen and tex.count. This permits calls like this:

```
\setbox0\hbox{test}
\directlua{tex.sprint(tex.box[0].width)}
```

to give us (in this case typeset): 1250880 scaled points. Here we access a box register, get back a userdata node, and access one of its fields. The skip registers also are stored on userdata. The register are accessed in the following way; watch the different value types that you get:

```
<t:integer> value = tex.attribute [index]
<t:node>    value = tex.skip      [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.glue      [index]
<t:node>    value = tex.muskip    [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.muglue    [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.dimen     [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.count     [index]
<t:number>  value = tex.posit     [index]
<t:string>  value = tex.toks      [index]
<t:node>    value = tex.box       [index]
```

You can also assign values:

```
tex.attribute [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.skip      [index] = value -- <t:node>
tex.glue      [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.muskip    [index] = value -- <t:node>
tex.muglue    [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.dimen     [index] = value -- <t:integer>
```

```
tex.count     [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.posit     [index] = value -- <t:number>
tex.toks      [index] = value -- <t:string>
tex.box       [index] = value -- <t:node>
```

Be warned that an assignment like

```
tex.box[0] = tex.box[2]
```

does not copy the node list, it just duplicates a node pointer. If **\box**2 will be cleared by TEX commands later on, the contents of **\box**0 becomes invalid as well. To prevent this from happening, always use `node.copylist` unless you are assigning to a temporary variable:

```
tex.box[0] = node.copylist(tex.box[2])
```

When you access a TEX parameter a look up takes place. For read–only variables that means that you will get something back, but when you set them you create a new entry in the table thereby making the original invisible.

Although these are actually not stored in arrays but in hashes, the various 'codes' can also be accessed this way:

```
<t:integer> value = tex.sfcode   = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.lccode   = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.uccode   = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.hccode   = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.hmcode   = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.amcode   = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.cccode   = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.catcode  = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.mathcode = [index]
<t:integer> value = tex.delcode  = [index]
```

and

```
tex.sfcode   = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.lccode   = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.uccode   = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.hccode   = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.hmcode   = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.amcode   = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.cccode   = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.catcode  = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.mathcode = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
tex.delcode  = [index] = value -- <t:integer>
```

The getters are

```
function tex.getamcode  ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getcatcode ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getcccode  ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.gethccode  ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
```

```
function tex.gethmcode  ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getlccode  ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getsfcode  ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getuccode  ( <t:integer> character ) return <t:integer> end
```

and the setters:

```
function tex.setamcode  ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setcatcode ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setcccode  ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.sethccode  ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.sethmcode  ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setlccode  ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setsfcode  ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setuccode  ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> value ) end
```

The `setlccode` and `setuccode` additionally allow you to set the associated sibling at the same time by passing an extra argument.

```
function tex.setlccode  ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> lcvalue, <t:integer>
                                                                      ucvalue ) end
function tex.setuccode  ( <t:integer> character, <t:integer> ucvalue, <t:integer>
                                                                      lcvalue ) end
```

The function call interface for `setcatcode` also allows you to specify a category table to use on assignment or on query (default in both cases is the current one):

```
function tex.setcatcode (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:integer> character,
    <t:integer> value
)
    -- no return values
end
```

All these setters accept an initial `global` string.

12.3.3 Setters and getters

Most of TEX's parameters can be accessed directly by using their names as index in the `tex` table, or by using one of the functions `tex.get` and `tex.set`. The exact parameters and return values differ depending on the actual parameter. In most cases we have integers but especially glue have more properties than just the amount. For the parameters that *can* be set, it is possible to use `global` as the first argument to `tex.set`. Them being more complete is an argument for using setters instead of assignments.

The `set` function is meant for what we call internal parameter. These can be registers but without a known number (one can actually figure out the internal number via the token library).

```
function tex.set ( <t:string> name, <t:whatever> value )
    -- no return values
end
```

```
function tex.set ( "global", <t:string> name, <t:whatever> value )
    -- no return values
end
```

You can get back a value with:

```
function tex.get ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:whatever>
end
```

Glue is kind of special because there are five values involved. The return value is a `glue_spec` node but when you pass `false` as last argument to `tex.get` you get the width of the glue and when you pass `true` you get all five values. Otherwise you get a node which is a copy of the internal value so you are responsible for its freeing at the Lua end. When you set a glue quantity you can either pass a `glue_spec` or upto five numbers.

Traditional TEX has 256 registers per type, e-TEX bumps that to 32K and LuaMetaTEX doubles that. But how many are enough? Do we really need that many different attributes and glue specifiers?

In LuaMetaTEX on the one hand can go lower on registers and at the same time go beyond with alternatives when using named quantities.

It is possible to define named registers with t**\attributedef**, **\countdef**, **\dimendef**, **\skipdef**, **\floatdef** or **\toksdef** control sequences as indices to these tables and these can be accessed by name at the Lua end. Here are some examples:

```
tex.count.scratchcounter = 123
tex.dimen.scratchdimen   = "20pt"

tex.setcount(          "scratchcounter", 123)
tex.setdimen(          "scratchdimen",   10 *65536)
tex.setdimen("global", "scratchdimen",   "10pt")

enormous = tex.dimen.maxdimen
enormous = tex.getdimen("maxdimen")

unknown = tex.dimen[3]
unknown = tex.getdimen(3)
```

Of course this assumes that these registers are defined. What you can do depends on the type:

- The count registers accept and return Lua numbers (integers in this case).
- The dimension registers accept Lua numbers (in scaled points) or strings with a dimension.
- The token registers accept and return Lua strings. Lua strings are converted to and from token lists using **\the\toks** style expansion: all category codes are either space (10) or other (12).
- The skip registers accept and return `glue_spec` userdata node objects (see the description of the node interface elsewhere in this manual).
- The glue registers are just skip registers but instead of userdata accept verbose (integers).

- Like the counts, the attribute registers accept and return integers.
- Float (aka posit) registers accept and return floating point numbers.

The `setglue` function accepts upto five arguments:

```
function tex.setskip (
    <t:string> register, -- can also be an index
    <t:node>   value     -- glue_spec
)
    -- no return values
end

function tex.setglue (
    <t:string>  register, -- can also be an index
    <t:integer> amount,
    <t:integer> stretch,
    <t:integer> shrink,
    <t:integer> stretchorder,
    <t:integer> shrinkorder
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Actually there can be one more argument here because as first argument we can pass `"global"`. The whole repertoire is:

```
function tex.getattribute ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getcount     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getdimen     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getfloat     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:number>  end
function tex.getskip      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:node>    end
function tex.getmuskip    ( <t:string> name ) return <t:node>    end
function tex.gettoks      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string>  end

function tex.getglue   ( <t:string> name        ) return <t:integer>, ... end
function tex.getmuglue ( <t:string> name        ) return <t:integer>, ... end
function tex.getglue   ( <t:string> name, false ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getmuglue ( <t:string> name, false ) return <t:integer> end
```

and

```
function tex.setattribute (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value) end
function tex.setcount     (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value) end
function tex.setdimen     (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value) end
function tex.setfloat     (<t:string> name, <t:number>  value) end
function tex.setmuskip    (<t:string> name, <t:node> value) end
function tex.setskip      (<t:string> name, <t:node>   value) end
function tex.settoks      (<t:string> name, <t:string>  value) end

function tex.setglue      (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value, ...) end
function tex.setmuglue    (<t:string> name, <t:integer> value, ...) end
```

Just to be clear, getting a glue has two variants, the third one is just a reduced variant:

```
function tex.getskip (
    <t:string> register -- can also be an index
)
    return <t:node> -- a glue_spec
end

function tex.getglue (
    <t:string>  register -- can also be an index
)
    return
        <t:integer> -- amount,
        <t:integer> -- stretch,
        <t:integer> -- shrink,
        <t:integer> -- stretchorder,
        <t:integer> -- shrinkorder
end

function tex.getglue (
    <t:string> register, -- can also be an index
    false
)
    return <t:integer> amount,
end
```

When `tex.gettoks` gets an extra argument `true` it will return a table with userdata tokens. For tokens registers we have an alternative where a catcode table is specified:

```
function tex.scantoks (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:integer> registerindex, -- or just a name
    <t:string>  data
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Again there is the option to pass `"global"` as first argument. Here is an example that used the default ConTEXt catcode table index `tex.ctxcatcodes`.

```
local t = tex.scantoks("global",tex.ctxcatcodes,3,"$e=mc^2$")
```

This is a bit different getter that was introduced to accommodate interfacing between TEX and MetaPost. We specify what kind of parsing takes place:

```
function tex.expandasvalue (
    <t:integer> kind, -- how interpreted
    <t:string>  name  -- macro name
)
    return <t:integer> | <t:boolean> | <t:string>
end
```

`0x00` none `0x01` integer `0x02` cardinal `0x03` dimension

0x04	skip	0x06	float	0x08	node	0x0A	conditional
0x05	boolean	0x07	string	0x09	direct		

12.3.4 Fonts

There are a few functions that deal with fonts. The next function relates a control sequence to a font identifier. This is not to be confused with registering font data in the engine which happens with the functions in the `font` library. This is basically a setter that as one some in the `token` library also accepts prefixes (like `global`):

```
function tex.definefont (
    <t:string>  name,
    <t:integer> fontid,
    <t:string>  prefix
 -- there can be more prefixes
)
    -- no return values
end
```

In LuaTEX and other engines the file names are stored in the table of equivalents but not so in LuaMetaTEX. But for old times sake we keep some getters in the `tex` library, as they are basically 'convert' commands. The next two are like **\fontid** and **\fontname**:

```
function tex.fontidentifier ( <t:integer> id ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.fontname       ( <t:integer> id ) return <t:string>  end
```

When no `id` is given the current font is assumed, as if **\font** was the argument to the mentioned equivalent macros, so here we have: `<5: DejaVuSansMono @ 10.0pt>` and `DejaVuSansMono at 10.0pt`.

We can query the font id bound to a family (and optionally style):

```
function tex.getfontoffamily (
    <t:integer> family,
    <t:integer> style   -- 0, 1, 2
)
     return <t:integer> -- id
end
```

This is a good place to mention a pitfall when it comes to accessing some internals. Many variables are just that, variables, but there are also some that need an argument. This means that we get the following:

Lua call	result (if any)
`tex.fontname`	
`tex.fontidentifier`	
`tex.fontname()`	`DejaVuSerif at 10.0pt`
`tex.fontidentifier()`	`<1: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>`
`tex.get("fontname",-1)`	`DejaVuSerif at 10.0pt`
`tex.get("fontidentifier",-1)`	`<1: DejaVuSerif @ 10.0pt>`

When called as 'field' we get nothing. When called as a function we get the font info of the id passes as argument. When no argument is given the current font is used. When we use a getter the id is

mandate but a negative value will again make that the current font is used. Making the first two use the current font and the last two accept no second argument is technically possible but complicating the code for these few cases makes no sense. We already handle more than in LuaTEX anyway.

12.3.5 Box registers

It is possible to set and query actual boxes, coming for instance from `\hbox`, `\vbox` or `\vtop`, using the node interface as defined in the `node` library. In the setters you can pass as first argument `global` if needed. Alternatively you can use the `tex.box` array interface.

```
function tex.setbox (
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:node>    packedlist
)
    -- no return values
end

function tex.setbox (
    <t:string> name,
    <t:node>   packedlist
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The getters return a packed list or `nil` when the register is void.

```
function tex.getbox (
    <t:integer> index
)
    return <t:node>
end

function tex.getbox (
    <t:string> name
)
    return <t:node>
end
```

You can split a box:

```
local vlist =
function tex.splitbox (
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:integer> mode
)
```

The remainder is kept in the original box and a packaged vlist is returned. This operation is comparable to the **`\vsplit`** operation. The mode can be `additional` or `exactly` and concerns the split off box.

12.3.6 Marks

There is a dedicated getter for marks:

```
function tex.getmark (
    <t:string>  name,
    <t:integer> markindex
)
    -- no return values
end

function tex.getmark ( )
    return <t:integer> -- max mark class
end
```

The first argument can also be an integer, actually the subtype of a mark node:

0x00	current	0x03	bottom
0x01	top	0x04	splitfirst
0x02	first	0x05	splitbottom

The largest used mark class is returned by:

```
function tex.getlargestusedmark ( )
    return <t:integer> -- max mark class
end
```

The currently used marks can be queried with:

```
function tex.getusedmarks ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

12.3.7 Inserts

Access to inserts is kind of special and often only makes sense when we are constructing the final page. Where in traditional TEX inserts use a **\dimen**, **\count**, **\skip** and **\box**, registers, in LuaMetaTEX we can use dedicted storage instead. This is why we need setters and getters.

```
function tex.getinsertdistance   ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertmultiplier ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertlimit      ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertcontent    ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:node>    end
function tex.getinsertheight     ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertdepth      ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinsertwidth      ( <t:integer> class ) return <t:integer> end
```

Only some properties can be set:

```
function tex.setinsertdistance   ( <t:integer> class, <t:integer> distance   ) end
function tex.setinsertmultiplier ( <t:integer> class, <t:integer> multiplier ) end
function tex.setinsertlimit      ( <t:integer> class, <t:integer> limit      ) end
function tex.setinsertcontent    ( <t:integer> class, <t:node>    list       ) end
```

12.3.8 Local boxes

Local boxes, **\localleftbox**, **\localrightbox** and specific for LuaMetaTEX, **\localmiddlebox**, are not regular box registers so they have dedicated accessors:

```
function tex.getlocalbox ( <t:integer> location )
    return <t:node>
end

function tex.setlocalbox ( <t:integer> location, <t:node> list )
    -- no return values
end
```

Instead of integers you can also use the name. Valid local box locations are:

0x00	left
0x01	right
0x02	middle

12.3.9 Constants

The name of this section is a bit misleading but reflects history. At some point LuaMetaTEX got a way to store values differently than in registers because it felt a bit weird to use registers for what actually are constant values. However, it was not that hard to make them behave like registers which opens up the possibility to reduce the number of registers at some point.

At the TEX end we have **\integerdef**, **\dimensiondef**, **\floatdef**, **\gluespecdef** and **\mugluespecdef** but at the Lua end we (currently) only handle the first three.

```
function tex.dimensiondef ( <t:string> name ) end
function tex.integerdef   ( <t:string> name ) end
function tex.positdef     ( <t:string> name ) end
```

These are the setters:

```
function tex.setdimensionvalue ( <t:string> name, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setintegervalue   ( <t:string> name, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setcardinalvalue  ( <t:string> name, <t:integer> value ) end
function tex.setpositvalue     ( <t:string> name, <t:number>  value ) end
```

and these the getters:

```
function tex.getdimensionvalue ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getintegervalue   ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getcardinalvalue  ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getpositvalue     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:number>  end
```

Now, in order to make access more convenient, the getters and setters that deal with these quantities that we discussed in a previous section also handle these ‘constants’.

The following helper is a bit tricky:

```
function tex.getregisterindex ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The integer that is returned can be used instead of a name when accessing a register,

```
\newcount \MyCount  \newinteger   \MyInteger
\newdimen \MyDimen  \newdimension \MyDimension

\startluacode
    context("[%s] [%s] [%s] [%s]",
        tex.getregisterindex("MyCount"),
        tex.getregisterindex("MyInteger"),
        tex.getregisterindex("MyDimen"),
        tex.getregisterindex("MyDimension")
    )
\stopluacode
```

This will only show something for the registers:

[273] [] [269] []

This is why we have a more complete completed solution:

```
tex.isattribute ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.iscount     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isdimen     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isfloat     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isglue      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.ismuglue    ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.ismuskip    ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isskip      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.istoks      ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
tex.isbox       ( <t:string> name ) return <t:integer> end
```

We now use this:

```
\startluacode
    context("[%s] [%s] [%s] [%s]",
        tex.iscount("MyCount"),
        tex.iscount("MyInteger"),
        tex.isdimen("MyDimen"),
        tex.isdimen("MyDimension")
    )
\stopluacode
```

This time all four names are resolved:

[273] [296952] [269] [173538]

The larger numbers are references to these ‘constants’. Using these instead of names in the getters (like `getcount` and `getdimen` can be more efficient when the number times we need access is very large because we bypass a hash lookup. Of course these numbers are to be seen as abstract references, so these larger numbers are unpredictable.

12.3.10 Nesting

The virtual table `nest` contains the currently active semantic nesting state (think building boxes). It has two main parts: a zero-based array of userdata for the semantic nest itself, and the numerical

value `ptr`, which gives the highest available index. Neither the array items in `nest[]` nor `ptr` can be assigned to, because this would confuse the typesetting engine beyond repair, but you can assign to the individual values inside the array items.

The zero entry `nest[0]` is the outermost (main vertical list) level while `tex.nest [tex.nest.ptr]` is the current nest state. The next example shows all of this:

```
\setbox\scratchbox\vbox\bgroup
    \vbox\bgroup
        \startluacode
            for i=0,tex.nest.ptr do
                context(tostring(tex.nest[i]))
                context.space()
                context(tostring(tex.nest[i].prevdepth))
                context.par()
            end
        \stopluacode
    \egroup
\egroup
```

```
tex.nest.instance: 00000420e21e8ad0 266685
tex.nest.instance: 00000420e21e9070 -65536000
tex.nest.instance: 00000420e21e9100 -65536000
```

The current nest level (`tex.nest.ptr` is also available with:

```
function tex.getnestlevel ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The getter function is `tex.getnest`. You can pass a number (which gives you a list), nothing or `top`, which returns the topmost list, or the string `ptr` which gives you the index of the topmost list. The complete list of fields is: `delimiter`, `direction`, `head`, `mathbegin`, `mathdir`, `mathend`, `mathflatten`, `mathmainstyle`, `mathmode`, `mathparentstyle`, `mathscale`, `mathstyle`, `modeline`, `noad`, `prevdepth`, `prevgraf`, `spacefactor`, `tail`.

Possible modes are:

`0x00`	unset	`0x02`	horizontal
`0x01`	vertical	`0x03`	math

Valid directions are:

`0x00`	lefttoright	`0x01`	righttoleft

Math styles conforms to:

`0x00`	display	`0x04`	script
`0x01`	crampeddisplay	`0x05`	crampedscript
`0x02`	text	`0x06`	scriptscript
`0x03`	crampedtext	`0x07`	crampedscriptscript

The math begin and end classes can be built-in or ConTEXt specific:

0x00	ordinary	0x0C	fraction	0x18	integral	0x24	experimental
0x01	operator	0x0D	radical	0x19	ellipsis	0x25	fake
0x02	binary	0x0E	middle	0x1A	function	0x26	numbergroup
0x03	relation	0x0F	prime	0x1B	digit	0x27	maybeordinary
0x04	open	0x10	accent	0x1C	division	0x28	mayberelation
0x05	close	0x11	fenced	0x1D	factorial	0x29	maybebinary
0x06	punctuation	0x12	ghost	0x1E	wrapped	0x2A	chemicalbond
0x07	variable	0x13	vcenter	0x1F	construct	0x2B	implication
0x08	active	0x14	explicit	0x20	dimension	0x2C	continuation
0x09	inner	0x15	imaginary	0x21	unary		
0x0A	under	0x16	differential	0x22	textpunctuation		
0x0B	over	0x17	exponential	0x23	unspaced		

The helpers are:

```
function tex.getnest ( <t:integer> level )
    return <t:userdata> -- nest
end

function tex.getnest ( <t:integer> level, <t:string> name )
    return <t:whatever> -- value
end

function tex.setnest ( <t:integer> level, <t:string> name ), <t:whatever> value )
    -- no return values
end
```

Instead of an integer level you can use the keywords `ptr` and `top` instead of the current level or zero.

There are a few special cases that we make an exception for: `prevdepth`, `prevgraf` and `spacefactor`. These normally are accessed via the `tex.nest` table:

```
tex.nest[tex.nest.ptr].prevdepth   = <t:integer> value
tex.nest[tex.nest.ptr].spacefactor = <t:integer> value
```

However, the following also works for the current level:

```
tex.prevdepth   = <t:integer> value
tex.spacefactor = <t:integer> value
```

Keep in mind that when you mess with node lists directly at the Lua end you might need to update the top of the nesting stack's **\prevdepth** explicitly as there is no way LuaTEX can guess your intentions. By using the accessor in the `tex` tables, you get and set the values at the top of the nesting stack.

12.3.11 Directions

In LuaMetaTEX we only have left-to-right (l2r) and right-to-left (r2l) directions, contrary to LuaTEX that has few more. In the end those made no sense because the typesetter is not geared for that and demands can be met by a combination of TEX macros and Lua code.

There are two sets of helpers:

```
function tex.gettextdir ( ) return <t:integer end
```

```
function tex.getlinedir ( ) return <t:integer end
function tex.getmathdir ( ) return <t:integer end
function tex.getpardir  ( ) return <t:integer end
function tex.getboxdir  ( ) return <t:integer end
```

and:

```
function tex.settextdir ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values
function tex.setlinedir ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values
function tex.setmathdir ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values
function tex.setpardir  ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values
function tex.setboxdir  ( <t:integer> direction ) end -- no return values
```

For old times sake you can also set them using the virtual interfaces, like

```
tex.textdirection = 1
```

but in ConTEXt we consider this obsolete. In LuaMetaTEX we dropped the direction related keywords and only use numbers:

0x00	lefttoright
0x01	righttoleft

12.3.12 Special lists

The virtual table `tex.lists` contains the set of internal registers that keep track of building page lists. We have the following lists plus some extras: `alignhead`, `bestpagebreak`, `bestsize`, `contributehead`, `holdhead`, `insertheights`, `insertpenalties`, `leastpagecost`, `pagediscardshead`, `pagehead`, `pageinserthead`, `postadjusthead`, `postmigratehead`, `preadjusthead`, `premigratehead`, `splitdiscardshead`, `temphead`. Using these assumes that you know what TEX is doing.

The getter and setter functions are `getlist` and `setlist`. You have to be careful with what you set as TEX can have expectations with regards to how a list is constructed or in what state it is.

```
function tex.getlist ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:whatever> -- value
end

function tex.setlist ( <t:string> name ), <t:whatever> value )
    -- no return values
end
```

You can mess up I ways that make the engine fail, for instance due to wrongly linked lists, for instance maybe circular, or invalid nodes.

12.3.13 Printing

The engine reads tokens from file, token lists and Lua. When we print from Lua it ends up in a special data structure that efficiently handle strings, tokens and nodes because we can push all three back to TEX. It is important to notice that when we have a call to Lua, that new input is collected and only pushed onto the input stack when we are done. The total amount of returnable text from a **\directlua**

command or primitive driven function call is only limited by available system ram. However, each separate printed string has to fit completely in TEX's input buffer. The result of using these functions from inside callbacks is undefined at the moment. First we look at `tex.print` and `tex.sprint`.

```
function tex.print ( -- also tex.sprint
    <t:string> data,
    -- more strings
)
    -- nothing to return
end

function tex.print ( -- also tex.sprint
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string>  data,
    -- more strings
)
    -- nothing to return
end

function tex.print ( -- also tex.sprint
    <t:table> data
)
    -- nothing to return
end

function tex.print ( -- also tex.sprint
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:table>   data
)
    -- nothing to return
end
```

With `tex.print` each string argument is treated by TEX as a separate input line. If there is a table argument instead of a list of strings, this has to be a consecutive array of strings to print (the first non-string value will stop the printing process). The optional first integer parameter can be used to print the strings using the catcode regime defined by **`\catcodetable`**. A value of −1 means that the currently active catcode regime is used while −2 gives a result similar to **`\the\toks`**: all category codes are 12 (other) except for the space character, that has category code 10 (space). An invalid catcode table index is silently ignored, and the currently active catcode regime is used instead. The very last string of the very last `tex.print` command in a **`\directlua`** call will not have the **`\endlinechar`** appended, all others do.

In the case if `tex.sprint` each string argument is treated by TEX as a special kind of input line that makes it suitable for use as a partial line input mechanism:

- TEX does not switch to the 'new line' state, so that leading spaces are not ignored.
- No **`\endlinechar`** is inserted.
- Trailing spaces are not removed. Note that this does not prevent TEX itself from eating spaces as result of interpreting the line. For example, in

```
before\directlua{tex.sprint("\\relax")tex.sprint(" in between")}after
```

the space before `in between` will be gobbled as a result of the 'normal' scanning of `\relax`.

Although this needs to be used with care, in both function you can also pass token or node userdata objects. These get injected into the stream. Tokens had best be valid tokens, while nodes need to be around when they get injected. Therefore it is important to realize the following:

- When you inject a token, you need to pass a valid token userdata object. This object will be collected by Lua when it no longer is referenced. When it gets printed to TEX the token itself gets copied so there is no interference with the Lua garbage collection. You manage the object yourself. Because tokens are actually just numbers, there is no real extra overhead at the TEX end.
- When you inject a node, you need to pass a valid node userdata object. The node related to the object will not be collected by Lua when it no longer is referenced. It lives on at the TEX end in its own memory space. When it gets printed to TEX the node reference is used assuming that node stays around. There is no Lua garbage collection involved. Again, you manage the object yourself. The node itself is freed when TEX is done with it.

If you consider the last remark you might realize that we have a problem when a printed mix of strings, tokens and nodes is reused. Inside TEX the sequence becomes a linked list of input buffers. So, `"123"` or `"\foo{123}"` gets read and parsed on the fly, while `<t:token>` already is tokenized and effectively is a token list now. A `<t:node>` is also tokenized into a token list but it has a reference to a real node. Normally this goes fine. But now assume that you store the whole lot in a macro: in that case the tokenized node can be flushed many times. But, after the first such flush the node is used and its memory freed. You can prevent this by using copies which is controlled by setting **`\luacopyinputnodes`** to a non-zero value. This is one of these fuzzy areas you have to live with if you really mess with these low level issues.

The `tex.cprint` function is similar to `tex,sprint` but instead of am optional first catcodetable it takes a catcode value, like:

```
function tex.cprint (
     <t:integer> catcode,
     <string>    data
    -- more strings
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Of course the other three ways to call it are also supported. This might explain better:

```
\startluacode
tex.cprint( 1," 1: $&{\\foo}") tex.print("\\par") -- a lot of \bgroup s
tex.cprint( 2," 2: $&{\\foo}") tex.print("\\par") -- matching \egroup s
tex.cprint( 9," 9: $&{\\foo}") tex.print("\\par") -- all get ignored
tex.cprint(10,"10: $&{\\foo}") tex.print("\\par") -- all become spaces
tex.cprint(11,"11: $&{\\foo}") tex.print("\\par") -- letters
tex.cprint(12,"12: $&{\\foo}") tex.print("\\par") -- other characters
tex.cprint(14,"14: $&{\\foo}") tex.print("\\par") -- comment triggers
\stopluacode
```

We get two lines separate by one with only spaces:

11: $&{\foo}

12: $&{\foo}

A variant on `tex.sprint` is the next one:

```
function tex.tprint (
     { <t:integer> catcodetable, <string> data},
    -- more tables
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The `tex.write` function is a quick way to dump information. Each string argument is treated as a special kind of input line that only has spaces and letters.

```
function tex.write ( <t:string> data, ... )
    -- no return values
end

function tex.write ( <t:table> data)
    -- no return values
end
```

Often you can mix strings, nodes and tokens in a print but you might want to check beforehand what you pass:

```
function tex.isprintable ( <t:whatever> object )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

12.3.14 Numbers and dimensions

We can rounds a Lua number to an integer that is in the range of a valid TEX register value. If the number starts out of range, it generates a 'number too big' error as well.

```
function tex.round ( <t:number> n )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

In many places the engine multiplies and divides integers and ensures proper rounding. In LuaMeta-TEX some (new) mechanisms use doubles and round, especially when multiple scale value accumulate beyond the available integer range. The next function multiplies two Lua numbers and returns a rounded number that is in the range of a valid TEX register value. In the table version, it creates a copy of the table with all numeric top–level values scaled in that manner. If the multiplied number(s) are of range, it generates 'number too big' error(s) as well.

```
function tex.scale ( <t:number> original, <t:number> factor )
    return <t:integer> -- result
end

function tex.scale ( <t:table> originals, <t:number> factor )
    return <t:table> -- results
end
```

Here are companions to the primitives **\number** and **\romannumeral**. Both take the long route: the string goes to TEX, gets tokenized, then converted to what is wanted and finally ends up in Lua. They can be used like:

```
function tex.number       ( <t:integer> original ) return <t:string> end
function tex.romannumeral ( <t:integer> original ) return <t:string> end
```

The dimension converter takes a string and returns an integer that represents an dimension in scaled points. When a number is passed it gets rounded.

```
function tex.toscaled ( <t:string> original ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.toscaled ( <t:number> original ) return <t:integer> end
```

For completeness the engine also provides `tex.tonumber`:

```
function tex.tonumber ( <t:string> original ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.tonumber ( <t:number> original ) return <t:integer> end
```

For parsing the string, the same scanning and conversion rules are used that LuaTEX would use if it was scanning a dimension specifier in its TEX-like input language (this includes generating errors for bad values), expect for the following:

1. only explicit values are allowed, control sequences are not handled
2. infinite dimension units (`fil...`) are forbidden
3. `mu` units do not generate an error (but may not be useful either)

12.3.15 Primitives

Where in LuaTEX we explicitly need to enable the core set of primitives, LuaMetaTEX does that for you. The only reason that we still have a way to enable them is that it's a convenient way to create prefixed copies.

```
function tex.enableprimitives (
    <t:string> prefix,
    <t:table>  names
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Only valid primitive names are processed. Because it is no fun to enter the names, the second argument can be a boolean which indicates that all primitives will be used.

```
function tex.extraprimitives ( <t:string> subset, ... )
    return <t:table> -- names
end
```

Possible values for `subset` are:

```
0x01  tex
0x02  etex
0x04  luatex
0x08  luametatex
```

Instead of one or more strings you can also pass a number with the bit set that indicate what subset to include.

You can feed the result of the last one in `tex.enableprimitives`. If there is already a macro with that name if will not be overloaded.

```
tex.enableprimitives('normal',tex.extraprimitives(true))
```

A complete list of primitives can be requested by:

```
function tex.primitives ( )
    return <t:table> -- names
end
```

Of course the fact that the name is there doesn't mean that it has the same meaning.

A complete list of all hash entries can be asked for by the following function, but in ConTEXt it will be a big one, a bit more that 50.000 names, many of which are kind of weird because they use some namespace.

```
function tex.hashtokens ( )
    return <t:table> -- names
end
```

12.3.16 Values (constants)

The engine uses lots of very specific values (constants) for control. These can be status values (where are we currently), options (in nodes), control parameters (typesetting), etc. and all are available in lists that relate numbers to strings. Here is the complete list. We show the results in various places in the documentation. The advantage is that the engine is partly self documenting.

```
function tex.getadjustoptionvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getalignmentcontextvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getappendadjustcontextvalues   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getappendmigratecontextvalues  ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getautomigrationvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getautoparagraphvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getbadnessmodevalues           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getbalancecallbackvalues       ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getbalancestepoptionvalues     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getboxcontinuationvalues       ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getboxoptionvalues             ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getbreakcontextvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getbuildcontextvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getcharactercontrolvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getcharactertagvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getdirectionvalues             ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getdiscoptionvalues            ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getdiscpartvalues              ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getdoublescriptoptionvalues    ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getemptyparagraphmodevalues    ( ) return <t:table> end
```

```
function tex.geterrorrecoverymodevalues    ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.geterrorvalues                ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getfillvalues                 ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getflagvalues                 ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getfrozenparvalues            ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getglueoptionvalues           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getglyphdiscvalues            ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getglyphoptionvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getglyphprotectionvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getgroupvalues                ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.gethyphenationvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getiftypes                    ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getinsertcategoryvalues       ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getinsertoptionvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getinsertsplitvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getinteractionmodes           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getiovalues                   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getkerneloptionvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getkernoptionvalues           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlinebreakstatevalues       ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlistanchorvalues           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlistfields                 ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlistgeometryvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlistsignvalues             ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlocalboxlocations          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmarknames                  ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathclassoptionvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathcontrolvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathgluevalues             ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathoptionvalues           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathparametervalues        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathscriptordervalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathscriptsmodevalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathstylenamevalues        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathstylevalues            ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathsurroundvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathvariantpresets         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmathvariantvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmissingcharactervalues     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmodevalues                 ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getmvloptionvalues            ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getnestfields                 ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getnoadoptionvalues           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getnormalizelinevalues        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getnormalizeparvalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getnospacesmodevalues         ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpacktypevalues             ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpagecontextvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpagestatevalues            ( ) return <t:table> end
```

```
function tex.getparagraphfillmodevalues    ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getparagraphoptionvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getparametermodevalues        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getparcontextvalues           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getparmodevalues              ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpartriggervalues           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpenaltyoptionvalues        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getpreposststatevalues        ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getprimitiveorigins           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getprotrusionboundaryvalues   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getruleoptionvalues           ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getrunstatevalues             ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getshapingpenaltiesvalues     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getsnappingvalues             ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getspacefactorvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getspaceskipvalues            ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getspecialmathclassvalues     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getspecificationoptionvalues  ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.gettextcontrolvalues          ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getuleaderlocationvalues      ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getunitclassvalues            ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getvsplitcontextvalues        ( ) return <t:table> end

function tex.getpardataspecifications      ( ) return <t:table> end

function tex.getprimitivelegacies          ( ) return <t:table> end

function tex.getbalanceparameterfields     ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getbalanceresultfields        ( ) return <t:table> end

function tex.getlinebreakparameterfields   ( ) return <t:table> end
function tex.getlinebreakresultfields      ( ) return <t:table> end
```

12.3.17 Glyphs

There are a few (internal) integer parameters that relate to glyphs, **\glyphdatafield**, **\glyphstatefield**, **\glyphscriptfield** as well as the three scales **\glyphscale**, **\glyphxscale** and **\glyphyscale**, and for these we have fast accessors:

```
function tex.setglyphdata   ( <t:integer> ) end
function tex.setglyphstate  ( <t:integer> ) end
function tex.setglyphscript ( <t:integer> ) end
```

and

```
function tex.getglyphdata   ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getglyphstate  ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getglyphscript ( ) return <t:integer> end
```

The scale getter returns more:

```
function tex.getglyphscales ( )
```

```
    return
        <t:integer>, -- scale
        <t:integer>, -- xscale
        <t:integer>, -- yscale
        <t:integer>  -- data
end
```

12.3.18 Whatever

We have no backend so all that the next does is wiping the box:

```
function tex.shipout ( <t:integer> index )
    -- no return values
end
```

This helper function is useful during line break calculations. The arguments `t` and `s` are scaled values; the function returns the badness for when total `t` is supposed to be made from amounts that sum to `s`. The returned number is a reasonable approximation of $100(t/s)^3$.

```
function tex.badness (
    <t:integer> t,
    <t:integer> s
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The page builder can be in different states, so here is how you get the current state:

```
function tex.getpagestate ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

possible states are:

`0x00`	none	`0x03`	rule
`0x01`	insert	`0x04`	kern
`0x02`	box		

You can also check if we're in the output routine:

```
function tex.getoutputactive ( )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

An example of a (possible error triggering) complication is that TEX expects to be in some state, say horizontal mode, and you have to make sure it is when you start feeding back something from Lua into TEX. Normally a user will not run into issues but when you start writing tokens or nodes or have a nested run there can be situations that you need to enforce horizontal mode. There is no recipe for this and intercepting possible cases would weaken LuaTEX's flexibility. Therefore we provide `forcehmode` which is similar to **`\quitvmode`** at the TEX end, although in ConTEXt, that had it already, we always use **`\dontleavehmode`** as name.

```
function tex.forcehmode ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

The last node in the current list is queried with the following helper. If there is no node you get `nil`'s back.

```
function tex.lastnodetype ( )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- type
        <t:integer>  -- subtype
end
```

The current mode is available with:

```
function tex.getmode ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

Currently we're in mode `0x2`, a number that you can give meaning with `tex.getmodevalues()`:

`0x00`	unset
`0x01`	vertical
`0x02`	horizontal
`0x03`	math

The run state can be fetched with:

```
function tex.getrunstate ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

which returns one of:

`0x00`	initializing
`0x01`	updating
`0x02`	production

When we load create the format file we're initializing and when we then do a regular run we are in production. The updating state is just there so that we can deal with overload protection. In that case we need to honor the **`\enforced`** prefix, that can only be used when not in production mode. When a runtime module nevertheless wants to use that prefix it can (from Lua) set the mode to updating. This is all kind of ConTEXt specific because there we use the overload protection mechanism.

12.3.19 Files and lines

You can register a file id and line number in a `glyph`, `hlist` and `vlist` nodes, for instance for implementing a SyncTEX emulator. There are some helpers that relate to this. When the mode is zero, no registering will done, when set to one, lists will be tagged and larger values make that glyphs will be tagged too.

```
function tex.setinputstatemode ( <t:integer> mode )
```

```
    -- no return values
end
```

The file is registered as a number and the engine is agnostic about what it refers too. The same is true for lines. In fact, you can use these fields for whatever purpose you like.

```
function tex.setinputstatefile ( <t:integer> fileid )
    -- no return values
end

function tex.setinputstateline ( <t:integer> linenumber )
    -- no return values
end
```

The getters just return the currently set values:

```
function tex.getinputstatemode ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinputstatefile ( ) return <t:integer> end
function tex.getinputstateline ( ) return <t:integer> end
```

The file and line number are bound to the current input which can be nested. So, nesting is handled by the engine. However, you can overload that with the following two helpers. The values set will win over the ones bound to the current input file.

```
function tex.forceinputstatefile ( <t:integer> fileid )
    -- no return values
end

function tex.forceinputstateline ( <t:integer> linenumber )
    -- no return values
end
```

12.3.20 Interacting

In LuaMetaTEX valid interaction modes are:

`0x00`	batch	`0x02`	scroll
`0x01`	nonstop	`0x03`	errorstop

You can get and set the mode with:

```
function tex.getinteraction ( )
    return <t:integer> -- mode
end
function tex.setinteraction ( <t:integer> mode )
    -- no return values
end
```

When an error occurs it can be intercepted by a callback in which case you have to handle the feedback yourself. For this we have two helpers:

```
function tex.showcontext ( ) end
function tex.gethelptext ( ) end
```

An error can be triggered with:

```
function tex.error (
    <t:string> error,
    <t:string> help
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Of course these are also intercepted by the callback, when set, in which case the help text can be fetched. There can arise a situation where the engine is in a state where properly dealing with errors has become a problem. In that case you can use:

```
function tex.fatalerror ( <t:string> error) end
```

In this case the run will be aborted. For the record: in ConTEXt any error will quit the run, just because it makes no sense to try to recover from unpredictable situations and a fix is needed anyway.

12.3.21 Save levels

When you start a group or any construct that behaves like one, for instance boxing, the save stack is 'pushed' which means that a boundary is set. When the group ends the values that were saved in the current region (bounded) are restored. You can also do this in Lua:

```
function tex.pushsavelevel ( ) end
function tex.popsavelevel  ( ) end
```

This is a way to create grouping when in Lua so that when you set some register the engine will handle the restore.

12.3.22 Local control

When we talk about local control we mean expanding TEX code in a nested main loop. We start with explaining `tex.runlocal`. The first argument can be a number (of a token register), a macro name, the name of a token list or some (userdata) token made at the Lua end. The second argument is optional and when true forces expansion inside a definition. The optional third argument can be used to force grouping. The return value indicates an error: 0 means no error, 1 means that a bad register number has been passed, a value of 2 indicated an unknown register or macro name, while 3 reports that the macro is not suitable for local control because it takes arguments.

```
\scratchtoks{This is {\bf an example} indeed.}%
\startluacode
    tex.runlocal("scratchtoks")
\stopluacode
```

This typesets: This is **an example** indeed.

However, the neat thing about local control is that it happens immediately, so not after the Lua blob ended as with `tex.print ("\\the\scratchtoks")`.

```
\scratchtoks{\setbox\scratchbox\hbox{This is {\bf an example} indeed.}}%
\startluacode
```

```
    tex.runlocal("scratchtoks")
    context("The width is: %p",tex.box.scratchbox.width)
\stopluacode
```

This typesets: The width is: 140.53223pt

```
function tex.runlocal (
    <t:string>  name,
    <t:boolean> expand,
    <t:boolean> group
)
    return <t:integer> -- state
end
```

You can quit a local controlled expansion with the following, but if it works depends on the situation.

```
function tex.quitlocal ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

There might be situations that you push something from Lua to TEX in a local call and don't want interference. In that case wrapping might help but it is not that well tested yet:

```
function tex.pushlocal ( )
    -- no return values
end

function tex.poplocal  ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

The current level of local calls is available with:

```
function tex.getlocallevel ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

You can also run a string through TEX; the last three booleans are optional.

```
function tex.runlocal (
    <t:string>  str,
    <t:boolean> expand_in_definitions,
    <t:boolean> group,
    <t:boolean> ignore_undefind_cs
)
    -- no return values
end

function tex.runlocal (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string>  str,
    <t:boolean> expand_in_definitions,
    <t:boolean> group,
```

```
    <t:boolean> ignore_undefind_cs
)
    -- no return values
end
```

12.3.23 Math

There are some setters and getters that relate to the math sub engine. The setter has two variants:

```
function tex.setmathcode (
    <t:integer> target,
    <t:integer> class,
    <t:integer> family,
    <t:integer> character
)
    -- no return values
end

function tex.setmathcode (
    <t:integer> target,
    <t:table>   {
        <t:integer>, -- class
        <t:integer>, -- family
        <t:integer>  -- character
    }
)
    -- no return values
end
```

But there are two getters:

```
function tex.getmathcode (
    <t:integer> target
)
    return <t:table> {
        <t:integer>, -- class
        <t:integer>, -- family
        <t:integer>  -- character
    }
end

function tex.getmathcodes (
    <t:integer> target
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- class
        <t:integer>, -- family
        <t:integer>  -- character
end
```

Delcodes have different properties:

```
function tex.setdelcode (
    <t:integer> target,
    <t:integer> smallfamily,
    <t:integer> smallcharacter,
    <t:integer> largefamily,
    <t:integer> largecharacter
)
    -- no return values
end

function tex.setdelcode (
    <t:integer> target,
    <t:table>   {
        <t:integer>, -- smallfamily,
        <t:integer>, -- smallcharacter,
        <t:integer>, -- largefamily,
        <t:integer>  -- largecharacter
    }
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Again there two getters:

```
function tex.getdelcode (
    <t:integer> target
)
    return <t:table> {
        <t:integer>, -- smallfamily,
        <t:integer>, -- smallcharacter,
        <t:integer>, -- largefamily,
        <t:integer>  -- largecharacter
    }
end

function tex.getdelcodes (
    <t:integer> target
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- smallfamily,
        <t:integer>, -- smallcharacter,
        <t:integer>, -- largefamily,
        <t:integer>  -- largecharacter
 end
```

In LuaMetaTEX the engine can do without these delimiter specifications so they might eventually go way. The reason is that when a delimiter is needed we also accent a math character. When we use an OpenType model it's likely that the large character comes from the same font as the small character. And because the font is loaded under Lua control one can always use a virtual character to refer to an other font, something that we do in ConTEXt when we load a Type1 based math font.

A named math character is defined with `mathchardef` but contrary to its TEX counterpart **\mathchardef** it accepts three four extra parameters. The `properties`, `group` and `index` are data fields that the (for instance) the backend can use. We make no assumptions about their use because it is macro package dependent. There can be flags before the three optional parameters.

```
function tex.mathchardef (
    <t:string>  name
    <t:integer> class,
    <t:integer> family,
    <t:integer> character,
    <t:integer> flags,  -- zero or more
    <t:integer> properties,
    <t:integer> group,
    <t:integer> index
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The **\chardef** equivalent is:

```
function tex.chardef (
    <t:string>  name
    <t:integer> character,
    <t:integer> flags,  -- zero or more
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Math parameters have their own setter and getter. The first string is the parameter name minus the leading `Umath`, and the second string is the style name minus the trailing `style`. A value is either an integer (representing a dimension or number) or a list of glue components.

```
function tex.setmath (
    <t:string>  prefix, -- zero or more
    <t:integer> parameter,
    <t:integer> style,
    <t:integer> value,  -- one or more
)
    -- no return values
end

function tex.setmath (
    <t:integer> parameter,
    <t:integer> style
)
    return <t:integer> -- one or more value
end
```

For the next one you need to know what style variants which we will not discuss here:

```
function tex.getmathstylevariant (
    <t:integer> style,
```

```
    <t:integer> parameter
)
    <t:integer>, -- value
    <t:integer>  -- variant
end
```

12.3.24 Processing

You should not expect to much from the `triggerbuildpage` helpers because often TEX doesn't do much if it thinks nothing has to be done, but it might be useful for some applications. It just does as it says it calls the internal function that build a page, given that there is something to build.

```
function tex.triggerbuildpage ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

This function resets the parameters that TEX normally resets when a new paragraph is seen.

```
function tex.resetparagraph ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

The linebreak algorithm can also be applied explicitly to a node list that better be right. There is some checking done with respect to the beginning and paragraph and interfering glue.

```
function tex.linebreak (
    <t:direct> listhead,
    <t:table>  parameters
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- nodelist
        <t:table>   -- info
end
```

There are a lot of parameters that drive the process and many can be set. The interface might be extended in the future. Valid parameter fields are: `adjacentdemerits`, `adjdemerits`, `adjustspacing`, `adjustspacing`, `adjustspacingshrink`, `adjustspacingstep`, `adjustspacingstretch`, `baselineskip`, `brokenpenalties`, `brokenpenalty`, `clubpenalties`, `clubpenalty`, `direction`, `displaywidowpenalties`, `displaywidowpenalty`, `doublehyphendemerits`, `emergencyextrastretch`, `emergencyleftskip`, `emergencyrightskip`, `emergencystretch`, `exhyphenpenalty`, `finalhyphendemerits`, `fitnessclasses`, `hangafter`, `hangindent`, `hsize`, `hyphenationmode`, `hyphenpenalty`, `interlinepenalties`, `interlinepenalty`, `lastlinefit`, `leftskip`, `lefttwindemerits`, `linebreakchecks`, `linebreakoptional`, `linepenalty`, `lineskip`, `lineskiplimit`, `looseness`, `orphanlinefactors`, `orphanpenalties`, `parfillleftskip`, `parfillrightskip`, `parinitleftskip`, `parinitrightskip`, `parpasses`, `parshape`, `pretolerance`, `protrudechars`, `rightskip`, `righttwindemerits`, `shapingpenaltiesmode`, `shapingpenalty`, `singlelinepenalty`, `toddlerpenalties`, `tolerance`, `tracingfitness`, `tracingparagraphs`, `tracingpasses`, `widowpenalties`, `widowpenalty`. There is no need to set them (at all) because the usual TEX parameters apply when they are absent.

The result is a node list, it still needs to be vpacked if you want to assign it to a `\vbox`. The returned `info` table contains the following fields: `demerits`, `looseness`, `prevdepth`, `prevgraf`.

A list can be ‘prepared’ for a linebreak call with the next function. Normally the linebreak routine will do this. The return values are pointers to some relevant nodes.

```
function tex.preparelinebreak (
    <t:direct>  listhead
)
    return
        <t:node>, -- nodelist
        <t:table> -- info
        <t:direct>, -- par (head)
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:direct>, -- parinitleftskip
        <t:direct>, -- parinitrightskip
        <t:direct>, -- parfillleftskip
        <t:direct>  -- parfillrightskip
end

function tex.snapshotpar ( <t:integer> bitset )
    return <t:integer> -- state (bitset)
end
```

The bitset is made from:

0x00000001	hsize	0x00000800	linepenalty	0x00400000	toddlerpenalty
0x00000002	skip	0x00001000	clubpenalty	0x00800000	emergency
0x00000004	hang	0x00002000	widowpenalty	0x01000000	parpasses
0x00000008	indent	0x00004000	displaypenalty	0x02000000	linesnapping
0x00000010	parfill	0x00008000	brokenpenalty	0x04000000	singlelinepenalty
0x00000020	adjust	0x00010000	demerits	0x08000000	hyphenpenalty
0x00000040	protrude	0x00020000	shape	0x10000000	linebreakchecks
0x00000080	tolerance	0x00040000	line	0x20000000	twindemerits
0x00000100	stretch	0x00080000	hyphenation	0x40000000	fitnessclasses
0x00000200	looseness	0x00100000	shapingpenalty		
0x00000400	lastline	0x00200000	orphanpenalty		

This one is handy when you mess with lists and want to take some parameters into account that matter when building a paragraph. The returned fields are: `hangafter`, `hangindent`, `hsize`, `leftskip`, `parindent`, `parshape`, `rightskip`.

```
function tex.getparstate ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

A par shape normally is discarded when the paragraph ends but we can continue using it if needed. In that case we can shift the current array and either or not rotate.

```
function tex.shiftparshape (
    <t:integer> shift,
    <t:boolean> rotate
)
    -- no return values
end
```

A specification, like **\parshape** or **\widowpenalties** can be fetched with:

```
function tex.getspecification ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:table>
end
```

12.3.25 MVL

This returns the currently active main vertical list:

```
function tex.getcurrentmvl ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

12.3.26 Balancing

At the moment we only have a few balance related helpers. One of them can set the current `\balanceshape`.

```
function tex.setbalanceshape (
    <t:table> steps
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The indexed table has subtables with fields:

```
index       <t:integer>
options     <t:integer>
vsize       <t:number>
topskip     <t:number> <t:node>
bottomskip  <t:number> <t:node>
extra       <t:number>
```

12.4 The configuration

The global `texconfig` table is created empty. A startup Lua script could fill this table with a number of settings that are read out by the executable after loading and executing the startup file. Watch out: some keys are different from LuaTEX, which is a side effect of a more granular and dynamic memory management.

key	type	default	comment
buffersize	number/table	1000000	input buffer bytes
filesize	number/table	1000	max number of open files
fontsize	number/table	250	number of permitted fonts
hashsize	number/table	150000	number of hash entries
inputsize	number/table	10000	maximum input stack
languagesize	number/table	250	number of permitted languages
marksize	number/table	50	number of mark classes

nestsize	number/table	1000	max depth of nesting
nodesize	number/table	1000000	max node memory (various size)
parametersize	number/table	20000	max size of parameter stack
poolsize	number/table	10000000	max number of string bytes
savesize	number/table	100000	mas size of save stack
stringsize	number/table	150000	max number of strings
tokensize	number/table	1000000	max token memory
mvlsize	number/table	10	max mvl memory
expandsize	number/table	10000	max expansion nesting
propertiessize	number	0	initial size of node properties table
functionsize	number	0	initial size of Lua functions table
errorlinesize	number	79	how much or an error is shown
halferrorlinesize	number	50	idem
formatname	string		
jobname	string		
starttime	number		for testing only
useutctime	number		for testing only
permitloadlib	number		for testing only

If no format name or jobname is given on the command line, the related keys will be tested first instead of simply quitting. The statistics library has methods for tracking down how much memory is available and has been configured. The size parameters take a number (for the maximum allocated size) or a table with three possible keys: `size`, `plus` (for extra size) and `step` for the increment when more memory is needed. They all start out with a hard coded minimum and also have an hard coded maximum, the the configured size sits somewhere between these.

12.5 Input and output

This library takes care of the low-level I/O interface: writing to the log file and/or the console. The log file is registered with the following function:

```
function texio.setlogfile ( <t:file> handle )
    -- no return values
end
```

When TEX serializes something it uses a seslector to determine where it goes. The public selectors are:

0x01	logfile
0x02	terminal
0x03	terminal_and_logfile

This list can be fetched with `texio.getselectorvalues()`. Internaly we have a string selector, Lua buffer selector, and a so called pseudo selector that is used when we want to show the context of an error and that keeps track of the position. These are not opened up.

We start with `texio.write`. Without the `target` argument, it writes all given strings to the same location(s) that TEX writes messages to at that moment. If **`\batchmode`** is in effect, it writes only to the log, otherwise it writes to the log and the terminal. A target can be a number or string.

```
function texio.write ( <t:string> target, <t:string> s, ...)
    -- no return values
end

function texio.write ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end
```

If several strings are given, and if the first of these strings is or might be one of the targets above, the `target` must be specified explicitly to prevent Lua from interpreting the first string as the target.

The next function behaves like the above, but makes sure that the given strings will appear at the beginning of a new line. You can pass a single empty string if you only want to move to the next line. One reason why log output can slow down a run is that the engine works piecewise instead of printing lines. Deep down many writes go character by character because messages can occur everywhere during the expansion process.

```
function texio.writenl ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end
```

The selector variants below always expect a selector, so there is no misunderstanding if `logfile` is a string or selector.

```
function texio.writeselector ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end

function texio.writeselectornl ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end

function texio.writeselectorlf ( <t:string> s, ... )
    -- no return values
end
```

The next function should be used with care. It acts as **\endinput** but at the Lua end. You can use it to (sort of) force a jump back to TEX. Normally a Lua call will just collect prints and at the end bump an input level and flush these prints. This function can help you stay at the current level but you need to know what you're doing (or more precise: what TEX is doing with input).

```
function texio.closeinput ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

There are some temporary helpers, present for testing only: `getinputindex`, `getsourcefilename` and `forceendoffile`. In case you noticed them, pretend you didn't.


math

13 Math

Contents

13.1 Introduction **500**
13.2 Traditional alongside OpenType **500**
13.3 Intermezzo **501**
13.4 Unicode math characters **504**
13.5 Math classes **505**
13.6 Setting up the engine **505**
13.7 Math styles **507**
13.8 Math parameters **510**
13.9 Math spacing **519**
13.10 Fonts **521**
13.11 Scripts **522**

13.1 Introduction

There is a lot to tell about math typesetting in LuaMetaTEX but plenty is covered in articles, progress reports and manuals. Here we limit ourselves to some basics. This chapter mostly contains information that is not presented elsewhere. Because math in regular TEX is basically frozen and other macro packaged depend on that, the extensions we have in LuaMetaTEX are mainly useful for ConTEXt. Even there we don't use all features, because completely opening up and providing ways to control every aspect also served the purpose of testing: it just comes with the package.

This chapter is a variant on the one in the old LuaMetaTEX manual and it might evolve a bit. We will not discuss the many options that the engine provides, at least not now. There is an extensive "Math in ConTEXt" that shows the state of the art and serves as reference. In due time we might write some more about what happens deep down in the engine, although already plenty has been published during the upgrade, about dealing with math fonts as well as experimenting with new features. Because all gets wrapped in high level interfaces there is not that much need (nor audience) for endless explanations anyway. There are also examples given in the chapter that discusses all primitives. Most ConTEXt users will never see these low level math commands!

13.2 Traditional alongside OpenType

Because we started in 2019 from LuaTEX, by the end of 2021 this chapter started with this, even if we already reworked the engine:

> "At this point there is no difference between LuaMetaTEX and LuaTEX with respect to math. Well, this might no longer be true because we have more control options that define default behavior and also have a more extensive scaling model. Anyway, it should not look worse, and maybe even a bit better. The handling of mathematics in LuaTEX differs quite a bit from how TEX82 (and therefore pdfTEX) handles math. First, LuaTEX adds primitives and extends some others so that Unicode input can be used easily. Second, all of TEX82's internal special values (for example for operator spacing) have been made accessible and changeable via control sequences. Third, there are extensions that make it easier to use OpenType math fonts. And finally, there are some extensions that have been proposed or considered in the past that are now added to the engine.

> You might be surprised that we don't use all these new control features in ConTEXt LMTX, but who knows what might happen because users drive it. The main reason for adding so much is that I decided it made more sense to be complete now than gradually add more and more. At some point we should be able to say 'This is it'. Also, when looking at these features, you need to keep in mind that when it comes to math, LATEX is the dominant macro package and it never needed these engine features, so most are probably just here for exploration purposes."

Although we still process math as TEX does, there have been some fundamental changes to the machinery. Most of that is discussed in documents that come with ConTEXt and in Mikael Sundqvist math manual. Together we explored some new ways to deal with math spacing, penalties, fencing, operators, fractions, atoms and other features of the TEX engine. We started from the way ConTEXt used the already present functionality combine with sometimes somewhat dirty (but on the average working well) tricks.

Much in LuaMetaTEX math handling is about micro-typography and for us the results are quite visible. But, as far as we know, there have never been complaints or demands in the direction of the features discussed here. Also, TEX math usage outside ConTEXt is rather chiseled in stone (already for nearly three decades) so we don't expect other macro packages to use the new features anyway. Anyway, after spending a real lot of time on this we both decided that we're mostly feature complete.

13.3 Intermezzo

It is important to understand a bit how TEX handles math. The math engine is a large subsystem and basically can be divided in two parts: convert sequential input into a list of nodes where math related ones actually are sort of intermediate and therefore called noads.

In text mode entering `abc` results in three glyph nodes and `a b c` in three glyph nodes separated by (spacing) glue. Successive glyphs can be transformed in the font engine later on, just as hyphenation directive can be added. Eventually one (normally) gets a mix of glyphs, font kerns from a sequence of glyphs

In math mode `abc` results in three simple ordinary noads and `a b c` is equivalent to that: three noads. But `a bc` results in two ordinary noads where the second one has a sublist of two ordinary noads. Because characters have class properties, `( a + b = c )` results in a simple open noad, a simple ordinary, a simple binary, a simple ordinary, a simple relation, a simple ordinary and simple close noad. The next samples show a bit of this; in order to see the effects of spacing between ordinary atoms set it to `9mu`.

```
$a b c$ \quad $a bc$ \quad $abc$
```

$a\,b\,c \quad a\,b\,c \quad a\,b\,c$

With `\tracingmath 1` we get this logged:

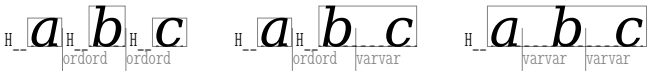
```
> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
```

```
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "62
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "63

> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "62
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "63

> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "62
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "63

${a} {b} {c}$ \quad ${a} {bc}$ \quad ${abc}$
```



If the previous log surprises you, that might be because in ConTEXt we set up the engine differently: curly braces don't create ordinary atoms. However, when we set `\mathgroupingmode 0` we return to what the engine normally does.

```
> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "62
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "63

> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\mathchar[ord][...], family "0, character "61
```

```
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\submlist[0][...][tracing depth 5 reached]

> \inlinemath=
\noad[ord][...]
.\nucleus
..\submlist[0][...][tracing depth 5 reached]
```

A warning is in place: tracing in LuaMetaTEX gets extended when we feel the need to gat more feedback from the engine. But it will only be more.

From the first example you can imagine what these sub lists look like: a list of ordinary atoms. The final list that is mix of nodes and yet unprocessed noads get fed into the math-to-hlist function and eventually the noads become glyphs, boxes, kerns, glue and whatever makes sense. A lot goes on there: think scripts, fractions, fences, accents, radicals, spacing, break control.

An example of more tricky scanning is shown here:

```
a +   1 \over 2   + b
a +  {1}\over{2}  + b
a + {{1}\over{2}} + b
```

In this case the `\over` makes TEX reconsider the last noad, remove if from the current list and save it for later, then scan for a following atom a single character turned atom or a braced sequence that then is an ordinary noad. In the end a fraction noad is made. When that gets processed later specific numerator and denominator styles get applied (explicitly entered style nodes of course overload this for the content). The fact that this construct is all about (implicit) ordinary noads, themselves captured in noads, combined with the wish for enforced consistent positioning of numerator and denominator, plus style overload, color support and whatever comes to mind means that in practice one will use a `\frac` macro that provides all that control.[19]

A similar tricky case is this:

```
      ( a +       ( b - c        ) + d        )
\left ( a + \left ( b - c \right ) + d \right )
```

Here the first line creates a list of noads but the second line create a fenced structure that is handled as a whole in order to make the fences match.[20] A fence noad will not break across lines as it is boxed and that is the reason why macro packages have these `\bigg` macros: they explicitly force a size using some trickery. In LuaMetaTEX a fence object can actually be unpacked when the class is configured as such. It is one of the many extensions we have.

There are some peculiar cases that one can run into but that actually are mentioned in the TEX book. Often these reasons for intentional side effects become clear when one thinks of the average usage but unless one is willing to spend time on the 'fine points of math' they can also interfere with intentions. The next bits of code are just for the reader to look at. Try to predict the outcome. Watch out: in LMTX the outcome is not what one gets by default in LuaTEX, pdfTEX or regular TEX.[21]

[19] There are now a `\Uover` primitives that look ahead and then of course still treat curly braces as math lists to be picked up.

[20] Actually instead of such a structure there could have been delimiters with backlinks but one never knows what happens with these links when processing passes are made so that fragility is avoided.

[21] One can set `\mathgroupingmode = 0` to get close.

```
$ 1 {\red +} 2$\par
$ 1 \color[red]{+} 2$\par
$ 1 \mathbin{\red +} 2$\par
$ a + - b + {- b} $
$ a \pm - b - {+ b} $
$ - b $
$ {- b} $
```

The message here is that when a user is coding the mindset with respect to grouping using curly braces has to be switched to math mode too. And how many users really read the relevant chapters of the TEX book a couple of times (as much makes only sense after playing with math in TEX)? Even if one doesn't grasp everything it's a worthwhile read. Also consider this: did you really ask for an ordinary atom when you uses curly braces where no lists were expected? And what would have happened when ordinary related spacing had been set to non-zero?

All the above (and plenty more) is why in ConTEXt LMTX we make extensive use of some LuaMetaTEX features, like: additional atom classes, configurable inter atom spacing and penalties, pairwise atom rules that can change classes, class based rendering options, more font parameters, configurable style instead of hard coded ones in constructs, more granular spacing, etc. That way we get quite predictable results but also drop some older (un)expected behavior and side effects. It is also why we cannot show many examples in the LuaMetaTEX manual: it uses ConTEXt and we see no reason to complicate out lives (and spend energy on) turning off all the nicely cooperating features (and then for sure forgetting one) just for the sake of demos. It also gave us the opportunity to improve existing mechanisms and/or at least simplify their sometimes complex code.

One last word here about sequences of ordinary atoms: the traditional code path feeds ordinary atoms into a ligature and kerning routine and does that when it encounters one. However, in OpenType we don't have ligatures not (single) kerns so there that doesn't apply. As we're not aware of traditional math fonts with ligatures and no one is likely to use these fonts with LuaMetaTEX the ligature code has been disabled.[22] The kerning has been redone a bit so that it permits us to fine tune spacing (which in ConTEXt we control with goodie files). The mentioned routine can also add italic correction, but that happens selectively because it is driven by specifications and circumstances. It is one of the places where the approach differs from the original, if only for practical reasons.

In addition to what we explained above, we mention the **\beginmathgroup** and **\endmathgroup** primitives behave like **\begingroup** and **\endgroup** but restore a style change inside the group. Style changes are actually injecting s special style noad which makes them sort of persistent till the next explicit change which can be confusing. This additional grouping model compensates for that.

13.4 Unicode math characters

For various reasons we need to encode a math character in a 32 bit number and because we often also need to keep track of families and classes the range of characters is limited to 20 bits. There are upto 64 classes (which is a lot more than in LuaTEX) and 64 families (less than in LuaTEX). The upper limit of characters is less that what Unicode offers but for math we're okay. If needed we can provide less families.

The math primitives from TEX are kept as they are, except for the ones that convert from input to math commands: `mathcode`, and `delcode`. These two now allow for the larger character codes argument

[22] It might show up in a different way if we feel the need in which case it's more related to runtime patches to fonts and class bases ligature building.

on the left hand side of the equals sign. The number variants of some primitives might be dropped in favor of the primitives that read more than one separate value (class, family and code). All relevant primitives are explained in the primitives chapter.

A delimiter in traditional TEX combines two definitions: the regular character and the way it can become a larger (extensible) one. The small character is just like a math character but the larger one can come from a different font (family). However, in OpenType math fonts the larger sizes (variants) and extensibles (parts) come from the same font. For that reason LuaMetaTEX also accepts a math character when a delimited specifier is expected. It basically means that we could remove delimiters as such from the engine. After all, when we let Lua load a traditional font we can as well use virtual fonts to handle the variants and extensibles, which is indeed the case when we support the jmh fonts.

13.5 Math classes

Most characters belong to a so called math class which can be set for each character if needed. There are upto 64 classes of which at this moment about 20 are predefined so, taking some future usage by the engine into account,you can assume 32 upto 60 to be available for any purpose. The number of families has been reduced from 256 to 64 which is plenty for daily use in an OpenType setup. If we ever need to expand the Unicode range there will be less families or we just go for a larger internal record. The values of begin and end classes and the number of classes can be fetched from the Lua status table. There are callbacks that makes it possible to report user classes when there is the need.

13.6 Setting up the engine

Rendering math has long been dominated by TEX but that changed when Microsoft came with OpenType math: an implementation as well as a font. Some of that was modeled after TEX and some was dictated (we think) by the way word processors deal with math. For instance, traditional TEX math has a limited set of glyph properties and therefore has a somewhat complex interplay between width and italic correction. There are no kerns, contrary to OpenType math fonts that provides staircase kerns. Interestingly TEX does have some ligature building going on in the engine.

In traditional TEX italic correction gets added to the width and selectively removed later (or compensated by some shift and/or cheating with the box width). When we started with LuaTEX we had to gamble quite a bit about how to apply parameters and glyph properties which resulted in different code paths, heuristics, etc. That worked on the average but fonts are often not perfect and when served as an example for another one the bad bits can be inherited. That said, over time the descriptions improved and this is what the OpenType specification has to say about italic correction now[23]:

1. When a run of slanted characters is followed by a straight character (such as an operator or a delimiter), the italics correction of the last glyph is added to its advance width.

2. When positioning limits on an N-ary operator (e.g., integral sign), the horizontal position of the upper limit is moved to the right by half the italics correction, while the position of the lower limit is moved to the left by the same distance.

3. When positioning superscripts and subscripts, their default horizontal positions are also different by the amount of the italics correction of the preceding glyph.

[23] https://docs.microsoft.com/en-us/typography/opentype/spec/math

The first rule is complicated by the fact that 'followed' is vague: in TEX the sequence `$ a b c def $` results in six separate atoms, separated by inter atom spacing. The characters in these atoms are the nucleus and there can be a super- and/or subscript attached and in LuaMetaTEX also a prime, super-prescript and/or sub-prescript.

The second rule comes from TEX and one can wonder why the available top accent anchor is not used. Maybe because bottom accent anchors are missing? Anyway, we're stuck with this now.

The third rule also seems to come from TEX. Take the '*f*' character: in TEX fonts that one has a narrow width and part sticks out (in some even at the left edge). That means that when the subscript gets attached it will move inwards relative to the real dimensions. Before the superscript an italic correction is added so what that correction is non-zero the scripts are horizontally shifted relative to each other.

Now look at this specification of staircase kerns[24]:

> The `MathKernInfo` table provides mathematical kerning values used for kerning of subscript and superscript glyphs relative to a base glyph. Its purpose is to improve spacing in situations such as omega with superscript f or capital V with subscript capital A.
>
> Mathematical kerning is height dependent; that is, different kerning amounts can be specified for different heights within a glyph's vertical extent. For any given glyph, different values can be specified for four corner positions, top-right, to-left, etc., allowing for different kerning adjustments according to whether the glyph occurs as a subscript, a superscript, a base being kerned with a subscript, or a base being kerned with a superscript.

Again we're talking super- and subscripts and should we now look at the italic correction or assume that the kerns do the job? This is a mixed bag because scripts are not always (single) characters. We have to guess a bit here. After years of experimenting we came to the conclusion that it will never be okay so that's why we settled on controls and runtime fixes to fonts.

This means that processing math is controlled by **`\mathfontcontrol`**, a numeric bitset parameter. The recommended bits are marked with a star but it really depends on the macro package to set up the machinery well. Of course one can just enable all and see what happens.[25] A list of possible control bits can be found in the primitives chapter where we discuss this parameter.

So, to summarize: the reason for this approach is that traditional and OpenType fonts have different approaches (especially when it comes to dealing with the width and italic corrections) and is even more complicated by the fact that the fonts are often inconsistent (within and between). In ConTEXt we deal with this by runtime fixes to fonts. In any case the Cambria font is taken as reference.

It is important to notice that in ConTEXt we no longer use italic correction at all. After many experiments Mikael Sundvist and I settled on a different approach where we use true widths, proper anchors, a new set of corner kerns, additional parameters and more. We tweak the fonts to match this model which in our opinion gives better results and less interference. We could actually simplify the engine and kick italics out of math but for the moment we keep it around so that we can show improvements in manuals and articles.

[24] Idem.

[25] This model was more granular and could even be font (and character) specific but that was dropped because fonts are too inconsistent and an occasional fit is more robust that a generally applied rule.

13.7 Math styles

It is possible to discover the math style that will be used for a formula in an expandable fashion (while the math list is still being read). To make this possible, LuaTEX adds the new primitive: **\mathstyle**. This is a 'convert command' like e.g. **\romannumeral**: its value can only be read, not set. Beware that contrary to LuaTEX this is now a proper number so you need to use **\number** or **\the** in order to serialize it.

The returned value is between 0 and 7 (in math mode), or −1 (all other modes). For easy testing, the eight math style commands have been altered so that they can be used as numeric values, so you can write code like this:

```
\ifnum\mathstyle=\textstyle
    \message{normal text style}
\else \ifnum\mathstyle=\crampedtextstyle
    \message{cramped text style}
\fi \fi
```

Sometimes you won't get what you expect so a bit of explanation might help to understand what happens. When math is parsed and expanded it gets turned into a linked list. In a second pass the formula will be build. This has to do with the fact that in order to determine the automatically chosen sizes (in for instance fractions) following content can influence preceding sizes. A side effect of this is for instance that one cannot change the definition of a font family (and thereby reusing numbers) because the number that got used is stored and used in the second pass (so changing **\fam** 12 mid-formula spoils over to preceding use of that family).

The style switching primitives like **\textstyle** are turned into nodes so the styles set there are frozen. The **\mathchoice** primitive results in four lists being constructed of which one is used in the second pass. The fact that some automatic styles are not yet known also means that the **\mathstyle** primitive expands to the current style which can of course be different from the one really used. It's a snapshot of the first pass state. As a consequence in the following example you get a style number (first pass) typeset that can actually differ from the used style (second pass). In the case of a math choice used ungrouped, the chosen style is used after the choice too, unless you group.

```
[a:\number\mathstyle]\quad
\bgroup
\mathchoice
    {\bf \scriptstyle       (x:d :\number\mathstyle)}
    {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (x:t :\number\mathstyle)}
    {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (x:s :\number\mathstyle)}
    {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (x:ss:\number\mathstyle)}
\egroup
\quad[b:\number\mathstyle]\quad
\mathchoice
    {\bf \scriptstyle       (y:d :\number\mathstyle)}
    {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (y:t :\number\mathstyle)}
    {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (y:s :\number\mathstyle)}
    {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (y:ss:\number\mathstyle)}
\quad[c:\number\mathstyle]\quad
\bgroup
\mathchoice
```

```
    {\bf \scriptstyle       (z:d :\number\mathstyle)}
    {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (z:t :\number\mathstyle)}
    {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (z:s :\number\mathstyle)}
    {\bf \scriptscriptstyle (z:ss:\number\mathstyle)}
\egroup
\quad[d:\number\mathstyle]
```

This gives:

$[a:0]$ $(\mathbf{x}:\mathbf{d}:\mathbf{4})$ $[b:0]$ $(\mathbf{y}:\mathbf{s}:\mathbf{6})$ $[c:0]$ $(\mathbf{z}:\mathbf{ss}:\mathbf{6})$ $[d:0]$

$[a:2]$ $(\mathbf{x}:\mathbf{t}:\mathbf{6})$ $[b:2]$ $(\mathbf{y}:\mathbf{ss}:\mathbf{6})$ $[c:2]$ $(\mathbf{z}:\mathbf{ss}:\mathbf{6})$ $[d:2]$

Using **\begingroup** ... **\endgroup** instead gives:

$[a:0]$ $(\mathbf{x}:\mathbf{d}:\mathbf{4})$ $[b:0]$ $(\mathbf{y}:\mathbf{s}:\mathbf{6})$ $[c:0]$ $(\mathbf{z}:\mathbf{ss}:\mathbf{6})$ $[d:0]$

$[a:2]$ $(\mathbf{x}:\mathbf{t}:\mathbf{6})$ $[b:2]$ $(\mathbf{y}:\mathbf{ss}:\mathbf{6})$ $[c:2]$ $(\mathbf{z}:\mathbf{ss}:\mathbf{6})$ $[d:2]$

This might look wrong but it's just a side effect of **\mathstyle** expanding to the current (first pass) style and the number being injected in the list that gets converted in the second pass. It all makes sense and it illustrates the importance of grouping. In fact, the math choice style being effective afterwards has advantages. It would be hard to get it otherwise.

So far for the more LuaTEXish approach. One problem with **\mathstyle** is that when you got it, and want to act upon it, you need to remap it onto say **\scriptstyle** which can be done with an eight branched **\ifcase**. This is why we also have a more efficient alternative that you can use in macros:

```
\normalexpand{ ... \givenmathstyle\the\mathstyle      ...}
\normalexpand{ ... \givenmathstyle\the\mathstackstyle ...}
```

This new primitive **\givenmathstyle** accepts a numeric value. The **\mathstackstyle** primitive is just a bonus (it complements **\mathstack**).

The styles that the different math components and their sub components start out with are no longer hard coded but can be set at runtime:

primitive name	default
\Umathoverlinevariant	cramped
\Umathunderlinevariant	normal
\Umathoverdelimitervariant	small
\Umathunderdelimitervariant	small
\Umathdelimiterovervariant	normal
\Umathdelimiterundervariant	normal
\Umathhextensiblevariant	normal
\Umathvextensiblevariant	normal
\Umathfractionvariant	cramped
\Umathradicalvariant	cramped
\Umathdegreevariant	doublesuperscript
\Umathaccentvariant	cramped
\Umathtopaccentvariant	cramped
\Umathbottomaccentvariant	cramped
\Umathoverlayaccentvariant	cramped

\Umathnumeratorvariant	numerator
\Umathdenominatorvariant	denominator
\Umathsuperscriptvariant	superscript
\Umathsubscriptvariant	subscript
\Umathprimevariant	superscript
\Umathstackvariant	numerator

These defaults remap styles are as follows:

default	result	mapping
`cramped`	cramp the style	D’ D’ T’ T’ S’ S’ SS’ SS’
`subscript`	smaller and cramped	S’ S’ S’ S’ SS’ SS’ SS’ SS’
`small`	smaller	S S S S SS SS SS SS
`superscript`	smaller	S S S S SS SS SS SS
`smaller`	smaller unless already SS	S S’ S S’ SS SS’ SS SS’
`numerator`	smaller unless already SS	S S’ S S’ SS SS’ SS SS’
`denominator`	smaller, all cramped	S’ S’ S’ S’ SS’ SS’ SS’ SS’
`doublesuperscript`	smaller, keep cramped	S S’ S S’ SS SS’ SS SS’

The main reason for opening this up was that it permits experiments and removed hard coded internal values. But as these defaults served well for decades there are no real reasons to change them.

There are a few math commands in TEX where the style that will be used is not known straight from the start. These commands (**\over**, **\atop**, **\overwithdelims**, **\atopwithdelims**) would therefore normally return wrong values for **\mathstyle**. To fix this, LuaTEX introduces a special prefix command: **\mathstack**:

```
$\mathstack {a \over b}$
```

The **\mathstack** command will scan the next brace and start a new math group with the correct (numerator) math style. The **\mathstackstyle** primitive relates to this feature.

LuaTEX has four new primitives to set the cramped math styles directly:

\crampeddisplaystyle
\crampedtextstyle
\crampedscriptstyle
\crampedscriptscriptstyle

These additional commands are not all that valuable on their own, but they come in handy as arguments to the math parameter settings that will be added shortly.

Because internally the eight styles are represented as numbers some of the new primitives that relate to them also work with numbers and often you can use them mixed. The **\tomathstyle** prefix converts a symbolic style into a number so **\number\tomathstyle\crampedscriptstyle** gives 5.

In Eijkhouts “TEX by Topic” the rules for handling styles in scripts are described as follows:

- In any style superscripts and subscripts are taken from the next smaller style. Exception: in display style they are in script style.
- Subscripts are always in the cramped variant of the style; superscripts are only cramped if the original style was cramped.

- In an `..\over..` formula in any style the numerator and denominator are taken from the next smaller style.
- The denominator is always in cramped style; the numerator is only in cramped style if the original style was cramped.
- Formulas under a **\sqrt** or **\overline** are in cramped style.

In LuaTEX one can set the styles in more detail which means that you sometimes have to set both normal and cramped styles to get the effect you want. (Even) if we force styles in the script using **\scriptstyle** and **\crampedscriptstyle** we get this:

style	example
default	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$
script	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$
crampedscript	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$

Now we set the following parameters using **\setmathspacing** that accepts two class identifier, a style and a value.

```
\setmathspacing 0 3 \scriptstyle = 30mu
\setmathspacing 0 3 \scriptstyle = 30mu
```

This gives a different result:

style	example
default	$b_{x=xx}^{x\ \ =xx}$
script	$b_{x}^{x\ \ =xx}$
crampedscript	$b_{x=xx}^{x=xx}$

But, as this is not what is expected (visually) we should say:

```
\setmathspacing 0 3 \scriptstyle         = 30mu
\setmathspacing 0 3 \scriptstyle         = 30mu
\setmathspacing 0 3 \crampedscriptstyle = 30mu
\setmathspacing 0 3 \crampedscriptstyle = 30mu
```

Now we get:

style	example
default	$b_{x}^{x\ \ =xx}$
script	$b_{x}^{x\ \ =xx}$
crampedscript	$b_{x}^{x\ \ =xx}$

13.8 Math parameters

In LuaTEX, the font dimension parameters that TEX used in math typesetting are now accessible via primitive commands. In fact, refactoring of the math engine has resulted in turning some hard codes properties into parameters.

The next needs checking ...

primitive name	description
\Umathquad	the width of 18 mu's
\Umathaxis	height of the vertical center axis of the math formula above the baseline
\Umathoperatorsize	minimum size of large operators in display mode
\Umathoverbarkern	vertical clearance above the rule
\Umathoverbarrule	the width of the rule
\Umathoverbarvgap	vertical clearance below the rule
\Umathunderbarkern	vertical clearance below the rule
\Umathunderbarrule	the width of the rule
\Umathunderbarvgap	vertical clearance above the rule
\Umathradicalkern	vertical clearance above the rule
\Umathradicalrule	the width of the rule
\Umathradicalvgap	vertical clearance below the rule
\Umathradicaldegreebefore	the forward kern that takes place before placement of the radical degree
\Umathradicaldegreeafter	the backward kern that takes place after placement of the radical degree
\Umathradicaldegreeraise	this is the percentage of the total height and depth of the radical sign that the degree is raised by; it is expressed in `percents`, so 60% is expressed as the integer 60
\Umathstackvgap	vertical clearance between the two elements in an **\atop** stack
\Umathstacknumup	numerator shift upward in **\atop** stack
\Umathstackdenomdown	denominator shift downward in **\atop** stack
\Umathfractionrule	the width of the rule in a **\over**
\Umathfractionnumvgap	vertical clearance between the numerator and the rule
\Umathfractionnumup	numerator shift upward in **\over**
\Umathfractiondenomvgap	vertical clearance between the denominator and the rule
\Umathfractiondenomdown	denominator shift downward in **\over**
\Umathfractiondelsize	minimum delimiter size for `\...withdelims`
\Umathlimitabovevgap	vertical clearance for limits above operators
\Umathlimitabovebgap	vertical baseline clearance for limits above operators
\Umathlimitabovekern	space reserved at the top of the limit
\Umathlimitbelowvgap	vertical clearance for limits below operators
\Umathlimitbelowbgap	vertical baseline clearance for limits below operators
\Umathlimitbelowkern	space reserved at the bottom of the limit
\Umathoverdelimitervgap	vertical clearance for limits above delimiters
\Umathoverdelimiterbgap	vertical baseline clearance for limits above delimiters
\Umathunderdelimitervgap	vertical clearance for limits below delimiters
\Umathunderdelimiterbgap	vertical baseline clearance for limits below delimiters
\Umathsubshiftdrop	subscript drop for boxes and subformulas
\Umathsubshiftdown	subscript drop for characters
\Umathsupshiftdrop	superscript drop (raise, actually) for boxes and subformulas
\Umathsupshiftup	superscript raise for characters
\Umathsubsupshiftdown	subscript drop in the presence of a superscript
\Umathsubtopmax	the top of standalone subscripts cannot be higher than this above the baseline
\Umathsupbottommin	the bottom of standalone superscripts cannot be less than this above

	the baseline
\Umathsupsubbottommax	the bottom of the superscript of a combined super- and subscript be at least as high as this above the baseline
\Umathsubsupvgap	vertical clearance between super- and subscript
\Umathspaceafterscript	additional space added after a super- or subscript
\Umathconnectoroverlapmin	minimum overlap between parts in an extensible recipe

In addition to the above official OpenType font parameters we have these (the undefined will get presets, quite likely zero):

primitive name	description
\Umathconnectoroverlapmin	
\Umathsubsupshiftdown	
\Umathfractiondelsize	
\Umathnolimitsupfactor	a multiplier for the way limits are shifted up and down
\Umathnolimitsubfactor	a multiplier for the way limits are shifted up and down
\Umathaccentbasedepth	the complement of **\Umathaccentbaseheight**
\Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth	the complement of **\Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight**
\Umathspacebeforescript	
\Umathprimeraise	
\Umathprimeraisecomposed	
\Umathprimeshiftup	the prime variant of **\Umathsupshiftup**
\Umathprimespaceafter	the prescript variant of **\Umathspaceafterscript**
\Umathprimeshiftdrop	the prime variant of **\Umathsupshiftdrop**
\Umathskeweddelimitertolerance	
\Umathaccenttopshiftup	the amount that a top accent is shifted up
\Umathaccentbottomshiftdown	the amount that a bottom accent is shifted down
\Umathaccenttopovershoot	
\Umathaccentbottomovershoot	
\Umathaccentsuperscriptdrop	
\Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent	
\Umathaccentextendmargin	margins added to automatically extended accents
\Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup	the amount that a wide top accent is shifted up
\Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown	the amount that a wide bottom accent is shifted down
\Umathdelimiterpercent	
\Umathdelimitershortfall	
\Umathradicalextensiblebefore	
\Umathradicalextensibleafter	

These relate to the font parameters and in ConTEXt we assign some different defaults and tweak them in the goodie files:

font parameter	primitive name	default
MinConnectorOverlap	**\Umathconnectoroverlapmin**	0
SubscriptShiftDownWithSuperscript	**\Umathsubsupshiftdown**	inherited
FractionDelimiterSize	**\Umathfractiondelsize**	undefined
FractionDelimiterDisplayStyleSize	**\Umathfractiondelsize**	undefined
NoLimitSubFactor	**\Umathnolimitsubfactor**	0
NoLimitSupFactor	**\Umathnolimitsupfactor**	0

AccentBaseDepth	**\Umathaccentbasedepth**	reserved
FlattenedAccentBaseDepth	**\Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth**	reserved
SpaceBeforeScript	**\Umathspacebeforescript**	0
PrimeRaisePercent	**\Umathprimeraise**	0
PrimeRaiseComposedPercent	**\Umathprimeraisecomposed**	0
PrimeShiftUp	**\Umathprimeshiftup**	0
PrimeShiftUpCramped	**\Umathprimeshiftup**	0
PrimeSpaceAfter	**\Umathprimespaceafter**	0
PrimeBaselineDropMax	**\Umathprimeshiftdrop**	0
SkewedDelimiterTolerance	**\Umathskeweddelimitertolerance**	0
AccentTopShiftUp	**\Umathaccenttopshiftup**	undefined
AccentBottomShiftDown	**\Umathaccentbottomshiftdown**	undefined
AccentTopOvershoot	**\Umathaccenttopovershoot**	0
AccentBottomOvershoot	**\Umathaccentbottomovershoot**	0
AccentSuperscriptDrop	**\Umathaccentsuperscriptdrop**	0
AccentSuperscriptPercent	**\Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent**	0
AccentExtendMargin	**\Umathaccentextendmargin**	0
FlattenedAccentTopShiftUp	**\Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup**	undefined
FlattenedAccentBottomShiftDown	**\Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown**	undefined
DelimiterPercent	**\Umathdelimiterpercent**	0
DelimiterShortfall	**\Umathdelimitershortfall**	0

These parameters not only provide a bit more control over rendering, they also can be used in compensating issues in font, because no font is perfect. Some are the side effects of experiments and they have CamelCase companions in the `MathConstants` table. For historical reasons the names are a bit inconsistent as some originate in TEX so we prefer to keep those names. Not many users will mess around with these font parameters anyway.[26]

Each of the parameters in this section can be set by a command like this:

```
\Umathquad\displaystyle=1em
```

they obey grouping, and you can use **\the\Umathquad\displaystyle** if needed.

There are quite some parameters that can be set and there are eight styles, which means a lot of keying in. For that reason is is possible to set parameters groupwise:

primitive name	D	D'	T	T'	S	S'	SS	SS'
\alldisplaystyles	+	+						
\alltextstyles			+	+				
\allscriptstyles					+	+		
\allscriptscriptstyles							+	+
\allmathstyles	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
\allmainstyles								
\allsplitstyles	+	+	+	+	−	−	−	−
\allunsplitstyles					+	+	+	+
\alluncrampedstyles	+		+		+		+	
\allcrampedstyles		+		+		+		+

[26] I wonder if some names should change, so that decision is pending.

These groups are especially handy when you set up inter atom spacing, pre- and post atom penalties and atom rules.

We already introduced the font specific math parameters but we tell abit more about them and how they relate to the original TEX font dimensions.

While it is nice to have these math parameters available for tweaking, it would be tedious to have to set each of them by hand. For this reason, LuaTEX initializes a bunch of these parameters whenever you assign a font identifier to a math family based on either the traditional math font dimensions in the font (for assignments to math family 2 and 3 using tfm-based fonts like `cmsy` and `cmex`), or based on the named values in a potential `MathConstants` table when the font is loaded via Lua. If there is a `MathConstants` table, this takes precedence over font dimensions, and in that case no attention is paid to which family is being assigned to: the `MathConstants` tables in the last assigned family sets all parameters.

In the table below, the one-letter style abbreviations and symbolic tfm font dimension names match those used in the TEXbook. Assignments to **`\textfont`** set the values for the cramped and uncramped display and text styles, **`\scriptfont`** sets the script styles, and **`\scriptscriptfont`** sets the scriptscript styles, so we have eight parameters for three font sizes. In the tfm case, assignments only happen in family 2 and family 3 (and of course only for the parameters for which there are font dimensions).

Besides the parameters below, LuaTEX also looks at the 'space' font dimension parameter. For math fonts, this should be set to zero.

variable / style	tfm / opentype
`\Umathaxis`	`axis_height` `AxisHeight`
`\Umathaccentbaseheight`	`xheight` `AccentBaseHeight`
`\Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight`	`xheight` `FlattenedAccentBaseHeight`
[6] **`\Umathoperatorsize`** D, D'	– `DisplayOperatorMinHeight`
[9] **`\Umathfractiondelsize`** D, D'	`delim1` `FractionDelimiterDisplayStyleSize`
[9] **`\Umathfractiondelsize`** T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	`delim2` `FractionDelimiterSize`
`\Umathfractiondenomdown` D, D'	`denom1` `FractionDenominatorDisplayStyleShiftDown`
`\Umathfractiondenomdown` T, T', S, S', SS, SS'	`denom2` `FractionDenominatorShiftDown`
`\Umathfractiondenomvgap` D, D'	`3*default_rule_thickness` `FractionDenominatorDisplayStyleGapMin`

\Umathfractiondenomvgap T, T’, S, S’, SS, SS’	default_rule_thickness FractionDenominatorGapMin
\Umathfractionnumup D, D’	num1 FractionNumeratorDisplayStyleShiftUp
\Umathfractionnumup T, T’, S, S’, SS, SS’	num2 FractionNumeratorShiftUp
\Umathfractionnumvgap D, D’	3*default_rule_thickness FractionNumeratorDisplayStyleGapMin
\Umathfractionnumvgap T, T’, S, S’, SS, SS’	default_rule_thickness FractionNumeratorGapMin
\Umathfractionrule	default_rule_thickness FractionRuleThickness
\Umathskewedfractionhgap	math_quad/2 SkewedFractionHorizontalGap
\Umathskewedfractionvgap	math_x_height SkewedFractionVerticalGap
\Umathlimitabovebgap	big_op_spacing3 UpperLimitBaselineRiseMin
[1] **\Umathlimitabovekern**	big_op_spacing5 0
\Umathlimitabovevgap	big_op_spacing1 UpperLimitGapMin
\Umathlimitbelowbgap	big_op_spacing4 LowerLimitBaselineDropMin
[1] **\Umathlimitbelowkern**	big_op_spacing5 0
\Umathlimitbelowvgap	big_op_spacing2 LowerLimitGapMin
\Umathoverdelimitervgap	big_op_spacing1 StretchStackGapBelowMin
\Umathoverdelimiterbgap	big_op_spacing3 StretchStackTopShiftUp
\Umathunderdelimitervgap	big_op_spacing2 StretchStackGapAboveMin
\Umathunderdelimiterbgap	big_op_spacing4 StretchStackBottomShiftDown
\Umathoverbarkern	default_rule_thickness

	OverbarExtraAscender
\Umathoverbarrule	default_rule_thickness OverbarRuleThickness
\Umathoverbarvgap	3*default_rule_thickness OverbarVerticalGap
[1] **\Umathquad**	math_quad <font_size(f)>
\Umathradicalkern	default_rule_thickness RadicalExtraAscender
[2] **\Umathradicalrule**	<not set> RadicalRuleThickness
[3] **\Umathradicalvgap** D, D’	default_rule_thickness+abs(math_x_height)/4 RadicalDisplayStyleVerticalGap
[3] **\Umathradicalvgap** T, T’, S, S’, SS, SS’	default_rule_thickness+abs(default_rule_thickness)/4 RadicalVerticalGap
[2] **\Umathradicaldegreebefore**	<not set> RadicalKernBeforeDegree
[2] **\Umathradicaldegreeafter**	<not set> RadicalKernAfterDegree
[2,7] **\Umathradicaldegreeraise**	<not set> RadicalDegreeBottomRaisePercent
[4] **\Umathspaceafterscript**	script_space SpaceAfterScript
\Umathstackdenomdown D, D’	denom1 StackBottomDisplayStyleShiftDown
\Umathstackdenomdown T, T’, S, S’, SS, SS’	denom2 StackBottomShiftDown
\Umathstacknumup D, D’	num1 StackTopDisplayStyleShiftUp
\Umathstacknumup T, T’, S, S’, SS, SS’	num3 StackTopShiftUp
\Umathstackvgap D, D’	7*default_rule_thickness StackDisplayStyleGapMin
\Umathstackvgap T, T’, S, S’, SS, SS’	3*default_rule_thickness StackGapMin
\Umathsubshiftdown	sub1

		SubscriptShiftDown
	\Umathsubshiftdrop	sub_drop SubscriptBaselineDropMin
[8]	**\Umathsubsupshiftdown**	– SubscriptShiftDownWithSuperscript
	\Umathsubtopmax	abs(math_x_height*4)/5 SubscriptTopMax
	\Umathsubsupvgap	4*default_rule_thickness SubSuperscriptGapMin
	\Umathsupbottommin	abs(math_x_height/4) SuperscriptBottomMin
	\Umathsupshiftdrop	sup_drop SuperscriptBaselineDropMax
	\Umathsupshiftup D	sup1 SuperscriptShiftUp
	\Umathsupshiftup T, S, SS,	sup2 SuperscriptShiftUp
	\Umathsupshiftup D’, T’, S’, SS’	sup3 SuperscriptShiftUpCramped
	\Umathsupsubbottommax	abs(math_x_height*4)/5 SuperscriptBottomMaxWithSubscript
	\Umathunderbarkern	default_rule_thickness UnderbarExtraDescender
	\Umathunderbarrule	default_rule_thickness UnderbarRuleThickness
	\Umathunderbarvgap	3*default_rule_thickness UnderbarVerticalGap
[5]	**\Umathconnectoroverlapmin**	0 MinConnectorOverlap

A few notes:

1. OpenType fonts set **\Umathlimitabovekern** and **\Umathlimitbelowkern** to zero and set **\Umathquad** to the font size of the used font, because these are not supported in the MATH table.

2. Traditional tfm fonts do not set **\Umathradicalrule** because TEX82 uses the height of the radical instead. When this parameter is indeed not set when LuaTEX has to typeset a radical, a backward compatibility mode will kick in that assumes that an oldstyle TEX font is used. Also, they do not set **\Umathradicaldegreebefore**, **\Umathradicaldegreeafter**, and **\Umathradicaldegreeraise**. These are then automatically initialized to 5/18quad, −10/18quad, and 60.

3. If tfm fonts are used, then the **\Umathradicalvgap** is not set until the first time LuaTEX has to typeset a formula because this needs parameters from both family 2 and family 3. This provides a partial backward compatibility with TEX82, but that compatibility is only partial: once the **\Umathradicalvgap** is set, it will not be recalculated any more.

4. When tfm fonts are used a similar situation arises with respect to **\Umathspaceafterscript**: it is not set until the first time LuaTEX has to typeset a formula. This provides some backward compatibility with TEX82. But once the **\Umathspaceafterscript** is set, **\scriptspace** will never be looked at again.

5. Traditional tfm fonts set **\Umathconnectoroverlapmin** to zero because TEX82 always stacks extensibles without any overlap.

6. The **\Umathoperatorsize** is only used in **\displaystyle**, and is only set in OpenType fonts. In tfm font mode, it is artificially set to one scaled point more than the initial attempt's size, so that always the 'first next' will be tried, just like in TEX82.

7. The **\Umathradicaldegreeraise** is a special case because it is the only parameter that is expressed in a percentage instead of a number of scaled points.

8. `SubscriptShiftDownWithSuperscript` does not actually exist in the 'standard' OpenType math font Cambria, but it is useful enough to be added.

9. `FractionDelimiterDisplayStyleSize` and `FractionDelimiterSize` do not actually exist in the 'standard' OpenType math font Cambria, but were useful enough to be added.

As this mostly refers to LuaTEX there is more to tell about how LuaMetaTEX deals with it. However, it is enough to know that much more behavior is configurable.

You can let the engine ignore a parameter with **\setmathignore**, like:

```
\setmathignore \Umathspacebeforescript 1
\setmathignore \Umathspaceafterscript  1
```

Be aware of the fact that a global setting can get unnoticed by users because there is no warning that some parameter is ignored.

There are a couple of parameters that don't relate to the font but are more generally influencing the appearances. Some were added for experimenting.

This is not complete

primitive	meaning
\Umathextrasubpreshift	
\Umathextrasubprespace	
\Umathextrasubshift	
\Umathextrasubspace	
\Umathextrasuppreshift	
\Umathextrasupprespace	
\Umathextrasupshift	
\Umathextrasupspace	
\Umathprimeshiftdrop	

13.9 Math spacing

Besides the parameters mentioned in the previous sections, there are also primitives to control the math spacing table (as explained in Chapter 18 of the TEXbook). This happens per class pair. Because we have many possible classes, we no longer have the many primitives that LuaTEX has but you can define then using the generic **\setmathspacing** primitive:

```
\def\Umathordordspacing     {\setmathspacing 0 0 }
\def\Umathordordopenspacing {\setmathspacing 0 4 }
```

These parameters are (normally) of type **\muskip**, so setting a parameter can be done like this:

```
\setmathspacing 1 0 \displaystyle=4mu plus 2mu % op ord Umathopordspacing
```

The atom pairs known by the engine are all initialized by `initex` to the values mentioned in the table in Chapter 18 of the TEXbook.

For ease of use as well as for backward compatibility, **\thinmuskip**, **\medmuskip** and **\thickmuskip** are treated specially. In their case a pointer to the corresponding internal parameter is saved, not the actual **\muskip** value. This means that any later changes to one of these three parameters will be taken into account. As a bonus we also introduced the **\tinymuskip** and **\pettymuskip** primitives, just because we consider these fundamental, but they are not assigned internally to atom spacing combinations.

In LuaMetaTEX we go a bit further. Any named dimension, glue and mu glue register as well as the constants with these properties can be bound to a pair by prefixing **\setmathspacing** by **\inherited**.

Careful readers will realize that there are also primitives for the items marked * in the TEXbook. These will actually be used because we pose no restrictions. However, you can enforce the remapping rules to conform to the rules of TEX (or yourself).

Every class has a set of spacing parameters and the more classes you define the more pairwise spacing you need to define. However, you can default to an existing class. By default all spacing is zero and you can get rid of the defaults inherited from good old TEX with **\resetmathspacing**. You can alias class spacing to an exiting class with **\letmathspacing**:

```
\letmathspacing class displayclass textclass scriptclass scriptscriptclass
```

Instead you can copy spacing with **\copymathspacing**:

```
\copymathspacing class parentclass
```

Specific paring happens with **\setmathspacing**:

```
\setmathspacing leftclass rightclass style value
```

Unless we have a frozen parameter, the prefix **\inherited** makes it possible to have a more dynamic relationship: the used value resolves to the current value of the given register. Possible values are the usual mu skip register, a regular skip or dimension register, or just some mu skip value.

A similar set of primitives deals with rules. These remap pairs onto other pairs, so **\setmathatomrule** looks like:

```
\setmathatomrule oldleftclass oldrightclass newleftclass newrightclass
```

The **\letmathatomrule** and **\copymathatomrule** primitives take two classes where the second is the parent.

The **\setmathprepenalty** and **\setmathpostpenalty** primitives take a class and penalty (integer) value. These are injected before and after atoms with the given class where a penalty of 10000 is a signal to ignore it.

The engine control options for a class can be set with **\setmathoptions**. The possible options are discussed elsewhere. This primitive takes a class number and an integer (bitset). For all these setters the ConTEXt math setup gives examples.

Math is processed in two passes. The first pass is needed to intercept for instance **\over**, one of the few TEX commands that actually has a preceding argument. There are often lots of curly braces used in math and these can result in a nested run of the math sub engine. However, you need to be aware of the fact that some properties are kind of global to a formula and the last setting (for instance a family switch) wins. This also means that a change (or again, the last one) in math parameters affects the whole formula. In LuaMetaTEX we have changed this model a bit. One can argue that this introduces an incompatibility but it's hard to imagine a reason for setting the parameters at the end of a formula run and assume that they also influence what goes in front.

```
$
                                          x \subscript  {-}
     \frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle  0pt  x \subscript  {0}
    {\frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle  5pt  x \subscript  {5}}
                                          x \subscript  {0}
    {\frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle 15pt  x \subscript {15}}
                                          x \subscript  {0}
    {\frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle 20pt  x \subscript {20}}
                                          x \subscript  {0}
     \frozen\Umathsubshiftdown\textstyle 10pt  x \subscript {10}
                                          x \subscript  {0}
$
```

The **\frozen** prefix does the magic: it injects information in the math list about the set parameter.

In LuaTEX 1.10+ the last setting, the `10pt` drop wins, but in LuaMetaTEX you will see each local setting taking effect. The implementation uses a new node type, parameters nodes, so you might encounter these in an unprocessed math list. The result looks as follows:

$$x \; x_{0} x_{5} x_{0} x \quad x \; x \quad x \; x \quad x$$

The **\mathatom** primitive is the generic one and it accepts a couple of keywords:

to be checked

keyword	argument	meaning
`attr`	int int	attributes to be applied to this atom
`leftclass`	class	the left edge class that determines spacing etc
`rightclass`	class	the right edge class that determines spacing etc
`class`	class	the general class
`unpack`		unpack this atom in inline math

source	int	a symbolic index of the resulting box
textfont		use the current text font
mathfont		use the current math font
limits		put scripts on top and below
nolimits		force scripts to be postscripts
nooverflow		keep (extensible) within target dimensions
options	int	bitset with options
void		discard content and ignore dimensions
phantom		discard content but retain dimensions

To what extend the options kick in depends on the class as well where and how the atom is used.

The original TEX engines has three atom modifiers: **\displaylimits**, **\limits**, and **\nolimits**. These look back to the last atom and set a limit related signal. Just to be consistent we have some more of that: **\Umathadapttoleft**, **\Umathadapttoright**, **\Umathuseaxis**, **\Umathnoaxis**, **\Umathphantom**, **\Umathvoid**, **\Umathsource**, **\Umathopenupheight**, **\Umathopenupdepth**, **\Umathlimits**, **\Umathnolimits**. The last two are equivalent to the lowercase ones with the similar names. Al these modifiers are cheap primitives and one can wonder if they are needed but that also now also applies to the original three. We could stick to one modifier that takes an integer but let's not diverge too much from the original concept.

The **\nonscript** primitive injects a glue node that signals that the next glue is to be ignored when we are in script or scriptscript mode. The **\noatomruling** does the same but this time the signal is that no inter-atom rules need to be applied.

13.10 Fonts

When we started with LuaTEX there was only Cambria as OpenType math font. However, as soon as we could load a wide font, and basic math handling was adapted to handle a fonts passed via Lua, in ConTEXt we switched to OpenType math exclusively. This was possible because at the same time virtual fonts were integrated in the engine. Because the way TEX approaches math differs from OpenType we had code paths that could handle both and were somewhat complex. Later these code paths were split more visible and detailed control over specific features was introduced. The reason for this came from the fact that the Latin Modern Math as well as additional fonts were a mix of OpenType and traditional (metric wise). Inconsistencies were handles by ConTEXt when loading and passing fonts and runtime patching was our way out. There is also some juggling of math lists in Lua involved.

In LuaMetaTEX much more control was added alongside many new features in rendering math. Although by making decisions with respect to fonts in the end we could potentially use a much simpler code base. However we keep what we have because we need to write articles, manuals, presentations etc. that show the differences. We settled on the fact that fonts are what they are and won't change. Font specific tweaks are dealt with in a math font goodie file: most tweaks are generic and applied to all fonts, some are optional, and many can be tuned by parameters. In the end one can argue that we render math a bit different due to different font and character properties; for instance we got rid of italic correction and often deal with kerning, variants and extensibles a bit different.

A consequence of this is that we will not describe in detail what happens in the math engine, first of all because we don't expect other macro packages to follow ConTEXt in the way it deals with rendering math and the LuaTEX kind of hybrid approach is likely good enough because after all there was never demand for more advanced math rendering nor attempts to extend the engines in that area. This

is why LuaMetaTEX tries to be LuaTEX compatible when it comes to the basics required by potential other usage than ConTEXt. However, we might eventually drop some eight bit font related features, simply because one can pass them wrapped in a Unicode and OpenType math disguise. This is to be decided.

The process of upgrading math is described in manuals, articles and presentations by the authors. There one can find a discussion about decisions made.

13.11 Scripts

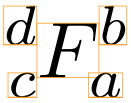
The LuaMetaTEX engine has native support for prescripts and primes. Here we dive a bit into the former. We start with a regular sub and superscript example:

```
\im { F _ {a} ^ {b} }
```



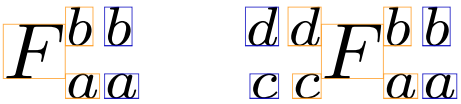
Depending on how the font is set up, a subscript might get a (negative) kern. Kerning at the top left of the nucleus is ignored, because one never sees it in for instance chemistry:

```
\im { F _ {a} ^ {b} ___ {c} ^^^ {d} }
```



There can be multiple pre- and postscripts. In traditional TEX one sometimes has to inject fake nuclei but in LuaMetaTEX this is done automatically. These are called continuation atoms.

```
\im { F
    _ {a} ^ {b}
    _ {a} ^ {b}
} \quad
\im { F
    _ {a} ^ {b} ___ {c} ^^^ {d}
    _ {a} ^ {b} ___ {c} ^^^ {d}
}
```



You will notice that the subscript no longer aligns, a feature that deals with rendering tensors. these features are controlled by the (four byte) `\mathdoublescriptmode` parameter. In ConTEXt this one is set up as follows:

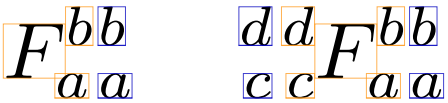
```
\mathdoublescriptmode
  "\tohexadecimal\numexpr
     \inheritclassdoublescriptmodecode
   + \discardshapekerndoublescriptmodecode
   + \realignscriptsdoublescriptmodecode
```

```
    + \reorderprescriptsdoublescriptmodecode
    \relax
    \tohexadecimal\mathcontinuationcode % 2 bytes
    \tohexadecimal\mathcontinuationcode % 2 bytes
    \tohexadecimal\mathcontinuationcode % 2 bytes
```

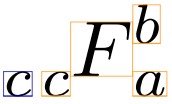
The first byte set the options, the second the subtype of the continuation node and the last two set the left and right class values. In ConTEXt we have a dedicated continuation class (`0x2C`). So, current value of this parameter is `0xF2C2C2C`, but we can do this:

```
\advance\mathdoublescriptmode
    -"\tohexadecimal\discardshapekerndoublescriptmodecode 000000
```

and get:

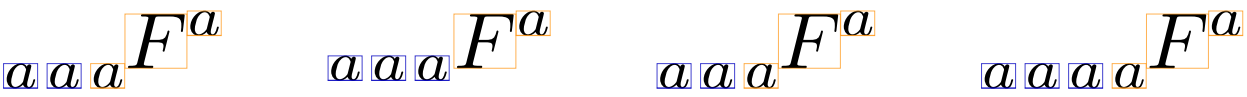


```
\im { F
    _ {a} ^ {b}
    ___ {c}
    ___ {c}
}
```



The next set of examples demonstrates that the **\noscript** injects a bogus atom that breaks the alignment chain.

```
\im { F ^ {a}
    ___ {a} ___ {a} ___ {a}
} \quad
\im { F ^ {a}
    \noscript ___ {a} ___ {a} ___ {a}
} \quad
\im { F ^ {a}
    ___ {a} \noscript ___ {a} ___ {a}
} \quad
\im { F ^ {a}
    ___ {a}  ___ {a} \noscript ___ {a} ___ {a}
}
```



```
\im { F ^ {a} _{a}
    ___ {a} ___ {a} ___ {a}
} \quad
\im { F ^ {a} _{a}
```

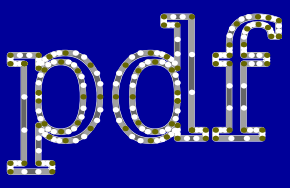
```
    \noscript ___ {a} ___ {a} ___ {a}
} \quad
\im { F ^ {a} _{a}
    ___ {a} \noscript ___ {a} ___ {a}
} \quad
\im { F ^ {a} _{a}
    ___ {a}  ___ {a} \noscript ___ {a} ___ {a}
}
```

$$aaa{F}{a}{a} \qquad aaa{F}{a}{a} \qquad aaa{F}{a}{a} \qquad aaaa{F}{a}{a}$$

A more useful application of this is the following:

```
\im {F
    __ {a} \noscript
    ^^ {b} \noscript
    ^^ {c} \noscript
    __ {d}
}
```

$$F_{a}^{bc}{}_{d}$$


pdf

14 PDF

Contents

14.1 Introduction **527**
14.2 Lua interfaces **527**

14.2.1 Opening and closing 527
14.2.2 Getting basic information 528
14.2.3 The main structure 529
14.2.4 Getting content 529
14.2.5 Getters 530
14.2.6 Streams 531
14.2.7 Low level getters 532
14.2.8 Getting tables 533
14.2.9 References 533

14.1 Introduction

There is no backend, not even a dvi one. In ConTEXt the main backend is a pdf backend and it is written in Lua. The pdf format makes it possible to embed jpeg and png encoded images as well as pdf images. All these have to be dealt with in Lua. Although we can parse pdf files with Lua, the engine has a dedicated pdf library on board written by Paweł Jackowski.

A pdf file is basically a tree of objects and one descends into the tree via dictionaries (key/value) and arrays (index/value). There are a few topmost dictionaries that start at the document root and those are accessed more directly.

Although everything in pdf is basically an object we have to wrap a few in so called userdata Lua objects.

PDF	Lua
null	<t:nil>
boolean	<t:boolean>
integer	<t:integer>
float	<t:number>
name	<t:string>
string	<t:string>
array	<t:userdata>
dictionary	<t:userdata>
stream	<t:userdata>
reference	<t:userdata>

The interface is rather limited to creating an instance and getting objects and values. Aspects like compression and encryption are mostly dealt with automatically. In ConTEXt users use an interface layer around these, if they use this kind of low level code at all as it assumes familiarity with how pdf is constructed.

14.2 Lua interfaces

14.2.1 Opening and closing

There are two ways to open a pdf file:

```
function pdfe.open ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:pdf>  -- pdffile
end

function pdfe.openfile( <t:file> filehandle )
    return <t:pdf> -- pdffile
end
```

Instead of from file, we can read from a string:

```
function pdfe.new ( <t:string>  somestring, <t:integer> somelength )
    return <t:pdf> -- pdffile
end
```

Closing the instance is done with:

```
function pdfe.close ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    -- no return values
end
```

When we used `pdfe.open` the library manages the file and closes it when done. You can check if a document opened as expected by calling:

```
function pdfe.getstatus ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:integer> -- status
end
```

A table of possible return codes can be queried with:

```
function pdfe.getstatusvalues ( )
    return <t:table> -- values
end
```

Currently we have these:

`-2`	is protected
`-1`	failed to open
`0`	not encrypted
`1`	is decrypted

An encrypted document can be decrypted by the next command where instead of either password you can give `nil` and hope for the best:

```
function pdfe.unencrypt (
    <t:pdf>    pdffile,
    <t:string> userpassword,
    <t:string> ownerpassword
)
    return <t:integer> -- status
end
```

14.2.2 Getting basic information

A successfully opened document can provide some information:

```
function pdfe.getsize( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:integer> -- nofbytes
end

function pdfe.getversion( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- major
        <t:integer>  -- minor
end

function pdfe.getnofobjects ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:integer> -- nofobjects
end

function pdfe.getnofpages ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:integer> -- nofpages
end

function pdfe.getmemoryusage ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- bytes
        <t:integer>  -- waste
end
```

14.2.3 The main structure

For accessing the document structure you start with the so called catalog, a dictionary:

```
function pdfe.getcatalog( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end
```

The other two root dictionaries are accessed with:

```
function pdfe.gettrailer ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end

function pdfe.getinfo ( <t:pdf> pdffile )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end
```

14.2.4 Getting content

A specific page can conveniently be reached with the next command, which returns a dictionary.

```
function pdfe.getpage ( <t:pdf> pdffile, <t:integer> pagenumber )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end
```

Another convenience command gives you the (bounding) box of a (normally page) which can be inherited from the document itself. An example of a valid box name is `MediaBox`.

```
function pdfe.getbox ( <t:pdf> pdffile, <t:string> boxname )
    return <t:table> -- boundingbox
end
```

14.2.5 Getters

Common values in dictionaries and arrays are strings, integers, floats, booleans and names (which are also strings) and these are also normal Lua objects. In some cases a value is a userdata object and you can use this helper to get some more information:

```
function pdfe.type ( <t:whatever> value )
    return type -- string
end
```

Stings are special because internally they are delimited by parenthesis (often `pdfdoc` encoding) or angle brackets (hexadecimal or 16 bit Unicode).

```
function pdfe.getstring (
    <t:userdata> object,
    <t:string>   key | <t:integer> index
)
    return
        <t:string>  -- decoded value
end
```

When you ask for more you get more:

```
function pdfe.getstring (
    <t:userdata> object,
    <t:string>   key | <t:integer> index,
    <t:boolean>  more
)
    return
        <t:string>, -- original
        <t:boolean>  -- hexencoded
end
```

Basic types are fetched with:

```
function pdfe.getinteger ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:integer> -- value
end

function pdfe.getnumber ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:number> -- value
end

function pdfe.getboolean ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:boolean> -- value
end
```

A name is (in the pdf file) a string prefixed by a slash, like `<< /Type /Foo >>`, for instance keys in a dictionary or keywords in an array or constant values.

```
function pdfe.getname ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:string> -- value
end
```

Normally you will use an index in an array and key in a dictionary but dictionaries also accept an index. The size of an array or dictionary is available with the usual # operator.

```
function pdfe.getdictionary ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end

function pdfe.getarray ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return <t:userdata> -- array
end

function pdfe.getstream ( <t:userdata>, <t:string> key | <t:integer> index )
    return
        <t:userdata> -- stream
        <t:userdata> -- dictionary
end
```

These commands return dictionaries, arrays and streams, which are dictionaries with a blob of data attached.

Before we come to an alternative access mode, we mention that the objects provide access in a different way too, for instance this is valid:

```
print(pdfe.open("foo.pdf").Catalog.Type)
```

At the topmost level there are `Catalog`, `Info`, `Trailer` and `Pages`, so this is also okay:

```
print(pdfe.open("foo.pdf").Pages[1])
```

14.2.6 Streams

Streams are sort of special. When your index or key hits a stream you get back a stream object and dictionary object. The dictionary you can access in the usual way and for the stream there are the following methods:

```
function pdfe.openstream ( <t:userdata> stream, <t:boolean> decode)
    return <t:boolean> okay
end

function pdfe.closestream ( <t:userdata> stream )
    -- no return values
end

function pdfe.readfromstream ( <t:userdata> stream )
    return
        <t:string>  str,
        <t:integer> size
end
```

```
function pdfe.readwholestream ( <t:userdata> stream, <t:boolean> decode)
    return
        <t:string>  str,
        <t:integer> size
end
```

You either read in chunks, or you ask for the whole. When reading in chunks, you need to open and close the stream yourself. The `decode` parameter controls if the stream data gets uncompressed.

As with dictionaries, you can access fields in a stream dictionary in the usual Lua way too. You get the content when you 'call' the stream. You can pass a boolean that indicates if the stream has to be decompressed.

14.2.7 Low level getters

In addition to the getters described before, there is also a bit lower level interface available.

```
function pdfe.getfromdictionary ( <t:userdata>, <t:integer> index )
    return
        <t:string>   key,
        <t:string>   type,
        <t:whatever> value,
        <t:whatever> detail
end

function pdfe.getfromarray ( <t:userdata>, <t:integer> index )
    return
        <t:integer>  type,
        <t:whatever> value,
        <t:integerr> detail
end
```

The `type` is one of the following:

0	none	3	integer	6	string	9	stream
1	null	4	number	7	array	10	reference
2	boolean	5	name	8	dictionary		

This list was acquired with:

```
function pdfe.getfieldtypes ( )
    return <t:table> -- types
end
```

Here `detail` is a bitset with possible bits:

0	plain	2	decoded	16	base85	64	utf16le
1	encoded	8	base16	32	utf16be		

This time we used:

```
function pdfe.getencodingvalues ( )
```

```
    return <t:table> -- values
end
```

14.2.8 Getting tables

All entries in a dictionary or table can be fetched with the following commands where the return values are a hashed or indexed table.

```
function pdfe.dictionarytotable ( <t:userdata> )
    return <t:table> -- hash
end

function pdfe.arraytotable ( <t:userdata> )
    return <t:table> -- array
end
```

You can get a list of pages with:

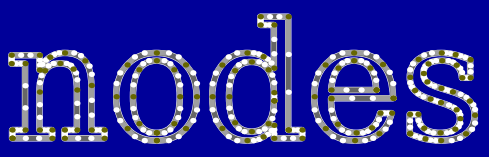
```
function pdfe.pagestotable(<t:pdf> pdffile)
    return {
        {
            <t:userdata>, -- dictionary
            <t:integer>,  -- size
            <t:integer>,  -- objectnumber
        },
        ...
    }
end
```

14.2.9 References

In order to access a pdf file efficiently there is lazy evaluation of references so when you run into a reference as value or array entry you have to resolve it explicitly. An unresolved references object can be resolved with:

```
function pdfe.getfromreference( <t:integer> reference ) -- NEEDS CHECKING
    return
        <t:integer>,  -- type
        <t:whatever>, -- value
        <t:whatever>  -- detail
```

So, as second value you can get back a new `pdfe` userdata object that you can query.


nodes

15 Nodes

Contents

15.1 Introduction **536**
15.2 Lua node representation **537**
15.3 Main text nodes **538**

15.3.1 hlist and vlist, aka boxes 538
15.3.2 rule 540
15.3.3 insert 542
15.3.4 mark 543
15.3.5 adjust 544
15.3.6 disc (discretionary) 544
15.3.7 math 546
15.3.8 glue 547
15.3.9 gluespec 548
15.3.10 kern 549
15.3.11 penalty 550
15.3.12 glyph 552
15.3.13 boundary 554
15.3.14 par 555
15.3.15 dir 557
15.3.16 whatsit 558
15.3.17 attributelist 559
15.3.18 attribute 560
15.3.19 alignrecord 561
15.3.20 unset 562

15.4 Math nodes **563**

15.4.1 The concept 563
15.4.2 noad 563
15.4.3 mathchar 565
15.4.4 mathtextchar 566
15.4.5 subbox 567
15.4.6 submlist 568
15.4.7 delimiter 569
15.4.8 accent 570
15.4.9 style 571
15.4.10 parameter 572
15.4.11 choice 573
15.4.12 radical 574
15.4.13 fraction 575
15.4.14 fence 576

15.5 Helpers **577**

15.5.1 Introduction 577
15.5.2 Housekeeping 577
15.5.3 Common properties 580
15.5.4 Geometry 582
15.5.5 Fonts and characters 584
15.5.6 Manipulating lists 591
15.5.7 Traversing 594
15.5.8 Dimensions 597
15.5.9 Glyphs 598
15.5.10 Glue 601
15.5.11 Attributes 602
15.5.12 Glyph handling 604
15.5.13 Discretionaries 610
15.5.14 Boxes 612
15.5.15 Kerns, glue and penalties 614
15.5.16 Packaging and dimensions 615
15.5.17 Paragraphs 621
15.5.18 Specifications 622
15.5.19 Math 622
15.5.20 MVL 627
15.5.21 Balancing 627
15.5.22 SyncTEX 627
15.5.23 Two access models 628
15.5.24 Special lists 634
15.5.25 Current lists 635
15.5.26 Properties 636
15.5.27 Private 638

15.1 Introduction

The (to be) typeset content is collected in a double linked list of so called nodes. A node is an ar-

ray of values. When looked at from the Lua end you can either seen them as **<t:userdata>** or as **<t:integer>**. In the case of userdata you access fields like this:

```
local width = foo.width -- foo is userdata
```

while the indexed variant uses:

```
local width = nodes.direct.getwidth(foo) -- foo is an integer
```

In ConTEXt we mostly use the second variant but it's a matter of taste so users can you whatever they like most. When you print a userdata node you see something like this:

```
<node : nil <= 158766 => nil : glyph unset>
<node : nil <= 65597 => nil : hlist unknown>
<node : nil <= 165255 => nil : glue userskip>
```

The number in the middle is the one you would also see if you use the indexed approach and often these numbers are kind of large. A number `13295` doesn't mean that we have that many nodes. The engine has a large array of memory words (pairs of 32 bit integers) and a node is a slice of then with the index pointing to where we start. So, if we have a node that has 5 value pairs, the slice runs from `13295` upto `13299` that consume 40 bytes.

In this chapter we introduce the nodes that are exposed to the user. We will discuss the relevant fields as well as ways to access them. Because there are similar fields in different nodes, we can share accessors.

It is important to notice that not all fields that can be accessed (set and get) are under full user control. For instance, in math we have a `noad` type that is actually shared between several construct (like atoms, accents and fences) and not all parameters make sense for each of them. Some properties are set while the formula is assembled. It fits in the LuaMetaTEX concept to open up everything but abusing this can lead to side effects. It makes no sense to add all kind of safeguards against wrong or unintended usage because in the end only a few users will go that low level anyway.

Not all fields mentioned are accessible in the userdata variant. It is also good to notice that some fields are fabricated, for instance `total` is the sum of `height` and `depth`.

15.2 Lua node representation

As mentioned, nodes are represented in Lua as user data objects with a variable set of fields or by a numeric identifier when requested and we showed that when you print a node user data object you will see these numbers.

0	hlist	9	par	18	noad	27	delimiter
1	vlist	10	dir	19	radical	28	glyph
2	rule	11	math	20	fraction	29	unset
3	insert	12	glue	21	accent	31	alignrecord
4	mark	13	kern	22	fence	32	attributelist
5	adjust	14	penalty	23	mathchar	33	attribute
6	boundary	15	style	24	mathtextchar	34	gluespec
7	disc	16	choice	25	subbox	35	temp
8	whatsit	17	parameter	26	submlist	36	split

You can ask for a list of fields with `node.fields` and for valid subtypes with `node.subtypes`. There are plenty specific field values and you can some idea about them by calling `tex.get*values()` which returns a table if numbers (exclusive numbers or bits). We use these to get the tables that are shown with each node type.

There are a lot of helpers and below we show them per node type. In later sections some will come back organized by type of usage. Trivial getters and setters will not be discussed. It's good to know that some getters take more arguments where the second one can for instance trigger more return values. The number of arguments to a setter can also be more than a few. As with everything LuaMetaTEX the ConTEXt sources can also be seen as a reference.

15.3 Main text nodes

These are the nodes that comprise actual typesetting commands. A few fields are present in all nodes regardless of their type, these are: `next`, `id` and `subtype`. The `subtype` is sometimes just a dummy entry because not all nodes actually use the `subtype`, but this way you can be sure that all nodes accept it as a valid field name, and that is often handy in node list traversal. In the following tables `next` and `id` are not explicitly mentioned. Besides these three fields, almost all nodes also have an `attr` field, and there is a also a field called `prev`.

15.3.1 hlist and vlist, aka boxes

These lists share fields and subtypes although some subtypes can only occur in horizontal lists while others are unique for vertical lists.

fields

`anchor`	integer	`height`	dimension	`prev`	node
`attr`	attribute	`hoffset`	dimension	`shift`	dimension
`depth`	dimension	`id`	integer	`source`	integer
`direction`	integer	`index`	integer	`state`	integer
`doffset`	dimension	`list`	nodelist	`subtype`	integer
`except`	nodelist	`next`	node	`target`	integer
`exdepth`	integer	`orientation`	integer	`total`	integer
`geometry`	integer	`post`	nodelist	`width`	dimension
`glueorder`	integer	`postadjust`	nodelist	`woffset`	dimension
`glueset`	integer	`pre`	nodelist	`xoffset`	dimension
`gluesign`	integer	`preadjust`	nodelist	`yoffset`	dimension

subtypes

`0`	unknown	`9`	math	`18`	numerator
`1`	line	`10`	mathchar	`19`	denominator
`2`	box	`11`	mathpack	`20`	modifier
`3`	indent	`12`	hextensible	`21`	fraction
`4`	container	`13`	vextensible	`22`	nucleus
`5`	alignment	`14`	hdelimiter	`23`	sup
`6`	cell	`15`	vdelimiter	`24`	sub
`7`	equation	`16`	overdelimiter	`25`	prime
`8`	equationnumber	`17`	underdelimiter	`26`	prepostsup

27	prepostsub	34	fence	41	right
28	degree	35	rule	42	middle
29	scripts	36	ghost	43	balanceslot
30	over	37	mathtext	44	balance
31	under	38	insert	45	spacing
32	accent	39	local	46	dummy
33	radical	40	left		

directionvalues

0x00	lefttoright	0x01	righttoleft

listgeometryvalues

0x01	offset	0x04	anchor
0x02	orientation		

listanchorvalues

0x01	leftorigin	0x08	centerheight
0x02	leftheight	0x09	centerdepth
0x03	leftdepth	0x0A	halfwaytotal
0x04	rightorigin	0x0B	halfwayheight
0x05	rightheight	0x0C	halfwaydepth
0x06	rightdepth	0x0D	halfwayleft
0x07	centerorigin	0x0E	halfwayright

listsignvalues

0x0100	negatex	0x0200	negatey

The `shift` is a displacement perpendicular to the character (horizontal) or line (vertical) progression direction.

The `orientation`, `woffset`, `hoffset`, `doffset`, `xoffset` and `yoffset` fields are special. They can be used to make the backend rotate and shift boxes which can be handy in for instance vertical typesetting. Because they relate to (and depend on the) the backend they are not discussed here (yet). The `pre` and `post` fields refer to migrated material in both list types, while the adjusted variants only make sense in horizontal lists.

direct helpers

```
addxoffset addyoffset appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath
checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange
findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode
firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getanchors
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getclass getcontinuation getcurrenttail
getdepth getdirection getexcept getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getgeometry
getglue getheight getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getindex getinputfields getlist
getlistdimensions getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnaturalwhd getnext getnodes
getnormalizedline getoffsets getoptions getorientation getpenalty getpost getpre
getprev getshift getshort getspeciallist getstate getsubtype gettotal getwhd getwidth
getwordrange hasdimensions hasgeometry hasglyph hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack
```

hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph issnapped isspeciallist isvalid iszeroglue kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible migrate mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setanchors setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setclass setcontinuation setcurrenttail setdepth setdirection setexcept setfontcheck setgeometry setglue setheight setindex setinputfields setlink setlist setnext setoffsets setoptions setorientation setpenalty setpost setpre setprev setshift setsnapped setspeciallist setsplit setstate setsubtype setwhd setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.2 rule

Contrary to traditional TEX, LuaTEX has more subtypes subtypes because we also use rules to store reuseable objects and images. However, in LuaMetaTEX these are gone but we reserve these subtypes. Apart form the basic rules a lot is up to the backend.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	right	dimension
char	integer	left	dimension	subtype	integer
data	integer	next	node	thickness	integer
depth	dimension	off	integer	total	dimension
fam	integer	on	integer	width	dimension
font	integer	options	integer	xoffset	dimension
height	dimension	prev	node	yoffset	dimension

subtypes

0	normal	5	user	10	box
1	empty	6	over	11	image
2	strut	7	under	12	spacing
3	virtual	8	fraction		
4	outline	9	radical		

ruleoptionvalues

0x01	horizontal	0x10	discardable
0x02	vertical	0x20	keepspacing
0x04	thickness	0x40	snapping
0x08	running	0x80	nosnapping

The width, height and depth of regular rules defaults to the special value of −1073741824 which indicates a running rule that adapts its dimensions to the box that it sits in.

The left and type right keys are somewhat special (and experimental). When rules are auto adapting to the surrounding box width you can enforce a shift to the right by setting left. The value is also subtracted from the width which can be a value set by the engine itself and is not entirely under user control. The right is also subtracted from the width. It all happens in the backend so these are not affecting the calculations in the frontend (actually the auto settings also happen in the backend). For a vertical rule left affects the height and right affects the depth. There is no matching interface at the TEX end (although we can have more keywords for rules it would complicate matters and introduce a speed penalty.) However, you can just construct a rule node with Lua and write it to the TEX input. The outline subtype is just a convenient variant and the transform field specifies the width of the outline. The xoffset and yoffset fields can be used to shift rules. Because they relate to (and depend on the) the backend they are not discussed here (yet). Of course all this assumes that the backend deals with it. Internally fields with different names can use the same variable, depending on the subtype; dedicated names just make more sense.

direct helpers

addmargins addxoffset addyoffset appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchar getcharspec getcurrenttail getdata getdepth getdiscpart getfam getfirstdirectioninlist getfont getfontcheck getheight getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnaturalwhd getnext getnodes getoffsets getoptions getpenalty getprev getruledimensions getspeciallist getsubtype gettotal getwhd getwidth getwordrange hasdimensions hasglyph hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setchar setcurrenttail setdata setdepth setdiscpart setfam setfont setfontcheck setheight setlink setnext setoffsets setoptions setpenalty setprev setruledimensions setruledimensions setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwhd setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.3 insert

This node relates to the **\insert** primitive and support the fields:

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	prev	node
cost	integer	index	integer	subtype	integer
depth	dimension	list	nodelist		
height	dimension	next	node		

Here the subtype indicates the class of the insert and that number is also used to access the box, dimen and skip registers that relate to the insert, if we use inserts in the traditional way.

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getdepth getdiscpart getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getheight getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getindex getlist getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype gettotal getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible migrate mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setdepth setdiscpart setfontcheck setheight setindex setlink setlist setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype settotal showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.4 mark

This one relates to the **\marks** primitive and only has a few fields, one being a token list as field which is kind of rare.

fields

attr	attribute	mark	tokenlist	subtype	integer
class	integer	next	node		
id	integer	prev	node		

subtypes

0	set	1	reset

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getdata getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getindex getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setdata setfontcheck setindex setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.5 adjust

This node results from **\vadjust** usage:

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	options	integer
depthafter	dimension	index	integer	prev	node
depthbefore	dimension	list	nodelist	subtype	integer
except	nodelist	next	node		

subtypes

0	pre	1	post	2	local

adjustoptionvalues

0x00	none	0x08	depthafter
0x01	before	0x10	depthcheck
0x02	baseline	0x20	depthlast
0x04	depthbefore	0x40	except

direct helpers

nothing (yet)

userdata helpers

nothing (yet)

userdata helpers

no get:
no set:

15.3.6 disc (discretionary)

The **\discretionary**, **\explicitdiscretionary** and **\automaticdiscretionary** primitives as well as the discretionary that comes from hyphenation all have the pre, post and replace lists. Because these lists have head and tail pointers the getters and setters handle this for you.

fields

attr	attribute	options	integer	prev	node
class	integer	penalty	integer	replace	nodelist
id	integer	post	nodelist	subtype	integer
next	node	pre	nodelist		

subtypes

0	discretionary	2	automatic	4	regular
1	explicit	3	math		

discoptionvalues

0x00000000	normalword	0x00000040	noitaliccorrection
0x00000001	preword	0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection
0x00000002	postword	0x00000100	standalone
0x00000010	preferbreak	0x00010000	userfirst
0x00000020	prefernobreak	0x40000000	userlast

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries checkdiscretionary collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getclass getcurrenttail getdisc getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getoptions getpenalty getpost getpre getprev getreplace getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasdiscoption hasglyph hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyph protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setclass setcurrenttail setdisc setfontcheck setlink setnext setoptions setpenalty setpost setpre setprev setreplace setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyph unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.7 math

Math nodes represent the boundaries of a math formula, normally wrapped between `$` and `$`. The glue fields are only used when the `surround` field is zero.

fields

`attr`	attribute	`pretolerance`	integer	`stretchorder`	integer
`id`	integer	`prev`	node	`subtype`	integer
`next`	node	`shrink`	dimension	`surround`	integer
`options`	integer	`shrinkorder`	integer	`tolerance`	integer
`penalty`	integer	`stretch`	dimension	`width`	dimension

subtypes

`0`	beginmath	`2`	beginbrokenmath
`1`	endmath	`3`	endbrokenmath

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions effectiveglue endofmath exchange findattribute
findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph
flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth
getbox getcurrenttail getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getglue getid getidsubtype
getidsubtypenext getkern getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getoptions
getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwidth getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype
hasoptions hpack hyphenating ignoremathskip insertcurrenthead isboth ischar
ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck
isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph
isspeciallist isvalid iszeroglue kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible
mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph
newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs
protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions
removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes
setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setfontcheck setglue setkern
setlink setnext setoptions setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwidth
showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar
traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont
vbalance verticalbreak vpack
```

userdata helpers

`instock inuse todirect`

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.8 glue

Skips are about the only type of data objects in traditional TEX that are not a simple value. They are inserted when TEX sees a space in the text flow but also by **\hskip** and `skip`. The structure that represents the glue components of a skip internally is called a `gluespec`. In LuaMetaTEX we don't use the spec itself but just its values.

fields

`attr`	attribute	`next`	node	`stretch`	dimension
`callback`	integer	`options`	integer	`stretchorder`	integer
`data`	integer	`penalty`	integer	`subtype`	integer
`font`	integer	`prev`	node	`width`	dimension
`id`	integer	`shrink`	dimension		
`leader`	nodelist	`shrinkorder`	integer		

subtypes

`0`	userskip	`14`	spaceskip	`28`	ignoredskip
`1`	lineskip	`15`	xspaceskip	`29`	pageskip
`2`	baselineskip	`16`	zerospaceskip	`30`	mathskip
`3`	parskip	`17`	intercharacterskip	`31`	thinmuskip
`4`	abovedisplayskip	`18`	discretionaryskip	`32`	medmuskip
`5`	belowdisplayskip	`19`	parfillleftskip	`33`	thickmuskip
`6`	abovedisplayshortskip	`20`	parfillskip	`34`	conditionalmathskip
`7`	belowdisplayshortskip	`21`	parinitleftskip	`35`	rulebasedmathskip
`8`	leftskip	`22`	parinitrightskip	`36`	muglue
`9`	rightskip	`23`	indentskip	`37`	leaders
`10`	topskip	`24`	lefthangskip	`38`	cleaders
`11`	bottomskip	`25`	righthangskip	`39`	xleaders
`12`	splittopskip	`26`	correctionskip	`40`	gleaders
`13`	tabskip	`27`	intermathskip	`41`	uleaders

glueoptionvalues

`0x0000`	normal	`0x0040`	resetdiscardable
`0x0001`	noautobreak	`0x0080`	nondiscardable
`0x0002`	hasfactor	`0x0100`	ininsert
`0x0004`	islimited	`0x0400`	hasparskip
`0x0008`	limit	`0x0800`	raggeddone
`0x0010`	uleadersline	`0x1000`	isspace
`0x0020`	setdiscardable		

Note that we use the key `width` in both horizontal and vertical glue. This suited the TEX internals well so we decided to stick to that naming.

The effective width of some glue subtypes depends on the stretch or shrink needed to make the encapsulating box fit its dimensions. For instance, in a paragraph lines normally have glue representing spaces and these stretch or shrink to make the content fit in the available space. The `effectiveglue` function that takes a glue node and a parent (hlist or vlist) returns the effective width of that glue item. When you pass `true` as third argument the value will be rounded.

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions effectiveglue endofmath exchange findattribute
findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph
flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth
getbox getcurrenttail getdata getfirstdirectioninlist getfont getfontcheck getglue
getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getleader getlocalparboxstate getmvllist
getnaturalwhd getnext getnodes getoptions getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwhd
getwidth getwordrange getxscale getyscale hasdimensions hasglyph hasidsubtype
hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect
isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev
isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid
iszeroglue kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist
naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase
protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox
setcurrenttail setdata setfont setfontcheck setglue setleader setlink setnext
setoptions setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwhd setwidth showlist size
slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent
traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible
unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak
vpack
```

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.9 gluespec

Internally LuaMetaTEX (like its ancestors) also uses nodes to store data that is not seen in node lists. For instance the state of expression scanning (**`\dimexpr`** etc.) and conditionals (**`\ifcase`** etc.) is also kept in lists of nodes. A glue, which has five components, is stored in a node as well, so, where most registers store just a number, a skip register (of internal quantity) uses a pointer to a glue spec node. It has similar fields as glue nodes, which is not surprising because in the past (and other engines than LuaTEX) a glue node also has its values stored in a glue spec. This has some advantages because

often the values are the same, so for instance spacing related skips were not resolved immediately but pointed to the current value of a space related internal register (like **\spaceskip**). But, in LuaTEX and therefore LuaMetaTEX we do resolve these quantities immediately and we put the current values in the glue nodes.

fields

id	integer	shrinkorder	integer	width	dimension
next	node	stretch	dimension		
shrink	dimension	stretchorder	integer		

You will only find these nodes in a few places, for instance when you query an internal quantity. In principle we could do without them as we have interfaces that use the five numbers instead. For compatibility reasons we keep glue spec nodes exposed but this might change in the future. Of course there are no subtypes here because it's just a data store.

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail
getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getglue getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext
getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype
getwidth getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead
isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar
isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph
issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid iszeroglue kerning lastnode length ligaturing
makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom
newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead
prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone
protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck
setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail
setfontcheck setglue setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype
setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont
vbalance verticalbreak vpack
```

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.10 kern

The **\kern** command creates such nodes but for instance the font and math machinery can also add them.

fields

attr	attribute	kern	dimension	subtype	integer
expansion	integer	next	node		
id	integer	prev	node		

subtypes

0	userkern	6	leftcorrectionkern	12	leftmathslackkern
1	accentkern	7	rightcorrectionkern	13	rightmathslackkern
2	fontkern	8	characterkern	14	horizontalmathkern
3	italiccorrection	9	spacefontkern	15	verticalmathkern
4	leftmarginkern	10	mathkern	16	linesnappingkern
5	rightmarginkern	11	mathshapekern		

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail
getexpansion getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext
getkern getkerndimension getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev
getspeciallist getsubtype getwidth getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack
hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph
isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode
length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth
newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes
prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase
protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox
setcurrenttail setexpansion setfontcheck setkern setlink setnext setprev
setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens
startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph
traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs
unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack
```

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.11 penalty

The **\penalty** command is one that generates these nodes. There is not much to tell about them, apart from that in LuaMetaTEX they have options and a possible spread related `nepalty` field that is used internally.

fields

attr	attribute	next	node	prev	node
id	integer	options	integer	subtype	integer
nepalty	integer	penalty	integer		

subtypes

0	userpenalty	5	toddlerpenalty	10	beforedisplaypenalty
1	linebreakpenalty	6	singlelinepenalty	11	afterdisplaypenalty
2	linepenalty	7	finalpenalty	12	equationnumberpenalty
3	wordpenalty	8	mathprepenalty		
4	orphanpenalty	9	mathpostpenalty		

penaltyoptionvalues

0x0000	normal	0x0100	broken
0x0001	mathforward	0x0200	shaping
0x0002	mathbackward	0x0400	double
0x0004	orphaned	0x0800	doubleused
0x0008	widowed	0x1000	factorused
0x0010	clubbed	0x2000	endofpar
0x0020	toddlered	0x4000	ininsert
0x0040	widow	0x8000	finalbalance
0x0080	club		

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getoptions getpenalty getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setfontcheck setlink setnext setoptions setpenalty setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

`instock inuse todirect`

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.12 glyph

These are probably the mostly used nodes and although you can push them in the current list with for instance `\char` TEX will normally do it for you when it considers some input to be text. Glyph nodes are relatively large and have many fields.

fields

`attr`	attribute	`language`	integer	`slant`	integer
`char`	integer	`left`	dimension	`state`	integer
`control`	integer	`lhmin`	integer	`subtype`	integer
`data`	integer	`next`	node	`total`	dimension
`depth`	dimension	`options`	integer	`uchyph`	integer
`discpart`	integer	`prev`	node	`weight`	integer
`expansion`	integer	`properties`	integer	`width`	dimension
`font`	integer	`protected`	integer	`xoffset`	dimension
`group`	integer	`raise`	dimension	`xscale`	dimension
`height`	dimension	`rhmin`	integer	`yoffset`	dimension
`hyphenate`	integer	`right`	dimension	`yscale`	dimension
`id`	integer	`scale`	dimension		
`index`	integer	`script`	integer		

subtypes

`0`	unset	`8`	relation	`16`	over
`1`	character	`9`	open	`17`	fraction
`2`	ligature	`10`	close	`18`	radical
`3`	delimiter	`11`	punctuation	`19`	middle
`4`	extensible	`12`	variable	`20`	prime
`5`	ordinary	`13`	active	`21`	accent
`6`	operator	`14`	inner		
`7`	binary	`15`	under		

glyphoptionvalues

`0x00000000`	normal	`0x00000080`	nozeroitaliccorrection
`0x00000001`	noleftligature	`0x00000100`	applyxoffset
`0x00000002`	norightligature	`0x00000200`	applyyoffset
`0x00000004`	noleftkern	`0x00000400`	mathdiscretionary
`0x00000008`	norightkern	`0x00000800`	mathsitalicstoo
`0x00000010`	noexpansion	`0x00001000`	mathartifact
`0x00000020`	noprotrusion	`0x00002000`	weightless
`0x00000040`	noitaliccorrection	`0x00004000`	spacefactoroverload

0x00008000	checktoddler	0x00080000	keepspacing
0x00010000	checktwin	0x01000000	userfirst
0x00020000	istoddler	0x40000000	userlast
0x00040000	iscontinuation		

glyphdiscvalues

0x00	unset	0x03	automatic
0x01	normal	0x04	mathematics
0x02	explicit	0x05	syllable

discpartvalues

0x00	unset	0x03	replace
0x01	pre	0x04	always
0x02	post		

glyphprotectionvalues

0x00	unset	0x02	math
0x01	text		

The `width`, `height` and `depth` values are read-only. In LuaTEX `expansion` has been introduced as part of the separation between front- and backend. It is the result of extensive experiments with a more efficient implementation of expansion. Early versions of LuaTEX already replaced multiple instances of fonts in the backend by scaling but contrary to pdfTEX in LuaTEX we now also got rid of font copies in the frontend and replaced them by expansion factors that travel with glyph nodes. Apart from a cleaner approach this is also a step towards a better separation between front- and backend.

direct helpers

```
addmargins addxoffset addxymargins addyoffset appendaftertail appendcurrenttail
beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath
exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph
firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze
getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchar getchardict getcharspec
getclass getcontrol getcornerkerns getcurrenttail getdata getdepth getexpansion
getfirstdirectioninlist getfont getfontcheck getglyphdata getglyphdimensions
getheight getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getinputfields getlanguage
getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnaturalwhd getnext getnodes getoffsets getoptions
getprev getscale getscales getscript getslant getspeciallist getstate getsubtype
gettotal getweight getwhd getwidth getwordrange getxscale getxyscales getyscale
hasdimensions hasglyph hasglyphoption hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating
insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph
isitalicglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar
isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode
length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth
newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes
prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyph protectglyphs protectglyphsbase
protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox
setchar setchardict setclass setcontrol setcurrenttail setdata setexpansion setfont
```

setfontcheck setglyphdata setinputfields setlanguage setlink setnext setoffsets setoptions setprev setscale setscales setscript setslant setspeciallist setsplit setstate setsubtype setweight setwhd setxyscales showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyph unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack xscaled yscaled

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.13 boundary

This node relates to the **\noboundary**, **\boundary**, **\protrusionboundary**, **\wordboundary** etc. These are relative small nodes that determine what happens before and after them.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	prev	node
data	integer	next	node	subtype	integer

subtypes

0	cancel	5	page	10	insert
1	user	6	math	11	balance
2	attribute	7	optional	12	adjust
3	protrusion	8	lua		
4	word	9	par		

protrusionboundaryvalues

0x00	skipnone	0x02	skipprevious
0x01	skipnext	0x03	skipboth

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getdata getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist

naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setdata setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.14 par

In a traditional engine a paragraph starts with an indentation box. This actually guarantees that there is always a start node. In LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX a paragraph starts with a par node but you can also find them later in the list. In LuaTEX it has little information, the direction and optional left- and right boxes, but in LuaMetaTEX it keeps the state. A fundamental difference between the engines is that in LuaMetaTEX we remember the various variables involved and you can only change them in the middle of a paragraph per explicit request. There can still be an indentation box after it but in ConTEXt we configure the engine to use a skip instead. The par node is a pretty large one which also means that initializing and consulting it adds some complexity (and runtime).

Because this node is inserted at the start of a paragraph, and expected to be there, you should not mess too much with this one. Because we took the local left and right box feature from Omega they can also be inserted when `\local...` primitives are used, these boxes plus a few variables are bound to positions in the line and overload certain parameters that play a role in the line break (and later packaging) routine. =par

fields

adjacentdemerits	node	displaywidowpenalties	node
adjdemerits	integer	displaywidowpenalty	integer
adjustspacing	integer	doublehyphendemerits	integer
adjustspacingshrink	integer	emergencyextrastretch	dimension
adjustspacingstep	integer	emergencyleftskip	glue
adjustspacingstretch	integer	emergencyrightskip	glue
attr	attribute	emergencystretch	dimension
baselineskip	glue	endpartokens	tokenlist
brokenpenalties	node	exhyphenpenalty	integer
brokenpenalty	integer	finalhyphendemerits	integer
clubpenalties	node	fitnessclasses	node
clubpenalty	integer	hangafter	integer
direction	integer	hangindent	dimension

hsize	dimension	parinitleftskip	glue
hyphenationmode	integer	parinitrightskip	glue
hyphenpenalty	integer	parpasses	node
id	integer	parshape	node
interlinepenalties	node	pretolerance	integer
interlinepenalty	integer	prev	node
lastlinefit	integer	prevgraf	integer
leftbox	node	protrudechars	integer
leftboxwidth	dimension	rightbox	node
leftskip	integer	rightboxwidth	dimension
lefttwindemerits	integer	rightskip	integer
linebreakchecks	integer	righttwindemerits	integer
linepenalty	integer	shapingpenaltiesmode	integer
lineskip	glue	shapingpenalty	integer
lineskiplimit	dimension	singlelinepenalty	integer
looseness	integer	state	integer
middlebox	node	subtype	integer
next	node	toddlerpenalties	node
orphanpenalties	node	tolerance	integer
parfillleftskip	glue	widowpenalties	node
parfillrightskip	glue	widowpenalty	integer
parindent	dimension		

subtypes

0	vmodepar	2	hmodepar	4	localbreak
1	localbox	3	parameter	5	math

Some of the features are a playground. For instance, `\localbreakpar` will insert a break point in a paragraph that acts like a `\par` but doesn't end one. The parameter subtype indicates (probably rarely used, if at all) `\localinterlinepenalty`, `\localbrokenpenalty`, `\localtolerance` or `\localpretolerance`. The local box subtype is used for `\localleftbox`, `\localmiddlebox`, `\localrightbox` and `\resetlocalboxes`. Normally the initial par node gets a vmode subtype, but when it's found later it gets tagged as a hmode subtype and treated the same. This is mostly a diagnostic recovery feature so best not rely on that. The math subtype is for experiments and possible future use so you can forget about that one. In general one can just ignore most of this and only check for the direction, if that makes sense, as in LuaTEX.

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail
getdirection getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext
getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getparstate getprev getspeciallist
getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead
isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar
isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph
issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing
makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom
```

newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes patchparshape prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setdirection setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont validpar vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: adjacentdemerits adjdemerits adjustspacing adjustspacingshrink adjustspacingstep adjustspacingstretch brokenpenalties brokenpenalty clubpenalties clubpenalty displaywidowpenalties displaywidowpenalty doublehyphendemerits emergencyextrastretch emergencyleftskip emergencyrightskip emergencystretch endpartokens exhyphenpenalty finalhyphendemerits fitnessclasses hangafter hangindent hsize hyphenationmode hyphenpenalty interlinepenalties interlinepenalty lastlinefit leftskip lefttwindemerits linebreakchecks linepenalty lineskip lineskiplimit looseness orphanpenalties parfillleftskip parfillrightskip parinitleftskip parinitrightskip parpasses parshape pretolerance prevgraf protrudechars rightskip righttwindemerits singlelinepenalty state toddlerpenalties tolerance widowpenalties widowpenalty
no set: adjacentdemerits adjdemerits adjustspacing adjustspacingshrink adjustspacingstep adjustspacingstretch baselineskip brokenpenalties brokenpenalty clubpenalties clubpenalty displaywidowpenalties displaywidowpenalty doublehyphendemerits emergencyextrastretch emergencyleftskip emergencyrightskip emergencystretch endpartokens exhyphenpenalty finalhyphendemerits fitnessclasses hangafter hangindent hsize hyphenationmode hyphenpenalty interlinepenalties interlinepenalty lastlinefit leftbox leftboxwidth leftskip lefttwindemerits linebreakchecks linepenalty lineskip lineskiplimit looseness middlebox orphanpenalties parfillleftskip parfillrightskip parindent parinitleftskip parinitrightskip parpasses parshape pretolerance prevgraf protrudechars rightbox rightboxwidth rightskip righttwindemerits singlelinepenalty state toddlerpenalties tolerance widowpenalties widowpenalty

15.3.15 dir

Direction nodes mark parts of the running text that need a change of direction and the **\textdirection** command generates them. Contrary to LuaTEX we only have two directions.

fields

attr	attribute	level	integer	subtype	integer
direction	integer	next	node		
id	integer	prev	node		

subtypes

0	normal	1	cancel

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail
getdirection getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext
getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype
getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar
ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck
isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph
isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist
naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase
protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox
setcurrenttail setdirection setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist
setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont
vbalance verticalbreak vpack
```

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.16 whatsit

A whatsit node is a real simple one and it only has a subtype. It is even less than a user node (which it actually could be) and uses hardly any memory. What you do with it it entirely up to you: it's is real minimalistic. You can assign a subtype and it has attributes. It is all up to the user (and the backend) how they are handled.

fields

attr	attribute	next	node	subtype	integer
id	integer	prev	node		

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail
getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext
getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype
getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar
ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck
isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph
isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist
naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase
protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox
setcurrenttail setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit
setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont
vbalance verticalbreak vpack
```

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.17 attributelist

This is the initial node of an attribute list that gets assigned to the attribute field of nodes that qualify for it. It points to a list of attributes nodes that have an index and value. Before October 2025 this was a special type of regular attribute node (we used subtypes to distinguish). Messing with these nodes can give side effects because they are reference counted.

fields

count	integer	id	integer	prev	node
data	integer	next	node	subtype	integer

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail
getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext
getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype
getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar
```

```
ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck
isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph
isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist
naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase
protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox
setcurrenttail setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit
setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect
traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist
traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont
vbalance verticalbreak vpack
```

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.18 attribute

This is a small node but used a lot. When an attribute is set and travels with a node, we actually have a forward (only) linked list with a head node (see previous section) that keeps a reference count. These lists are (to be) sorted by attribute index. Normally you will *not* mess directly with these list because you can get unwanted side effects.

fields

data	integer	index	integer	subtype	integer
id	integer	next	node	value	integer

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail
getdata getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext
getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype
getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar
ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck
isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph
isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist
naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase
protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox
setcurrenttail setdata setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit
```

setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.19 alignrecord

This node can be encountered in alignments and will eventually become a hlist or vlist node. It therefore has the same size and fields as those nodes. However, the following fields are overloaded by other parameters: woffset, hoffset, doffset, xoffset, yoffset, orientation, pre and post. Be careful!

fields

id	integer	prev	node	width	dimension
list	node	size	dimension		
next	node	subtype	integer		

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwidth getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.3.20 unset

This node can be encountered in alignments and will eventually become a `hlist` or `vlist` node. It therefore has the same size and fields as those nodes. However, the following fields are (at least temporarily) there and they use the slots of `woffset`, `hoffset`, `doffset` and `orientation`. Be careful!

fields

attr	attribute	height	dimension	span	integer
count	integer	id	integer	stretch	dimension
depth	dimension	list	nodelist	subtype	integer
direction	integer	next	node	width	dimension
glueorder	integer	prev	node		
gluesign	integer	shrink	dimension		

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getdepth getexcept getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getglue getheight getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getinputfields getlist getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnaturalwhd getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype gettotal getwhd getwidth getwordrange hasdimensions hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid iszeroglue kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setdepth setexcept setfontcheck setglue setheight setinputfields setlink setlist setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype setwhd setwidth showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

`instock inuse todirect`

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4 Math nodes

15.4.1 The concept

Many object fields in math mode are either simple characters in a specific family or math lists or node lists: `mathchar`, `mathtextchar`, subbox and `submlist` and `delimiter`. These are endpoints and therefore the `next` and `prev` fields of these these subnodes are unused.

There is a subset of nodes dedicated to math called noads. These are used for simple atoms, fractions, fences, accents and radicals. When you enter a formula, TEX creates a node list with regular (math) nodes and noads. Then it hands over the list the math processing engine. The result of that is a nodelist without noads. Most of the noads contain subnodes so that the list of possible fields is actually quite small. Math formulas are both a linked list and a tree. For instance in $e = mc^2$ there is a linked list `e = m c` but the `c` has a superscript branch that itself can be a list with branches.

Eventually I might give a more detailed description of the differences between the five noad variants but for now the following has to do. One will quite likely not set that many fields at the Lua end but running over the many sub lists can make sense. One has to know what the engine is doing anyway.

15.4.2 noad

First, there are the objects (the TEXbook calls them ‘atoms’) that are associated with the simple math objects: ord, op, bin, rel, open, close, punct, inner, over, under, vcenter. These all have the same fields, and they are combined into a single node type with separate subtypes for differentiation. However, before reading on you should realize that LuaMetaTEX has an extended math engine. We hale not only more classes, we also have many more keys in the nodes. We won’t cover these details here.

fields

`analyzed`	integer	`mainclass`	integer	`scriptstate`	integer
`attr`	attribute	`next`	node	`source`	integer
`depth`	integer	`nucleus`	nodelist	`style`	integer
`extraattr`	attribute	`options`	integer	`sub`	nodelist
`fam`	integer	`prev`	node	`subpre`	nodelist
`height`	integer	`prime`	nodelist	`subshift`	integer
`hlist`	nodelist	`primeshift`	integer	`subtype`	integer
`id`	integer	`rightclass`	integer	`sup`	nodelist
`italic`	integer	`rightslack`	integer	`suppre`	nodelist
`leftclass`	integer	`scriptkern`	integer	`supshift`	integer
`leftslack`	integer	`scriptorder`	integer	`width`	integer

subtypes

0	ordinary	7	variable	14	middle
1	operator	8	active	15	prime
2	binary	9	inner	16	accent
3	relation	10	under	17	fenced
4	open	11	over	18	ghost
5	close	12	fraction	19	vcenter
6	punctuation	13	radical		

noadoptionvalues

0x00000001	axis	0x40000000	followedbyspace
0x00000002	noaxis	0x80000000	proportional
0x00000004	exact	0x100000000	sourceonnucleus
0x00000008	left	0x200000000	fixedsuperorsubscript
0x00000010	middle	0x400000000	fixedsuperandsubscript
0x00000020	right	0x800000000	autobase
0x00000040	adapttoleftsize	0x1000000000	stretch
0x00000080	adapttorightsize	0x2000000000	shrink
0x00000100	nosubscript	0x4000000000	center
0x00000200	nosuperscript	0x8000000000	scale
0x00000400	nosubprescript	0x10000000000	keepbase
0x00000800	nosuperprescript	0x20000000000	single
0x00001000	noscript	0x40000000000	norule
0x00002000	nooverflow	0x80000000000	automiddle
0x00004000	void	0x100000000000	reflected
0x00008000	phantom	0x200000000000	continuation
0x00010000	openupheight	0x400000000000	inheritclass
0x00020000	openupdepth	0x800000000000	discardshapekern
0x00040000	limits	0x1000000000000	realignscripts
0x00080000	nolimits	0x2000000000000	ignoreemptysubscript
0x00100000	preferfontthickness	0x4000000000000	ignoreemptysuperscript
0x00200000	noruling	0x8000000000000	ignoreemptyprimescript
0x00400000	indexedsubscript	0x10000000000000	continuationhead
0x00800000	indexedsuperscript	0x20000000000000	continuationkernel
0x01000000	indexedsubprescript	0x40000000000000	reorderprescripts
0x02000000	indexedsuperprescript	0x80000000000000	ignore
0x04000000	unpacklist	0x100000000000000	nomorescripts
0x08000000	nocheck	0x200000000000000	carryoverclasses
0x10000000	auto	0x400000000000000	usecallback
0x20000000	unrolllist		

In addition to the subtypes (related to classes) that the engines knows of, there can be user defined subtypes. Not all fields make sense for every derives noad: `accent`, `fence`, `fraction` or `radical` but there we (currently) only mention the additional ones. These additional fields are taken from a pool of extra fields. Not all fields are always accessible for these nodes.

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcharspec getclass getcurrenttail getfam getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getnucleus getoptions getprev getprime getscripts getspeciallist getsub getsubpre getsubtype getsup getsuppre getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setanchors setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setclass setcurrenttail setfam setfontcheck setlink setnext setnucleus setoptions setprev setprime setscripts setspeciallist setsplit setsub setsubpre setsubtype setsup setsuppre showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: analyzed depth extraattr height hlist italic leftclass leftslack mainclass primeshift rightclass rightslack scriptkern scriptstate style subshift supshift width
no set: -

15.4.3 mathchar

The mathchar is the simplest subnode field, it contains the character and family for a single glyph object. The family eventually resolves on a reference to a font. Internally this nodes is one of the math kernel nodes.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	prev	node
char	integer	index	integer	properties	integer
fam	integer	next	node	subtype	integer
group	integer	options	integer		

kerneloptionvalues

0x01	noitaliccorrection	0x10	fulldiscretionary
0x02	noleftpairkern	0x20	ignoredcharacter
0x04	norightpairkern	0x40	islargeoperator
0x08	autodiscretionary	0x80	hasitalicshape

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchar
getchardict getcharspec getcurrenttail getfam getfirstdirectioninlist getfont
getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist
getnext getnodes getoptions getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph
hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck
isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph
isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid
kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize
naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase
protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox
setchar setchardict setcurrenttail setfam setfontcheck setlink setnext setoptions
setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens
startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph
traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs
unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack
```

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.4 mathtextchar

The `mathtextchar` is a special case that you will not normally encounter, it arises temporarily during math list conversion (its sole function is to suppress a following italic correction). Internally this nodes is one of the math kernel nodes.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	prev	node
char	integer	index	integer	properties	integer
fam	integer	next	node	subtype	integer
group	integer	options	integer		

kerneloptionvalues

0x01	noitaliccorrection	0x10	fulldiscretionary
0x02	noleftpairkern	0x20	ignoredcharacter
0x04	norightpairkern	0x40	islargeoperator
0x08	autodiscretionary	0x80	hasitalicshape

direct helpers

```
appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing
copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange
findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries
flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchar
getchardict getcharspec getcurrenttail getfam getfirstdirectioninlist getfont
getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist
getnext getnodes getoptions getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph
hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck
isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph
isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid
kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize
naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph
patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase
protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse
samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox
setchar setchardict setcurrenttail setfam setfontcheck setlink setnext setoptions
setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens
startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph
traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs
unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack
```

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.5 subbox

These `subbox` subnode is used for subsidiary list items where the `list` points to a ‘normal’ vbox or hbox.

fields

attr	attribute	list	nodelist	prev	node
id	integer	next	node	subtype	integer

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlist getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setfontcheck setlink setlist setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.6 submlist

In submlist subnode the list points to a math list that is yet to be converted. Their fields

fields

attr	attribute	list	nodelist	prev	node
id	integer	next	node	subtype	integer

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlist getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist

naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setfontcheck setlink setlist setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.7 delimiter

There is a fifth subnode type that is used exclusively for delimiter fields. As before, the next and prev fields are unused, but we do have:

fields

attr	attribute	largechar	integer	properties	integer
group	integer	largefamily	integer	smallchar	integer
id	integer	next	node	smallfamily	integer
index	integer	prev	node	subtype	integer

The fields largechar and largefamily can be zero, in that case the font that is set for the smallfamily is expected to provide the large version as an extension to the smallchar.

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchar getchardict getcharspec getclass getcurrenttail getfirstdirectioninlist getfont getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setchar setchardict setclass setcurrenttail setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev

setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.8 accent

Accent nodes deal with stuff on top or below a math constructs.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	subtype	integer
bottomaccent	nodelist	next	node	topaccent	nodelist
bottomovershoot	nodelist	overlayaccent	nodelist	topovershoot	nodelist
fraction	nodelist	prev	node		

subtypes

0	bothflexible	2	fixedbottom
1	fixedtop	3	fixedboth

For more fields see noad. At some point we might move fields from that list to here but only when the engine also gets that split.

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbottom getbox getclass getcurrenttail getdelimiter getfam getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getnucleus getoptions getprev getprime getscripts getspeciallist getsub getsubpre getsubtype getsup getsuppre gettop getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setanchors setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbottom setbox setclass setcurrenttail setdelimiter setfam setfontcheck setlink

setnext setnucleus setoptions setprev setprime setscripts setspeciallist setsplit setsub setsubpre setsubtype setsup setsuppre settop showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.9 style

These nodes are signals to switch to another math style. Currently the subtype is actually used to store the style but don't rely on that for the future.

fields

attr	attribute	next	node	style	integer
glyphscale	integer	prev	node	subtype	integer
id	integer	scale	integer		

mathstylenamevalues

0x00	display	0x04	script
0x01	crampeddisplay	0x05	crampedscript
0x02	text	0x06	scriptscript
0x03	crampedtext	0x07	crampedscriptscript

mathstylevalues

0x00	display	0x04	script
0x01	crampeddisplay	0x05	crampedscript
0x02	text	0x06	scriptscript
0x03	crampedtext	0x07	crampedscriptscript

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist

naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.10 parameter

These nodes are used to (locally) set math parameters. The subtype reflects a math style.

fields

id	integer	prev	node	value	integer
name	integer	style	integer		
next	node	subtype	integer		

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getcurrenttail getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setcurrenttail setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.11 choice

Most of the fields of this node are lists. Depending on the subtype different field names are used.

fields

attr	attribute	post	nodelist	scriptscript	nodelist
class	integer	pre	nodelist	subtype	integer
display	nodelist	prev	node	text	nodelist
id	integer	replace	nodelist		
next	node	script	nodelist		

subtypes

0	normal	1	discretionary

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getchoice getclass getcurrenttail getdisc getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getpost getpre getprev getreplace getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setchoice setclass setcurrenttail setdisc setfontcheck setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

`instock inuse todirect`

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: `post pre replace`

15.4.12 radical

Radical nodes are the most complex as they deal with scripts as well as constructed large symbols. Warning: never assign a node list to the `nucleus`, `sub`, `sup`, `left`, or `degree` field unless you are sure its internal link structure is correct, otherwise an error can be triggered.

fields

`attr`	attribute	`id`	integer	`size`	integer
`bottom`	nodelist	`left`	nodelist	`subtype`	integer
`degree`	nodelist	`next`	node	`top`	nodelist
`depth`	dimension	`prev`	node		
`height`	dimension	`right`	nodelist		

subtypes

`0`	normal	`4`	underdelimiter	`8`	delimited
`1`	radical	`5`	overdelimiter	`9`	hextensible
`2`	root	`6`	delimiterunder		
`3`	rooted	`7`	delimiterover		

For more fields see noad. At some point we might move fields from that list to here but only when the engine also gets that split.

direct helpers

`appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbottomdelimiter getbox getclass getcurrenttail getdegree getdelimiter getfam getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getleftdelimiter getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getnucleus getoptions getprev getprime getrightdelimiter getscripts getspeciallist getsub getsubpre getsubtype getsup getsuppre gettopdelimiter getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setanchors setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth`

setbottomdelimiter setbox setclass setcurrenttail setdegree setdelimiter setfam setfontcheck setleftdelimiter setlink setnext setnucleus setoptions setprev setprime setrightdelimiter setscripts setspeciallist setsplit setsub setsubpre setsubtype setsup setsuppre settopdelimiter showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.13 fraction

Fraction nodes are also used for delimited cases, hence the left and right fields among.

fields

attr	attribute	middle	nodelist	rule	dimension
denominator	nodelist	next	node	subtype	integer
hfactor	integer	numerator	nodelist	vfactor	integer
id	integer	prev	node		
left	nodelist	right	nodelist		

subtypes

0	over	2	above	4	stretched
1	atop	3	skewed		

For more fields see noad. At some point we might move fields from that list to here but only when the engine also gets that split.

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbox getclass getcurrenttail getdelimiter getdenominator getfam getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getleftdelimiter getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getnumerator getoptions getprev getrightdelimiter getspeciallist getsubtype getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hasoptions hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes

prependbeforehead prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck setanchors setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbox setclass setcurrenttail setdelimiter setdenominator setfam setfontcheck setleftdelimiter setlink setnext setnumerator setoptions setprev setrightdelimiter setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack

userdata helpers

instock inuse todirect

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.4.14 fence

Fence nodes come in pairs but either one can be a dummy (this period driven empty fence). Some of these fields are used by the renderer and might get adapted in the process.

fields

attr	attribute	id	integer	subtype	integer
bottom	integer	nestingfactor	integer	top	integer
bottomovershoot	dimension	next	node	topovershoot	dimension
delimiter	nodelist	prev	node	variant	integer

subtypes

0	unset	2	middle	4	operator
1	left	3	right	5	no

For more fields see noad. At some point we might move fields from that list to here but only when the engine also gets that split.

direct helpers

appendaftertail appendcurrenttail beginofmath checkdiscretionaries collapsing copyonly count dimensions endofmath exchange findattribute findattributerange findnode firstchar firstglyph firstglyphnode firstitalicglyph flattendiscretionaries flattenleaders freeze getanchors getattributelist getattributes getboth getbottom getbottomdelimiter getbox getclass getcurrenttail getdelimiter getdepth getfam getfirstdirectioninlist getfontcheck getheight getid getidsubtype getidsubtypenext getlocalparboxstate getmvllist getnext getnodes getprev getspeciallist getsubtype gettop gettopdelimiter gettotal getwordrange hasglyph hasidsubtype hpack hyphenating insertcurrenthead isboth ischar ischarcheck isdirect isfontcheck isglyph isloop isnext isnextchar isnextcharcheck isnextglyph isprev isprevchar isprevcharcheck isprevglyph issimilarglyph isspeciallist isvalid kerning lastnode length ligaturing

```
makeextensible mlisttohlist naturalhsize naturalwidth newcontinuationatom
newfontcheck newmathglyph newtextglyph patchattributes prependbeforehead
prependcurrenttail protectglyphs protectglyphsbase protectglyphsnone
protrusionskippable rangedimensions removefromlist repack reverse samefontcheck
setanchors setattributelist setattributes setattributesinlist setboth setbottom
setbottomdelimiter setbox setclass setcurrenttail setdelimiter setdepth setfam
setfontcheck setheight setlink setnext setprev setspeciallist setsplit setsubtype
settop settopdelimiter showlist size slide softenhyphens startofpar tonode
tovaliddirect traversechar traversecontent traverseglyph traverseitalic
traverseleader traverselist traversepossible unprotectglyphs unprotectglyphsnone
unsetattributes usesfont vbalance verticalbreak vpack
```

userdata helpers

```
instock inuse todirect
```

userdata helpers

no get: -
no set: -

15.5 Helpers

15.5.1 Introduction

The userdata node variant has accessors on that object but when we use the indexed variant we use functions. As a consequence there are more helpers for direct nodes that for userdata nodes and many of them accept more arguments or have multiple return values. When you use ConTEXt you will notice that instead of the `node.direct` name space we use `nuts`. Among the reasons is that we had an intermediate variant in ConTEXt MkIV before we had these direct nodes. That variant was more efficient than the userdata accessors and triggered the introduction of direct nodes after which we dropped the intermediate variant. So, for ConTEXt users direct nodes are nuts.

What model you choose depends on your programming preferences. Using direct nodes is more efficient but if that pays back really depends on how frequently you access them. It is easy to blame a performance hit on Lua (and interfacing to node lists) but don't underestimate the impact of inefficient macros or inefficient coding in general. Both models perform quite okay and in LuaMetaTEX likely a bit better than in LuaTEX.[27]

15.5.2 Housekeeping

This function returns an array that maps node id numbers to node type strings, providing an overview of the possible top-level `id` types.

```
function node.types ( )
    return <t:table> -- identifiers
end
```

[27] In the development history documents you can occasionally find explanations about how these mechanisms evolved. Already early in the development in LuaTEX we made sure that the overhead was acceptable.

This shows the names of the nodes and their internal numbers. Not all nodes are visible unless one goes really deep down into lists. The next two convert a name to its internal numeric representation and vise versa. The numbers don't relate to importance or some ordering; they just appear in the order that is handy for the engine. Commands like this are rather optimized so performance should be ok but you can of course always store the id in a Lua number.

```
function node.id ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end

function node.type ( <t:integer> identifier )
    return <t:string> -- name
end
```

This function returns an indexed table with valid field names for a particular type of node. Some fields (like `total`) can be constructed from other fields.

```
function node.fields ( <t:integer> identifier | <t:string> name )
    return <t:table> -- fields
end
```

The `hasfield` function returns a boolean that is only true if `n` is actually a node, and it has the field.This function probably is not that useful but some nodes don't have a `subtype`, `attr` or `prev` field and this is a way to test for that.

```
function node.direct.hasfield ( <t:direct> n | <t:string> name )
    return <t:boolean> -- okay
end
```

The `new` function creates a new node. All its fields are initialized to either zero or `nil` except for `id` and `subtype`. Instead of numbers you can also use strings (names). If you pass a second argument the subtype will be set too.

```
function node.direct.new (
    <t:number> id | <t:string> name
)
    return <t:direct.> -- node
end

function node.direct.new (
    <t:number> id | <t:string> name,
    <t:number> | <t:string> subtype
)
    return <t:direct.> -- node
end
```

As already has been mentioned, you are responsible for making sure that nodes created this way are used only once, and are freed when you don't pass them back somehow.

The next one frees node `n` from TEX's memory. Be careful: no checks are done on whether this node is still pointed to from a register or some `next` field: it is up to you to make sure that the internal data structures remain correct. Fields that point to nodes or lists are flushed too. So, when you used their content for something else you need to set them to nil first.

```
function node.direct.free ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- next
end
```

The `free` function returns the next field of the freed node, while the `flushnode` alternative returns nothing.

```
function node.direct.flushnode ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end
```

A list starting with node `n` can be flushed from TEX's memory too. Be careful: no checks are done on whether any of these nodes is still pointed to from a register or some `next` field: it is up to you to make sure that the internal data structures remain correct.

```
function node.direct.flushlist ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end
```

When you free for instance a discretionary node, `flushlist` is applied to the `pre`, `post`, `replace` so you don't need to do that yourself. Assigning them `nil` won't free those lists!

This creates a deep copy of node `n`, including all nested lists as in the case of a hlist or vlist node. Only the `next` field is not copied.

```
function node.direct.copy ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- copy
end
```

A deep copy of the node list that starts at `n` can be created too. If `m` is also given, the copy stops just before node `m`.

```
function node.direct.copylist ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- copy
end

function node.direct.copylist ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> m )
    return <t:direct> -- copy
end
```

We can also make a more direct copy of a node, which means that we don't make copy of for instance node lists assigned to a field. So you'd better know what you're doing.

```
function node.direct.copyonly ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- copy
end
```

Note that you cannot copy attribute lists this way. However, there is normally no need to copy attribute lists because when you do assignments to the `attr` field or make changes to specific attributes, the needed copying and freeing takes place automatically. When you change a value of an attribute *in* a list, it will affect all the nodes that share that list.

```
function node.direct.write ( <t:direct> n )
```

```
    -- no return values
end
```

This function will append a node list to TEX's 'current list'. The node list is not deep-copied! There is no error checking either! You might need to enforce horizontal mode in order for this to work as expected.

15.5.3 Common properties

Here we discuss a few node field accessors that are common to nodes. In most cases an accessor looks at a node id and then returns or set something, just because field names (or properties) car similar. Here we mention some, the others are mentioned in following sections.

```
function node.direct.getid ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> id
end

function node.direct.getsubtype ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> subtype
end

function node.direct.getidsubtype ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- id
        <t:integer>  -- subtype
end
```

You can't change the id of a node, but you can set the subtype:

Data fields are general purpose so these helpers come in variants:

```
function node.direct.getdata ( <t:direct> glyph )
    return <t:integer>  -- data
end
function node.direct.getdata ( <t:direct> rule )
    return <t:integer> -- data
end
function node.direct.getdata ( <t:direct> glue )
    return <t:integer>, <t:integer> -- data, reserved
end
function node.direct.getdata ( <t:direct> boundary )
    return <t:integer>, <t:integer> -- data, reserved
end
function node.direct.getdata ( <t:direct> insert )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end
function node.direct.getdata ( <t:direct> attribute )
    return <t:integer>, <t:integer> -- index, value
end
function node.direct.getdata ( <t:direct> attributelist )
    return <t:table> -- hash with values per index
```

```
end
function node.direct.getdata ( <t:direct> mark )
    return <t:token> -- list
end
function node.direct.getdata ( <t:direct> mark, <t:true> asstring )
    return <t:string> -- content
end
```

The companion helper sets values, with the exception of attribute (list) nodes; those are ignored.

```
function node.direct.setdata ( <t:direct> node, ... ) end
```

The direction field declares if we're going left-to-right or right-to-left. Direction nodes can have a subtype indicating it it's canceling a direction.

```
function node.direct.setdirection ( <t:direct> node ) return <t:integer> end
function node.direct.getdirection ( <t:direct> node, <t:integer> direction ) end
```

Options are bitsets that control aspects of the rendering. Some subsystems set option bits too.

```
function node.direct.getoptions ( <t:direct> node ) return <t:integer> end
function node.direct.setoptions ( <t:direct> node, <t:integer> integer ) end
```

Some nodes have a state, currently glyphs and boxes. Glyph states are up to the macro package, box states get set by the engine. When a second argument is passed to the getter, that state gets checked for.

```
function node.direct.getstate (
    <t:direct> n
)
    return <t:integer>
end

function node.direct.getstate (
    <t:direct> n,
    <t:integer> state
)
    return <t:boolean>
end

function node.direct.setstate (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer> state
)
    -- no return values
end
```

When engines support the so called 'synctex' feature, some nodes get a file id and line number assigned. In LuaTEX we made that more flexible so that one can come up with a more fine-tuned approach. In LuaMetaTEX we only provide the fields and then some helpers to set and get their values:

```
function node.direct.getinputfields (
    <t:direct> node
```

```
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- file
        <t:integer>  -- line
end

function node.direct.setinputfields (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> file,
    <t:integer> line
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Only glyph, hlist, vlist and unset nodes have these fields and the engine sets them, whenever such a node is created, but only when a mode value is larger than zero. A value of one makes that list nodes get set, a larger value also makes that glyphs are set. We don't fo into details here but in the `tex` library we have `setinputstatemode`, `getinputstatemode`, `setinputstatefile`, `getinputstatefile`, `forceinputstatefile`, `forceinputstateline`, `setinputstateline` and `getinputstateline` to control what values get assigned. The engine itself has no knowledge of this synchronization feature, the macro package defines it.

This function checks of a glyph, rule, box or leader content has a width, height and/or depth set to a non-zero value.

```
function node.direct.hasdimensions ( <t:direct> )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

15.5.4 Geometry

Glyphs, lists and rules can have offsets. For practical reasons the helper that accesses these also deal with related properties.

```
function node.direct.getoffsets ( <t:direct> glyph )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- xoffset
        <t:integer>, -- yoffset
        <t:integer>, -- left
        <t:integer>, -- right
        <t:integer>  -- raise
end

function node.direct.getoffsets ( <t:direct> list )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- xoffset
        <t:integer>  -- yoffset
end

function node.direct.getoffsets ( <t:direct> rule )
    return
```

```
        <t:integer>, -- xoffset
        <t:integer>, -- yoffset
        <t:integer>, -- left,
        <t:integer>, -- right
        <t:integer>, -- dashon
        <t:integer>  -- dashoff
end
```

The setter sets these properties when a number is passed:

```
function node.direct.setoffsets (
    <t:direct>  glyph,
    <t:integer> xoffset,
    <t:integer> yoffset,
    <t:integer> left,
    <t:integer> right,
    <t:integer> raise
)
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.setoffsets (
    <t:direct>  list,
    <t:integer> xoffset,
    <t:integer> yoffset
)
    -- no return values
    return
end

function node.direct.setoffsets (
    <t:direct>  rule
    <t:integer> xoffset,
    <t:integer> yoffset,
    <t:integer> left,
    <t:integer> right,
    <t:integer> dashon,
    <t:integer> dashoff
)
    -- no return values
end
```

A bit more exclusive are margins. For glyphs these can act like font kerns, for rules they extend the rule.

```
function node.direct.addmargins (
    <t:direct>  glyph,
    <t:integer> left,
    <t:integer> right,
    <t:integer> raise
)
```

```
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.addmargins (
    <t:direct>  rule,
    <t:integer> left,
    <t:integer> right
)
    -- no return values
end
```

For glyphs we also have the following variant, that scales according to the glyph scales.

```
function node.direct.addxymargins (
    <t:direct>  glyph,
    <t:integer> left,
    <t:integer> right,
    <t:integer> raise
)
    -- no return values
end
```

These operate on glyphs, boxes and rules:

```
function node.direct.addxoffset ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> amount ) end
function node.direct.addyoffset ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> amount ) end
```

List, insert, mark and adjust nodes have an index field.

```
function node.direct.getindex ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:integer> end
function node.direct.setindex ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> i ) end
```

15.5.5 Fonts and characters

The most significant carrier of information is the glyph node. In LuaMetaTEX it is also one of the largest nodes in terms of fields. As with any engine, it has a font and character field. In LuaMetaTEX a glue node can also have a font set and of course math characters and delimiters have this property too.

```
function node.direct.getfont (
    <t:direct> n
)
    return <t:integer> -- id
end

function node.direct.setfont (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer) id
)
    -- no return values
end
```

```
function node.direct.setfont (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer) id,
    <t:integer) slot
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Here we see that when we set a set a font we can also set a character, because that's often what goes together. The character field setter and getter is simple. The term character is actually neutral although in practice it's a Unicode slot, just because utf8 is the input encoding. But in the end it's just an index into a font table.

```
function node.direct.getchar ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:integer> end
function node.direct.setchar ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> slot ) end
```

We can also get the font and character in one go; watch the order! Here for a math character (simple noads are also handled here) you also get back the family:

```
function node.direct.getcharspec (
    <t:direct> n -- glyph or rule
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- character
        <t:integer>  -- font
end

function node.direct.getcharspec (
    <t:direct> n -- math characer, delimiter, simple noad
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- character
        <t:integer>,  -- font
        <t:integer>  -- family
end
```

When working on the 'improved' math processing capabilities in the engine we picked up on the idea to carry around some more information. This is why we also have:

```
function node.direct.setchardict (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer> properties,
    <t:integer> group,
    <t:integer> index
)
        -- no return value
end
```

These apply to glyphs, math characters and delimiters. Currently their meaning depends on the macro package but we might eventually bring som more into the engine. One reason for putting information in the nodes instead of relying on Lua is that in math characters become glyphs and some information travels through the system.

The getter is a bit more extensive; in the case of math we get the font of the family.

```
function node.direct.setchardict (
    <t:direct> n
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- properties,
        <t:integer>, -- group,
        <t:integer>, -- index,
        <t:integer>, -- font,
        <t:integer>  -- character
end
```

Some nodes and a data field that a macro package can use anyway it wants. Of course using it makes sharing code between macro packages hard but in practice (certainly at this level) there is no sharing going on anyway. A value of `-0x7FFFFFFF` is equivalent to the field not being set; this is compatible with attributes.

```
function node.direct.getglyphdata ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:integer> end
function node.direct.setglyphdata ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> d) end
```

When you create a node in Lua you also need to set properties, like a font and character. However, especially in ConTEXt, quite some behavior is also determined by for instance `\glyphoptions`, `\glyphscale` and alike. This is why we have two creator functions that set the font and character but also set the fields according to the current state we're in.

```
function node.direct.newtextglyph ( <t:integer> f, <t:integer> c ) end
function node.direct.newmathglyph ( <t:integer> f, <t:integer> c ) end
```

For now we keep this one for sentimental reasons, although its application is rather specific: in a sequence of pre- and postscripts to nuclei. The first variant creates a new one and optionally sets an attribute list. The second variant takes an existing node and tags it as continuation setting properties according the current math setup. This function was added for prototyping new functionally and lost its purpose; the engine knows better what to do.

```
function node.direct.newcontinuationatom (
    <t:boolean> new,
    <t:direct>  attrlist
)
    return <t:direct>
end

function node.direct.newcontinuationatom (
    <t:direct> existing
)
    -- no return value
end
```

We mentioned glyph options, so here is a test for that, using a option already mentioned in a previous section and that are normally set with `\glyphoptions`:

```
function node.direct.hasglyphoption ( <t:direct> g, <t:integer> o )
```

```
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

We now arrived at some rather special helpers. Although the engine is basically neutral with respect to macro packages and how they deal with fonts, we took the liberty to add some features that fit well in the way ConTEXt deals with these matters; like it or not.

When we process the input characters in a node list according to the way a font likes it to be rendered, we have two states: unprotected and protected. We start out unprotected and when done set the protection flag on the glyph nodes so that later on we can check if processing already happened. In functions that basically do the same we use `char` for unprotected and `glyph` otherwise.

For instance, we have two helpers and their match depends on the protection set:

```
function node.direct.firstchar  ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.firstglyph ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
```

In ConTEXt once a node list has gone through the font handler, we have glyphs, so if one (at all) add some user pass over the list and use these helpers, one should also be aware of the moment it happens. So this is a typical case where macro packages differ and choose different approaches.

```
function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct>  n, <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> data
)
    return
        <t:nil>              -- no node
      | <t:nil>, <t:integer> -- node id
      | <t:false>            -- glyph already done
      | <t:integer>          -- character code
end

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct>  n, <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> data,
    <t:integer> state
)
    return -- see above
end

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct>  n, <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> scale, <t:integer> xscale, <t:integer> yscale
)
    return -- see above
end

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct>  n, <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> data,
    <t:integer> scale, <t:integer> xscale, <t:integer> yscale
)
```

```
    return -- see above
end
```

The `isglyph` checker is simpler:

```
function node.direct.isglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:nil>,
        <t:nil>
end
function node.direct.isglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:false>,
        <t:integer> -- node id
end
function node.direct.isglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- character code,
        <t:integer>  -- font id
end
```

A variant returns the next or previous node, or nothing when there is no node passed.

```
function node.direct.isnextglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer> | <t:nil>, -- next node
        <t:false>,
        <t:integer>            -- node id
end

function node.direct.isnextglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer> | <t:nil>, -- next node
        <t:integer>,           -- character code,
        <t:integer>            -- font id
end

function node.direct.isprevglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer> | <t:nil>, -- previous node
        <t:false>,
        <t:integer>            -- node id
end

function node.direct.isprevglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer> | <t:nil>, -- previous node
        <t:integer>,           -- character code,
        <t:integer>            -- font id
end
```

We now introduce a special kind of node, one that stores a font related state. This one was introduced when we switched to compact font mode in ConTEXt, after a few year period of testing.

```
function node.direct.newfontcheck (
    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:integer> data,
    <t:integer> scale,
    <t:integer> xscale,
    <t:integer> yscale
)
    return <t:direct>
end
```

This spec also can store a slant and weight but this is not initialized via parameters. We can change values in this spec node

```
function node.direct.setfontcheck (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> template
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The template node is glyph, font spec, or disc node. When it's a glyph, we take the 3 scale. When it's a font spec, the identifier, data and scale fields are copied. From a disc node we take the scales from the glyph that starts a replace field. If we pass more than two arguments the following is assumed:

```
function node.direct.setfontcheck (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:integer> data,
    <t:integer> scale,
    <t:integer> xscale,
    <t:integer> yscale
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The getter returns already mentioned properties:

```
function node.direct.getfontcheck (
    <t:direct> node
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- identifier
        <t:integer>, -- data
        <t:integer>, -- scale
        <t:integer>, -- xscale
        <t:integer>  -- yscale
end
```

You can also do a test on equality of these five values:

```
function node.direct.samefontcheck (
    <t:direct>  fontspec,
```

```
    <t:integer> identifier,
    <t:integer> data,
    <t:integer> scale,
    <t:integer> xscale,
    <t:integer> yscale
)
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

We can also check against a node, first a simple one:

```
function node.direct.isfontcheck (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> fontspec
)
    return <t:boolean> -- glyph and same spec
end
```

The next one returns more details, depending on what node gets passed:

```
function node.direct.ischarcheck (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> fontspec
)
    return
        <t:direct>, <t:nil>, <t:integer> -- no glyph, node id
      | <t:direct>, <t:boolean>          -- different character
      | <t:direct>, <t:integer>          -- same, character
      | <t:direct>, <t:nil>              -- no spec or node
end
```

These two are similar but also return next or previous node:

```
function node.direct.isnextcharcheck (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> fontspec
)
    return
        <t:direct>, <t:nil>, <t:integer> -- no glyph, node id
      | <t:direct>, <t:boolean>          -- different character
      | <t:direct>, <t:integer>          -- same, character
      | <t:direct>, <t:nil>              -- no spec or node
end

function node.direct.isprevcharcheck (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> fontspec
)
    return
        <t:direct>, <t:nil>, <t:integer> -- no glyph, node id
      | <t:direct>, <t:boolean>          -- different character
```

```
      | <t:direct>, <t:integer>          -- same, character
      | <t:direct>, <t:nil>              -- no spec or node
end
```

There are some extra helpers that one can consider to be experimental that we test in the node mode font handler. Just don't use them.

15.5.6 Manipulating lists

Unless there is a bug or a callback messes up a node list is dual linked. In original TEX nodes had to be small so nodes only had a next pointer. If you run into an issue you can use the next helper to sure that the node list is double linked.

```
function node.direct.slide ( <t:direct> n)
    return <t:direct> -- tail
end
```

In most cases TEX itself only uses `next` pointers but your other callbacks might expect proper `prev` pointers too. So, when you run into issues or are in doubt, apply the slide function before you return the list. You can also get the tail without sliding:

```
function node.direct.tail ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- tail
end
```

For tracing purposes we have a few counters. The first one returns the number of nodes contained in the node list that starts at `n`. If `m` is also supplied it stops at `m` instead of at the end of the list. The node `m` is not counted.

```
function node.direct.length (
    <t:direct> n
)
    return <t:integer>
end

function node.direct.length (
    <t:direct> n,
    <t:direct> m
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The second one the number of nodes contained in the node list that starts at `n` that have a matching `id` field. If `m` is also supplied, counting stops at `m` instead of at the end of the list. The node `m` is not counted. This function also accept string `id`'s.

```
function node.direct.count (
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:direct>  n
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

```
function node.direct.count (
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:direct>  m
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

This function removes the node `current` from the list following `head`. It is your responsibility to make sure it is really part of that list. The return values are the new `head` and `current` nodes. The returned `current` is the node following the `current` in the calling argument, and is only passed back as a convenience (or `nil`, if there is no such node). The returned `head` is more important, because if the function is called with `current` equal to `head`, it will be changed. When the third argument is passed, the node is freed.

```
function node.direct.remove ( <t:direct> head, <t:direct> current )
    return
        <t:direct> head,
        <t:direct> current,
        <t:direct> removed
end

function node.direct.remove ( <t:direct> head, <t:direct> current, <t:boolean> free)
    return
        <t:direct> -- head,
        <t:direct> -- current
end
```

This function inserts the node `new` before `current` into the list following `head`. It is your responsibility to make sure that `current` is really part of that list. The return values are the (potentially mutated) `head` and the node `new`, set up to be part of the list (with correct `next` field). If `head` is initially `nil`, it will become `new`.

```
function node.direct.insertbefore (
    <t:direct> head,
    <t:direct> current,
    <t:direct> new
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- new
end
```

This function inserts the node `new` after `current` into the list following `head`. It is your responsibility to make sure that `current` is really part of that list. The return values are the `head` and the node `new`, set up to be part of the list (with correct `next` field). If `head` is initially `nil`, it will become `new`.

```
function node.direct.insertafter (
    <t:direct> head,
    <t:direct> current,
    <t:direct> new
```

```
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- new
end
```

You can also mess with the list by changing the `next` or `prev` fields, using:

```
function node.direct.setprev ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> prv                 ) end
function node.direct.setnext ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> nxt                 ) end
function node.direct.setboth ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> prv, <t:direct> nxt ) end
```

You can chain a set of nodes with `setlink`. A boolean instead of a node, is skipped. A double linked list is build from the nodes and as we go, but we keep the next node of the currently appended node untouched. However, a nil in the sequence will wipe that next pointer.

```
function node.direct.setlink (
    <t:direct> n1,
    <t:direct> n2,
    ...
    <t:direct> nn
)
    return <t:direct> -- head
end
```

Let's assume that we have `n1` that has a prev pointer. In that case

```
h = node.direct.setlink (
    n1,    -- n1.prev = kept  n1.next = kept
    n2,    -- n2.prev = n1    n2.next = kept  n1.next = n2
    false, -- skipped
    n4,    -- n4.prev = n2    n4.next = kept  n2.next = n4
    nil    --                                n4.next = nil
)
```

So, `h` will be `n1` and connected to what it was. However, the final nil makes that the chain ends with `n4`; without that the list would be injected before what `n4` pointed to. The tail of (sub)list `h` is `n4`.

This function will split the list, although in practice one wants a bit more control over matters.

```
n1 <-> n2 <-> n3 <-> n4 : setsplit(n2,n2) : n1 <-> n2      n3 <-> n4
n1 <-> n2 <-> n3 <-> n4 : setsplit(n2,n3) : n1 <-> n2      n3 <-> n4
n1 <-> n2 <-> n3 <-> n4 : setsplit(n2,n4) : n1 <-> n2  n3  n4
```

Anyway, what happens is this (in ascii art) is this:

```
function node.direct.setsplit ( <t:direct> left, <t:direct> right ) end
```

The next function pops the last node from TEX's 'current list'. It returns that node, or `nil` if the current list is empty.

```
function node.direct.lastnode ( )
    return <t:direct> n
```

```
end
```

This helper returns the location of the first match at or after node `n`:

```
function node.direct.findnode ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> subtype )
    return <t:direct> -- n
end

function node.direct.findnode ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- n
        <t:integer> -- subtype
end
```

15.5.7 Traversing

The easiest do-it-yourself approach to run over a list of nodes is to use one of the following functions:

```
function node.direct.getnext ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> | <t:nil>
end

function node.direct.getprev ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> | <t:nil>
end

function node.direct.getboth ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct> | <t:nil>, -- prev
        <t:direct> | <t:nil>  -- next
end
```

Instead of using these you can use one of the iterators that loops over the node list that starts at `n`.

```
function node.direct.traverse ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>  t,
        <t:integer> id,
        <t:integer> subtype
end
```

Typically code looks like this:

```
for n in node.traverse(head) do
    -- whatever
end
```

which is functionally equivalent to:

```
do
    local n
    local function f (head,var)
```

```
        local t
        if var == nil then
            t = head
        else
            t = var.next
        end
        return t
    end
    while true do
        n = f (head, n)
        if n == nil then
            break
        end
        -- whatever
    end
end
```

It should be clear from the definition of the function `f` that even though it is possible to add or remove nodes from the node list while traversing, you have to take great care to make sure all the `next` (and `prev`) pointers remain valid.

If the above is unclear to you, see the section 'For Statement' in the Lua Reference Manual.

This is an iterator that loops over all the nodes in the list that starts at `n` that have a matching `id` field. See the previous section for details. The change is in the local function `f`, which now does an extra while loop checking against the upvalue `id`, kind of like:

```
local function f(head,var)
    local t
    if var == nil then
        t = head
    else
        t = var.next
    end
    while not t.id == id do
        t = t.next
    end
    return t
end
```

This and the previously discussed `traverse` are the only traverses provided for userdata nodes.

```
function node.direct.traverseid ( <t:integer> id, <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>  t,
        <t:integer> subtype
end
```

The `traversechar` iterator loops over the `glyph` nodes in a list. Only nodes with a subtype less than 256 are seen.

NEEDS CHECKING: protected check

```
function node.direct.traversechar ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>,  -- n
        <t:integer>, -- char
        <t:integer>  -- font
end
```

The `traverseglyph` iterator loops over a list and returns the list and filters all glyphs:

```
function node.direct.traverseglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>,  -- n
        <t:integer>, -- char
        <t:integer>  -- font
end
```

This iterator loops over the `hlist` and `vlist` nodes in a list. The four return values can save some time compared to fetching these fields but in practice you seldom need them all.

```
function node.direct.traverselist ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>,  -- n
        <t:integer>, -- identifier
        <t:integer>, -- subtype
        <t:direct>   -- list
end
```

This iterator loops over nodes that have content: `hlist`, `vlist`, `glue` with leaders, `glyph`, `disc` and `rule` nodes.

```
function node.direct.traversecontent ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>,  -- n
        <t:integer>, -- identifier
        <t:integer>, -- subtype
        <t:direct>   -- listorleader
end
```

Kerns nodes that have the italic, left correction or right correction subtype can be traversed with

```
function node.direct.traverseitalic ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- n
        <t:integer> -- subtype
end
```

You can loop over the so called uleaders and then do something with their content. You get back a hlist or vlist that has the uleaders package property set.

```
function node.direct.traverseleader ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- list
```

```
        <t:integer> -- type
        <t:integer> -- subtype
end
```

The traversers also support backward traversal. An optional extra boolean triggers this. Yet another optional boolean will automatically start at the end of the given list. So, if we want both we use:

```
function node.direct.traverse (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:boolean> reverse,
    <t:boolean> startatend
)
    return
        <t:direct>  t,
        <t:integer> id,
        <t:integer> subtype
end
```

You can look ahead and back with these three, you pass two arguments, a node and type to be checked:

```
function node.direct.isnext ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> type )
    return <t:direct> | <t:nil>
end
function node.direct.isprev ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> type )
    return <t:direct> | <t:nil>
end
function node.direct.isboth ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> type )
    return
        <t:direct> | <t:nil>, -- prev
        <t:direct> | <t:nil>  -- next
end
```

15.5.8 Dimensions

When working with nodes that have dimensions it can be that the effective width, height and depth are determined by for instance scaling (glyphs) or packaging (lists).

```
function node.direct.getglyphdimensions ( <t:direct> glyph )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- width  (includes expansion)
        <t:integer>, -- height
        <t:integer>, -- depth
        <t:integer>, -- expansion
        <t:number>,  -- xscale (fractions)
        <t:number>,  -- yscale (fractions)
        <t:number>,  -- slant  (fractions)
        <t:number>   -- weight (fractions)
end

function node.direct.getkerndimension ( <t:direct> kern )
    return <t:integer>, -- width (includes expansion)
```

```
end

function node.direct.getruledimensions ( <t:direct> rule )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- virtualwidth
        <t:integer>, -- virtualheight
        <t:integer>, -- virtualdepth
        <t:true>     -- isvirtual
end

function node.direct.getruledimensions ( <t:direct> rule )
    return
    <t:integer>, -- width
    <t:integer>, -- height
    <t:integer>, -- depth
    <t:false>    -- notvirtual
end

function node.direct.getlistdimensions ( <t:direct> rule )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- width
        <t:integer>, -- height
        <t:integer>, -- depth
        <t:integer>, -- shift
        <t:direct>,  -- list
        <t:direct>   -- except
end
```

Because rules are general purpose blobs, we have a setter. When we have a virtual rule, the dimensions are stored but not used in packaging.

```
function node.direct.setruledimensions (
    <t:direct>  rule,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:integer> depth,
    <t:integer> data
)
    -- no return value
end
```

15.5.9 Glyphs

Glyphs have a lot of parameters and there are many setters and getters that can access them. Some generic ones, like `getwidth` are discussed in other subsections, some are more specific to glyphs:

```
function node.direct.getslant  ( <t:direct> g ) return <t:integer> end
function node.direct.getweight ( <t:direct> g ) return <t:integer> end
```

and

```
function node.direct.setslant  ( <t:direct> g, <t:integer> slant  ) end
```

```
function node.direct.setweight ( <t:direct> g, <t:integer> weight ) end
```

Glyph scales are normally set at the TEX end using one of the pseudo internal registers. Internally the scales are integers, where 1000 means a scale of 1. We have quite some related helpers.

```
function node.direct.getscale (
    <t:direct> node
)
    return <t:integer> -- scale
end

function node.direct.getscales (
    <t:direct> node
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- scale
        <t:integer>, -- xscale
        <t:integer>  -- yscale
end
```

As usual we also have setters, where numbers get properly rounded:

```
function node.direct.setscale   (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:numbers> scale
)
    --- no return values
end

function node.direct.setscales (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:number> scale,
    <t:number> xscale,
    <t:number> yscale
)
    -- no return value
end
```

When we work with scales we can use one of these. This time we work with numbers, so we've properly divided by 1000.

```
function node.direct.getxscale  ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:number>
end
function node.direct.getyscale  ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:number>
end
function node.direct.getxyscales ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:number>,  <t:number>
end
```

Watch out, this setter again uses integers:

```
function node.direct.setxyscales (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> xscale,
    <t:integer> yscale
)
    --- no return values
end
```

The `getxscale` is special in the sense that when a glue node is passed that has space properties, it will deduce the scale value from a previous or next glyph. This can be used to calculate a space which is the reason that only fonts with such a character are valid, otherwise the scale is just 1.

You can scale a dimension by the scale factors used for a glyph. The properties of the glyph don't change!

```
function node.direct.xscaled (
    <t:direct>  glyph,
    <t:integer> dimension
)
    return <t:integer>
end

function node.direct.yscaled (
    <t:direct>  glyph,
    <t:integer> dimension
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The control field defines if and how specific typesetting related features get applies as specified with the glyph option and/or various related mechanisms.

```
function node.direct.getcontrol (
    <t:direct>
)
    return <t:integer>
end

function node.direct.setcontrol (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> control
)
    -- no return values
end
```

In LuaMetaTEX we have extended the math engine with 'corner kerns' that more or less replace (often unreliable OpenType) staircase kerns and (traditional TEX) italic correction. For diagnostic purposes you can get these with:

```
function node.direct.getcornerkerns (
    <t:direct> glyph
)
```

```
    return
        <t:integer, -- bottom left
        <t:integer, -- bottom right
        <t:integer, -- top left
        <t:integer  -- top right
end
```

15.5.10 Glue

You can set the five properties of a glue in one go. If a non-numeric value is passed the property becomes zero.

```
function node.direct.setglue ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.setglue (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:integer> stretch,
    <t:integer> shrink,
    <t:integer> stretchorder,
    <t:integer> shrinkorder
)
    -- no return values
end
```

When you pass values, only arguments that are numbers are assigned so the next call will only adapt the width and shrink.

```
node.direct.setglue(n,655360,false,65536)
```

When a list node is passed, you set the glue, order and sign instead. The next call will return five values or nothing when no glue is passed.

```
function node.direct.getglue ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- width
        <t:integer>, -- stretch
        <t:integer>, -- shrink
        <t:integer>, -- stretchorder
        <t:integer>  -- shrinkorder
```

When the second argument is false, only the width is returned (this is consistent with `tex.get`). When a list node is passed, you get back the glue that is set, the order of that glue and the sign.

This function returns `true` when the width, stretch and shrink properties are all zero.

```
function node.direct.iszeroglue ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:boolean> -- allzero
end
```

Glue is not only, well, glue. The to be filled space can also be occupied by a rule, boxes, glyphs and what more. You can get the list that makes this with:

```
function node.direct.getleader ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- list
end
```

and set the list with

```
function node.direct.setleader ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> l | <t:nil> )
    -- no return values
end
```

15.5.11 Attributes

Assignments to attributes registers result in assigning lists with set attributes to nodes and the implementation is non-trivial because the value that is attached to a node is essentially a (sorted) sparse array of key-value pairs. It is generally easiest to deal with attribute lists and attributes by using the dedicated functions in the `node` library.

An `attribute` comes in two variants, indicated by subtype. Because attributes are stored in a sorted linked list, and because they are shared, the first node is a list reference node and the following ones are value nodes. So, most attribute nodes are value nodes. These are forward linked lists. Because there are assumptions to how these list are build you should rely on the helpers, also because details might change.

This returns the currently active list of attributes, if there is one.

```
function node.direct.currentattributes()
    return <t:direct> -- list
end
```

The intended usage of `currentattributes` is as follows (we use the userdata interface here):

```
local x1 = node.new("glyph")
x1.attr = node.currentattributes()
local x2 = node.new("glyph")
x2.attr = node.currentattributes()
```

or:

```
local x1 = node.new("glyph")
local x2 = node.new("glyph")
local ca = node.currentattributes()
x1.attr = ca
x2.attr = ca
```

The attribute lists are reference counted and the assignment takes care of incrementing the count. You cannot expect the value `ca` to be valid any more when you assign attributes (using `tex.setattribute`) or when control has been passed back to TEX.

```
<number> v = node.hasattribute ( <t:node> n, <number> id )
```

```
<number> v = node.hasattribute ( <t:node> n, <number> id, <number> val )
```

Of course this one is also available in the `node.direct` name space, as is the following one that tests if a node has the attribute with number `id` set. If `val` is also supplied, also tests if the value matches `val`. It returns the value, or, if no match is found, `nil`.

```
function node.direct.getattribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id )
    return <t:integer> -- value
end
```

The previous function tests if a node has an attribute with number `id` set. It returns the value, or, if no match is found, `nil`. If no `id` is given then the zero attributes is assumed.

```
function node.direct.findattribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- value
        <t:direct>   -- node
end
```

Finds the first node that has attribute with number `id` set. It returns the value and the node if there is a match and otherwise nothing.

```
function node.direct.setattribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id, <t:integer> value )
    -- no return values
end
```

Sets the attribute with number `id` to the value `value`. Duplicate assignments are ignored.

```
function node.direct.unsetattribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id )
    return <t:integer> -- value
end

function node.direct.unsetattribute ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> id, <t:integer> value
                                                                                    )
    return <t:integer> -- value
end
```

Unsets the attribute with number `id`. If `value` is also supplied, it will only perform this operation if the value matches `value`. Missing attributes or attribute-value pairs are ignored. If the attribute was actually deleted, the function returns its old value, otherwise it returns `nil`.

There are also helpers that instead of setting or getting a specific attribute, work with a list. You should not mess with these lists unless you're sure what you do. These helpers are mainly there because they can be used to copy a list from one node to another efficiently. The setter checks the second argument and will copy the list from the other node if it's not an attribute list.

```
function node.direct.getattributelist (<t:direct> source)
    return <t:direct> -- list
end

function node.direct.setattributelist (<t:direct> target, <t:direct> list)
    -- no return values
end
```

```
function node.direct.setattributelist (<t:direct> target, <t:direct> source)
    -- no return values
end
```

Instead of getting or setting one attribute you can handle multiple in a row, which might be more efficient:

```
function node.direct.getattributes (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> id,
    ...              -- more id's
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- value
        ...          -- more values
end

function node.direct.setattributes (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:integer> value,
    ...                -- more id's and values
)
    -- no return values
end
```

15.5.12 Glyph handling

Processing a character stream into a visual representation using glyphs is one of the important processes in the engine. In TEX82 this happens in two places. When the text is read ligaturing and kerning takes place and the list can, if needed, be packed into a box because the dimensions are now known. When that list is to become a paragraph it might be that lines get split and when a word can be hyphenated the ligaturing and kerning is reverted, the word gets hyphenated, ligatures and kerns get reapplied and the process goes on.

In OpenType processing characters is way more complex. Even if we delegate this to a library, the fact that we have a mix of text and whatever, potential hyphenation as well as spaces turned glue, means that we need to do some juggling with nodes. For that reason hyphenation (of the whole list), ligaturing and kerning has been split into clearly separates stages. One can still apply the original TEX variants but in practice it is Lua that does the juggling of nodes in more complex situations. And we're not only talking of font processing. For instance, additional inter-character kerning can be done in Lua too.

This all means that we have quite a repertoire of helpers that deal with glyph processing efficiently.

We can locate the first node in the list starting at `n` that is a glyph node with a subtype indicating it is a glyph, or `nil`. If `m` is given, processing stops at (but including) that node, otherwise processing stops at the end of the list. The `char` and `glyph` variants check for the protected field being (yet) unset or (already) set.

```
function node.direct.firstglyphnode ( <t:direct> n )
```

```
    return <t:direct> -- n
end

function node.direct.firstglyphnode ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> m )
    return <t:direct> -- n
end
```

The next functions can be used to determine if processing is needed. We distinguish between a character (unprocessed) and a glyph (processed or unprocessed). When we check for a glyph there are three possible outcomes:

```
function node.direct.isglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:nil>,
        <t:nil>
end

function node.direct.isglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:false>,
        <t:integer> -- identifier
end

function node.direct.isglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- character
        <t:integer>  -- font
end
```

Checking for a processed character is more complicated. If the glyph has been processed and the protected property has been set, we get this:

```
function node.direct.ischar ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:false>
end
```

If that's not the case additional arguments are checked. If we don't pass a valid integer, the character value is returned:

```
function node.direct.ischar ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> font )
    return <t:integer> -- character
end
```

btu when we passed a font identifier indeed we check if that one matches the one in the glyph and if not again we get:

```
function node.direct.ischar ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> font )
    return <t:false> --
end
```

From there on we check for more arguments to match the glyph fields:

```
function node.direct.ischar (
```

```
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> data
)
    return <t:false> | <t:integer> -- character

end

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> data,
    <t:integer> state
)
    return <t:false> | <t:integer> -- character

end

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> scale,
    <t:integer> xscale,
    <t:integer> yscale,
)
    return <t:false> | <t:integer> -- character

end

function node.direct.ischar (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer> font,
    <t:integer> data,
    <t:integer> scale,
    <t:integer> xscale,
    <t:integer> yscale,
)
    return <t:false> | <t:integer> -- character

end
```

There are reasons for these combined tests and they can be found in the ConTEXt font handler. A related helper is one that compares the `font`, `data`, `scale`, `xscale`, `yscale`, `slant` and `weight`.

```
function node.direct.issimilarglyph ( <t:direct>  one, <t:direct> two )
    return <t:boolean> -- similar
end
```

This function returns the first glyph or disc node in the given list:

```
function node.direct.hasglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:direct> -- n
```

```
end
```

Traditional TEX ligature processing can be achieved with the next helper. This assumes that the ligature information is present in the font. In ConTEXt we call this base mode processing.

```
function node.direct.ligaturing ( <t:direct> first )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:boolean> -- success
end

function node.direct.ligaturing ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Traditional TEX font kern processing can be achieved with the next helper. This assumes that the kern information is present in the font. In ConTEXt we call this base mode processing.

```
function node.direct.kerning ( <t:direct> first )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:boolean> -- success
end

function node.direct.kerning ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

It will be no surprise that the next function has the same setup as the previous two because normally you will first hyphenate, then ligature and finally kern. When Lua does the font handling you will also first hyphenate. In a traditional TEX engine the three steps are kind of mixed into the par builder: there we hyphenate only those places where it makes sense which then involves local reconstruction of the original sequence of glyphs that make the word (no ligatures and kerns) and later applying these base features.

```
function node.direct.hyphenating ( <t:direct> first )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:boolean> -- success
end

function node.direct.hyphenating ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    return
```

```
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>, -- tail
        <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

When processing is done, you can mark the glyph nodes as protected in order to prevent redundant processing, for instance because boxed material gets unboxed. Where in LuaTEX the subtype gets changed by adding or subtracting 256, in LuaMetaTEX we have a dedicated (small) protection field.

```
function node.direct.protectglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.protectglyphs ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    -- no return values
end
```

The opposite action can also be done.

```
function node.direct.unprotectglyph ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.unprotectglyphs ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    -- no return values
end
```

When we wrote the Lua font handler code, we introduced what we call ‘base’ mode for traditional (built-in) processing and ‘node’ mode for Lua based OpenType processing. In ConTEXt we also have ‘none’ and ‘plug’ (for special purposes). A font can be marked as base or none and if that is done, one can use the following functions to set the protection state of a (range of) glyph nodes.

textcontrolvalues

0x01	collapsehyphens	0x10	hasitalics
0x02	baseligaturing	0x20	autoitalics
0x04	basekerning	0x40	replaceapostrophe
0x08	noneprotected		

These control values are uses in places where we apply some magic and either permit or block some treatment. Two relate to base mode, one to none mode. The `textcontrol` field in a font table has that bitset.

```
function node.direct.protectglyphsnone ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.protectglyphsbase ( <t:direct> first, <t:direct> last )
    -- no return values
end
```

These function are not really meant for users, as they work closely with the provided Lua functions for processing fonts where they can help to prevent redundant or unwanted processing. When they are applied, the protection state can change:

glyphprotectionvalues

0x00	unset	0x02	math
0x01	text		

The next function checks if protrusion is active at a line boundary, in which case the glyph node can be skipped. It's not that useful in the end.

```
function node.direct.protrusionskippable ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:boolean> -- skippable
end
```

Once we're done we can freeze leaders: apply the glue to the leader and freeze the boxes or whatever is at hand.

```
function node.direct.flattenleaders ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:integer> -- count
end
```

There are some properties specific for glyphs, like:

```
function node.direct.getlanguage ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end

function node.direct.setlanguage (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer> id
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The script field is not used in the engine; the getter has two variants:

```
function node.direct.getscript ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> -- identifier
end

function node.direct.getscript ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> s )
    return <t:boolean> -- match
end

function node.direct.setscript (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:integer> id
)
    -- no return value
end
```

15.5.13 Discretionaries

Discretionaries and glyphs are the carriers of text. Where the core of `glyph` nodes are the `font` and `char` fields, in `disc` nodes we have to focus on the `pre`, `post` and `replace` fields. These point to linked lists that are a mix of glyph, kerns and (in LuaMetaTEX fixed width) glue. here are the accessors:[28]

```
function node.direct.getpost ( <t:direct> d, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- tail
end

function node.direct.getpre ( <t:direct> d, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- tail
end

function node.direct.getreplace ( <t:direct> d, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- tail
end

function node.direct.getdisc ( <t:direct> d, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- prehead
        <t:direct>, -- posthead
        <t:direct>, -- replacehead
        <t:direct>, -- pretail
        <t:direct>, -- posttail
        <t:direct>  -- replacetail
end
```

We also have setters:

```
function node.direct.setpost    ( <t:direct> d, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
function node.direct.setpre     ( <t:direct> d, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
function node.direct.setreplace ( <t:direct> d, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
```

A major update can be done with this one:

```
function node.direct.setdisc (
    <t:direct>,            -- discretionary
    <t:direct>  | <t:nil>, -- pre
    <t:direct>  | <t:nil>, -- post
    <t:direct>  | <t:nil>, -- replace
    <t:subtype> | <t:nil>, -- subtype
    <t:subtype> | <t:nil>  -- penalty
)
```

[28] These are a bit more generic because they also return fields from `choice` nodes and possibly `hlist` and `vlist` nodes.

```
    -- no return values
end
```

From this you can deduce that we can also say:

```
function node.direct.getpenalty ( <t:direct> d )
    return <t:integer> -- penalty
end

function node.direct.setpenalty ( <t:direct> d, <t:integer> penalty )
    -- no return value
end
```

Discretionaries can have options set, which you then can checked with the following function:

```
function node.direct.hasdiscoption ( <t:direct> d, <t:integer> option )
    return <t:boolean> -- inbitset
end
```

A bitwise and is done on the field in the node where possible bits are:

discoptionvalues

0x00000000	normalword	0x00000040	noitaliccorrection
0x00000001	preword	0x00000080	nozeroitaliccorrection
0x00000002	postword	0x00000100	standalone
0x00000010	preferbreak	0x00010000	userfirst
0x00000020	prefernobreak	0x40000000	userlast

The next pair targets glyphs and normally you will not use the setter, because the engine takes care of setting that state.

```
function node.direct.getdiscpart ( <t:direct> g )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- part
        <t:integer>, -- after
        <t:integer>  -- code

end

function node.direct.setdiscpart (
    <t:direct>  g,
    <t:integer> part
    <t:integer> after
    <t:integer> code
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The part and after properties relate to discretionary nodes that might have been flattened. The complication in (tracing) here is that information is lost so we store the states in the glyph node.

discpartvalues

0x00	unset	0x02	post	0x04	always
0x01	pre	0x03	replace		

The code properties relate to where the (usually hyphen) character comes from:

glyphdiscvalues

0x00	unset	0x02	explicit	0x04	mathematics
0x01	normal	0x03	automatic	0x05	syllable

When you fool around with disc nodes you need to be aware of the fact that they have a special internal data structure. As long as you reassign the fields when you have extended the lists it's ok because then the tail pointers get updated, but when you add to list without reassigning you might end up in trouble when the linebreak routine kicks in. You can call this function to check the list for issues with disc nodes.

```
function node.direct.checkdiscretionary ( <t:direct> n )
    -- no return values
end
```

The plural variant runs over all disc nodes in a list, the singular variant checks one node only (it also checks if the node is a disc node).

```
function node.direct.checkdiscretionaries ( <t:direct> head )
    -- no return values
end
```

This function will remove the discretionaries in the list and inject the replace field when set.

```
function node.direct.flattendiscretionaries ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:integer> -- count
end
```

15.5.14 Boxes

Lists have many fields and most are accessed via general helpers. Here we only mention special field accessors. Because this is an experimental feature we just mention excepts. This is a plugin mechanism that (sort of) communicates with the page builder.[29]

```
function node.direct.getexcept (
    <t:direct> node
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- except
        <t:integer> -- depth
end
```

[29] In ConTEXt one can grep for adaptive and except.

```
function node.direct.setexcept (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:direct>  except,
    <t:integer> depth
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Boxes can have an orientation, offsets and/or anchors. The state of these is registered in a `geometry` bitset.

```
function node.direct.getgeometry (
    <t:direct> node
)
    return <t:integer> -- geometry
end

function node.direct.getgeometry (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:true>
)
    return
        <t:integer> -- geometry
        <t:boolean> -- offset
        <t:boolean> -- orientation
        <t:boolean> -- anchor
        <t:integer> -- direction
end

function node.direct.setgeometry (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> geometry
)
    -- no return value
end

function node.direct.hasgeometry (
    <t:direct> node
)
    return <t:integer> | <t:boolean>
end
```

Possible bits in to be checked set are:

listgeometryvalues

0x01	offset	0x04	anchor
0x02	orientation		

If an orientation is set, you can query several properties:

```
function node.direct.getorientation (
```

```
    <t:direct> node
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- orientation
        <t:integer>, -- xoffset
        <t:integer>, -- yoffset
        <t:integer>, -- woffset
        <t:integer>, -- hoffset
        <t:integer>  -- doffset
end
```

When setting the orientation you can set a value (integer), reset it (nil) or do nothing (true).

```
function node.direct.getorientation (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> orientation,
    <t:integer> xoffset,
    <t:integer> yoffset,
    <t:integer> woffset,
    <t:integer> hoffset,
    <t:integer> doffset
)
    -- no return values
end
```

15.5.15 Kerns, glue and penalties

Penalties are just integers where some have special meanings. Of course a penalty node has this field, but math and disc nodes also have a penalty field.

```
function node.direct.getpenalty ( <t:direct> node ) return <t:integer> end
function node.direct.setpenalty ( <t:direct> node, <t:integer> penalty ) end
```

Kern and math nodes have a kern field that can be accessed with:[30]

```
function node.direct.getkern ( <t:direct> node ) return <t:integer> end
function node.direct.setkern ( <t:direct> node, <t:integer> kern ) end
```

Glue is more complex because it is not just one number. A glue, gluespec or math node has this:

```
function node.direct.getglue ( <t:direct> node )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- amount
        <t:integer>, -- stretch
        <t:integer>, -- shrink
        <t:integer>, -- stretchorder
        <t:integer>  -- shrinkorder
end
```

A box (hlist, vlist or unset) returns values that relate to the packaging.

[30] We could have introduced a more neutral `amount` field instead.

```
function node.direct.getglue ( <t:direct> node )
    return
        <t:number>,  -- setglue
        <t:integer>, -- order
        <t:integer>  -- sign
end
```

The setters work the other way around, with all values being optional and defaulting to zero.

```
function node.direct.setglue (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> amount,
    <t:integer> stretch,
    <t:integer> shrink,
    <t:integer> stretchorder,
    <t:integer> shrinkorder
)
   -- no return values
end
```

and

```
function node.direct.setglue (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:number>  setglue,
    <t:integer> order,
    <t:integer> sign
)
   -- no return values
end
```

Because we have multiple sub fields we have a zero checker:

```
function node.direct.iszeroglue ( <t:direct> node ) return <t:boolean> end
```

Glue nodes and math nodes with a glue property have specifications that are adapted according to the width of the surrounding box. We can get the effective values with:

```
function nodes.direct.effectiveglue (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> parent
)
    return <t:integer> amount
end
```

Here the parent node has to be a hlist or vlist node, otherwise we just get the set amount.

15.5.16 Packaging and dimensions

At some point a node list has to be packed in either a horizontal or vertical box. There are restrictions to what can get packed, for instance you cannot have glyphs in a vertical list.

The hpack function creates a new hlist by packaging the list that begins at node n into a horizontal box. With only a single argument, this box is created using the natural width of its components. In the three argument form, info must be either additional or exactly, and w is the additional (\hbox spread) or exact (\hbox to) width to be used. The second return value is the badness of the generated box.

```
function node.direct.hpack (
    <t:direct> list
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- box
        <t:integer> -- badness
end

function node.direct.hpack (
    <t:direct>  list,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:string>  info -- "additional" | "exactly"
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- box
        <t:integer> -- badness
end

function node.direct.hpack (
    <t:direct>  list,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:string>  info, -- "additional" | "exactly"
    <t:integer> direction
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- box
        <t:integer> -- badness
end
```

The vpack function creates a new vlist by packaging the list that begins at node n into a vertical box. With only a single argument, this box is created using the natural height of its components. In the three argument form, info must be either additional or exactly, and w is the additional (\vbox spread) or exact (\vbox to) height to be used.

```
function node.direct.vpack (
    <t:direct> list
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- box
        <t:integer> -- badness
end

function node.direct.vpack (
    <t:direct>  list,
    <t:integer> height,
```

```
    <t:string>  info -- "additional" | "exactly"
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- box
        <t:integer> -- badness
end

function node.direct.vpack (
    <t:direct>  list,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:string>  info, -- "additional" | "exactly"
    <t:integer> direction
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- box
        <t:integer> -- badness
end
```

This function calculates the natural in-line dimensions of the node list starting at node `first` and terminating just before node `last` (or the end of the list, if there is no second argument). The return values are scaled points.

```
function node.direct.dimensions (
    <t:direct> first,
    <t:direct> last
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- width
        <t:integer>, -- height
        <t:integer>  -- depth
end
```

This alternative calling method takes glue settings into account and is especially useful for finding the actual width of a sublist of nodes that are already boxed, for example in code like this, which prints the width of the space in between the `a` and `b` as it would be if `\box0` was used as-is:

```
\setbox0 = \hbox to 20pt {a b}

\directlua{print (node.dimensions(
    tex.box[0].glueset,
    tex.box[0].gluesign,
    tex.box[0].glueorder,
    tex.box[0].head.next,
    node.tail(tex.box[0].head)
)) }
```

You need to keep in mind that this is one of the few places in TEX where floats are used, which means that you can get small differences in rounding when you compare the width reported by `hpack` with `dimensions`.

```
function node.direct.dimensions (
    <t:number>  glueset,
```

```
    <t:integer> gluesign
    <t:integer> glueorder,
    <t:direct>  first,
    <t:direct>  last
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- width
        <t:integer>, -- height
        <t:integer>  -- depth
end
```

This alternative saves a few lookups and can be more convenient in some cases:

```
function node.direct.rangedimensions (
    <t:direct> parent,
    <t:direct> first,
    <t:direct> last
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- width
        <t:integer>, -- height
        <t:integer>  -- depth
end
```

If you only need the width, a simple and somewhat more efficient variant is this, where again `last` is optional:

```
function node.direct.naturalwidth (
    <t:direct> first,
    <t:direct> last
)
    return <t:integer> -- width
end
```

More low level are the following helpers. They accept various kind of nodes `hlist`, `vlist`, `unset`, `rule`, `glyph` or `glue` (because these can have a leader).

```
function node.direct.getwhd ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- width
        <t:integer>, -- height
        <t:integer>  -- depth
end
```

In case of as glyph you can also get the expansion:

```
function node.direct.getwhd ( <t:direct> n, <t:true> expansion )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- width
        <t:integer>, -- height
        <t:integer>, -- depth
        <t:integer>  -- expansion
```

```
end
```

The `getwidth` accepts even more node types: `hlist`, `vlist`, `unset`, `align`, `rule`, `glue`, `gluespec`, `glyph`, `kern` and `math` (surround).

```
function node.direct.getwidth ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> -- width
end
```

And for glyphs:

```
function node.direct.getwidth ( <t:direct> n, <t:true> expansion )
    return
        <t:integer>,-- width
        <t:integer> -- expansion
end
```

The getter for height operates on `hlist`, `vlist`, `unset`, `rule`, `insert` and `fence`.

```
function node.direct.getheight ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> -- height
end
```

For the depth we have a different repertoire: `hlist`, `vlist`, `unset`, `rule`, `insert`, `glyph` and `fence`.

```
function node.direct.getdepth ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> -- depth
end
```

For `hlist`, `vlist`, `unset`, `rule`, `insert`, `glyph` and `fence` we can get the total of height and depth:

```
function node.direct.gettotal ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> -- height + depth
end
```

Only for insert nodes we can set a total, because they only carry a height:

```
function node.direct.settotal (
    <t:direct>  insert,
    <t:integer> total
)
    -- no return value
end
```

Only `hlist` and `vlist` have a (vertical or horizontal) shift:

```
function node.direct.getshift ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> -- shift
end
```

This one is only valid for `glyph` and `kern` nodes:

```
function node.direct.getexpansion ( <t:direct> n )
    return <t:integer> -- expansion
```

```
end
```

Before we move on we mention the setters:

```
function node.direct.setwidth     ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> width     ) end
function node.direct.setheight    ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> height    ) end
function node.direct.setdepth     ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> depth     ) end
function node.direct.setshift     ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> shift     ) end
function node.direct.setexpansion ( <t:direct> n, <t:integer> expansion ) end
```

The combined one ignores values that are no number, so passing (e.g.) `nil` or (nicer) `false` will retain the value.

```
function node.direct.setwhd (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:integer> height,
    <t:integer> depth,
    -- no return values
end
```

These `hlist` and `vlist` nodes (but others as well have) a field called `list`:

```
function node.direct.getlist ( <t:direct> b )
    return <t:direct> -- list
end

function node.direct.setlist ( <t:direct> b, <t:direct> list )
    -- nothing to return
end
```

When a list is packages, glue is resolved and the list node gets its glue properties set so that the backend can apply the stretch and shrink to the glue amount. There might be situations where you want to do this explicitly, which is why we provide:

```
function node.direct.freeze ( <t:direct> b )
    -- nothing to return
end
```

In LuaMetaTEX we can handle nested marks, inserts and adjusts, and pre and post material can get bound to a box. We can use these to access them:

```
function node.direct.getpost ( <t:direct> b, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- tail
end

function node.direct.getpre ( <t:direct> b, <t:boolean> tailtoo )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- tail
end
```

and these to set them, although they are unlikely candidates for that.

```
function node.direct.setpost ( <t:direct> b, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
function node.direct.setpre  ( <t:direct> b, <t:direct> | <t:nil> ) end
```

Anchors (source and targets) are just integer fields to some content nodes that we can set and get. They are experimental. They are set by either keywords or by `\boxanchor` and `\boxanchors`. The backend has to deal with these if used at all. (In ConTEXt we use them for tracing math experiments and special trickery.)

```
function node.direct.setanchors (
    <t:direct>  list,   -- hlist or vlist
    <t:integer> anchor,
    <t:direct>  source, -- set, <t:true> keep, otherwise reset
    <t:direct>  target  -- set, <t:true> keep, otherwise reset
)
    -- no return value
end

function node.direct.setanchors (
    <t:direct> noad -- math
    <t:direct> source -- set, <t:true> keep, otherwise reset
)
    -- no return value
end

function node.direct.getanchors (
    <t:direct> list  -- hlist or vlist
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- anchor
        <t:integer>, -- source
        <t:integer>, -- target
        <t:integer>, -- anchor slice .....XXX
        <t:integer>  -- anchor slice .XXXX...
end

function node.direct.getanchors (
    <t:direct> noad -- math
)
    return
        <t:integer> -- source
end
```

15.5.17 Paragraphs

In most usage scenarios the (initial) par node will only be used for checking the direction we start with, which then later will be updated by checking dir nodes. You can check if a node is the start of a paragraph with:

```
function node.direct.startofpar ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:boolean> end
```

Getting the state, that is a table of set fields, (currently) only makes sense for the initial par node. The table has more that 50 entries and some values (like the penalty arrays and shape) are tables themselves. You can get a limited version instead. We might add some more to small version when we feel the need.

```
function node.direct.getparstate (
    <t:direct> n
)
    return <t:table> -- a huge table (some 50 entries)
end

function node.direct.getparstate (
    <t:direct>  n,
    <t:boolean> limited
)
    return <t:table> -- a small table (some 10 entries)
end
```

A par shape is also a node, and it is copied into par node. You can patch the shape specification with new indentation and width values. When an existing shape is set, the options will be kept.

```
function node.direct.getparstate ( <t:direct> par, <t:table> list) end
```

We discussed the `hpack` and `vpack` functions, but there is also `repack`. The second and third argument are optional.

```
function node.direct.repack (
    <t:direct>  list,
    <t:integer> width,
    <t:string>  info -- "additional" | "exactly"
)
    -- no return value
end
```

15.5.18 Specifications

All nodes have a fixed size but some can have fields that are nodes themselves, which then are just 'pointers' to other nodes. These pointers are actually just indices into node memory. A specification node is different. Where in other engines these are nodes with a variable size, in LuaMetaTEX we just allocate memory for the variable part. This comes at a bit more overhead but pays back in less waste of fast accessible node memory.

maybe more here

15.5.19 Math

We start with the function that runs the internal 'mlist to hlist' conversion that turns a the yet unprocessed math list into a horizontal list. The interface is the same as for the callback callback mlisttohlist.

```
function node.direct.mlisttohlist (
```

```
    <t:direct>  list,
    <t:string>  displaytype,
    <t:boolean> penalties
)
   <t:direct> -- result
end
```

When you have a horizontal list with math you can locate the relevant portion with:

```
function node.direct.beginofmath ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> end
function node.direct.endofmath   ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> end
```

You can for instance use these helpers to skip over math in case you're processing text.

The math noads have a nucleus and scripts. In LuaMetaTEX we have the usual super- and subscript but also prescripts and a primescript, so five scripts in total so naturally we have getters for these:

```
function node.direct.getnucleus ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getprime   ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getsup     ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getsub     ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getsuppre  ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
function node.direct.getsubpre  ( <t:direct> n ) return <t:direct> | <t:nil> end
```

plus:

```
function node.direct.getscripts ( <t:direct> n )
    return
        <t:direct>, -- primescript
        <t:direct>, -- superscript
        <t:direct>, -- subscript
        <t:direct>, -- superprescript
        <t:direct>  -- subprescript
end
```

These are complemented by setters. When the second argument is not passes (or nil) the field is reset.

```
function node.direct.setnucleus ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> nucleus        ) end
function node.direct.setprime   ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> primescript    ) end
function node.direct.setsup     ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> superscript    ) end
function node.direct.setsub     ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> subscript      ) end
function node.direct.setsuppre  ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> superprescript ) end
function node.direct.setsubpre  ( <t:direct> n, <t:direct> subprescript   ) end
```

And of course:

```
function node.direct.getscripts (
    <t:direct> primescript,
    <t:direct> superscript,
    <t:direct> subscript,
    <t:direct> superprescript,
    <t:direct> subprescript
```

```
)
    -- no return values
end
```

In the discretionaries subsection we mention accessing pre, post and replace fields. These functions can also be used for `choice` nodes. Discussing this is currently beyond this manual.

There are a lot of functions that access fields and we discuss then in an arbitrary order. We also assume that you know what (math construct or concept) you're dealing with. Of course more generic helpers (for instance for setting or getting options) are not mentioned here.

Math classes play an important role in (especially) applying math spacing and penalties. In LuaMetaTEX all relevant nodes (including boxes, discretionaries and glyphs) carry a class and when applicable they have a main, main and left class. Classes are implicit (radical, accent, fraction, fence), but they can be overruled by keywords. Node types with three values are: simple, radical, fraction, accent and fence, and nodes with a single class are: glyph, disc, hlist, vlist and delimiter.

```
function node.direct.getclass ( <t:direct> node )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- class       (main)
        <t:integer>, -- left class  (when applicable)
        <t:integer>  -- right class (when applicable)
end

function node.direct.setclass (
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> class,
    <t:integer> leftclass,  -- when applicable
    <t:integer> rightclass, -- when applicable
)
    -- no return values
end
```

You can get and set the family of various nodes, including rules:

```
function node.direct.getfam ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:integer>
end

function node.direct.setfam
    <t:direct>  node,
    <t:integer> family
)
     -- no return value
end
```

Choices have four fields that are calculated and then carried along until the machinery knows which one to use. Because a `\mathchoice` takes four argument, you pass 1 (display), 2 (text), 3 (script) or 4 (scriptscript) as field number.

```
function node.direct.getchoice (
    <t:direct>  choice,
```

```
    <r:integer> field
)
    return <t:direct> -- display text script or scriptscript
end

function node.direct.setchoice (
    <t:direct>  choice,
    <r:integer> field,
    <t:direct>  value,
)
    -- no return values
end
```

These four deal with fractions and their name tells what we get and set:

```
function node.direct.getnumerator ( <t:direct> fraction )
    return <t:direct>
end

function node.direct.getdenominator ( <t:direct> fraction )
    return <t:direct>
end

function node.direct.setnumerator
    <t:direct> fraction,
    <t:direct> value
)
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.setdenominator
    <t:direct> fraction,
    <t:direct> value
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Radicals have a nucleus, scripts, delimiters and often quite noticeable, a degree anchored on an edge.

```
function node.direct.getdegree ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:direct>
end

function node.direct.setdegree ( <t:direct> node, <t:direct> degree )
    -- no return values
end
```

These are generic downward compatible delimiter accessors from the time that we only had one: fraction, fence, radical and accent.

```
function node.direct.getdelimiter ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:direct>
```

```
end

function node.direct.setdelimiter ( <t:direct> node, <t:direct> delimiter )
    -- no return values
end
```

Fraction and (indeed) radical nodes have left and right delimiters:

```
function node.direct.getleftdelimiter ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:direct>
end

function node.direct.getrightdelimiter ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:direct>
end

function node.direct.setleftdelimiter (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> value
)
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.setrightdelimiter (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> value
)
    -- no return values
end
```

Radical and fence nodes have top and bottom delimiters:

```
function node.direct.gettopdelimiter ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:direct>
end

function node.direct.getbottomdelimiter ( <t:direct> node )
    return <t:direct>
end

function node.direct.settopdelimiter (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> value
)
    -- no return values
end

function node.direct.setbottomdelimiter (
    <t:direct> node,
    <t:direct> value
)
    -- no return values
```

```
end
```

Historically accents have a character as delimiter. All these top and bottom helpers accept multiple nodes types. Although the last four are not needed, for now we keep them because we always had them.

```
function node.direct.gettop    ( <t:direct> node ) return <t:direct> end
function node.direct.getbottom ( <t:direct> node ) return <t:direct> end

function node.direct.settop    ( <t:direct> node, <t:direct> value ) end
function node.direct.setbottom ( <t:direct> node, <t:direct> value ) end
```

15.5.20 MVL

Some properties of the currently used main vertical list can be fetched with:

```
function node.direct.getmvllist (
    -- currently no parameters
)
    return
        <t:direct>,  -- head
        <t:direct>,  -- tail
        <t:integer> -- mvl
end
```

15.5.21 Balancing

The `node.direct.vbalance` function will either disappear or get accompanied by related helpers (mirroring primitives); it depends on what ConTEXt needs.

Updating marks is done with the following set of helpers, that just call the code that does the same before handing over content to the output routine:

```
function nodes.direct.updatetopmarks ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- done
end

function nodes.direct.updatefirstmarks ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- done
end

function nodes.direct.updatefirstandbotmark ( <t:direct> box )
    -- no return value
end

function nodes.direct.updatemarks ( <t:direct> box )
    return <t:boolean> -- done
end
```

15.5.22 SyncTEX

You can set and query the SyncTEX fields, a file number aka tag and a line number, for a `glue`, `kern`, `hlist`, `vlist`, `rule` and `math` nodes as well as `glyph` nodes (although this last one is not used in native SyncTEX).

Of course you need to know what you're doing as no checking on sane values takes place. Also, the SyncTEX interpreter used in editors is rather peculiar and has some assumptions (heuristics) and there are different incompatible versions floating around. Even more important to notice is that the engine doesn't do anything with this so support is upto Lua.

15.5.23 Two access models

Deep down in TEX a node has a number which is a numeric entry in a memory table. In fact, this model, where TEX manages memory is real fast and one of the reasons why plugging in callbacks that operate on nodes is quite fast too. Each node gets a number that is in fact an index in the memory table and that number often is reported when you print node related information. You go from user data nodes and there numeric references and back with:

```
function node.todirect ( <t:node>   n) return <t:direct> end
function node.tonode   ( <t:direct> d) return <t:node>   end
```

The user data model is rather robust as it is a virtual interface with some additional checking while the more direct access which uses the node numbers directly. However, even with user data you can get into troubles when you free nodes that are no longer allocated or mess up lists. If you apply `tostring` to a node you see its internal (direct) number and id.

The userdata model provides key based access while the direct model always accesses fields via functions:

```
local c = nodeobject.char
local c = node.direct.getfield(nodenumber,"char")
```

Assigning a value can be done with `setfield`. We have two versions of each: one in the `node` lib and one in `node.direct`. The user is responsible for proper assignments, although we do test for the validity of userdata nodes and direct node references.

If you use the direct model, even if you know that you deal with numbers, you should not depend on that property but treat it as an abstraction just like traditional nodes. In fact, the fact that we use a simple basic datatype has the penalty that less checking can be done, but less checking is also the reason why it's somewhat faster. An important aspect is that one cannot mix both methods, but you can cast both models. So, multiplying a node number makes no sense.

So our advice is: use the indexed (table) approach when possible and investigate the direct one when speed might be a real issue. For that reason LuaTEX also provide the `get*` and `set*` functions in the top level node name space. There is a limited set of getters. When implementing this direct approach the regular index by key variant was also optimized, so direct access only makes sense when nodes are accessed millions of times (which happens in some font processing for instance).

We're talking mostly of getters because setters are less important. Documents have not that many content related nodes and setting many thousands of properties is hardly a burden contrary to millions of consultations.

Normally you will access nodes like this:

```
local next = current.next
if next then
    -- do something
```

```
end
```

Here `next` is not a real field, but a virtual one. Accessing it results in a metatable method being called. In practice it boils down to looking up the node type and based on the node type checking for the field name. In a worst case you have a node type that sits at the end of the lookup list and a field that is last in the lookup chain. However, in successive versions of LuaTEX these lookups have been optimized and the most frequently accessed nodes and fields have a higher priority.

In the direct name space there are more helpers and most of them are accompanied by setters. The getters and setters are clever enough to see what node is meant. We don't deal with whatsit nodes: their fields are always accessed by name. It doesn't make sense to add getters for all fields, we just identifier the most likely candidates. In complex documents, many node and fields types never get seen, or seen only a few times, but for instance glyphs are candidates for such optimization.

In previous sections we only show the functions in the `node.direct` name space. The following functions are available in both `node` and `node.direct`:

```
checkdiscretionaries        hasattribute              setfield
checkdiscretionary          hasfield                  setfielderror
copy                        hasglyph                  setglue
copylist                    hpack                     setproperty
count                       hyphenating               show
currentattributes           id                        size
dimensions                  insertafter               slide
effectiveglue               insertbefore              subtypes
endofmath                   isnode                    tail
fields                      iszeroglue                todirect
findattribute               kerning                   tonode
flattendiscretionaries      lastnode                  tostring
flushlist                   length                    traverse
flushnode                   ligaturing                traverseid
free                        makeextensible            type
getattribute                mlisttohlist              types
getcachestate               new                       unprotectglyph
getfield                    protectglyph              unprotectglyphs
getfielderror               protectglyphs             unsetattribute
getglue                     protrusionskippable       usedlist
getnodeerrorvalues          rangedimensions           usesfont
getpropertiestable          remove                    vpack
getproperty                 serialized                write
gluetostring                setattribute
```

In ConTEXt these are duplicated in `nodes.nuts` so that is the reference. Quite some functions gets mapped onto the `nodes` name space. In addition we emulate some userdata functions and add some of our own. We show them here because this manual takes ConTEXt as reference.

node.direct	node	nodes	
			addyoffset
			appendaftertail
addmargins			appendcurrenttail
addxoffset			beginofmath
addxymargins			checkdiscretionaries *

checkdiscretionary	*		getdisc		
collapsing			getdiscpart		
copy	*	*	getexcept		
copylist	*	*	getexpansion		
copyonly			getfam		
count	*		getfield	*	*
currentattributes	*	*	getfielderror	*	
dimensions	*		getfirstdirectioninlist		
effectiveglue	*		getfont		*
endofmath	*		getfontcheck		
exchange			getgeometry		
fields	*	*	getglue	*	
findattribute	*		getglyphdata		
findattributerange			getglyphdimensions		
findnode			getheight		
firstchar			getid		*
firstglyph			getidsubtype		
firstglyphnode			getidsubtypenext		
firstitalicglyph			getindex		
flattendiscretionaries	*		getinputfields		
flattenleaders			getkern		
flushlist	*	*	getkerndimension		
flushnode	*	*	getlanguage		
free	*		getleader		*
freeze			getleftdelimiter		
getanchors			getlist		*
getattribute	*	*	getlistdimensions		
getattributelist			getlocalparboxstate		
getattributes			getmvllist		
getboth		*	getnaturalwhd		
getbottom			getnext		*
getbottomdelimiter			getnodeerrorvalues	*	
getbox		*	getnodes		
getcachestate	*		getnormalizedline		
getchar		*	getnucleus		
getchardict			getnumerator		
getcharspec			getoffsets		
getchoice			getoptions		
getclass			getorientation		
getcontinuation			getparstate		
getcontrol			getpenalty		
getcornerkerns			getpost		
getcurrenttail			getpre		
getdata			getprev		*
getdegree			getprime		
getdelimiter			getpropertiestable	*	
getdenominator			getproperty	*	*
getdepth			getreplace		
getdirection			getrightdelimiter		

getruledimensions			ischardiscsetcheck		
getscale			isdirect		*
getscales			isfontcheck		
getscript			isglyph		
getscripts			isitalicglyph		
getshift			isloop		
getshort			isnext		
getslant			isnextchar		
getspeciallist			isnextcharcheck		
getstate			isnextcharsetcheck		
getsub			isnextglyph		
getsubpre			isnode	*	*
getsubtype		*	isprev		
getsup			isprevchar		
getsuppre			isprevcharcheck		
gettop			isprevcharsetcheck		
gettopdelimiter			isprevglyph		
gettotal			issimilarglyph		
getusage			issnapped		
getusedattributes			isspeciallist		
getweight			isvalid		
getwhd			iszeroglue	*	
getwidth			kerning	*	
getwordrange			lastnode	*	
getxscale			length	*	
getxyscales			ligaturing	*	
getyscale			makeextensible	*	
gluetostring	*		markglyphprocessing		
hasattribute	*	*	migrate		
hasdimensions			mlisttohlist	*	
hasdiscoption			naturalhsize		
hasfield	*	*	naturalwidth		
hasgeometry			new	*	*
hasglyph	*		newcontinuationatom		
hasglyphoption			newfontcheck		
hasidsubtype			newmathglyph		
hasoptions			newtextglyph		
hasusage			patchattributes		
hpack	*	*	patchparshape		
hyphenating	*		prependbeforehead		
id	*		prependcurrenttail		
ignorematskip			protectglyph	*	
insertafter	*	*	protectglyphs	*	
insertbefore	*	*	protectglyphsbase		
insertcurrenthead			protectglyphsnone		
isboth			protrusionskippable	*	
ischar			rangedimensions	*	
ischarcheck			remove	*	*
ischardisc			removefromlist		

repack			setnumerator		
reverse			setoffsets		
samefontcheck			setoptions		
serialized	*	*	setorientation		
setanchors			setpenalty		
setattribute	*	*	setpost		
setattributelist			setpre		
setattributes			setprev		*
setattributesinlist			setprime		
setboth		*	setproperty	*	*
setbottom			setreplace		
setbottomdelimiter			setrightdelimiter		
setbox		*	setruledimensions		
setchar		*	setscale		
setchardict			setscales		
setchoice			setscript		
setclass			setscripts		
setcontinuation			setshift		
setcontrol			setslant		
setcurrenttail			setsnapped		
setdata			setspeciallist		
setdegree			setsplit		
setdelimiter			setstate		
setdenominator			setsub		
setdepth			setsubpre		
setdirection			setsubtype		
setdisc			setsup		
setdiscpart			setsuppre		
setexcept			settop		
setexpansion			settopdelimiter		
setfam			settotal		
setfield	*	*	setweight		
setfielderror	*		setwhd		
setfont		*	setwidth		
setfontcheck			show	*	
setgeometry			size	*	
setglue	*		slide	*	
setglyphdata			softenhyphens		
setheight			startofpar		*
setindex			subtypes	*	*
setinputfields			tail	*	*
setkern			todirect	*	
setlanguage			tonode	*	*
setleader		*	tostring	*	*
setleftdelimiter			tovaliddirect		
setlink		*	traverse	*	*
setlist		*	traversechar		
setnext		*	traversecontent		
setnucleus			traverseglyph		

traverseid	*	*	updatefirstmarks		
traverseitalic			updatemarks		
traverseleader			updatetopmarks		
traverselist			usedlist	*	*
traversepossible			usesfont	*	
type	*		vbalance		
types	*		verticalbreak		
unprotectglyph	*		vpack	*	*
unprotectglyphs	*		write	*	*
unsetattribute	*	*	xscaled		
unsetattributes			yscaled		
updatefirstandbotmark					

The following functions are in the ConTEXt `nodes` name space but don't come from the library. Again, we show them here because ConTEXt is the reference.

nodes	nodes.nuts	node	pts	
			rehpack	*
aligned			repackhlist	*
append	*		replace	*
apply	*		report	
applyvisuals	*		rightmarginwidth	
astable			serialize	
basepoints			serializebox	
concat	*		setattr	*
copy_node			setattrlist	*
countall	*		setboxtonaturalwd	
delete	*		showboxes	
firstdirinbox			showlist	
flush	*		showsimplelist	
fullhpack	*		somepenalty	*
getattr	*		somespace	*
idsandsubtypes			splitbox	*
idstostring			stripdiscretionaries	
insertlistafter	*		takeattr	*
installattributehandler			takebox	*
is_display_math	*		tobasepoints	
isnut	*		tocentimeters	
leftmarginwidth			tociceros	
link	*		todidots	
linked	*		todimen	
list			toinches	
listtoutf			tomillimeters	
locate	*		tonodes	*
maxboxwidth			tonut	*
nopts			topicas	
packlist			topoints	
points			toscaledpoints	
prepend	*		tosequence	*
print			totable	

totree	vianodes	*
toutf	vianuts	*
upcomingproperties	visualizebox	

Here are some more helpers, they live in the `direct` name space but are user data aware too.

```
function node.direct.isdirect       ( <t:node> | <t:direct> ) return <t:boolean> end
function node.direct.isnode         ( <t:node> | <t:direct> ) return <t:boolean> end
function node.direct.isvalid        ( <t:node> | <t:direct> ) return <t:boolean> end
function node.direct.tostring       ( <t:node> | <t:direct> ) return <t:boolean> end
function node.direct.tovaliddirect  ( <t:node> | <t:direct> ) return <t:direct> end
```

15.5.24 Special lists

There are various lists where content can be appended to. These can be global or local to the current situation at hand.

pageinserthead	page builder	preadjusthead	boxes
contributehead	current (vertical) list	postmigratehead	boxes
pagehead	page builder	premigratehead	boxes
temphead	internal	alignhead	alignments
holdhead	internal	pagediscardshead	page builder
postadjusthead	boxes	splitdiscardshead	vertical box splitter

You can check is a node is a special list head with:

```
function node.direct.isspeciallist (
    <t:direct> n
)
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

Getting such a node is done with

```
function node.direct.getspeciallist (
    <t:string> | <t:integer> id
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- head
        <t:direct>  -- tail (if relevant)
end
```

and setting with:

```
function node.direct.setspeciallist (
    <t:string> | <t:integer> id,
    <t:direct>
)
    -- no return value
end
```

When messing with them, it is the user's responsibility to make sure that these lists remain valid, for instance horizontal and vertical lists have expectations with regards to the kind of nodes they contain.

15.5.25 Current lists

When you nest content, for instance a box inside a box or a box on the main vertical list the engine pushes the parent on a stack. The current list maintains a head and tail where new content in appended. if you build your own list you also have a head and tail and ideally have the list properly linked. We have a collection of helpers that fit into this linked-list model.

```
function node.direct.prependbeforehead (
    <t:direct> list,
    <t:direct> node
)
    -- no return value
end

function node.direct.appendaftertail (
    <t:direct> list,
    <t:direct> node
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The tail of the currently active list can be fetched with:

```
function node.direct.getcurrenttail (
    <t:direct> node
)
    return
        <t:direct>, -- node
        <t:integer> -- mode
end
```

The setters also accept a user data node. Actually we can pass a list and the new tail is then the tail of that list. If the list is empty this works ok too.

```
function node.direct.setcurrenttail (
    <t:direct> node
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The next setter inserts the list before the head of the current list:

```
function node.direct.insertcurrenthead (
    <t:direct> node
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The next setter inserts the list after the tail of the current list:

```
function node.direct.appendcurrenttail (
    <t:direct> node
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The next setter inserts the list before the tail of the current list:

```
function node.direct.prependcurrenttail (
    <t:direct> node
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The difference between `setcurrenttail` and `appendcurrenttail` is that the second one is a bit less picky, the first one only appends when the list is not yet empty. Otherwise it just sets the tail based on the passed list.

When you mess with lists there is a possibility that you introduce a loop and for that we provide a helper that can be used to check for it. The method used is 'Floyd's cycle finding'. Of course it is never water-tight.

```
function node.direct.isloop (
    <t:direct> node
)
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

15.5.26 Properties

Attributes are a convenient way to relate extra information to a node. You can assign them at the TEX end as well as at the Lua end and consult them at the Lua end. One big advantage is that they obey grouping. They are linked lists and normally checking for them is pretty efficient, even if you use a lot of them. A macro package has to provide some way to manage these attributes at the TEX end because otherwise clashes in their usage can occur.

Each node also can have a properties table and you can assign values to this table using the `setproperty` function and get properties using the `getproperty` function. Managing properties is way more demanding than managing attributes.

Take the following example:

```
\directlua {
    local n = node.new("glyph")

    node.setproperty(n,"foo")
    print(node.getproperty(n))

    node.setproperty(n,"bar")
    print(node.getproperty(n))

    node.free(n)
```

```
}
```

This will print `foo` and `bar` which in itself is not that useful when multiple mechanisms want to use this feature. A variant is:

```
\directlua {
    local n = node.new("glyph")

    node.setproperty(n,{ one = "foo", two = "bar" })
    print(node.getproperty(n).one)
    print(node.getproperty(n).two)

    node.free(n)
}
```

This time we store two properties with the node. It really makes sense to have a table as property because that way we can store more. But in order for that to work well you need to do it this way:

```
\directlua {
    local n = node.new("glyph")

    local t = node.getproperty(n)

    if not t then
        t = { }
        node.setproperty(n,t)
    end
    t.one = "foo"
    t.two = "bar"

    print(node.getproperty(n).one)
    print(node.getproperty(n).two)

    node.free(n)
}
```

Here our own properties will not overwrite other users properties unless of course they use the same keys. So, eventually you will end up with something:

```
\directlua {
    local n = node.new("glyph")

    local t = node.getproperty(n)

    if not t then
        t = { }
        node.setproperty(n,t)
    end
    t.myself = { one = "foo", two = "bar" }

    print(node.getproperty(n).myself.one)
    print(node.getproperty(n).myself.two)

    node.free(n)
```

```
}
```

This assumes that only you use `myself` as subtable. The possibilities are endless but care is needed. For instance, the generic font handler that ships with ConTEXt uses the `injections` subtable and you should not mess with that one!

There are a few helper functions that you normally should not touch as user: `getpropertiestable` and will give the table that stores properties (using direct entries) and you can best not mess too much with that one either because LuaMetaTEX itself will make sure that entries related to nodes will get wiped when nodes get freed, so that the Lua garbage collector can do its job. In fact, the main reason why we have this mechanism is that it saves the user (or macro package) some work. One can easily write a property mechanism in Lua where after a shipout properties gets cleaned up but it's not entirely trivial to make sure that with each freed node also its properties get freed, due to the fact that there can be nodes left over for a next page. And having a callback bound to the node deallocator would add way to much overhead.

When we copy a node list that has a table as property, there are several possibilities: we do the same as a new node, we copy the entry to the table in properties (a reference), we do a deep copy of a table in the properties, we create a new table and give it the original one as a metatable. After some experiments (that also included timing) with these scenarios we decided that a deep copy made no sense, nor did nilling. In the end both the shallow copy and the metatable variant were both ok, although the second one is slower. The most important aspect to keep in mind is that references to other nodes in properties no longer can be valid for that copy. We could use two tables (one unique and one shared) or metatables but that only complicates matters.

When defining a new node, we could already allocate a table but it is rather easy to do that at the lua end e.g. using a metatable `__index` method. That way it is under macro package control. When deleting a node, we could keep the slot (e.g. setting it to false) but it could make memory consumption raise unneeded when we have temporary large node lists and after that only small lists. Both are not done because in the end this is what happens now: when a node is copied, and it has a table as property, the new node will share that table. The copy gets its own table with the original table as metatable.

A few more experiments were done. For instance: copy attributes to the properties so that we have fast access at the Lua end. In the end the overhead is not compensated by speed and convenience, in fact, attributes are not that slow when it comes to accessing them. So this was rejected.

Another experiment concerned a bitset in the node but again the gain compared to attributes could be neglected and given the small amount of available bits it also demands a pretty strong agreement over what bit represents what, and this is unlikely to succeed in the TEX community. It doesn't pay off.

Just in case one wonders why properties make sense: it is not so much speed that we gain, but more convenience: storing all kinds of (temporary) data in attributes is no fun and this mechanism makes sure that properties are cleaned up when a node is freed. Also, the advantage of a more or less global properties table is that we stay at the Lua end. An alternative is to store a reference in the node itself but that is complicated by the fact that the register has some limitations (no numeric keys) and we also don't want to mess with it too much.

15.5.27 Private

When you look into the source or check what functions are in libraries, you might run into undocumented features. Of course there can be experimental code, and you should not use that but there

are also features that for instance help documenting or checking. Take for instance this one. When we pass `true` there will be no error message when you use `setfield` or `getfield` but an error code will set instead.

```
function node.setfielderror ( <t:boolean )
    -- no return values
end
```

You can ask the last error with:

```
function node.getfielderror ( )
    return <t:integer> -- the last set error
end
```

Valid return values are available with:

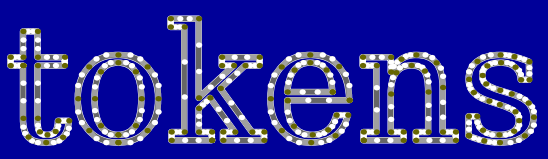
```
function node.getnodeerrorvalues ( )
    return <t:table> -- the last set error
end
```

The table contains:

nodeerrorvalues

0x00	none	0x02	setfield	0x04	setnode	0x06	getignore
0x01	newnode	0x03	getfield	0x05	getnode	0x07	getignore

But ... these functions and values can change as we move forward so you should not use them, or at least, don't complain.


tokens

16 Tokens

16.1 Introduction

If a TEX programmer talks tokens (and nodes) the average user can safely ignore it. Often it is enough to now that your input is tokenized which means that one or more characters in the input got converted into some efficient internal representation that then travels through the system and triggers actions. When you see an error message with TEX code, the reverse happened: tokens were converted back into commands that resemble the (often expanded) input.

There are not that many examples here because the functions discusses here are often not used directly but instead integrated in a bit more convenient interfaces. However, in due time more examples might show up here.

16.2 Lua token representation

A token is an 32 bit integer that encodes a command and a value, index, reference or whatever goes with a command. The input is converted into a token and the body of macros are stored as linked list of tokens. In the later case we combine a token and a next pointer in what is called a memory word. If we see tokens in Lua we don't get the integer but a userdata object that comes with accessors.

Unless you're into very low level programming the likelihood of encountering tokens is low. But related to tokens is scanning so that is what we cover here in more detail.

16.3 Helpers

16.3.1 Basics

References to macros are stored in a table along with some extra properties but in the end they travel around as tokens. The same is true for characters, they are also encoded in a token. We have three ways to create a token:

```
function token.create ( <t:integer> value )
    return <t:token> -- userdata
end

function token.create ( <t:integer> value, <t:integer> command)
    return <t:token> -- userdata
end

function token.create ( <t:string> csname )
    return <t:token> -- userdata
end
```

An example of the first variant is `token.create(65)`. When we print (inspect) this in ConTEXt we get:

```
<lua token : 476151 == letter 65>={
 ["category"]="letter",
```

```
 ["character"]="A",
 ["id"]=476151,
}
```

If we say `token.create(65,12)` instead we get:

```
<lua token : 476151 == other_char 65>={
 ["category"]="other",
 ["character"]="A",
 ["id"]=476151,
}
```

An example of the third call is `token.create("relax")`. This time get:

```
<lua token : 580111 == relax : relax 0>={
 ["active"]=false,
 ["cmdname"]="relax",
 ["command"]=16,
 ["csname"]="relax",
 ["expandable"]=false,
 ["frozen"]=false,
 ["id"]=580111,
 ["immutable"]=false,
 ["index"]=0,
 ["instance"]=false,
 ["mutable"]=false,
 ["noaligned"]=false,
 ["permanent"]=false,
 ["primitive"]=true,
 ["protected"]=false,
 ["tolerant"]=false,
}
```

Another example is `token.create("dimen")`:

```
<lua token : 467905 == dimen : register 3>={
 ["active"]=false,
 ["cmdname"]="register",
 ["command"]=121,
 ["csname"]="dimen",
 ["expandable"]=false,
 ["frozen"]=false,
 ["id"]=467905,
 ["immutable"]=false,
 ["index"]=3,
 ["instance"]=false,
 ["mutable"]=false,
 ["noaligned"]=false,
 ["permanent"]=false,
 ["primitive"]=true,
 ["protected"]=false,
```

```
 ["tolerant"]=false,
}
```

The most important properties are `command` and `index` because the combination determines what it does. The macros (here primitives) have a lot of extra properties. These are discusses in the low level manuals.

You can check if something is a token with the next function; when a token is passed the return value is the string literal `token`.

```
function token.type ( <t:whatever> )
    return <t:string> "token" | <t:nil>
end
```

A maybe more natural test is:

```
function token.istoken ( <t:whatever> )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Internally we can see variables like `cmd`, `chr`, `tok` and such, where the later is a combination of the first two. The `create` variant that take two integers relate to this. Of course you need to know what the magic numbers are. Passing weird numbers can give side effects so don't expect too much help with that. You need to know what you're doing. The best way to explore the way these internals work is to just look at how primitives or macros or **\chardef**'d commands are tokenized. Just create a known one and inspect its fields. A variant that ignores the current catcode table is:

```
\protected\def\MyMacro#1{\dimen 0 = \numexpr #1 + 10 \relax}
```

A macro like this is actually a little program:

```
467922   19   49  match                argument 1
580083   20    0  end match
--------------
467931  121    3  register             dimen
580013   12   48  other char           0 (U+00030)
582314   10   32  spacer
582312   12   61  other char           = (U+0003D)
580193   10   32  spacer
582783   81   75  some item            numexpr
582310   21    1  parameter reference
190952   10   32  spacer
582785   12   43  other char           + (U+0002B)
476151   10   32  spacer
580190   12   49  other char           1 (U+00031)
582265   12   48  other char           0 (U+00030)
467939   10   32  spacer
580045   16    0  relax                relax
```

The first column shows indices in token memory where we have a token combined with a next pointer. So, in slot `467931` we have both a token and a pointer to slot `580013`.

There is another way to create a token.

```
function token.new ( <t:string> command, <t:integer> value )
    return <t:token>
end

function token.new ( <t:integer> value, <t:integer> command )
    return <t:token>
end
```

Watch the order of arguments. We not have four ways to create a token

```
<lua token : 580087 == letter 65>={
 ["category"]="letter",
 ["character"]="A",
 ["id"]=580087,
}
```

namely:

```
token.new("letter",65)
token.new(65,11)
token.create(65,11)
token.create(65)
```

You can test if a control sequence is defined with:

```
function token.isdefined ( <t:string> t )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The engine was never meant to be this open which means that in various places the assumption is that tokens are valid. However, it is possible to create tokens that make little sense in some context and can even make the system crash. When possible we catch this but checking everywhere would bloat the code and harm performance. Compare this to changing a few bytes in a binary that at some point create can havoc.

16.3.2 Getters

The userdata objects have a virtual interface that permits access by fieldname. Instead you can use one of the getters.

```
function token.getcommand ( <t:token> t ) return <t:integer> end
function token.getindex   ( <t:token> t ) return <t:integer> end
function token.getcmdname ( <t:token> t ) return <t:string>  end
function token.getcsname  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:string>  end
function token.getid      ( <t:token> t ) return <t:integer> end
function token.getactive  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
```

If you want to know what the possible values are, you can use:

```
function token.getrange (
    <t:token> | <t:integer>
)
```

```
return
    <t:integer>, -- first
    <t:integer>  -- last
end
```

We can also ask for the macro properties but instead you can just fetch the bit set that describes them.

```
function token.getexpandable ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getprotected  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getfrozen     ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.gettolerant   ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getnoaligned  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getprimitive  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getpermanent  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getimmutable  ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getinstance   ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
function token.getconstant   ( <t:token> t ) return <t:boolean> end
```

The bit set can be fetched with:

```
function token.getflags ( <t:token> t )
    return <t:integer> -- bit set
end
```

The possible flags are:

0x000001	frozen	0x000080	untraced	0x004000	conditional
0x000002	permanent	0x000100	global	0x008000	value
0x000004	immutable	0x000200	tolerant	0x010000	semiprotected
0x000008	primitive	0x000400	protected	0x020000	inherited
0x000010	mutable	0x000800	overloaded	0x040000	constant
0x000020	noaligned	0x001000	aliased	0x080000	deferred
0x000040	instance	0x002000	immediate		

The number of parameters of a macro can be queried with:

```
function token.getparameters ( <t:token> t )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

The three properties that are used to identify a token can be fetched with:

```
function token.getcmdchrcs ( <t:token> t )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- command (cmd)
        <t:integer>, -- value   (chr)
        <t:integer>  -- index   (cs)
end
```

A simpler call is:

```
function token.getcstoken ( <t:string> csname )
    return <t:integer> -- token number
```

```
end
```

A table with relevant properties of a token (or control sequence) can be fetched with:

```
function token.getfields ( <t:token> token )
    return <t:table> -- fields
end

function token.getfields ( <t:string> csname )
    return <t:table> -- fields
end
```

16.3.3 Setters

The `setmacro` function can be called with a different amount of arguments, where the prefix list comes last. Examples of prefixes are `global` and `protected`.

```
function token.setmacro (
    <t:string> csname
)

function token.setmacro (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string>  csname
)
    -- no return values
end

function token.setmacro (
    <t:string> csname,
    <t:string> content
)
    -- no return values
end

function token.setmacro (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string>  csname,
    <t:string>  content
)
    -- no return values
end

function token.setmacro (
    <t:string> csname,
    <t:string> content,
    <t:string> prefix
 -- there can be more prefixes
)
    -- no return values
end
```

```
function token.setmacro (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string>  csname,
    <t:string>  content,
    <t:string>  prefix
 -- there can be more prefixes
)
    -- no return values
end
```

A macro can also be queried:

```
function token.getmacro (
    <t:string>  csname,
    <t:boolean> preamble,
    <t:boolean> onlypreamble
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

The various arguments determine what you get:

```
\def\foo#1{foo: #1}

\ctxlua{context.type(token.getmacro("foo"))}
\ctxlua{context.type(token.getmacro("foo",true))}
\ctxlua{context.type(token.getmacro("foo",false,true))}
```

We get:

```
foo: #1
#1->foo:
#1
```

The meaning can be fetched as string or table:

```
function token.getmeaning (
    <t:string> csname
)
    return <t:string>
end

function token.getmeaning (
    <t:string>  csname,
    <t:true>    astable,
    <t:boolean> subtables,
    <t:boolean> originalindices -- special usage
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

A special setter is the following. You can use `tex.getmarknames()` to see what components numbers are possible:

```
function token.setmacrofrommark (
    <t:string>  name,
    <t:integer> mark,
    <t:integer> component,
    <t:string>  flags -- optional, multiple
)
    -- no return value
end
```

A fast wiper is:

```
function token.setmacrotonothing (
    <t:string> name
)
    -- no return value
end
```

The name says it:

```
function token.undefinemacro ( <t:string> csname )
    -- no return values
end
```

The TEX engine has this concept of active characters. In LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX these are not stored like in traditional TEX because we need to cover the whole Unicode range. They are stored in the hash with a name that starts with the three bytes `0xEF`, `0xBF` and `0xBF` followed by the utf8 string value. If you ever encounter such a string you can check it with:

```
function token.isactivestring ( <t:string> csname )
    return
        <t:boolean>,
        <t:integer>  -- when true
end
```

Expanding a macro happens in a 'local control' context which makes it immediate, that is, while running Lua code.

```
function token.expandmacro ( <t:string> csname)
    -- no return values
end
```

This means that:

```
\def\foo{\scratchdimen100pt \edef\oof{\the\scratchdimen}}
% used in:
\startluacode
token.expandmacro("foo")
context(token.getmacro("oof"))
\stopluacode
```

gives: 100.0pt, because when `getmacro` is called the expansion has been performed. You can consider this a sort of subrun (local to the main control loop).

The next helper creates a token that refers to a Lua function with an entry in the table that you can access with `lua.getfunctionstable`. It is the companion to **`\luadef`**. When the first (and only) argument is true the size will preset to the value of `texconfig.functionsize`.

```
function token.setlua (
    <t:string>  csname,
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:string>  prefix
 -- there can be more prefixes
)
    return <t:token>
end
```

The `token.setinteger`, `token.getinteger`, `token.setdimension` and `token.getdimension` helpers are redundant and have better counterparts in `texlib`.

16.3.4 Writers

In the `tex` library we have various ways to print something back to the input and the these print helpers in most cases also accept tokens. The `token.putnext` function is rather tolerant with respect to its arguments and there can be multiple. As with most prints, a new input level is created.

```
function token.putnext ( <t:string> | <t:number> | <t:token> | <t:table> )
    -- no return values
end
```

Here are some examples. We save some scanned tokens and flush them

```
local t1 = token.scannext()
local t2 = token.scannext()
local t3 = token.scannext()
local t4 = token.scannext()
-- watch out, we flush in sequence
token.putnext { t1, t2 }
-- but this one gets pushed in front
token.putnext ( t3, t4 )
```

When we scan `wxyz!` we get `yzwx!` back. The argument is either a table with tokens or a list of tokens. The `token.expand` function will trigger expansion but what happens really depends on what you're doing where.

This putter is actually a bit more flexible because the following input also works out okay:

```
\def\foo#1{[#1]}

\directlua {
    local list = { 101, 102, 103, token.create("foo"), "{abracadabra}" }
    token.putnext("(the)")
    token.putnext(list)
    token.putnext("(order)")
    token.putnext(unpack(list))
    token.putnext("(is reversed)")
```

```
}
```

We get this:

```
(is reversed)efg[abracadabra](order)efg[abracadabra](the)
```

So, strings get converted to individual tokens according to the current catcode regime and numbers become characters also according to this regime. A more low level, single token push back is the next one, it does the same as when TEX itself puts a token back into the input, something that for instance happens when an integer is scanned and the last scanned token is not a digit.

```
function token.putback ( <t:token> )
    -- no return values
end
```

You can force an 'expand step' with the following function. What happens depends on the input and scanner states TEX is.

```
function token.expand ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

16.3.5 Scanning

The token library provides means to intercept the input and deal with it at the Lua level. The library provides a basic scanner infrastructure that can be used to write macros that accept a wide range of arguments. This interface is on purpose kept general and as performance is quite okay so one can build additional parsers without too much overhead. It's up to macro package writers to see how they can benefit from this as the main principle behind LuaMetaTEX is to provide a minimal set of tools and no solutions. The scanner functions are probably the most intriguing.

We start with token scanners. The first one just reads the next token from the current input (file, token list, Lua output) while the second variant expands the next token, which can push back results and make us enter a new input level, and then reads a token from what is then the input.

```
function token.scannext ( )
    return <t:token>
end

function token.scannextexpanded ( )
    return <t:token>
end
```

This is a simple scanner that picks up a character:

```
function token.scannextchar ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

We can look ahead, that is: pick up a token and push a copy back into the input. The second helper first expands the upcoming token and the third one is the peek variant of `scannextchar`.

```
function token.peeknext ( )
```

```
    return <t:token>
end

function token.peeknextexpanded ( )
    return <t:token>
end

function token.peeknextchar ( )
    return <t:token>
end
```

We can skip tokens with the following two helpers where the second one first expands the upcoming token

```
function token.skipnext ( )
    -- no return values
end

function token.skipnextexpanded ( )
    -- no return values
end
```

The next token can be converted into a combination of command and value. The second variant shown below first expands the upcoming token.

```
function token.scancmdchr ( )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- command a.k.a cmd
        <t:integer>, -- value   a.k.a chr
end

function token.scancmdchrexpanded ( )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- command a.k.a cmd
        <t:integer>, -- value   a.k.a chr
end
```

We have two keywords scanners. The first scans how TEX does it: a mixture of lower- and uppercase. The second is case sensitive.

```
function token.scankeyword ( <t:string> keyword )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end

function token.scankeywordcs ( <t:string> keyword )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The integer, dimension and glue scanners take an extra optional argument that signals that en optional equal is permitted. The next function errors when the integer exceeds the maximum that TEX likes: 2147483647.

```
function token.scaninteger ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
```

```
    return <t:integer>
end
```

Cardinals are unsigned integers:

```
function token.scancardinal ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
    return <t:cardinal>
end
```

When an integer or dimension is wrapped in curly braces, like {123} and {4.5pt}, you can use one of the next two. Of course unwrapped integers and dimensions are also read.

```
function token.scanintegerargument ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
    return <t:integer>
end

function token.scandimensionargument (
    <t:boolean> infinity,
    <t:boolean> mu,
    <t:boolean> optionalequal
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

When we scan for a float, we also accept an exponent, so 123.45 and -1.23e45 are valid:

```
function token.scanfloat ( )
    return <t:number>
end
```

Contrary to the previous scanner here we don't handle the exponent:

```
function token.scanreal ( )
    return <t:number>
end
```

In Lua a very precise representation of a float is the hexadecimal notation. In addition to regular floating point, optionally with an exponent, you can also have 0x1.23p45.

```
function token.scanluanumber ( )
    return <t:number>
end
```

Integers can be signed:

```
function token.scanluainteger ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

while cardinals (Modula2 speak) are unsigned: unsigned

```
function token.scanluacardinal ( )
    return <t:cardinal>
```

```
end
```

122345

```
function token.scanscale ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

A posit is (in LuaMetaTEX) a float packed into an integer, but contrary to a scaled value it can have exponents. Here `12.34` gives `1549208125` and Here `12.34e5` gives `2114670912`. Because we have integers we can store them in LuaMetaTEX float registers. Optionally you can return a float instead of the integer that encodes the posit.

```
function token.scanposit (
    <t:boolean> optionalqual,
    <t:boolean> float
)
    return <t:integer> | <t:float>
end
```

In (traditional) TEX we don't really have floats. If we enter for instance a dimension in point units, we actually scan for two 16 bit integers that will be packed into a 32 bit integer. The next scanner expects a number plus a unit, like `pt`, `cm` and `em`, but also handles user defined units, like in ConTEXt `tw`.

```
function token.scandimension (
    <t:boolean> infinity,
    <t:boolean> mu,
    <t:boolean> optionalequal
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

A glue (spec) is a dimension with optional stretch and/or shrink, like `12pt plus 4pt minus 2pt` or `10pt plus 1 fill`. The glue scanner returns five values:

```
function token.scanglue (
    <t:boolean> mu,
    <t:boolean> optionalequal
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- amount
        <t:integer>, -- stretch
        <t:integer>, -- shrink
        <t:integer>, -- stretchorder
        <t:integer>  -- shrinkorder
end

function token.scanglue (
    <t:boolean> mu,
    <t:boolean> optionalequal,
    <t:true>
)
```

```
    return {
        <t:integer>, -- amount
        <t:integer>, -- stretch
        <t:integer>, -- shrink
        <t:integer>, -- stretchorder
        <t:integer>  -- shrinkorder
    }
end
```

The skip scanner does the same but returns a `gluespec` node:

```
function token.scanskip (
    <t:boolean> mu,
    <t:boolean> optionalequal
)
    return <t:node> -- gluespec
end
```

There are several token scanners, for instance one that returns a table:

```
function token.scantoks (
    <t:boolean> macro,
    <t:boolean> expand
)
    -- return <t:table> -- tokens
end
```

Here `token.scantoks()` will return `{123}` as

```
{
 "<lua token : 589866 == other_char 49>",
 "<lua token : 589867 == other_char 50>",
 "<lua token : 589870 == other_char 51>",
}
```

The next variant returns a token list:

```
function token.scantokenlist (
    <t:boolean> macro,
    <t:boolean> expand
)
    return <t:token> -- tokenlist
end
```

Here we get the head of a token list:

```
<lua token : 590083 => 169324 : refcount>={
 ["active"]=false,
 ["cmdname"]="escape",
 ["command"]=0,
 ["expandable"]=false,
 ["frozen"]=false,
```

```
 ["id"]=590083,
 ["immutable"]=false,
 ["index"]=0,
}
```

This scans a single character token with specified catcode (bit) sets:

```
function token.scancode ( <t:integer> catcodes )
    return <t:string> -- character
end
```

This scans a single character token with catcode letter or other:

```
function token.scantokencode ( )
    -- return <t:token>
end
```

The difference between `scanstring` and `scanargument` is that the first returns a string given between `{}`, as `\macro` or as sequence of characters with catcode 11 or 12 while the second also accepts a `\cs` which then get expanded one level unless we force further expansion.

```
function token.scanstring ( <t:boolean> expand )
    return <t:string>
end

function token.scanargument ( <t:boolean> expand )
    return <t:string>
end
```

So the `scanargument` function expands the given argument. When a braced argument is scanned, expansion can be prohibited by passing `false` (default is `true`). In case of a control sequence passing `false` will result in a one-level expansion (the meaning of the macro).

The string scanner scans for something between curly braces and expands on the way, or when it sees a control sequence it will return its meaning. Otherwise it will scan characters with catcode `letter` or `other`. So, given the following definition:

```
\def\oof{oof}
\def\foo{foo-\oof}
```

we get:

name	result	meaning
`\directlua{token.scanstring()}{foo}`	foo	full expansion
`\directlua{token.scanstring()}foo`	foo	letters and others
`\directlua{token.scanstring()}\foo`	foo-oof	meaning

The `\foo` case only gives the meaning, but one can pass an already expanded definition (`\edef`'d). In the case of the braced variant one can of course use the `\detokenize` and `\unexpanded` primitives since there we do expand.

A variant is the following which give a bit more control over what doesn't get expanded:

```
function token.scantokenstring (
    <t:boolean> noexpand,
    <t:boolean> noexpandconstant,
    <t:boolean> noexpandparameters
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

Here's one that can scan a delimited argument:

```
function token.scandelimited (
    <t:integer> leftdelimiter,
    <t:integer> rightdelimiter,
    <t:boolean> expand
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

A word is a sequence of what TEX calls letters and other characters. The optional `keep` argument endures that trailing space and `\relax` tokens are pushed back into the input.

```
function token.scanword ( <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:string>
end
```

Here we do the same but only accept letters:

```
function token.scanletters ( <t:boolean> keep )
    return <t:string>
end

function token.scankey ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

We can pick up a string that stops at a specific character with the next function, which accepts two such sentinels (think of a comma and closing bracket).

```
function token.scanvalue ( <t:integer> one, <t:integer> two )
    return <t:string>
end
```

This returns a single (utf) character. Special input like back slashes, hashes, etc. are interpreted as characters.

```
function token.scanchar ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

This scanner looks for a control sequence and if found returns the name. Optionally leading spaces can be skipped.

```
function token.scancsname ( <t:boolean> skipspaces )
```

```
    return <t:string> | <t:nil>
end
```

The next one returns an integer instead:

```
function token.scancstoken ( <t:boolean> skipspaces )
    return <t:integer> | <t:nil>
end
```

This is a straightforward simple scanner that expands next token if needed:

```
function token.scantoken ( )
    return <t:token>
end
```

Then next scanner picks up a box specification and returns a `[h|v]list` node. There are two possible calls. The first variant expects a **\hbox**, **\vbox** etc. The second variant scans for an explicitly passed box type: `hbox`, `vbox`, `vbox` or `dbox`.

```
function token.scanbox ( )
    return <t:node> -- box
end

function token.scanbox ( <t:string> boxtype )
    return <t:node> -- box
end
```

This scans and returns a so called 'detokenized' string:

```
function token.scandetokened ( <t:boolean> expand )
    return <t:string>
end
```

In the next function we check if a specific character with catcode letter or other is picked up.

```
function token.isnextchar ( <t:integer> charactercode  )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

16.3.6 Gobbling

You can gobble up an integer or dimension with the following helpers. An error is silently ignored.

```
function token.gobbleinteger ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
    -- no return values
end

function token.gobbledimension ( <t:boolean> optionalequal )
    -- no return values
end
```

This is a nested gobbler:

```
function token.gobble ( <t:token> left, <t:token> right )
    -- no return values
end
```

and this a nested grabber that returns a string:

```
function token.grab ( <t:token> left, <t:token> right )
    return <t:string>
end
```

This variant might be more efficient in some cases:

```
function token.grabstring ( <t:token> left, <t:token> right )
    return <t:string>
end
```

16.3.7 Macros

This is a nasty one. It pick up two tokens. Then it checks if the next character matches the argument and if so, it pushes the first token back into the input, otherwise the second.

```
function token.futureexpand ( <t:integer> charactercode )
    -- no return values
end
```

The `pushmacro` and `popmacro` function are still experimental and can be used to get and set an existing macro. The push call returns a user data object and the pop takes such a userdata object. These object have no accessors and are to be seen as abstractions.

```
function token.pushmacro ( <t:string> csname )
    return <t:userdata>
end

function token.pushmacro ( <t:integer> token )
    return <t:userdata> -- entry
end

function token.popmacro ( <t:userdata> entry )
    -- return todo
end
```

This saves a Lua function index on the save stack. When a group is closes the function will be called.

```
function token.savelua ( <t:integer> functionindex, <t:boolean> backtrack )
    -- no return values
end
```

The next function serializes a token list:

```
function token.serialize ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

The function is somewhat picky so give van example in ConTEXt speak:

```
\startluacode
    local t = token.scantokenlist()
    local s = token.serialize(t)
    context.type(tostring(t)) context.par()
    context.type(s)           context.par()
    context(s)                context.par()
\stopluacode {before\hskip10pt after}
```

The serialize expects a token list as scanned by `scantokenlist` which starts with token that points to the list and maintains a reference count, which in this context is irrelevant but is used in the engine to prevent duplicates; for instance the **\let** primitive just points to the original and bumps the count.

```
<lua token : 698341 => 700358 : refcount>
before\hskip 10pt after
before  after
```

You can interpret a string as TEX input with embedded macros expanded, unless they are unexpandable.

```
function token.getexpansion ( <t:string> code )
    return <t:string> -- result
end
```

Here is an example:

```
          \def\foo{foo}
\protected\def\oof{oof}

\startluacode
context.type(token.getexpansion("test \relax"))
context.par()
context.type(token.getexpansion("test \\relax{!} \\foo\\oof"))
\stopluacode
```

Watch how the single backslash actually is a Lua escape that results in a newline:

```
test
elax
test \relax{!} foo\oof
```

You can also specify a catcode table identifier:

```
function token.getexpansion (
    <t:integer> catcodetable,
    <t:string>  code
)
    return <t:string> -- result
end
```

16.3.8 Information

In some cases you signal to Lua what data type is involved. The list of known types are available with:

```
function token.getfunctionvalues ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

0x00	none	0x04	skip	0x08	node
0x01	integer	0x05	boolean	0x09	direct
0x02	cardinal	0x06	float	0x0A	conditional
0x03	dimension	0x07	string		

The names of command is made available with:

```
function token.getcommandvalues ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

0x00	escape	0x24	remove_item
0x01	left_brace	0x25	hskip
0x02	right_brace	0x26	vskip
0x03	math_shift	0x27	mskip
0x04	alignment_tab	0x28	kern
0x05	end_line	0x29	mkern
0x06	parameter	0x2A	leader
0x07	superscript	0x2B	legacy
0x08	subscript	0x2C	local_box
0x09	ignore	0x2D	halign
0x0A	spacer	0x2E	valign
0x0B	letter	0x2F	vrule
0x0C	other_char	0x30	hrule
0x0D	active_char	0x31	insert
0x0E	comment	0x32	vadjust
0x0F	invalid_char	0x33	ignore_something
0x10	relax	0x34	after_something
0x11	alignment	0x35	penalty
0x12	end_template	0x36	begin_paragraph
0x13	match	0x37	italic_correction
0x14	end_match	0x38	accent
0x15	parameter_reference	0x39	math_accent
0x16	end_paragraph	0x3A	discretionary
0x17	end_job	0x3B	equation_number
0x18	delimiter_number	0x3C	math_fence
0x19	char_number	0x3D	math_component
0x1A	math_char_number	0x3E	math_modifier
0x1B	mark	0x3F	math_fraction
0x1C	node	0x40	math_choice
0x1D	xray	0x41	vcenter
0x1E	mvl	0x42	case_shift
0x1F	make_box	0x43	message
0x20	hmove	0x44	catcode_table
0x21	vmove	0x45	end_local
0x22	un_hbox	0x46	lua_function_call
0x23	un_vbox	0x47	lua_protected_call

0x48	lua_semiprotected_call
0x49	begin_group
0x4A	end_group
0x4B	explicit_space
0x4C	boundary
0x4D	math_radical
0x4E	math_script
0x4F	math_shift_cs
0x50	end_cs_name
0x51	char_given
0x52	some_item
0x53	internal_toks
0x54	register_toks
0x55	internal_integer
0x56	register_integer
0x57	internal_attribute
0x58	register_attribute
0x59	internal_posit
0x5A	register_posit
0x5B	internal_dimension
0x5C	register_dimension
0x5D	internal_glue
0x5E	register_glue
0x5F	internal_muglue
0x60	register_muglue
0x61	lua_value
0x62	iterator_value
0x63	font_property
0x64	auxiliary
0x65	hyphenation
0x66	page_property
0x67	align_property
0x68	break_property
0x69	box_property
0x6A	specification
0x6B	define_char_code
0x6C	define_family
0x6D	math_parameter
0x6E	math_style
0x6F	set_font
0x70	define_font
0x71	integer
0x72	posit
0x73	dimension
0x74	gluespec
0x75	mugluespec
0x76	index
0x77	mathspec
0x78	fontspec
0x79	specificationspec
0x7A	association
0x7B	interaction
0x7C	register
0x7D	combine_toks
0x7E	arithmic
0x7F	prefix
0x80	let
0x81	shorthand_def
0x82	def
0x83	set_box
0x84	undefined_cs
0x85	expand_after
0x86	no_expand
0x87	input
0x88	lua_call
0x89	lua_local_call
0x8A	begin_local
0x8B	if_test
0x8C	cs_name
0x8D	convert
0x8E	the
0x8F	get_mark
0x90	call
0x91	protected_call
0x92	semi_protected_call
0x93	constant_call
0x94	tolerant_call
0x95	tolerant_protected_call
0x96	tolerant_semi_protected_call
0x97	deep_frozen_end_template
0x98	deep_frozen_dont_expand
0x99	deep_frozen_keep_constant
0x9A	internal_glue_reference
0x9B	register_glue_reference
0x9C	internal_muglue_reference
0x9D	register_muglue_reference
0x9E	specification_reference
0x9F	internal_box_reference
0xA0	internal_toks_reference
0xA1	register_toks_reference
0xA2	specification_reference
0xA3	unit_reference
0xA4	internal_integer_reference
0xA5	register_integer_reference
0xA6	internal_attribute_reference
0xA7	register_attribute_reference
0xA8	internal_posit_reference
0xA9	register_posit_reference

0xAA internal_dimension_reference 0xAB register_dimension_reference

The complete list of primitives can be fetched with the next one:

```
function token.getprimitives ( )
    return {
        { <t:integer>, <t:integer>, <t:string> }, -- command, value, name
        ...
    }
end
```

The numbers shown below can change if we add or reorganize primitives, although this seldom happens. The list gives an impression how primitives are grouped.

```
  4    0  \aligntab
  6    0  \alignmark
  6    0  \parametermark
 16    0  \relax
 16    1  \norelax
 16    3  \noarguments
 18    1  \span
 18    2  \omit
 18    3  \aligncontent
 18    4  \noalign
 18    5  \realign
 18    6  \cr
 18    7  \crcr
 18    8  \alignloop
 22    0  \par
 22    3  \localbreakpar
 23    0  \end
 23    1  \dump
 24    0  \delimiter
 24    1  \Udelimiter
 25    0  \char
 25    1  \glyph
 26    0  \mathchar
 26    1  \Umathchar
 26    2  \mathdictionary
 26    3  \mathclass
 26    4  \nomathchar
 27    0  \mark
 27    1  \marks
 27    2  \clearmarks
 27    3  \flushmarks
 29    0  \show
 29    1  \showbox
 29    2  \showthe
 29    3  \showlists
 29    4  \showgroups
 29    5  \showstack
 29    6  \showcodestack
 29    7  \showtokens
 29    8  \showifs
 30    0  \beginmvl
 30    1  \endmvl
 31    0  \box
 31    1  \copy
 31    3  \lastbox
 31    4  \tsplit
 31    5  \vsplit
 31    6  \dsplit
 31    7  \tpack
 31    8  \vpack
 31    9  \dpack
 31   10  \hpack
 31   11  \vtop
 31   12  \vbox
 31   13  \dbox
 31   14  \hbox
 31   15  \vbalance
 31   16  \vbalancedbox
 31   17  \vbalancedtop
 31   18  \vbalancedinsert
 31   19  \vbalanceddiscard
 31   20  \vbalanceddeinsert
 31   21  \vbalancedreinsert
 31   22  \flushmvl
 31   23  \prerollmvl
 31   24  \insertbox
 31   25  \insertcopy
 31   26  \localleftboxbox
 31   27  \localrightboxbox
 31   28  \localmiddleboxbox
 32    0  \moveright
 32    1  \moveleft
 33    0  \lower
 33    1  \raise
```

34 0 \unhbox
34 1 \unhcopy
34 2 \unhpack
35 0 \unvbox
35 1 \unvcopy
35 2 \unvpack
35 24 \insertunbox
35 25 \insertuncopy
35 29 \pagediscards
35 30 \splitdiscards
35 31 \copysplitdiscards
36 0 \unkern
36 1 \unpenalty
36 2 \unskip
36 3 \unboundary
37 0 \hfil
37 1 \hfill
37 2 \hss
37 3 \hfilneg
37 4 \hskip
38 0 \vfil
38 1 \vfill
38 2 \vss
38 3 \vfilneg
38 4 \vskip
39 0 \mskip
39 1 \mathatomskip
40 0 \kern
40 1 \hkern
40 2 \vkern
41 0 \mkern
42 0 \leaders
42 1 \cleaders
42 2 \xleaders
42 3 \gleaders
42 4 \uleaders
43 0 \shipout
44 0 \localleftbox
44 1 \localrightbox
44 2 \localmiddlebox
44 4 \resetlocalboxes
45 0 \halign
46 0 \valign
47 0 \vrule
47 1 \novrule
47 2 \srule
47 3 \virtualvrule
48 0 \hrule
48 1 \nohrule
48 3 \virtualhrule
49 0 \insert
50 0 \vadjust
51 0 \ignorespaces
51 1 \ignorepars
51 2 \ignorearguments
51 3 \ignoreupto
51 4 \ignorenestedupto
51 5 \ignorerest
52 0 \aftergroup
52 1 \aftergrouped
52 2 \afterassignment
52 3 \afterassigned
52 4 \atendofgroup
52 5 \atendofgrouped
52 6 \atendoffile
52 7 \atendoffiled
53 0 \penalty
53 1 \hpenalty
53 2 \vpenalty
54 0 \noindent
54 1 \indent
54 2 \quitvmode
54 3 \undent
54 4 \snapshotpar
54 5 \parattribute
54 6 \optionspar
54 7 \wrapuppar
55 0 \/
55 0 \explicititaliccorrection
55 1 \forcedleftcorrection
55 2 \forcedrightcorrection
56 0 \accent
57 0 \mathaccent
57 1 \Umathaccent
58 0 \discretionary
58 1 \-
58 1 \explicitdiscretionary
58 2 \automaticdiscretionary
59 0 \leqno
59 1 \eqno
60 1 \left
60 2 \middle
60 3 \right
60 4 \Uoperator
60 5 \Uvextensible
60 6 \Uleft
60 7 \Umiddle
60 8 \Uright

```
61    0  \mathord
61    1  \mathop
61    2  \mathbin
61    3  \mathrel
61    4  \mathopen
61    5  \mathclose
61    6  \mathpunct
61    8  \mathinner
61    9  \underline
61   10  \overline
61   18  \mathatom
62    0  \displaylimits
62    1  \limits
62    1  \Umathlimits
62    2  \Umathnolimits
62    2  \nolimits
62    3  \Umathadapttoleft
62    4  \Umathadapttoright
62    5  \Umathuseaxis
62    6  \Umathnoaxis
62    7  \Umathphantom
62    8  \Umathvoid
62    9  \Umathsource
62   10  \Umathopenupheight
62   11  \Umathopenupdepth
63    0  \above
63    1  \abovewithdelims
63    2  \over
63    3  \overwithdelims
63    4  \atop
63    5  \atopwithdelims
63    6  \Uabove
63    7  \Uabovewithdelims
63    8  \Uover
63    9  \Uoverwithdelims
63   10  \Uatop
63   11  \Uatopwithdelims
63   12  \Uskewed
63   13  \Uskewedwithdelims
63   14  \Ustretched
63   15  \Ustretchedwithdelims
64    0  \mathchoice
64    1  \mathdiscretionary
64    2  \mathstack
65    0  \vcenter
66    0  \lowercase
66    1  \uppercase
67    0  \message
67    1  \errmessage
68    0  \savecatcodetable
68    1  \restorecatcodetable
68    2  \initcatcodetable
69    0  \endlocalcontrol
70    0  \luafunctioncall
70    1  \luabytecodecall
73    0  \begingroup
73    1  \beginsimplegroup
73    2  \beginmathgroup
74    0  \endgroup
74    1  \endsimplegroup
74    2  \endmathgroup
75    0  \
75    0  \explicitspace
76    0  \noboundary
76    1  \boundary
76    2  \attributeboundary
76    3  \protrusionboundary
76    4  \wordboundary
76    5  \pageboundary
76    6  \mathboundary
76    7  \optionalboundary
76    8  \luaboundary
76   10  \insertboundary
76   11  \balanceboundary
77    0  \radical
77    1  \Uradical
77    2  \Uroot
77    3  \Urooted
77    4  \Uunderdelimiter
77    5  \Uoverdelimiter
77    6  \Udelimiterunder
77    7  \Udelimiterover
77    8  \Udelimited
77    9  \Uhextensible
78    0  \nonscript
78    1  \noatomruling
78    2  \subscript
78    3  \superscript
78    4  \superprescript
78    5  \subprescript
78    6  \nosubscript
78    7  \nosuperscript
78    8  \nosubprescript
78    9  \nosuperprescript
78   10  \indexedsubscript
78   11  \indexedsuperscript
78   12  \indexedsubprescript
78   13  \indexedsuperprescript
```

```
78  14 \primescript
78  15 \noscript
79   0 \Ustartmath
79   1 \Ustopmath
79   2 \Ustartdisplaymath
79   3 \Ustopdisplaymath
79   4 \Ustartmathmode
79   5 \Ustopmathmode
80   0 \endcsname
82   0 \lastpenalty
82   1 \lastkern
82   2 \lastskip
82   3 \lastboundary
82   4 \lastnodetype
82   5 \lastnodesubtype
82   6 \inputlineno
82   7 \badness
82   8 \overshoot
82   9 \luametatexmajorversion
82  10 \luametatexminorversion
82  11 \luametatexrelease
82  12 \luametatexversion
82  13 \currentgrouplevel
82  14 \currentgrouptype
82  15 \currentstacksize
82  16 \currentiflevel
82  17 \currentiftype
82  18 \currentifbranch
82  19 \gluestretchorder
82  20 \glueshrinkorder
82  21 \fontid
82  22 \glyphxscaled
82  23 \glyphyscaled
82  24 \fontcharwd
82  25 \fontcharht
82  26 \fontchardp
82  27 \fontcharic
82  28 \fontcharta
82  29 \fontcharba
82  30 \fontcharrt
82  31 \fontcharrb
82  32 \fontcharlt
82  33 \fontcharlb
82  34 \scaledfontcharwd
82  35 \scaledfontcharht
82  36 \scaledfontchardp
82  37 \scaledfontcharic
82  38 \scaledfontcharta
82  39 \scaledfontcharba
82  40 \scaledfontcharrt
82  41 \scaledfontcharrb
82  42 \scaledfontcharlt
82  43 \scaledfontcharlb
82  44 \fontspecid
82  45 \fontspecscale
82  46 \fontspecxscale
82  47 \fontspecyscale
82  48 \fontspecslant
82  49 \fontspecweight
82  50 \fontspecifiedsize
82  51 \fontmathcontrol
82  52 \fonttextcontrol
82  53 \textspacingfactor
82  54 \textspacingpenalty
82  55 \mathscale
82  56 \mathstyle
82  57 \mathmainstyle
82  58 \mathparentstyle
82  59 \mathstylefontid
82  60 \mathstackstyle
82  61 \mathcharclass
82  62 \mathcharfam
82  63 \mathcharslot
82  64 \scaledslantperpoint
82  65 \scaledinterwordspace
82  66 \scaledinterwordstretch
82  67 \scaledinterwordshrink
82  68 \scaledexheight
82  69 \scaledemwidth
82  70 \scaledextraspace
82  71 \scaledmathaxis
82  72 \scaledmathexheight
82  73 \scaledmathemwidth
82  74 \lastarguments
82  75 \parametercount
82  76 \parameterindex
82  77 \insertprogress
82  78 \leftmarginkern
82  79 \specificationcount
82  80 \specificationoptions
82  81 \specificationfirst
82  82 \specificationsecond
82  83 \rightmarginkern
82  84 \parshapelength
82  85 \parshapeindent
82  86 \parshapedimen
82  86 \parshapewidth
82  87 \balanceshapevsize
```

```
82  88 \balanceshapetopspace
82  89 \balanceshapebottomspace
82  90 \gluestretch
82  91 \glueshrink
82  92 \mutoglue
82  93 \gluetomu
82  94 \numexpr
82  95 \floatexpr
82  96 \dimexpr
82  97 \glueexpr
82  98 \muexpr
82  99 \numexpression
82 100 \dimexpression
82 101 \numexperimental
82 102 \dimexperimental
82 103 \lastchknumber
82 104 \lastchkdimension
82 105 \numericscale
82 106 \numericscaled
82 107 \indexofregister
82 108 \indexofcharacter
82 109 \mathatomglue
82 110 \lastleftclass
82 111 \lastrightclass
82 112 \lastatomclass
82 113 \nestedloopiterator
82 114 \previousloopiterator
82 115 \currentloopiterator
82 116 \currentloopnesting
82 117 \lastloopiterator
82 118 \lastpartrigger
82 119 \lastparcontext
82 120 \lastpageextra
82 121 \currentalignmentrow
82 122 \currentalignmentcolumn
82 123 \lastalignmentrow
82 124 \lastalignmentcolumn
82 125 \currentalignmenttabskip
83   0 \output
83   1 \everypar
83   2 \everyparbegin
83   3 \everyparend
83   4 \everymath
83   5 \everydisplay
83   6 \everyhbox
83   7 \everyvbox
83   8 \everymathatom
83   9 \everyjob
83  10 \everycr
83  11 \everytab
83  12 \errhelp
83  13 \everybeforepar
83  14 \everyeof
85  40 \uchyph
85  40 \glyphscriptscale
85  40 \eufactor
85  40 \relpenalty
85  40 \discretionaryoptions
85  40 \glyphtextscale
85  40 \mathrightclass
85  40 \mathleftclass
85  40 \glyphscale
85  40 \mathdirection
85  40 \adjustspacing
85  40 \glyphslant
85  40 \mathendclass
85  40 \glyphweight
85  40 \outputbox
85  40 \localtolerance
85  40 \prebinoppenalty
85  40 \glyphyscale
85  40 \hyphenationmode
85  40 \endlinechar
85  40 \glyphscriptscriptscale
85  40 \pretolerance
85  40 \binoppenalty
85  40 \pardirection
85  40 \glyphoptions
85  40 \nooutputboxerror
85  40 \newlinechar
85  40 \language
85  40 \mathbeginclass
85  40 \textdirection
85  40 \setlanguage
85  40 \localhangafter
85  40 \overloadmode
85  40 \glyphxscale
85  40 \localpretolerance
85  40 \catcodetable
85  40 \linedirection
85  40 \setfontid
85  40 \protrudechars
85  40 \localinterlinepenalty
85  40 \localbrokenpenalty
85  40 \prerelpenalty
85  41 \tolerance
85  42 \linepenalty
85  43 \hyphenpenalty
```

```
85  44 \exhyphenpenalty
85  45 \clubpenalty
85  46 \widowpenalty
85  47 \displaywidowpenalty
85  48 \brokenpenalty
85  49 \predisplaypenalty
85  50 \postdisplaypenalty
85  51 \preinlinepenalty
85  52 \postinlinepenalty
85  53 \preshortinlinepenalty
85  54 \postshortinlinepenalty
85  55 \shortinlineorphanpenalty
85  56 \interlinepenalty
85  57 \doublehyphendemerits
85  58 \finalhyphendemerits
85  59 \adjdemerits
85  60 \doublepenaltymode
85  61 \delimiterfactor
85  62 \looseness
85  63 \time
85  64 \day
85  65 \month
85  66 \year
85  67 \showboxbreadth
85  68 \showboxdepth
85  69 \shownodedetails
85  70 \hbadness
85  71 \vbadness
85  72 \hbadnessmode
85  73 \vbadnessmode
85  74 \pausing
85  75 \tracingonline
85  76 \tracingmacros
85  77 \tracingstats
85  78 \tracingparagraphs
85  79 \tracingpages
85  80 \tracingbalancing
85  81 \tracingoutput
85  82 \tracinglostchars
85  83 \tracingcommands
85  84 \tracingrestores
85  85 \tracingsnapping
85  86 \tracingassigns
85  87 \tracinggroups
85  88 \tracingifs
85  89 \tracingmath
85  90 \tracingmvl
85  91 \tracinglevels
85  92 \tracingnesting
85  93 \tracingalignments
85  94 \tracinginserts
85  95 \tracingmarks
85  96 \tracingadjusts
85  97 \tracinghyphenation
85  98 \tracingexpressions
85  99 \tracingnodes
85 100 \tracingfullboxes
85 101 \tracingpenalties
85 102 \tracinglooseness
85 103 \tracinglists
85 104 \tracingpasses
85 105 \tracingfitness
85 106 \tracingtoddlers
85 107 \tracingorphans
85 108 \tracingloners
85 109 \tracingraggedness
85 110 \outputpenalty
85 111 \maxdeadcycles
85 112 \hangafter
85 113 \floatingpenalty
85 114 \globaldefs
85 115 \fam
85 116 \escapechar
85 117 \spacechar
85 118 \defaulthyphenchar
85 119 \defaultskewchar
85 120 \lefthyphenmin
85 121 \righthyphenmin
85 122 \holdinginserts
85 123 \holdingmigrations
85 124 \insertoptions
85 125 \errorcontextlines
85 126 \errorrecoverymode
85 127 \nospaces
85 128 \parametermode
85 129 \glyphdatafield
85 130 \glyphstatefield
85 131 \glyphscriptfield
85 132 \exhyphenchar
85 133 \exapostrophechar
85 134 \adjustspacingstep
85 135 \adjustspacingstretch
85 136 \adjustspacingshrink
85 137 \predisplaydirection
85 138 \lastlinefit
85 139 \savingvdiscards
85 140 \savinghyphcodes
85 141 \matheqnogapstep
```

85 142 \mathdisplayskipmode
85 143 \mathscriptsmode
85 144 \mathlimitsmode
85 145 \mathoptions
85 146 \mathrulesmode
85 147 \mathrulesfam
85 148 \mathpenaltiesmode
85 149 \mathcheckfencesmode
85 150 \mathslackmode
85 151 \mathsurroundmode
85 152 \mathdoublescriptmode
85 153 \mathfontcontrol
85 154 \mathdisplaymode
85 155 \mathdictgroup
85 156 \mathdictproperties
85 157 \predisplaygapfactor
85 158 \firstvalidlanguage
85 159 \automatichyphenpenalty
85 160 \explicithyphenpenalty
85 161 \exceptionpenalty
85 162 \luacopyinputnodes
85 163 \automigrationmode
85 164 \normalizelinemode
85 165 \normalizeparmode
85 166 \mathspacingmode
85 167 \mathgroupingmode
85 168 \mathgluemode
85 169 \mathinlinepenaltyfactor
85 170 \mathdisplaypenaltyfactor
85 171 \supmarkmode
85 172 \autoparagraphmode
85 173 \shapingpenaltiesmode
85 174 \shapingpenalty
85 175 \singlelinepenalty
85 176 \lefttwindemerits
85 177 \righttwindemerits
85 178 \alignmentcellsource
85 179 \alignmentwrapsource
85 180 \linebreakpasses
85 181 \linebreakoptional
85 182 \linebreakchecks
85 183 \balancechecks
85 184 \balancebreakpasses
85 185 \balancetolerance
85 186 \balancepenalty
85 187 \balanceadjdemerits
85 188 \balancelooseness
85 189 \vsplitchecks
85 190 \etexexprmode
85 191 \paroptions
85 192 \parfillmode
85 193 \variablefam
85 194 \mathpretolerance
85 195 \mathtolerance
85 196 \emptyparagraphmode
85 197 \spacefactormode
85 198 \spacefactorshrinklimit
85 199 \spacefactorstretchlimit
85 200 \spacefactoroverload
85 201 \spaceskipfactor
85 202 \spaceskipmode
85 203 \boxlimitmode
85 204 \scriptspacebeforefactor
85 205 \scriptspacebetweenfactor
85 206 \scriptspaceafterfactor
85 207 \linesnappinghtfactor
85 208 \linesnappingdpfactor
91 0 \parindent
91 1 \mathsurround
91 2 \lineskiplimit
91 3 \hsize
91 4 \vsize
91 5 \maxdepth
91 6 \splitmaxdepth
91 7 \boxmaxdepth
91 8 \hfuzz
91 9 \vfuzz
91 10 \delimitershortfall
91 11 \nulldelimiterspace
91 12 \scriptspace
91 13 \predisplaysize
91 14 \displaywidth
91 15 \displayindent
91 16 \overfullrule
91 17 \hangindent
91 18 \emergencystretch
91 19 \emergencyextrastretch
91 20 \glyphxoffset
91 21 \glyphyoffset
91 22 \pxdimen
91 23 \tabsize
91 24 \pageextragoal
91 25 \ignoredepthcriterion
91 26 \shortinlinemaththreshold
91 27 \splitextraheight
91 28 \balanceemergencystretch
91 29 \balanceemergencyshrink
91 30 \balancevsize

```
91  31 \balancelineheight
91  32 \localhangindent
91  33 \linesnappingtolerance
93   3 \initialtopskip
93   3 \justificationskip
93   3 \additionalpageskip
93   3 \lineskip
93   3 \initialpageskip
93   4 \baselineskip
93   5 \parskip
93   6 \abovedisplayskip
93   7 \belowdisplayskip
93   8 \abovedisplayshortskip
93   9 \belowdisplayshortskip
93  10 \leftskip
93  11 \rightskip
93  12 \topskip
93  13 \bottomskip
93  14 \splittopskip
93  15 \balancetopskip
93  16 \balancebottomskip
93  17 \tabskip
93  18 \spaceskip
93  19 \xspaceskip
93  20 \parfillleftskip
93  21 \parfillrightskip
93  21 \parfillskip
93  22 \parinitleftskip
93  23 \parinitrightskip
93  24 \emergencyleftskip
93  25 \emergencyrightskip
93  26 \mathsurroundskip
93  27 \maththreshold
95   1 \pettymuskip
95   2 \tinymuskip
95   3 \thinmuskip
95   4 \medmuskip
95   5 \thickmuskip
99   0 \hyphenchar
99   1 \skewchar
99   2 \lpcode
99   3 \rpcode
99   4 \efcode
99   5 \cfcode
99   6 \fontdimen
99   7 \scaledfontdimen
99   8 \scaledfontslantperpoint
99   9 \scaledfontinterwordspace
99  10 \scaledfontinterwordstretch
99  11 \scaledfontinterwordshrink
99  12 \scaledfontexheight
99  13 \scaledfontemwidth
99  14 \scaledfontextraspace
100  0 \spacefactor
100  1 \prevdepth
100  2 \prevgraf
100  3 \interactionmode
100  4 \insertmode
101  0 \hyphenation
101  1 \patterns
101  2 \prehyphenchar
101  3 \posthyphenchar
101  4 \preexhyphenchar
101  5 \postexhyphenchar
101  6 \hyphenationmin
101  7 \hjcode
102  0 \pagegoal
102  1 \pagevsize
102  2 \pagetotal
102  3 \pagedepth
102  4 \pageexcess
102  5 \pagelastheight
102  6 \pagelastdepth
102  7 \deadcycles
102  8 \insertpenalties
102  9 \insertonlycount
102 10 \insertheights
102 11 \insertstoring
102 12 \insertcategory
102 13 \insertdistance
102 14 \insertmultiplier
102 15 \insertlimit
102 16 \insertstorage
102 17 \insertpenalty
102 18 \insertmaxdepth
102 19 \insertheight
102 20 \insertdepth
102 21 \insertwidth
102 22 \insertlineheight
102 23 \insertlinedepth
102 24 \insertstretch
102 25 \insertshrink
102 26 \insertdirection
102 27 \insertmaxplaced
102 28 \insertplaced
102 29 \pagestretch
102 30 \pagefistretch
102 31 \pagefilstretch
```

```
102  32 \pagefillstretch
102  33 \pagefilllstretch
102  34 \pageshrink
102  35 \pagelaststretch
102  36 \pagelastfistretch
102  37 \pagelastfilstretch
102  38 \pagelastfillstretch
102  39 \pagelastfilllstretch
102  40 \pagelastshrink
102  41 \splitlastdepth
102  42 \splitlastheight
102  43 \splitlastshrink
102  44 \splitlaststretch
102  45 \mvlcurrentlyactive
103   0 \alignoption
104   0 \breaklastlinewidth
104   1 \breaklastlinecount
104   2 \breaklasthangslack
104   3 \breaklasthangindent
104   4 \breaklasthangleftslack
104   5 \breaklasthangleftindent
104   6 \breaklasthangrightslack
104   7 \breaklasthangrightindent
105   0 \wd
105   1 \ht
105   2 \dp
105   3 \boxdirection
105   4 \boxgeometry
105   5 \boxorientation
105   6 \boxanchor
105   7 \boxanchors
105   8 \boxsource
105   9 \boxtarget
105  10 \boxxoffset
105  11 \boxyoffset
105  12 \boxxmove
105  13 \boxymove
105  14 \boxtotal
105  15 \boxshift
105  16 \boxadapt
105  17 \boxrepack
105  18 \boxfreeze
105  19 \boxmigrate
105  20 \boxlimitate
105  21 \boxfinalize
105  22 \boxlimit
105  23 \boxstretch
105  24 \boxshrink
105  25 \boxsnapping
105  26 \boxsubtype
105  27 \boxattribute
105  28 \boxvadjust
105  29 \boxinserts
106     \Umath...
107   0 \catcode
107   1 \lccode
107   2 \uccode
107   3 \sfcode
107   4 \spcode
107   5 \hccode
107   6 \hmcode
107   7 \amcode
107   8 \cccode
107   9 \mathcode
107  10 \Umathcode
107  11 \delcode
107  12 \Udelcode
108   0 \textfont
108   1 \scriptfont
108   2 \scriptscriptfont
109   0 \Umathquad
109   1 \Umathexheight
109   2 \Umathaxis
109   3 \Umathaccentbaseheight
109   4 \Umathaccentbasedepth
109   5 \Umathflattenedaccentbaseheight
109   6 \Umathflattenedaccentbasedepth
109   7 \Umathxscale
109   8 \Umathyscale
109   9 \Umathoperatorsize
109  10 \Umathoverbarkern
109  11 \Umathoverbarrule
109  12 \Umathoverbarvgap
109  13 \Umathunderbarkern
109  14 \Umathunderbarrule
109  15 \Umathunderbarvgap
109  16 \Umathradicalkern
109  17 \Umathradicalrule
109  18 \Umathradicalvgap
109  19 \Umathradicaldegreebefore
109  20 \Umathradicaldegreeafter
109  21 \Umathradicaldegreeraise
109  22 \Umathradicalextensibleafter
109  23 \Umathradicalextensiblebefore
109  24 \Umathstackvgap
109  25 \Umathstacknumup
109  26 \Umathstackdenomdown
109  27 \Umathfractionrule
```

```
109  28 \Umathfractionnumvgap
109  29 \Umathfractionnumup
109  30 \Umathfractiondenomvgap
109  31 \Umathfractiondenomdown
109  32 \Umathfractiondelsize
109  33 \Umathskewedfractionhgap
109  34 \Umathskewedfractionvgap
109  35 \Umathlimitabovevgap
109  36 \Umathlimitabovebgap
109  37 \Umathlimitabovekern
109  38 \Umathlimitbelowvgap
109  39 \Umathlimitbelowbgap
109  40 \Umathlimitbelowkern
109  41 \Umathnolimitsubfactor
109  42 \Umathnolimitsupfactor
109  43 \Umathunderdelimitervgap
109  44 \Umathunderdelimiterbgap
109  45 \Umathoverdelimitervgap
109  46 \Umathoverdelimiterbgap
109  47 \Umathsubshiftdrop
109  48 \Umathsupshiftdrop
109  49 \Umathsubshiftdown
109  50 \Umathsubsupshiftdown
109  51 \Umathsubtopmax
109  52 \Umathsupshiftup
109  53 \Umathsupbottommin
109  54 \Umathsupsubbottommax
109  55 \Umathsubsupvgap
109  56 \Umathspacebeforescript
109  57 \Umathspacebetweenscript
109  58 \Umathspaceafterscript
109  59 \Umathconnectoroverlapmin
109  60 \Umathsuperscriptsnap
109  61 \Umathsubscriptsnap
109  62 \Umathextrasupshift
109  63 \Umathextrasubshift
109  64 \Umathextrasuppreshift
109  65 \Umathextrasubpreshift
109  66 \Umathprimeraise
109  67 \Umathprimeraisecomposed
109  68 \Umathprimeshiftup
109  69 \Umathprimeshiftdrop
109  70 \Umathprimespaceafter
109  71 \Umathruleheight
109  72 \Umathruledepth
109  73 \Umathextrasupspace
109  74 \Umathextrasubspace
109  75 \Umathextrasupprespace
109  76 \Umathextrasubprespace
109  77 \Umathskeweddelimitertolerance
109  78 \Umathaccenttopshiftup
109  79 \Umathaccentbottomshiftdown
109  80 \Umathaccenttopovershoot
109  81 \Umathaccentbottomovershoot
109  82 \Umathaccentsuperscriptdrop
109  83 \Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent
109  84 \Umathaccentextendmargin
109  85 \Umathflattenedaccenttopshiftup
109  86 \Umathflattenedaccentbottomshiftdown
109  87 \Umathdelimiterpercent
109  88 \Umathdelimitershortfall
109  89 \Umathdelimiterextendmargin
109  90 \Umathoverlinevariant
109  91 \Umathunderlinevariant
109  92 \Umathoverdelimitervariant
109  93 \Umathunderdelimitervariant
109  94 \Umathdelimiterovervariant
109  95 \Umathdelimiterundervariant
109  96 \Umathhextensiblevariant
109  97 \Umathvextensiblevariant
109  98 \Umathfractionvariant
109  99 \Umathradicalvariant
109 100 \Umathdegreevariant
109 101 \Umathaccentvariant
109 102 \Umathtopaccentvariant
109 103 \Umathbottomaccentvariant
109 104 \Umathoverlayaccentvariant
109 105 \Umathnumeratorvariant
109 106 \Umathdenominatorvariant
109 107 \Umathsuperscriptvariant
109 108 \Umathsubscriptvariant
109 109 \Umathprimevariant
109 110 \Umathstackvariant
109 111 \resetmathspacing
109 112 \setmathspacing
109 113 \letmathspacing
109 114 \copymathspacing
109 115 \setmathatomrule
109 116 \letmathatomrule
109 117 \copymathatomrule
109 118 \letmathparent
109 119 \copymathparent
109 120 \setmathprepenalty
109 121 \setmathpostpenalty
109 122 \setmathdisplayprepenalty
109 123 \setmathdisplaypostpenalty
109 124 \setmathignore
109 125 \setmathoptions
```

```
109 126 \setdefaultmathcodes
110   0 \displaystyle
110   1 \crampeddisplaystyle
110   2 \textstyle
110   3 \crampedtextstyle
110   4 \scriptstyle
110   5 \crampedscriptstyle
110   6 \scriptscriptstyle
110   7 \crampedscriptscriptstyle
110   8 \alldisplaystyles
110   9 \alltextstyles
110  10 \allscriptstyles
110  11 \allscriptscriptstyles
110  12 \allmathstyles
110  13 \allmainstyles
110  14 \allsplitstyles
110  15 \allunsplitstyles
110  16 \alluncrampedstyles
110  17 \allcrampedstyles
110  18 \currentlysetmathstyle
110  19 \givenmathstyle
110  20 \scaledmathstyle
111   0 \nullfont
112   0 \font
122   0 \associateunit
123   0 \batchmode
123   1 \nonstopmode
123   2 \scrollmode
123   3 \errorstopmode
124   0 \float
124   1 \count
124   2 \attribute
124   3 \dimen
124   4 \skip
124   5 \muskip
124   6 \toks
125   0 \etoks
125   1 \toksapp
125   2 \etoksapp
125   3 \tokspre
125   4 \etokspre
125   5 \xtoks
125   6 \gtoksapp
125   7 \xtoksapp
125   8 \gtokspre
125   9 \xtokspre
126   0 \advance
126   1 \advanceby
126   2 \multiply
126   3 \multiplyby
126   4 \divide
126   5 \edivide
126   6 \rdivide
126   7 \divideby
126   8 \edivideby
126   9 \rdivideby
127   0 \frozen
127   1 \permanent
127   2 \immutable
127   3 \mutable
127   4 \noaligned
127   5 \instance
127   6 \untraced
127   7 \global
127   8 \tolerant
127   9 \protected
127  10 \overloaded
127  11 \aliased
127  12 \immediate
127  13 \deferred
127  14 \semiprotected
127  15 \enforced
127  17 \inherited
127  18 \constant
127  19 \retained
127  20 \constrained
127  21 \long
127  22 \outer
128   0 \glet
128   1 \let
128   2 \futurelet
128   3 \futuredef
128   4 \letcharcode
128   5 \swapcsvalues
128   6 \letprotected
128   7 \unletprotected
128   8 \letfrozen
128   9 \unletfrozen
128  10 \gletcsname
128  11 \letcsname
128  12 \glettonothing
128  13 \lettonothing
128  14 \lettolastnamedcs
129   0 \chardef
129   1 \mathchardef
129   2 \Umathchardef
129   3 \Umathdictdef
129   4 \countdef
```

129 5 \attributedef
129 6 \dimendef
129 7 \skipdef
129 8 \muskipdef
129 9 \toksdef
129 10 \floatdef
129 11 \luadef
129 12 \integerdef
129 13 \dimensiondef
129 14 \gluespecdef
129 15 \mugluespecdef
129 16 \positdef
129 17 \parameterdef
129 18 \fontspecdef
129 19 \specificationdef
130 0 \edef
130 1 \def
130 2 \xdef
130 3 \gdef
130 4 \edefcsname
130 5 \defcsname
130 6 \xdefcsname
130 7 \gdefcsname
130 8 \cdef
130 9 \cdefcsname
131 0 \setbox
133 0 \expandafter
133 1 \unless
133 2 \futureexpand
133 3 \futureexpandis
133 4 \futureexpandisap
133 5 \expandafterspaces
133 6 \expandafterpars
133 7 \expandtoken
133 8 \expandcstoken
133 9 \expand
133 10 \expandtoks
133 11 \expandactive
133 12 \semiexpand
133 13 \expandedafter
133 14 \expandparameter
134 0 \noexpand
135 0 \input
135 1 \eofinput
135 2 \endinput
135 3 \scantokens
135 4 \ignoretokens
135 5 \scantextokens
135 6 \tokenized
135 7 \retokenized
135 8 \quitloop
135 9 \quitloopnow
138 0 \beginlocalcontrol
138 1 \localcontrol
138 2 \localcontrolled
138 3 \localcontrolledloop
138 4 \expandedloop
138 5 \unexpandedloop
138 6 \localcontrolledrepeat
138 7 \expandedrepeat
138 8 \unexpandedrepeat
138 9 \localcontrolledendless
138 10 \expandedendless
138 11 \unexpandedendless
139 2 \fi
139 3 \else
139 4 \or
139 5 \orelse
139 6 \orunless
139 7 \if
139 8 \ifcat
139 9 \ifnum
139 10 \ifabsnum
139 11 \ifzeronum
139 12 \ifintervalnum
139 13 \iffloat
139 14 \ifabsfloat
139 15 \ifzerofloat
139 16 \ifintervalfloat
139 17 \ifdim
139 18 \ifabsdim
139 19 \ifzerodim
139 20 \ifintervaldim
139 21 \ifodd
139 22 \ifvmode
139 23 \ifhmode
139 24 \ifmmode
139 25 \ifinner
139 26 \ifvoid
139 27 \ifhbox
139 28 \ifvbox
139 29 \iftok
139 30 \ifcstok
139 31 \ifx
139 32 \iftrue
139 33 \iffalse
139 34 \ifdefined
139 35 \ifcsname

```
139  36 \ifincsname
139  37 \iffontchar
139  38 \ifcondition
139  39 \ifflags
139  40 \ifempty
139  41 \ifrelax
139  42 \ifboolean
139  43 \ifnumexpression
139  44 \ifdimexpression
139  45 \iflastnamedcs
139  46 \ifhastok
139  47 \ifhastoks
139  48 \ifhasxtoks
139  49 \ifhaschar
139  50 \ifinsert
139  51 \ifinalignment
139  52 \ifcramped
139  53 \iflist
139  54 \ifspecification
139  56 \ifcase
139  57 \ifchknum
139  58 \ifchknumber
139  59 \ifchknumexpr
139  60 \ifnumval
139  61 \ifcmpnum
139  62 \ifchkdim
139  63 \ifchkdimension
139  64 \ifchkdimexpr
139  65 \ifdimval
139  66 \ifcmpdim
139  67 \ifmathparameter
139  68 \ifmathstyle
139  69 \ifarguments
139  70 \ifparameters
139  71 \ifparameter
140   0 \csname
140   1 \lastnamedcs
140   2 \begincsname
140   3 \futurecsname
141   0 \number
141   1 \tointeger
141   2 \tohexadecimal
141   3 \toscaled
141   4 \tosparsescaled
141   5 \todimension
141   6 \tosparsedimension
141   7 \tolimitedfloat
141   8 \tomathstyle
141   9 \directlua
141  10 \luafunction
141  11 \luabytecode
141  12 \expanded
141  13 \semiexpanded
141  14 \string
141  15 \csstring
141  16 \csactive
141  17 \csnamestring
141  18 \detokenized
141  19 \detokened
141  20 \romannumeral
141  21 \romannumerical
141  22 \meaning
141  23 \meaningfull
141  24 \meaningless
141  25 \meaningasis
141  26 \meaningful
141  27 \meaningles
141  28 \tocharacter
141  29 \luaescapestring
141  30 \fontname
141  31 \fontspecifiedname
141  32 \jobname
141  33 \formatname
141  34 \luametatexbanner
141  35 \fontidentifier
142   0 \the
142   1 \thewithoutunit
142   2 \detokenize
142   3 \expandeddetokenize
142   4 \protecteddetokenize
142   5 \protectedexpandeddetokenize
142   6 \unexpanded
142   6 \notexpanded
143   0 \currentmarks
143   1 \topmarks
143   2 \firstmarks
143   3 \botmarks
143   4 \splitfirstmarks
143   5 \splitbotmarks
143   6 \topmark
143   7 \firstmark
143   8 \botmark
143   9 \splitfirstmark
143  10 \splitbotmark
```

This is a curious one: it returns the number of steps that a hash lookup took:

```
function token.locatemacro ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:integer> -- steps
end
```

Details about how many tokens are involved can be gotten with this one, and the number of arguments depends on it being a macro or token list.

```
function token.getlength ( <t:string> name )
    return
        <t:integer> -- length of token list
end

function token.getlength ( <t:string> macro )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- length of preamble
        <t:integer>  -- length of body
end
```

We used this helper when deciding on a reasonable hash size. Of the many primitives there are a few that need more than one lookup step:

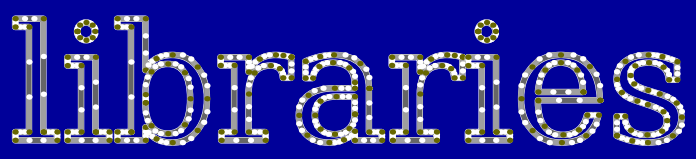
steps	total	macros
1	1262	...
2	4	Uleft Umiddle cleaders superscript
3	1	Umathaccentsuperscriptpercent

16.3.9 special purpose

In order to protect the macro package from undesired overloads by third party code we have:

```
function token.inhibit ( <t:string> name ) end
function token.inhibit ( <t:integer> cmd, <t:integer> chr ) end
function token.inhibit ( <t:table> names ) end
```

This will freeze macros and quantities when possible in at format generation time.


libraries

17 Libraries

Contents

17.1 Introduction **678**
17.2 Third party **678**
17.3 Core **679**
17.4 Auxiliary **679**

17.4.1 Extensions 679
17.4.2 Extra file helpers 679
17.4.3 Reading from a file 681
17.4.4 Reading from a string 684
17.4.5 Extra file helpers 686
17.4.6 Extra operating system helpers 686
17.4.7 Extra string helpers 688
17.4.8 Extra table helpers 692
17.4.9 Byte encoding and decoding 693
17.4.10 png decoding 693
17.4.11 MD5 hashing 696
17.4.12 SHA2 hashing 696
17.4.13 AES encryption 697
17.4.14 ZIP (de)compression 697
17.4.15 Potrace 699
17.4.16 Sparse hashes 699
17.4.17 Posits 701
17.4.18 Complex numbers 702
17.4.19 Decimal numbers 704
17.4.20 Math helpers 705
17.4.21 Bitset 707
17.4.22 Interval 708
17.4.23 Z-buffers 708
17.4.24 QR-codes 709
17.4.25 JPEG 709

17.5 KD trees **709**

17.5.1 Effects 712
17.5.2 Bytemaps 712
17.5.3 Serial 712

17.6 Optional **713**

17.6.1 Loading 713
17.6.2 Management 713
17.6.3 TDS (kpse) 713
17.6.4 Graphics 714
17.6.5 Compression 717
17.6.6 Databases 719
17.6.7 Whatever 720
17.6.8 Foreign 725
17.6.9 Vector 725

17.1 Introduction

The engine has quite some libraries built in of which some are discussed in dedicated chapters. Not all libraries will be detailed here, for instance, so called optional libraries depend on system libraries and usage is wrapped in modules because we delegate as much as possible to Lua. This means that some rather specific libraries have little to offer to users, because they are supposed to be hooked in for instance MetaPost, or more accurate, LuaMetaFun related features. This also means that we don't need to document them because that kind of happens in their application. Of course we can let methods evolve as we go forward.

17.2 Third party

There is not much to tell here other than it depends on the Lua symbols being visible and the Lua

version matching. We don't use this in ConTEXt and have a different mechanism instead: optional libraries.

17.3 Core

The core libraries are those that interface with TEX and MetaPost, these are discussed in dedicated chapters:

chapter	library
Lua	`lua luac`
TEX	`status tex texio`
MetaPost	`mp`
Nodes	`node`
Tokens	`token`
Callbacks	`callback`
Fonts	`font`
Languages	`language`
Libraries	`library`

Some, like `node`, `token` and `tex` provide a lot of functions but most are used in more higher level ConTEXt specific functions and interfaces. This means that in the code you will more often font `nodes` and `tokens` being used as well as functions that the macro package adds to the various built-in libraries.

17.4 Auxiliary

17.4.1 Extensions

These are the libraries that are needed to implement various subsystems, like for instance the backend and image inclusion. Although much can be done in pure Lua for performance reasons helpers make sense. However, we try to minimize this, which means that for instance the `zip` library provides what we need for (de)compressing for instance pdf streams but that unzipping files is done with Lua code wrapped around the core zip routines. The same is true for png inclusion: all that was done in pure Lua but a few critical helpers were translated to C.

Some libraries extend existing ones, like for instance `file`, `io` and `os` and `string`.

17.4.2 Extra file helpers

The original `lfs` module has been adapted a bit to our needs but for practical reasons we kept the namespace. In LuaMetaTEX we operate in utf8 so for MS Windows system interfaces we convert from and to Unicode16.

The `attributes` checker returns a table with details.

```
function lfs.attributes ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:table> -- details
end
```

The table has the following fields:

field	type	meaning
mode	string	`file` `directory` `link` `other`
size	integer	bytes
modification	integer	time
access	integer	time
change	integer	time
permissions	string	`rwxrwxrwx`
nlink	integer	number of links

If you're not interested in details, then the next calls are more efficient:

```
function lfs.isdir           ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.isfile          ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.iswriteabledir  ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.iswriteablefile ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.isreadabledir   ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.isreadablefile  ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
```

The current (working) directory is fetch with:

```
function lfs.currentdir ( )
    return <t:string> -- directory
end
```

These three return `true` is the action was a success:

```
function lfs.chdir ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.mkdir ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
function lfs.rmdir ( <t:string> name ) return <t:boolean> end
```

Here the second and third argument are optional:

```
function lfs.touch (
    <t:string>  name,
    <t:integer> accesstime,
    <t:integer> modificationtime
)
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The `dir` function is a traverser which in addition to the name returns some more properties. Keep in mind that the traverser loops over a directory and that it doesn't run well when used nested. This is a side effect of the operating system. It is also the reason why we return some properties because querying them via `attributes` would interfere badly. The directory iterator has two variants:

```
for
    <t:string> name,
    <t:string> mode
in lfs.dir (
    <t:string> name
)
```

```
    -- actions
end
```

This one provides more details:

```
for
    <t:string>  name,
    <t:string>  mode,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> mtime
in lfs.dir (
    <t:string>  name,
    <t:true>
)
    -- actions
end
```

Here the boolean indicates if we want a symlink (`true`) or hard link (`false`).

```
function lfs.link (
    <t:string>  source,
    <t:string>  target,
    <t:boolean> symlink
)
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The next one is sort of redundant but explicit:

```
function lfs.symlink (
    <t:string>  source,
    <t:string>  target,
)
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Helpers like these are a bit operating system and user permission dependent:

```
function lfs.setexecutable ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end

function lfs.symlinktarget ( <t:string> name )
    return <t:string> -- target
end
```

17.4.3 Reading from a file

Because we load fonts in Lua and because these are binary files we have some helpers that can read integers of various kind and some more. Originally we did this in pure Lua, which actually didn't perform that bad but this is of course more efficient.

We have readers for signed and unsigned, little and big endian. All return a (64 bit) Lua integer.

```
function fio.readcardinal1 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal2 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal3 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal4 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end

function fio.readcardinal1le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal2le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal3le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readcardinal4le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end

function fio.readinteger1 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger2 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger3 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger4 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end

function fio.readinteger1le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger2le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger3le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.readinteger4le ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:integer> end
```

These float readers are rather specific for fonts:

```
function fio.readfixed2 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
function fio.readfixed4 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
function fio.read2dot14 ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
```

We also have regular float and double readers:

```
function fio.readfloat    ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
function fio.readfloatle  ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
function fio.readdouble   ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
function fio.readdoublele ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
```

Of these two the first reads a line and the second a string the C way, so ending with a newline and null character. The third one reads n bytes but will clip the string to its natural length:

```
function fio.readcline   (
    <t:file> handle
)
    return
        <t:string>,  -- data
        <t:integer>  -- position
end

function fio.readcstring (
    <t:file> handle
)
    return
        <t:string>,  -- data
        <t:integer>  -- position
```

```
end

function fio.readnstring (
    <t:file>    handle,
    <t:integer> n
)
    return
        <t:string>,  -- data
        <t:integer>  -- position

end
```

The next set of readers reads multiple integers in one call:

```
function fio.readbytes (
    <t:file> handle
)
    return <t:integer> -- one or more
end

function fio.readintegertable (
    <t:file>    handle,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return <t:table>
end

function fio.readcardinaltable (
    <t:file>    handle,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return <t:table>
end

function fio.readbytetable (
    <t:file> handle
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

In case we need a random access the following have to be used:

```
function fio.setposition  ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.getposition  ( <t:file> handle              ) return <t:integer> end
function fio.skipposition ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> ) return <t:integer> end
```

The library also provide a few writers:

```
function fio.writecardinal1 ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal2 ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
```

```
function fio.writecardinal3 ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal4 ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end

function fio.writecardinal1le ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal2le ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal3le ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end
function fio.writecardinal4le ( <t:file> handle, <t:integer> value ) end

function fio.writefloat    ( <t:file> handle, <t:number> value ) end
function fio.writefloatle  ( <t:file> handle, <t:number> value ) end
function fio.writedouble   ( <t:file> handle, <t:number> value ) end
function fio.writedoublele ( <t:file> handle, <t:number> value ) end
```

17.4.4 Reading from a string

These readers take a string and position. We could have used a userdata approach but it saves little. (Nowadays we can more easily store the position with the userdata so maybe some day ...).

```
function sio.readcardinal1 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal2 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal3 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal4 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end

function sio.readcardinal1le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal2le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal3le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readcardinal4le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end

function sio.readinteger1 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger2 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger3 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger4 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end

function sio.readinteger1le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger2le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger3le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.readinteger4le ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:integer> end
```

Here are the (handy for fonts) float readers:

```
function sio.readfixed2 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:number> end
function sio.readfixed4 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:number> end
function sio.read2dot14 ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:number> end
```

We also have regular float and double readers:

```
function sio.readfloat    ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
function sio.readfloatle  ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
function sio.readdouble   ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
function sio.readdoublele ( <t:file> handle ) return <t:number>  end
```

A C line (terminated by a newline) and string (terminated by null) are read by:

```
function sio.readcline   ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:string> end
function sio.readcstring ( <t:string> s, <t:integer> p ) return <t:string> end
```

As with their `fio` counterparts, the two the first reads a line and the second a string the C way, so ending with a newline and null character. The third one reads `n` bytes but will clip the string to its natural length:

```
function sio.readcline   (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> position
)
    return
        <t:string>,  -- data
        <t:integer>  -- position
end

function sio.readcstring (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> position
)
    return
        <t:string>,  -- data
        <t:integer>  -- position
end

function sio.readnstring (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> position
    <t:integer> n
)
    return
        <t:string>,  -- data
        <t:integer>  -- position

end
```

These are similar ot the `fio` variants:

```
function sio.readbytes (
    <t:string>  str,
    <t:integer> pos
)
    return <t:integer> -- one or more
end

function sio.readintegertable (
    <t:string>  str,
    <t:integer> pos,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return <t:table>
```

```
end

function sio.readcardinaltable (
    <t:string>  str,
    <t:integer> pos,
    <t:integer> size,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return <t:table>
end

function sio.readbytetable (
    <t:string>  str,
    <t:integer> pos
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

Here are a few straightforward converters:

```
function sio.tocardinal1 ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal2 ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal3 ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal4 ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end

function sio.tocardinal1le ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal2le ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal3le ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
function sio.tocardinal4le ( <t:string> ) return <t:integer> end
```

17.4.5 Extra file helpers

This function gobble characters upto a newline. When characters are gobbled. `true` is returned when we end up at a newline or when something is gobbled before the file ends, other wise we get `false`. A `nil` return value indicates a bad handle.

```
function io.gobble( <t:file> )
    return <t:boolean> | <t:nil>
end
```

Function like type io.open `io.popen` are patched to support files on MS Windows that use wide Unicode.

17.4.6 Extra operating system helpers

The `os` library has a few extra functions and variables so for complete overview you need to look in the Lua manual.

We can sleep for the given number of seconds. When the optional `units` arguments is (for instance) 1000 we assume milliseconds.

```
function os.sleep (
```

```
    <t:integer>  seconds,
    <t:integers> units
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The `os.uname` function returns a table with specific operating system information acquired at runtime. The fields in the returned table are: `machine`, `nodename`, `release`, `sysname`, `version`.

```
function os.uname ( )
    return <t:table>
```

The `os.gettimeofday` function returns the current 'Unix time', but as a float. Keep in mind that there might be platforms where this function is not available.

```
function os.gettimeofday ( )
    return <t:number>
end
```

When we execute a command the return code is returned. Interpretation is up to the caller.

```
function os.execute ( <t:string> )
    return <t:integer> -- return code
end
```

This one enable interpreting ansi escape sequences in the console. It is only implemented for MS Windows. In ConTEXt you can run with `--ansi`.

```
function os.enableansi ( )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

This one only returns something useful for MS Windows. One can of course just set your the system for utf8. It's just a reporter meant for debugging issues.

```
function os.getcodepage ( )
    return
        <t:integer> oemcodepage,
        <t:integer> applicationcodepage
end
```

The `os.setenv` function sets a variable in the environment. Passing `nil` instead of a value string will remove the variable.

```
function os.setenv (
    <t:string> key,
    <t:string> value
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The possible values of `os.type` are: `unix`, `windows`.

```
local currenttype = os.type
```

The `os.name` string gives a more precise indication of the operating system. The possible values are: `bsd`, `freebsd`, `generic`, `gnu`, `linux`, `macosx`, `windows`.

```
local currentname = os.name
```

On MS Windows the original `os.rename`, `os.remove` and `os.getenv` functions are replaced by variants that interface to and convert from Unicode16 to utf8.

And talking of MS Windows versus the rest, we also have this:

```
local fileseparator, pathseparator = os.getseparators()
```

17.4.7 Extra string helpers

The `string` library has gotten a couple of extra functions too, some of which are iterators. There are some Unicode related helpers too. When we started Lua had no utf8 function, now it has a few, but we keep using our own, if only because they were there before. We also add plenty extra functions in the `string` name space at the Lua end.

This first function runs over a string and picks up single characters:

```
for <t:string> c in string.characters ( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for c in string.characters("τεχ") do
    context("[%02X]",string.byte(c))
end
\stopluacode
```

gives: [CF][84][CE][B5][CF][87].

```
for <t:string> l, <t:string> r in string.characterpairs ( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for l, r in string.characterpairs("τεχ") do
    context("[%02X %02X]",string.byte(l),string.byte(r))
end
\stopluacode
```

gives: [CF 84][CE B5][CF 87].

```
for <t:string> c in string.utfcharacters( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for c in string.utfcharacters("τεχ") do
    context("[%s]",c)
end
```

```
\stopluacode
```

gives: [τ][ε][χ].

Instead of getting strings back we can also get integers.

```
for <t:integer> c in string.bytes ( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for b in string.bytes("τεχ") do
    context("[%02X]",b)
end
\stopluacode
```

gives: [CF][84][CE][B5][CF][87].

```
for <t:integer> l, <t:integer> r in string.bytepairs ( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for l, r in string.bytepairs("τεχ") do
    context("[%02X %02X]",l,r)
end
\stopluacode
```

gives: [CF 84][CE B5][CF 87].

```
for <t:integer> u in string.utfvalues( <t:string> s ) do
    -- some action
end
```

```
\startluacode
for c in string.utfvalues("τεχ") do
    context("[%U]",c)
end
\stopluacode
```

gives: [U+003C4][U+003B5][U+003C7].

The `bytetable` function splits a string in bytes.

```
function string.bytetable ( <s:string> s) do
    return <t:table> -- with bytes
end
```

Here is a line splitter:

```
function string.linetable  ( <s:string> s) do
    return <t:table> -- with lines
end
```

This one converts an integer (code point) into an utf string:

```
function string.utfcharacter ( <t:string> s )
    return <t:string>
end
```

We also have a variant that takes a table. The table can have integers, strings, and subtables.

```
function string.utfcharacter ( <t:table> s )
    return <t:string>
end
```

This an utf8 variant of `string.byte` and it returns the code points of the split on the stack.

```
function string.utfvalue ( <t:string> s )
    return <t:integer> -- zero or more
end
```

Instead of a list on the stack you can get a table:

```
function string.utfvaluetable ( <t:string> s )
    return <t:table> -- indexed
end
```

The name says it all:

```
function string.utflength ( <tr:string> s )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

Here we split a string in characters that are collected in an indexed table:

```
function string.utfcharactertable ( <t:string> s )
    return <t:table> -- indexed
end
```

A table with Unicode slots can be converted to an utf string with:

```
function string.utftabletostring (
    <t:table>   t,
    <t:integer> first, -- optional
    <t:integer> last   -- optional
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

Strings can be split in many ways so in ConTEXt we delegate that to Lua, but we do provide:

```
function string.splitintolines ( <t:string> str )
    return <t:table>
end
```

This function handles linefeed (ascii 10), carriage return (ascii 13) and the sequence carriage return linefeed (ascii 13 followed by ascii 10).

In ConTEXt we mostly use `string.formatters` which is often more efficient then `string.format` and also has additional formatting options, one being for instance `N` which is like `f` but strips trailing zero and returns efficient zeros and ones. Here is a similar low level formatter:

```
function string.f6 ( <t:number> n )
    return <t:string>
end

function string.f6 ( <t:number> n,  <t:string> f )
    return <t:string>
end
```

In the first case it returns a string with at most 6 digits while the second one uses given format but tail strips the result.

```
function string.tounicode16 ( <t:integer> code  ) return <t:string> end

function string.toutf8  ( <t:table>   codes ) return <t:string> end
-------- string.toutf16 ( <t:table>   codes ) return <t:string> end
function string.toutf32 ( <t:table>   codes ) return <t:string> end
```

The next one has quite some variation in calling:

```
function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:true> )
    return <t:string>  -- big endian
end

function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:false> )
    return <t:string> -- little endian
end

function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:nil>, <t:true> )
    return <t:string> -- check bom, default to big endian
end

function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:nil>, <t:false> )
    return <t:string> end -- check bom, default to little endian
end

function string.utf16toutf8 ( <t:string> str, <t:nil>, <t:nil> )
    return <t:string> end -- check bom, default to little endian
end
```

The next packer is used for creating bitmaps:

```
function string.packrowscolumns ( <t:table> data )
    return <t:string>
end
```

For example:

```
\startluacode
local t = {
```

```
    { 65, 66, 67 },
    { 68, 69, 70 },
}
context(string.packrowscolumns(t))
\stopluacode
```

gives: ABCDEF

While:

```
\startluacode
local t = {
    { { 114, 103, 98 }, { 114, 103, 98 } },
    { { 114, 103, 98 }, { 114, 103, 98 } },
}

context(string.packrowscolumns(t))
\stopluacode
```

gives: rgbrgbrgbrgb

A string with hexadecimals can be converted with the following. Spaces are ignored. We use this for instance in the MetaPost potrace interface to permits nice input.

```
function string.hextocharacters ( <t:string> data )
    return <t:string>
end
```

So:

```
\startluacode
local t = [[
  414243 44 4546 47
  414243 44 4546 47
]]

context(string.hextocharacters(t))
\stopluacode
```

gives: ABCDEFGABCDEFG

These take strings and return integers:

```
function string.octtointeger ( <t:string> octstr ) return <t:integer> end
function string.dectointeger ( <t:string> decstr ) return <t:integer> end
function string.hextointeger ( <t:string> hexstr ) return <t:integer> end
function string.chrtointeger ( <t:string> chrstr ) return <t:integer> end
```

17.4.8 Extra table helpers

This returns the keys of the given table:

```
function table.getkeys ( < t:table> )
```

```
    return <t:table>
end
```

17.4.9 Byte encoding and decoding

We use some helpers from `pplib`.

```
function basexx.encode16  ( <t:string> str, <t:boolean> newline )
    return <t:string>
end
function basexx.encode64  ( <t:string> str, <t:boolean> newline )
    return <t:string>
end
function basexx.encode85  ( <t:string> str, <t:boolean> newline )
    return <t:string>
end

function basexx.decode16  ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end
function basexx.decode64  ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end
function basexx.decode85  ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end

function basexx.encodeRL  ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end
function basexx.decodeRL  ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end

function basexx.encodeLZW ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end
function basexx.decodeLZW ( <t:string> str ) return <t:string> end
```

The last two functions accept an optional bitset with coder flags that we leave for the user to ponder about. The `newline` directive in the first three is optional.

17.4.10 png decoding

These function started out as pure Lua functions (extrapolated from the descriptions in the standard) but eventually became library helpers. It is worth noticing that pdf supports jpeg directly so there we can just use Lua to interpret the file and pass relevant data. Support for png is actually just support for png compression, so there we need to do more work and filter the content:

```
function pngdecode.applyfilter (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> nx,
    <t:integer> ny,
    <t:integer> slice
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

We also need to split off the mask as ie becomes a separate object:

```
function pngdecode.splitmask (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> nx,
```

```
    <t:integer> ny,
    <t:integer> bpp,
    <t:integer> bytes
)
    return
        <t:string>, -- bitmap
        <t:string>  -- mask
end
```

If present we have to deinterlace:

```
function pngdecode.interlace (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> nx,
    <t:integer> ny,
    <t:integer> slice,
    <t:integer> pass
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

And maybe expand compressed:

```
function pngdecode.expand (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> nx,
    <t:integer> ny,
    <t:integer> parts,
    <t:integer> xline,
    <t:integer> factor
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

These are just helpers that permit integration in the ConTEXt graphic ecosystem (including MetaPost):

```
function pngdecode.togray ( <t:string data )
    return <t:string>
end

function pngdecode.tocmyk ( <t:string data )
    return <t:string>
end
```

For usage see the ConTEXt sources.

```
function pngdecode.tomask (
    <t:string>  content,
    <t:string>  mapping,
    <t:integer> xsize,
    <t:integer> ysize,
    <t:integer> colordepth
```

```
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

There are to variants:

```
function pngdecode.makemask (
    <t:string>  content,
    <t:integer> mapping
)
    return <t:string>
end

function pngdecode.makemask (
    <t:string> content,
    <t:table>  mapping
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

A (large) bitmap can be reduced to half the resolution with the next helper. Arbitrary reduction makes little sense so that was discarded.

```
function pngdecode.reduce (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:string> nx,
    <t:string> ny,
    <t:string> nz
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

These are used to convert png streams into streams that are suitable for pdf inclusion or further manipulations. Keep in mind that pdf (contrary to jpeg inclusion) doesn't really embed a png, but sees it as a compression scheme, so masks and transparency are separated. In practice it also means that only zip compression makes sense (which is natural to pdf) so in ConTEXt we always go simple and compress like that. There is no benefit in the other filtering which is why we only have decoders.

```
function pngdecode.frompalette (
    <t:string> content,
    <t:string> palette,
    <t:string> bytes,
    <t:string> paths,
    <t:string> transparent
)
    return
        <t:string>, -- expanded
        <t:string>  -- mask (in case of transparent)
end

function pngdecode.palettemask (
    <t:string> content,
```

```
    <t:string> transparent,
    <t:string> bytes,
    <t:string> paths
)
    return <t:string>
end

function pngdecode.transparentmask (
    <t:string> content,
    <t:string> bytes,
    <t:string> depth,
    <t:string> transparent -- optional
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

The `pdgdecode.setexperiment` option (bit 1) uses so call external strings in Lua which saves copies but is, as said, experimental.

17.4.11 MD5 hashing

In the meantime we use some helpers from `pplib` because we have that anyway. These are useful when we need a reasonable unique hash of limited length:

```
function md5.sum ( <t:string> ) return <t:string> end
function md5.hex ( <t:string> ) return <t:string> end
function md5.HEX ( <t:string> ) return <t:string> end
```

Using a hexadecimal representation of the 16 byte calculated checksum is less sensitive for escaping. This:

```
\startluacode
context.type(md5.HEX("normally this is unique enough"))
\stopluacode
```

gives: `3C1F10E596B1D1972CF5D1078796C97D`.

17.4.12 SHA2 hashing

Because `pplib` comes with some SHA2 support we can borrow its helpers instead of the Lua code we used before (which was anyway fun to write).

```
function sha2.digest256 ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.digest384 ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.digest512 ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.sum256    ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.sum384    ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.sum512    ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.hex256    ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.hex384    ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.hex512    ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
```

```
function sha2.HEX256    ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.HEX384    ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
function sha2.HEX512    ( <t:string> data ) return <t:string> end
```

The number refers to bytes, so with 256 we get a 32 byte hash that we show in hexadecimal because that is less sensitive for escaping:

```
\startluacode
context.type(sha2.HEX256("normally this is unique enough"))
\stopluacode
```

gives: `D1F1E826197E80BB3860BA279C2D46652C37D4D56B5B7CFD7881450FCF0161F4`.

17.4.13 AES encryption

In the next encryption functions the key should be 16, 24 or 32 bytes long.

```
function aes.encode (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:string> key
)
    return <t:string>
end

function aes.decode (
    <t:string> data,
    <t:string> key
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

This returns a string. The default length is 16; the optional length is limited to 32.

```
function aes.random ( <t:integer> length )
    return <t:string>
end
```

Here is an example:

```
\startluacode
context.type ( basexx.encode16 ( aes.encode (
    "normally this is unique enough",
    "The key of live!"
) ) )
\stopluacode
```

This gives: `6A19333F6D2D25B4FF47C5B5631D825696454361601673C1ADFFE7161C7F00C3`, where we hexed the result because it is unlikely to be valid utf8.

17.4.14 ZIP (de)compression

We provide the minimum needed to support compression in the backend but even this limited set makes it possible to implement a zip file compression utility which is indeed what we do in ConTEXt.

We use `minizip` as codebase, without the zip utility code. The meaning and application of the various arguments can be found (and are better explained) on the internet.

```
function xzip.compress (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> compresslevel,
    <t:integer> method,
    <t:integer> window,
    <t:integer> memory,
    <t:integer> strategy
)
    return <t:string>
end

function xzip.compresssize (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> buffersize,
    <t:integer> compresslevel,
    <t:integer> window
)
    return <t:string>
end

function xzip.decompress (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> window
)
    return <t:string>
end

function xzip.decompresssize (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> targetsize,
    <t:integer> window
)
    return <t:string>
end

function xzip.adler32 (
    <t:string>  buffer,
    <t:integer> checksum
)
    return <t:integer>
end

function xzip.crc32 (
    <t:string>  buffer,
    <t:integer> checksum
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

17.4.15 Potrace

The excellent potrace manual explains everything about this library therefore here we just show the interface. Possible fields in specification are: `bytes`, `height`, `negate`, `nx`, `ny`, `swap`, `value`, `width`

```
function potrace.new ( <t:table> specification )
    return <t:userdata> -- instance
end

function potrace.free ( <t:userdata> instance)
    -- no return values
end
```

The process is controlled by the specification: `negate`, `optimize`, `policy`, `size`, `threshold`, `tolerance`, `value`, where permitted policy values are `black`, `left`, `majority`, `minority`, `random`, `right`, `white`.

```
function potrace.process ( <t:userdata> instance, <t:table> specification )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Results are collected in a table that we can feed into MetaPost, The table has subtables per traced shape and these contain indexed tables with two (pair) or six (curve) entries. There is a boolean `sign` field and an integer `index` field. In the next function only the first argument is mandate.

```
function potrace.totable  (
    <t:userdata> instance,
    <t:boolean>  debug,
    <t:integer>  first,
    <t:integer>  last
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

For LuaMetaFun we have added some additional in pure Lua; those are not described here as they are not part of the engine.

17.4.16 Sparse hashes

The sparse library is just there because we use similar code to store all these character related codes that way (**\lccode**) and such). The entries can be 1 (`0xFF`), 2 (`0xFFFF`) or 4 (`0xFFFFFFFF`) bytes wide. When 0 is used as width then nibbles (`0xF`) are assumed.

```
function sparse.new (
    <t:integer> bytes,
    <t:integer> default
)
    return <t:userdata>
end
```

You set a value by index. Optionally there can be the `"global"` keyword before the second argument.

```
function sparse.set (
    <t:userdata> instance,
    <t:integer>  index,
    <t:integer>  value
)
    return <t:integer>
end
```

We get back integers as that is what we store:

```
function sparse.get ( <t:userdata> instance ) return <t:integer> end
function sparse.min ( <t:userdata> instance ) return <t:integer> end
function sparse.max ( <t:userdata> instance ) return <t:integer> end
```

The range is fetched with:

```
function sparse.range ( <t:userdata> instance )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- min
        <t:integer>  -- max
end
```

We can iterate over the hash:

```
for
    <t:integer> index,
    <t:integer> value
in sparse.traverse (
    <t:userdata> instance
) do
    -- actions
end
```

This is a somewhat strange one but it permits packing all values in a string. It's another way to create bitmaps.

```
function sparse.concat (
    <t:userdata> instance
    <t:integer>  min,
    <t:integer>  max,
    <t:integer>  how  -- 0=byte, 1=lsb 2=msb
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

Setting values obeys grouping in TEX, but we can restore any time:

```
function sparse.restore ( <t:userdata> instance )
    -- nothing to return
end
```

We can also wipe all values:

```
function sparse.wipe (<t:userdata> instance )
    -- nothing to return
end
```

17.4.17 Posits

We implement posits as userdata . We use the library from the posit team, although it is not complete so we might roll out our own variant (as we need less anyway). The advance of userdata is that we can use the binary and relation operators.

Here are the housekeeping functions. Some are more tolerant with respect to arguments, take the allocator:

```
function posit.new (              ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.new ( <t:string> s ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.new ( <t:number> n ) return <t:posit> end
```

When a posit is expected a number or string is also accepted which is then converted to a posit.

```
function posit.copy      ( <t:posit>  p ) return <t:posit>   end
function posit.tostring  ( <t:posit>  p ) return <t:string>  end
function posit.tonumber  ( <t:posit>  p ) return <t:number>  end
function posit.integer   ( <t:posit>  p ) return <t:integer  end
function posit.rounded   ( <t:posit>  p ) return <t:integer> end
function posit.toposit   ( <t:number> n ) return <t:posit>   end
function posit.fromposit ( <t:posit>  p ) return <t:number>  end

function posit.NaN ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:boolean> end
function posit.NaR ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:boolean> end
```

Here are the logical operators:

```
function posit.bor  ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.bxor ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.band ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
```

Ans shifters:

```
function posit.shift  ( <t:posit> p1, <t:integer> n ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.rotate ( <t:posit> p,  <t:integer> n ) return <t:posit> end
```

There is a limited repertoire of math functions (basically what we needed for MetaPost):

```
function posit.abs   ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.conj  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.acos  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.asin  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.atan  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.ceil  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.cos   ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.exp   ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.exp2  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
```

```
function posit.floor ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.log   ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.log10 ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.log1p ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.log2  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.logb  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.round ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.sin   ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.sqrt  ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.tan   ( <t:posit> p ) return <t:posit> end

function posit.modf ( <t:posit> p )
    return
        <t:posit>,
        <t:posit>
end

function posit.min ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.max ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
function posit.pow ( <t:posit> p1, <t:posit> p2 ) return <t:posit> end
```

17.4.18 Complex numbers

```
function xcomplex.new ( )
    return <t:complex>
end

function xcomplex.new (
    <t:number> re,
    <t:number> im
)
    return <t:complex>
end

function xcomplex.tostring ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:string>
end

function xcomplex.topair ( <t:complex> z )
    return
        <t:number>, -- re
        <t:number>  -- im
end
```

There is a bunch of functions that take a complex number:

```
function xcomplex.abs   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:number>  end
function xcomplex.arg   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:number>  end
function xcomplex.imag  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:number>  end
function xcomplex.real  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:number>  end
function xcomplex.conj  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
```

```
function xcomplex.proj  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.exp   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.log   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.sqrt  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.sin   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.cos   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.tan   ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.asin  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.acos  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.atan  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.sinh  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.cosh  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.tanh  ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.asinh ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.acosh ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end
function xcomplex.atanh ( <t:complex> z ) return <t:complex> end

function xcomplex.pow   ( <t:complex> z1, <t:complex> z2 ) return <t:complex> end
```

We added the `cerf` functions but one can wonder if we should carry that burden around (instead of just assuming a library to be used).

The complex error function `erf(z)`:

```
function cerf.erf ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end
```

The complex complementary error function `erfc(z) = 1 - erf(z)`:

```
function cerf.erfc ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end
```

The underflow-compensating function `erfcx(z) = exp(z^2) erfc(z)`:

```
function cerf.erfcx ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end
```

The imaginary error function `erfi(z) = -i erf(iz)`:

```
function cerf.erfi ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end
```

Dawson's integral `D(z) = sqrt(pi)/2 * exp(-z^2) * erfi(z)`:

```
function cerf.dawson ( <t:complex> z )
    return <t:complex>
end
```

The convolution of a Gaussian and a Lorentzian:

```
function cerf.voigt (
    <t:number> n1,
    <t:number> n2,
    <t:number> n3
)
    return <t:number>
end
```

The half width at half maximum of the Voigt profile:

```
function cerf.voigt_hwhm (
    <t:number> n1,
    <t:number> n2
)
    return <t:number>
end
```

17.4.19 Decimal numbers

Because in MetaPost we support the decimal number system, we also provide this at the TEX end Apart from the usual support for operators there are some functions available.

```
function xdecimal.new ( )              return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.new ( <t:number> n ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.new ( <t:string> s ) return <t:decimal> end

function xdecimal.copy     ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.tostring ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:string>  end
function xdecimal.tonumber ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:number>  end

function xdecimal.setprecision ( <t:integer> digits )
    --nothing to return
end

function xdecimal.getprecision ( )
    return <t:integer>
end

function xdecimal.bor  ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.bxor ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.band ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end

function xdecimal.shift  ( <t:decimal> a, <t:integer> n ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.rotate ( <t:decimal> a, <t:integer> n ) return <t:decimal> end

function xdecimal.abs   ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.trim  ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.conj  ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.abs   ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.sqrt  ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.ln    ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.log   ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
```

```
function xdecimal.exp   ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.minus ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.plus  ( <t:decimal> a ) return <t:decimal> end

function xdecimal.min ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.max ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end
function xdecimal.pow ( <t:decimal> a, <t:decimal> b ) return <t:decimal> end
```

17.4.20 Math helpers

The xmath library provides function and a few constants:

```
local infinty    = xmath.inf
local notanumber = xmath.nan
local pi         = xmath.pi
```

There are more helpers than the average used needs. We also use these to extend the MetaPost repertoire.

```
function xmath.acos       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.acosh      ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.asin       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.asinh      ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.atan       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.atan       ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b )  return <t:number> end
function xmath.atan2      ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.atan2      ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b )  return <t:number> end
function xmath.atanh      ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.cbrt       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.ceil       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.clamp      ( <t:number> a ... c          ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.copysign   ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b )  return <t:number> end
function xmath.cos        ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.cosd       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.cosh       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.div        ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b )  return <t:number> end
function xmath.deg        ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.erf        ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.erfc       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.even       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.exp        ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.exp2       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.expm1      ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.fabs       ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.fdim       ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b )  return <t:number> end
function xmath.floor      ( <t:number> a )                return <t:number> end
function xmath.fmax       ( ... )                         return <t:number> end
function xmath.fmin       ( ... )                         return <t:number> end
function xmath.mod        ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b )  return <t:number> end
function xmath.fmod       ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b )  return <t:number> end
```

```
function xmath.frexp      ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.gamma      ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.hypot      ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.isfinite   ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.isinf      ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.isnan      ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.isnormal   ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.j0         ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.j1         ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.jn         ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.ldexp      ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.lerp       ( <t:number> a ... c         ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.lgamma     ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.log        ( <t:number> a [,b])           return <t:number> end
function xmath.log10      ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.log1p      ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.log2       ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.logb       ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.modf       ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.nearbyint  ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.nextafter  ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.odd        ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.pow        ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.rad        ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.remainder  ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.remquo     ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.round      ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.rounded    ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.scalbn     ( <t:number> a, <t:number> b ) return <t:number> end
function xmath.sign       ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.sin        ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.sinh       ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.sind       ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.sqrt       ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.tan        ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.tanh       ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.tand       ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.tgamma     ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.trunc      ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.y0         ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.y1         ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end
function xmath.yn         ( <t:number> a )               return <t:number> end

function xmath.fma (
    <t:number> a,
    <t:number> b,
    <t:number> c
)
    return <t:number>
end
```

17.4.21 Bitset

This provides an efficient way to store a state and it's a by-product of the zbuffering feature. The library defaults to one-based sets but we can also be zero-based:

```
function bitset.new (
    <t:integer> n,
    <t:boolean> dflt -- optional
)
    return <t:bitset>
end

function bitset.newonebased  (
    <t:integer> n,
    <t:boolean> dflt -- optional
)
    return <t:bitset>
end

function bitset.newzerobased (
    <t:integer> n,
    <t:boolean> dflt -- optional
)
    return <t:bitset>
end
```

These directly operate on a bitset:

```
function bitset.set    ( <t:bitset> s ) end
function bitset.get    ( <t:bitset> s ) end
function bitset.assign ( <t:bitset> s, <t:boolean> value ) end
function bitset.reset  ( <t:bitset> s ) end
function bitset.wipe   ( <t:bitset> s ) end
```

There are some serializers too:

```
function bitset.asstring ( <t:bitset> s ) return <t:string> end
function bitset.tostring ( <t:bitset> s ) return <t:string> end
function bitset.totable  ( <t:bitset> s ) return <t:table>  end
```

The nest repertoire does some juggling:

```
function bitset.band ( <t:bitset> a, <t:bitset> b )
function bitset.bor  ( <t:bitset> a, <t:bitset> b )
function bitset.bxor ( <t:bitset> a, <t:bitset> b )
function bitset.bnot ( <t:bitset> a, <t:bitset> b )
function bitset.shl  ( <t:bitset> a, <t:bitset> b )
function bitset.shr  ( <t:bitset> a, <t:bitset> b )
function bitset.len  ( <t:bitset> s )
```

These actions are also available as more direct operators so we can say `a & b`, `a | b`, `a ~ b`, `~b`, `b << k`, `b >> k` and even `#b`. The length operator is interesting because we can use of as weight in an ordered set of options, locations, complexity etc. We'll see where it gets applied in ConTEXt.

Traversing over a set can be done in three ways and we can best show these with examples:

```
\startluacode

local bs = bitset.new(4,true)

context("astring : [%s]",bitset.asstring(bs))
context.par()

bitset.reset(bs,3)

context("astring : [%s]",bitset.asstring(bs))
context.par()

context("all :")
for n, b in bitset.traverse(bs) do
    context(" [%i=%l]",n,b)
end
context.par()

context("true :")
for n, b in bitset.traverse(bs,true) do
    context(" [%i]",n)
end
context.par()

context("false :")
for n, b in bitset.traverse(bs,false) do
    context(" [%i]",n)
end
context.par()
\stopluacode
```

Here we have the default one-based sets, so we get:

```
astring : [1111]
astring : [1101]
all : [1=true] [2=true] [3=false] [4=true]
true : [1] [2] [4]
false : [3]
```

17.4.22 Interval

This library is only present for testing the concept and relates to the (optional) interval number model in MetaPost. We're not sure if this module makes sense.

17.4.23 Z-buffers

We're still working on this one as it is part of the LuaMetaFun three dimensional rendering. The functions are very much geared to the wrappers and work with userdata objects: `zbuffer`, `points`, `meshes`, `triangles`, etc. It's a mix and trade off between flexible Lua and fast C.

17.4.24 QR-codes

We can generate various (bar) codes with `zint` either using the command line program or using the optional library. However, this is a bit tricky dependency because one need a version that matches our usage and interfaces.

In practice only a few codes matter in the perspective of typesetting. In ConTEXt we have various modules and one generates the most common EAN like codes, but because QR codes are more complex we delegate that to a wrapper around the small and effective `qrcodegen` library. The Lua interface is just one function with only the first argument being mandate:

```
function generate (
    <t:string>   data,
    <t:integer>  yesbyte,
    <t:integer>  nopbyte,
    <t:newlines> boolean,
)
    return
        <t:string>  result,
        <t:integer> size
end
```

In ConTEXt we feed that into the LuaMetaFun bytemap handler which adds some more options, like different shapes instead of (efficient) scaled square pixels.

17.4.25 JPEG

We can handle png files with a mix of Lua and C helpers which gives us flexibility, performance and no need for a large library with platform specific code paths and other complications. This also makes sense because in pdf lossless bitmap graphics can be stored in what is called png encoding.

However, jpeg is a bit more complex. On the one hand we can directly embed the blob, so again we use Lua. The reason why we have provide an interface to the `nanojpeg` library is that it permits us to load a (not too complex) jpeg encoded image and use the various bytemap functionality to manipulate it in a MetaPost setting. Of course we then eventually end up with embedding a lossless result (png encoded).

```
function nanojpeg.decode ( <t:string> jpegdata )
    return
        <t:integer>, -- width
        <t:integer>, -- height
        <t:integer>, -- colordepth
        <t:string>   -- bytes
end
```

17.5 KD trees

This library is part of the z-buffering and voronoi support in LuaMetaFun and might find more usage in future version of ConTEXt. Here is the repertoire of functions. Keep in mind that this is a very specific kind of storage, quite often Lua tables and hashes are more efficient.

```
function kdtree.new ( )
    return <t:kdtree>
end

function kdtree.newweighted (
    <t:table> data
)
    return <t:kdtree>
end

function kdtree.reset (
    <t:kdtree> tree
)
end

function kdtree.insert (
    <t:kdtree> tree,
    <t:number> x,
    <t:number> y,
    <t:number> z
)
end

function kdtree.delete (
    <t:kdtree> tree,
    <t:number> x,
    <t:number> y,
    <t:number> z
)
end

function kdtree.found (
    <t:kdtree> tree,
    <t:number> x,
    <t:number> y,
    <t:number> z
)
    return
        <t:number>, -- x
        <t:number>, -- y
        <t:number>  -- z
end

function kdtree.nearest (
    <t:kdtree> tree,
    <t:number> x,
    <t:number> y,
    <t:number> z
)
    return
        <t:number>, -- x
```

```
        <t:number>, -- y
        <t:number>  -- z
end

function kdtree.nearestindex (
    <t:kdtree> tree,
    <t:number> x,
    <t:number> y,
    <t:number> z
)
    return
        <t:integer>, -- index
        <t:number>,  -- x
        <t:number>,  -- y
        <t:number>   -- z
end

function kdtree.traverse (
    <t:kdtree> tree
)
    return
        <t:integer> index,
        <t:number>  x,
        <t:number>  y,
        <t:number>  z
end

function kdtree.totable (
    <t:kdtree> tree
)
    return <t:table> -- of { x, y, z }
end
```

Here are some examples of using these:

```
\startluacode
local k = kdtree.new()

kdtree.insert(k,10,40) kdtree.insert(k,20,60)
kdtree.insert(k,30,20) kdtree.insert(k,31,10)

context("found=%s",tostring(kdtree.found(k,20,40))) context.par()
context("found=%s",tostring(kdtree.found(k,20,60))) context.par()
context("found=%s",tostring(kdtree.found(k,21,10))) context.par()

context("index=%i x=%N y=%N z=%N", kdtree.nearest(k,21,30))
context.par()

for index, x, y, z in kdtree.traverse(k) do
    context("index=%i x=%N y=%N z=%N",index,x,y,z)
    context.par()
end
```

```
local w = kdtree.newweighted {
    { 10, 40 },
    { 20, 60 },
    { 30, 20 },
    { 31, 10 },
}

context("index=%i x=%N y=%N z=%N", kdtree.nearestindex(w,21,30))
context.par()
\stopluacode
```

```
found=false
found=true
found=false
index=30 x=20 y=0 z=
index=1 x=10 y=40 z=0
index=3 x=30 y=20 z=0
index=4 x=31 y=10 z=0
index=2 x=20 y=60 z=0
index=3 x=30 y=20 z=
```

17.5.1 Effects

This is a relatively large library with various (noise) helpers that are used in LuaMetaFun interfaces: Brownian, Perlin, simplex, octave, and Worley operations. Some fallback on existing (published) reference implementations.

17.5.2 Bytemaps

This is a relatively large library with various helpers that are used in LuaMetaFun interfaces, think byte, gray, rgb allocation and access, clipping, filtering, slicing, overlays, reduction, and conversion.

17.5.3 Serial

This module was introduced when we presented the ConTEXt clock a circular device that shows progress and status of a run. The interface is minimal:

```
function serial.open ( <t:string> portname, <t:integer> baudrate )
    return <t:userdata> -- connection
end

function serial.close ( <t:userdata> connection )
    -- no return value
end

function serial.send ( <t:userdata> connection, <t:string> data )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

These come together in the next helper, which of course is rather inefficient because it opens and closes the post every time:

```
function serial.write (
    <t:string>  channel,
    <t:integer> baudrate,
    <t:string> data
)
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Examples can be found in the ConTEXt distribution. The signaling device is described in a manual and article.

17.6 Optional

17.6.1 Loading

The optional libraries are (indeed) optional. Compilation of LuaMetaTEX doesn't depend on them being present. Loading (and binding) is delayed. In practice we only see a few being of interest and used, like `zint` for barcodes, `mysql` for database processing and `graphicmagick` for an occasional runtime conversion. Some are just there to show the principles and were used to test the interfaces and loading.

A library can be loaded, and thereby registered in the 'optional' namespace, assuming that `--permitloadlib` is given with:

```
function optional.library.load (
    <t:string> filename,
    <t:string> openname,
)
    return
        <t:function>, -- target
        <t:string>    -- foundname
end
```

but there are no guarantees that it will work.

17.6.2 Management

Todo: something about how optionals are implemented and are supposed to work.

17.6.3 TDS (kpse)

The optional `kpse` library deals with lookups in the TEX Directory Structure and before it can be used it has to be initialized:

```
function optional.kpse.initialize ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

By setting the program name the library knows in what namespace to resolve filenames and variables.

```
function optional.kpse.set_program_name (
    <t:string> binaryname,
    <t:string> programname
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The main finder has one or more arguments. When the second and later arguments can be a boolean, string or number. The boolean indicates if the file must exist. A string sets the file type and a number does the same.

```
function optional.kpse.find_file(
    <t:string>  filename,
    <t:string>  filetype.
    <t:boolean> mustexist
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

You can also ask for a list of found files:

```
function optional.kpse.find_files (
    <t:string> userpath,
    <t:string> filename
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

These return variables, values and paths:

```
function optional.kpse.expand_path   ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string> end
function optional.kpse.expand_var    ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string> end
function optional.kpse.expand_braces ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string> end
function optional.kpse.var_value     ( <t:string> name ) return <t:string> end
```

If possible this returns the (first found) filename that is readable:

```
function optional.kpse.readable_file ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:string>
end
```

The list of supported file types can be fetched with:

```
function optional.kpse.get_file_types ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

17.6.4 Graphics

ghostscript

The `ghostscript` library has to be initialized:

```
function optional.ghostscript.initialize ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

A conversion is executed with the following command. Here the table is a mixed list of strings and numbers that represent the otherwise command like arguments.

```
function optional.ghostscript.execute ( <t:table> )
    return
        <t:boolean>, -- success
        <t:string>,  -- result
        <t:string>   -- message
end
```

graphicsmagick

The `graphicsmagick` library has to be initialized:

```
function optional.graphicsmagick.initialize ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

A conversion is executed with the following command.

```
function optional.graphicsmagick.execute (
    {
        inputfilename  = <t:string>,
        outputfilename = <t:string>,
        blur           = {
            radius = <t:number>,
            sigma  = <t:number>,
        },
        noise          - {
            type   = <t:integer>,
        },
    }
)
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

The noise types can be fetched with:

```
function optional.graphicsmagick.getnoisetypes ( )
    return <t:table>
end
```

imagemagick

The `imagemagick` library is initialized with:

```
function optional.imagemagick.initialize ( <t:string> filename )
```

```
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

After that you can execute convert commands. The options table is a sequence of strings, numbers and booleans that gets passes, in the same order, but where a boolean becomes one of the strings `true` or `false`.

```
function optional.imagemagick.execute (
    {
        inputfilename  = <t:string>,
        outputfilename = <t:string>,
        options        = <t:table>,
    }
)
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

zint

The `zint` library is initialized with:

```
function optional.zint.initialize ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:boolean>
end
```

As with the other graphic libraries we execute a command but here we implement a converter a bit more specific because we want back a result that we can handle in a combination of TEX and MetaPost.

```
function optional.zint.execute (
    {
        code   = <t:integer>,
        text   = <t:string>,
        option = <t:string>, -- "square"
    }
)
    return <t:table>
end
```

We get back a table that has graphic components, where each components table can zero or more subtables.

```
result = {
    rectangles = {
        { <t:integer> x, <t:integer> y, <t:integer> w, <t:integer> h }, ...
    },
    hexagons = {
        { <t:integer> x, <t:integer> y, <t:integer> d }, ...
    },
    circles = {
        { <t:integer> x, <t:integer> y, <t:nteger> d }, ...
    },
```

```
    strings = {
        { <t:integer> x, <t:integer> y, <t:integer> s, <t:string> t }, ...
    }
}
```

17.6.5 Compression

lz4

The library is initialized with:

```
function optional.lz4.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

There are compressors and decompressors. If you want the more efficient decompressor, make sure to save the size with the compressed stream and pass that when decompressing.

```
function optional.lz4.compress (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> acceleration -- default 1
)
    return <t:string>
end

function optional.lz4.decompresssize (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> size
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

These are the frame based variants:

```
function optional.lz4.framecompress ( <t:string> data )
    return <t:string>
end

function optional.lz4.framedecompress ( return <t:string>  )
    return <t:string>
end
```

lzma

The library is initialized with:

```
function optional.lzma.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The compressor can take an estimated size which makes it possible to preallocate a buffer.

```
function optional.lzma.compress (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> level,
    <t:integer> size   -- estimated
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

The decompressor can be told what the final size is which is more efficient.

```
function optional.lzma.decompress (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> size   -- estimated
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

lzo

The library is initialized with:

```
function optional.lzo.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

There is not much to tell about:

```
function optional.lzo.compress ( <t:string> data )
    return <t:string>
end
```

and

```
function optional.lzo.decompresssize (
    <t:string>  data,
    <t:integer> size
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

zstd

The library is initialized with:

```
function optional.zstd.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The compressor:

```
function optional.zstd.compress (
    <t:string>  data,
```

```
    <t:integer> level
)
    return <t:string>
end
```

The decompressor:

```
function optional.zstd.decompress ( <t:string> data )
    return <t:string>
end
```

17.6.6 Databases

mysql

We start with the usual initializer:

```
function optional.mysql.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

Opening the database is done with:

```
function optional.mysql.open (
    <t:string>  database,
    <t:string>  username,
    <t:string>  password,
    <t:string>  host,
    <t:integer> port -- optional
)
    return <t:userdata> -- instance
end
```

The database is kept ‘open’ but can be closed with:

```
function optional.mysql.close ( <t:userdata> instance )
    -- no return values
end
```

A query is executed with:

```
function optional.mysql.execute (
    <t:userdata> instance,
    <t:string>   query,
    <t:function> callback
)
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The callback is a Lua function that looks like this:

```
function callback(nofcolumns,values,fields)
```

```
    ...
end
```

It gets called for every row of the result. The fields table is only filled the first time, if at all.

This interface is rather minimalistic but in ConTEXt we wrap all in a more advanced setup. It's among the oldest Lua code in the distribution and evolved with the possibilities (client as well as external libraries) and is quite performing also due to the use of templates, caching, built-in conversions etc.

If there is an error we can fetch the message with:

```
function optional.mysql.getmessage ( <t:userdata> instance )
    return <t:string> | <t:nil> -- last error message
end
```

postgress

This library has the same interface as the `mysql` interface, so it can be used instead.

sqlite

This library has the same interface as the `mysql` interface, so it can be used instead. The only function that differs is the opener:

```
function optional.sqlite.open ( <t:string> filename )
    return <t:userdata> -- instance
end
```

17.6.7 Whatever

cerf

This library is plugged in the `xcomplex` so there is no need to discuss it here unless we decide to move it to an optional loaded library, which might happen eventually (depends on need).

curl

The library is initialized with:

```
function optional.curl.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

The fetcher stays kind of close to how the library wants it so we have no fancy interface. We have pairs where the first member is an integer indicating the option. The library only has string and integer options so booleans are effective zeros or ones. A Lua boolean therefore becomes an integer.

```
function optional.curl.fetch (
    {
        <t:integer>, <t:string> | <t:integer> | <t:boolean>,
```

```
        ...
    }
)
end
```

A url can be (un)escaped:

```
function optional.curl.escape ( <t:string> data )
    return <t:string>
end

function optional.curl.unescape ( <t:string> data )
    return <t:string>
end
```

The current version of the library:

```
function optional.curl.getversion ( )
    return <t:string>
end
```

hb

This module is mostly there to help Idris Hamid (The Oriental TEX Project develop his fonts in such away that they work with other libraries (also uniscribe). We need to initialize this library with the following function. Best have the library in the TEX tree because either more are present or the operating system updates them. As we don't use this in ConTEXt we're also not sure of things work ok but we can assume stable interfaces anyway. See the plugin module for more info.

```
function optional.hb.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

It probably makes sense to check for the version because (in the TEXLive code base) it is one of the most frequently updated code bases and for TEX stability and predictability (when working on a specific project) is important. When you initialize

```
function optional.hb.getversion ( )
    return <t:string>
end

function optional.hb.getshapers ( )
    return <t:table> -- strings
end

function optional.hb.loadfont (
    <t:integer> id,
    <t:string>  name
)
    return <t:userdata> -- instance
end
```

A run over characters happens with the next one. You get back a list of tables that specify to be handled glyphs. The interface is pretty much the same as what Kai Eigner came up with at the time he wanted to compare the results with the regular font loader, for which the LuaTEX and LuajitTEX) ffi interfaces were used.

```
function optional.hb.shapestring (
    <t:userdata> font,
    <t:string>   script,
    <t:string>   language,
    <t:string>   direction,
    <t:table>    shapers,
    <t:table>    features,
    <t:string>   text
    <t:boolean>  reverse
    <t:integer>  utfbits, -- default 8
)
    return {
        {
            <t:integer>, -- codepoint
            <t:integer>, -- cluster
            <t:integer>, -- xoffset
            <t:integer>, -- yoffset
            <t:integer>, -- xadvance
            <t:integer>, -- uadvance
        },
        ...
    }
end
```

mujs

This is just a fun experiment that permits JavaScript code to be used instead of Lua. It was actually one of the first optional libraries I played with and as with the other optionals there is a module that wraps it. The library is initialized with:

```
function optional.mujs.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

There are a few ‘mandate’ callbacks than need to be implemented:

```
function optional.mujs.setfindfile (
    function ( <t:string> name )
        return <t:string>
    end
)
    -- no return values
end

function optional.mujs.setopenfile  (
    function ( <t:string> name )
```

```
        return <t:integer> id
    end
)
    -- no return values
end

function optional.mujs.setclosefile (
    function ( <t:integer> id )
        -- no return values
    end
)
    -- no return values
end

function optional.mujs.setreadfile (
    function ( <t:integer> id )
        return <t:string> | <t:nil>
    end
)
    -- no return values
end

function optional.mujs.setseekfile (
    function ( <t:integer> id, <t:integer> position )
        return <t:integer>
    end
)
    -- no return values
end

function optional.mujs.setconsole ( )
    function ( <t:string> category, <t:string> message )
        -- no return values
    end
)
    -- no return values
end
```

The library implements a few JavaScript functions, like the ones printing to TEX, they take an optional catcodes reference:

```
texprint (catcodes, ...)
texsprint(catcodes, ...)
```

and a reporter:

```
console  (category, message)
```

The next function resets the interpreter:

```
function optional.mujs.reset ( )
    -- no return value
```

```
end
```

A snippet of JavaScript can be executed with:

```
function optional.mujs.execute ( <t:string> filename )
    -- no return value
end
```

This loads a JavaScript file:

```
function optional.mujs.dofile ( <t:string> filename )
    -- no return value
end
```

openssl

We use this module for some pdf features. Given the frequent updates to the (external) code base, it's for sure not something one wants in the engine. We use only a small subset of functionality. The library is initialized with:

```
function optional.openssl.initialize ( )
    return <t:boolean> -- success
end
```

When signing succeeds the first return value is `true` and possibly there is a string as second return value. When `false` is returned the second argument is an error code.

```
function optional.openssl.sign (
    {
        certfile   = <t:string>,
        datafile   = <t:string>,
        data       = <t:string>,
        password   = <t:string>,
        resultfile = <t:string>,
    }
)
    return
        <t:boolean>, -- success
        <t:string> | <t:integer> | <t:nil>
end
```

Verifying needs similar data:

```
function optional.openssl.verify (
    {
        certfile - <t:string>,
        datafile - <t:string>,
        data     - <t:string>,
        signature- <t:string>,
        password - <t:string>,
    }
)
```

```
    return
        <t:boolean>, -- success
        <t:integer> | <t:nil>
end
```

This needs no explanation:

```
function optional.openssl.getversion ( )
    return <t:integer>
end
```

17.6.8 Foreign

I added this because we wanted to have something `ffi` as in LuaTEX, and it runs on top of a runtime loaded `libffi`. The code is inspired by 'alien'. Some examples are given in `libs-imp-foreign.mkxl`. and when there is demand we might document it in more detail here. Till then it is considered experimental.

17.6.9 Vector

This module has been added for the sake of MetaPost graphics. Usually we talk in terms of matrices. The code evolved from a module in ConTEXt. There are some helpers in the MetaPost library that are 'vector aware'. We give some examples of usage and render the matrices involved.

```
\startluacode
document.v44 = vector.new {
    { 11, 12, 13, 14 },
    { 21, 22, 23, 24 },
    { 31, 32, 33, 34 },
    { 41, 42, 43, 44 }
}

document.v14 = vector.new {
    { 1, 2, 3, 4 }
}

document.v41 = vector.new {
    { 1 }, { 2 }, { 3 }, { 4 }
}

document.v22 = vector.new {
    { 1.1 , 2.2 },
    { 8.8 , 9.9 }
}

document.v33 = vector.new {
    { 1 , 2, 0.5 },
    { 3 , 4, 1.0 },
    { 5 , 6, 2.0 }
}
\stopluacode
```

These matrices have different dimensions (rows and columns):

$$\begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1.100 & 2.200 \\ 8.800 & 9.900 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0.500 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 6 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

4 × 4 1 × 4 4 × 1 2 × 2 3 × 3

If performance is important, you can avoid the tables and specify the dimensions with (optionally) a series of values.

```
local a = vector.new(2,3, 1,2,3, 4,5,6)
local b = vector.new(3,2, 1,2, 3,4, 5,6)
local a = vector.new(2,2, 1,2 ,3,4)
local b = vector.new(2,1, 5,6)
```

A vector is a user data object that supports addition, subtraction, multiplication and division. Here we show multiplication:

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = 4 * document.v41
document.vdemo2 = document.v41 * 4
document.vdemo3 = document.v44 * document.v41
\stopluacode
```

When two matrices are multiplied, you get a matrix product, with numbers the elements are multiplied.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 8 \\ 12 \\ 16 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 8 \\ 12 \\ 16 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 130 \\ 230 \\ 330 \\ 430 \end{pmatrix}$$

4 × × 4 ×

In addition to + (add), - (sub), * (mul) and / (div) you can use the unary minus - (negate) and test for equality with = (equal). The concat operator .. (concat) is also supported.

The functions applied to a vector return a new vector. In most cases they also accept a table and then convert that on the fly to a vector. The copy function can be used to make a copy but is not really needed.

```
\startluacode
document.v1 = vector.new { { 1, 2 }, { 3, 4 } }
document.v2 = document.v1
document.v3 = vector.copy(document.v1)
\stopluacode
```

Here the two assignments to v2 and v3 are apparently equivalent but this is what we really have:

```
<vector 00000420de8756c0 : 2 x 2>
<vector 00000420de8756c0 : 2 x 2>
<vector 00000420de875660 : 2 x 2>
```

```
\startluacode
vector.set  (document.v1, 4, 100)
vector.set  (document.v2, 4, 200)
vector.set  (document.v3, 4, 300)
vector.setrc(document.v1, 1, 1, 400)
vector.setrc(document.v2, 1, 1, 500)
vector.setrc(document.v3, 1, 1, 600)
\stopluacode
```

The copy actually is a copy while the assignment is an alias, as with tables. The only time that this shows is when we do in place assignments as here.

$\begin{pmatrix} 500 & 2 \\ 3 & 200 \end{pmatrix}$ `<vector 00000420de8756c0 : 2 x 2>`

$\begin{pmatrix} 500 & 2 \\ 3 & 200 \end{pmatrix}$ `<vector 00000420de8756c0 : 2 x 2>`

$\begin{pmatrix} 600 & 2 \\ 3 & 300 \end{pmatrix}$ `<vector 00000420de875660 : 2 x 2>`

There are also `get` and `getrc`. The reason why we have `set` and `get` is that they are equivalent to the direct accessors (using `[]`).

```
\startluacode
document.v1[3] = 2 * document.v1[3]
document.v2[3] = 2 * document.v2[3]
document.v3[3] = 2 * document.v3[3]
\stopluacode
```

Watch how we multiply the shared vector object twice:

$\begin{pmatrix} 500 & 2 \\ 12 & 200 \end{pmatrix}$ `<vector 00000420de8756c0 : 2 x 2>`

$\begin{pmatrix} 500 & 2 \\ 12 & 200 \end{pmatrix}$ `<vector 00000420de8756c0 : 2 x 2>`

$\begin{pmatrix} 600 & 2 \\ 6 & 300 \end{pmatrix}$ `<vector 00000420de875660 : 2 x 2>`

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.round  (document.v22)
document.vdemo2 = vector.floor  (document.v22)
document.vdemo3 = vector.ceiling(document.v22)
\stopluacode
```

There are various operations on vectors and you get back a new one; we don't replace in the passed vectors.

$\begin{pmatrix} 1.100 & 2.200 \\ 8.800 & 9.900 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 9 & 10 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 8 & 9 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 9 & 10 \end{pmatrix}$
	`round`	`floor`	`ceiling`

The identity matrix can be created with:

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.identity(3)
document.vdemo2 = vector.identity(4)
document.vdemo3 = vector.identity(2)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

3 × 3 4 × 4 2 × 2

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.transpose(document.v44)
document.vdemo2 = vector.swap(document.v41)
document.vdemo3 = vector.swap(document.v14)
\stopluacode
```

Transposing has a simple companion that makes a vector with a single row into one with a single column and vise versa.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 21 & 31 & 41 \\ 12 & 22 & 32 & 42 \\ 13 & 23 & 33 & 43 \\ 14 & 24 & 34 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

transpose swap swap

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.inverse    (document.v33)
document.vdemo2 = vector.rowechelon(document.v33,true)
document.vdemo3 = vector.rowechelon(document.v33)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0.500 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 6 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0.500 & -0.500 \\ 2 & -4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0.500 \\ 0 & 1 & 0.250 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

v33 inverse verified row echelon reduced echelon

The first one normalize each column vector in a matrix. The other one homogenize, dividing every entry in a row by the last element in the row, given that it is non-zero.

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.normalize (document.v33)
document.vdemo2 = vector.homogenize(document.v33)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0.500 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 \\ 5 & 6 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 0.102 & 0.204 & 0.051 \\ 0.306 & 0.408 & 0.102 \\ 0.510 & 0.612 & 0.204 \end{pmatrix} \qquad \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & 1 \\ 2.500 & 3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Internally we use a criterium for determining if we have a zero entry: 1e-06 that can be queried by `getepsilon`. The `truncate` function will reduce numbers outside this interval to zero. The `iszero` function takes a number and returns `true` when its within these bounds.

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo0 = vector.new {
    { 0.00000005, 0.001 },
    { 0.001, 0.00000001 },
}

document.vdemo1 = vector.truncate(document.vdemo0)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0.00000005 & 0.00100000 \\ 0.00100000 & 0.00000001 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0.001 \\ 0.001 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

The `determinant` function return a number so we don't show this here but we do mention the various products. These are optimized for the dimensions.

We feed `inner` with two vectors (row or column) and get the inner product of them in return.

```
\startluacode
document.num0 = vector.inner(document.v41,document.v41)
document.num1 = vector.inner(document.v14,document.v14)
\stopluacode
```

30.0 1.0

The `crossproduct` needs two 3-vectors, and returns one 3-vector. They can either be row or column vectors, and we get the same type in return.

```
\startluacode
document.cvec0 = vector.crossproduct(vector.new {{1,2,3}},     vector.new {{4,5,6}})
document.cvec1 = vector.crossproduct(vector.new {{1},{2},{3}}, vector.new {{4},{5},{6
                                                                            }})
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} -3 & 6 & -3 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} -3 \\ 6 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo0 = vector.new {
    { 11, 12, 13, 14 },
    { 21, 22, 23, 24 },
    { 31, 32, 33, 34 },
    { 41, 42, 43, 44 },
}

document.vdemo1 = vector.slice(document.vdemo0,2,2,1,1)
document.vdemo2 = vector.slice(document.vdemo0,2,2,2,2)
document.vdemo3 = vector.slice(document.vdemo0,2,2,3,3)
```

```
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 21 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 21 & 22 \\ 31 & 32 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 21 & 22 & 23 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 \end{pmatrix}$$

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.delete(document.vdemo0,2,2)
document.vdemo2 = vector.delete(document.vdemo0,2,1)
document.vdemo3 = vector.delete(document.vdemo0,2,2,true)
document.vdemo4 = vector.delete(document.vdemo0,2,1,true)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 14 \\ 21 & 24 \\ 31 & 34 \\ 41 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix}$$

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.remove(document.vdemo0,2,2)
document.vdemo2 = vector.remove(document.vdemo0,2,1)
document.vdemo3 = vector.remove(document.vdemo0,2,2,true)
document.vdemo4 = vector.remove(document.vdemo0,2,1,true)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 14 \\ 21 & 24 \\ 31 & 34 \\ 41 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix}$$

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo0 = vector.new {
    { 11, 12, 13, 14 },
    { 21, 22, 23, 24 },
    { 31, 32, 33, 34 },
    { 41, 42, 43, 44 },
}

document.vdemo0r = vector.new {
    { 101, 201, 301, 401 },
    { 102, 202, 302, 402 },
}

document.vdemo0c = vector.new {
    { 101, 201 },
    { 102, 202 },
    { 103, 203 },
    { 104, 204 },
}
```

```
document.vdemo0rc = vector.new {
    { 101, 201 },
    { 102, 202 },
}
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 101 & 201 & 301 & 401 \\ 102 & 202 & 302 & 402 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 101 & 201 \\ 102 & 202 \\ 103 & 203 \\ 104 & 204 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 101 & 201 \\ 102 & 202 \end{pmatrix}$$

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0c,0)
document.vdemo2 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0c,1)
document.vdemo3 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0c,2)
document.vdemo4 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0c,3)
document.vdemo5 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0c,4)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 101 & 201 & 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 102 & 202 & 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 103 & 203 & 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 104 & 204 & 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 101 & 201 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 102 & 202 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 103 & 203 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 104 & 204 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 101 & 201 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 102 & 202 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 103 & 203 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 104 & 204 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 101 & 201 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 102 & 202 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 103 & 203 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 104 & 204 \end{pmatrix}$$

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0r,0,true)
document.vdemo2 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0r,1,true)
document.vdemo3 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0r,2,true)
document.vdemo4 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0r,3,true)
document.vdemo5 = vector.insert(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0r,4,true)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 101 & 201 & 301 & 401 \\ 102 & 202 & 302 & 402 \\ 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 101 & 201 & 301 & 401 \\ 102 & 202 & 302 & 402 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 101 & 201 & 301 & 401 \\ 102 & 202 & 302 & 402 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 101 & 201 & 301 & 401 \\ 102 & 202 & 302 & 402 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 \\ 21 & 22 \\ 31 & 32 \\ 41 & 42 \\ 101 & 201 \\ 102 & 202 \end{pmatrix}$$

```
\startluacode
document.vdemo1 = vector.replace(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0rc,1,1)
document.vdemo2 = vector.replace(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0rc,2,2)
document.vdemo3 = vector.replace(document.vdemo0,document.vdemo0rc,3,3)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 101 & 201 & 13 & 14 \\ 102 & 202 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 101 & 201 & 24 \\ 31 & 102 & 202 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 101 & 201 \\ 41 & 42 & 102 & 202 \end{pmatrix}$$

```
\startluacode
```

```
document.vdemo1 = vector.exchange(document.vdemo0,1,1)
document.vdemo2 = vector.exchange(document.vdemo0,1,2,true)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 21 & 22 & 23 & 24 \\ 11 & 12 & 13 & 14 \\ 31 & 32 & 33 & 34 \\ 41 & 42 & 43 & 44 \end{pmatrix}$$

This leaves a couple of auxiliary function that we just mention:

`isvector`	`(v)`	return `true` when the argument is a vector
`onerow`	`(n,...,m)`	a fast way to create a single row vector
`onecolumn`	`(n,...,m)`	a fast way to create a single column vector
`type`	`(v)`	return the string `vector` if we pass one
`tostring`	`(v)`	returns the dimensions and pointer value
`totable`	`(v)`	returns a regular table representation
`determinant`	`(v)`	returns the determinant
`issingular`	`(v,[n])`	returns true if the determinant is < 0.001
`setstacking`	`(v,n)`	set the stacking property (MetaPost)
`getstacking`	`(v)`	get the stacking property (MetaPost)
`getdimensions`	`(v)`	returns the number of rows and columns

We already mentioned that often you can also provide a table instead of a vector:

```
\startluacode
document.t1 = {
    { 1, 2, 3 },
    { 1, 2, 3 },
    { 1, 2, 3 },
}

document.t2 = {
    { 11, 2, 3 },
    { 1, 12, 3 },
    { 1, 2, 13 },
}

document.v1 = vector.new(document.t1)
document.v2 = vector.new(document.t2)

document.v1t1 = vector.product(document.v1,document.t2)
document.t1v1 = vector.product(document.t1,document.v1)
document.v1v2 = vector.product(document.v1,document.v2)
document.t1t2 = vector.product(document.t1,document.t2)
\stopluacode
```

$$\begin{pmatrix} 16 & 32 & 48 \\ 16 & 32 & 48 \\ 16 & 32 & 48 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 6 & 12 & 18 \\ 6 & 12 & 18 \\ 6 & 12 & 18 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 16 & 32 & 48 \\ 16 & 32 & 48 \\ 16 & 32 & 48 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} 16 & 32 & 48 \\ 16 & 32 & 48 \\ 16 & 32 & 48 \end{pmatrix}$$

v t t v v v t t

When you define and fill a vector, you can use the setters mentioned before. Here we show a few ways, assuming that `ns` and `nt` are known and `calulate` does some useful magic.

```
local t = { }  -- we could preallocate

for s = 0, ns do
    for t = 0, nt do
        local x, y, z = calculate(s,t)
        t[#t+1] = { x, y, z, 1 }
   end
end

local v = newvector(t)
```

We can avoid the fourth entry which is always 0 which gives smaller intermediate tables and just append these ones later using the `append` function.

```
local t = { }  -- we could preallocate

for s = 0, ns do
    for t = 0, nt do
        local x, y, z = calculate(s,t)
        t[#t+1] = { x, y, z }
   end
end

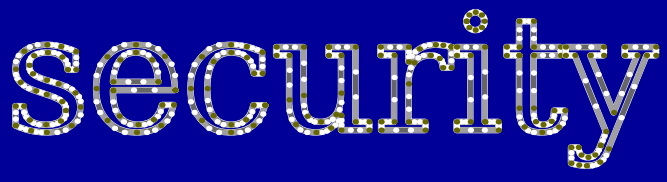
local v = newvector(t)
v = vector.append(v,1)
```

We can avoid the Lua
table completely and just populate the vector as we go. The `setnext` does the trick:

```
local setnext = vector.setnext

local v = newvector((ns + 1) * (nt + 1), 4)
for s = 0, ns do
    for t = 0, nt do
        local x, y, z = calculate(s,t)
        setnext(v, x, y, z, 1)
   end
end
```

That last variant is the most natural and also the most efficient approach but taste can differ.


security

18 Security

Contents

18.1 Introduction 735
18.2 Primitives 735
18.3 Macros 736
18.4 Tokens 736
18.5 Nodes 736
18.6 Lua 737
18.7 Files 737
18.8 Callbacks 737
18.9 Libraries 738
18.10 Execution 739

18.1 Introduction

This is a relatively short chapter where we pay some attention to possible side effects that can come from running a program like TEX and especially LuaMetaTEX. A TEX program is normally pretty robust but the fact that we use an opened up engine and also need to keep performance in mind, also means that there are ways to have a less nice experience. However, given the nature of the program we also expect users to know what they are doing. If you run TEX as service there are ways to keep problems local (using a virtual machine) or using constrained input like xml. In ConTEXt you can also limit some functionality by using sandbox features but those are seldom used.

The engine starts out with everything available but you can selectively disable features and thereby add some protection. When you use ConTEXt this means that there might be features that you cannot use or that are restricted in use. When an open TEX engine like LuaTEX or LuaMetaTEX is used we assume that you (or those who developed the macros that you use) know what they are doing. As a side note: LuaMetaTEX is likely a bit more hardened than LuaTEX.

18.2 Primitives

Internally TEX has grouped the user interface in commands. Most commands have variants. So, for instance there is are `\hrule` and `\vrule` than are triggering `hrule_cmd` and `vrule_cmd` with a sub command, here in both cases zero (or `normal_rule_code`. The `\nohrule` and `novrule` primitives trigger these rule commands with sub command `empty_rule_code`.

Primitive initialization boils down to relating control sequences (normally starting with a backslash) to a combination of such commands and subcommands and there are hundreds of such combinations.

You can decide to selectively initialize these primitives but also to just redefine the control sequence. so:

```
\let\left\MyLeftCommand
```

will replace the primitive by whatever `\MyLeftCommand` does. Unless you save the original meaning the primitive is lost; well not entirely as we will see later. Overload protection can be set up to prevent primitives being redefined.

We are aware of the fact that overload protection and the related prefixes that drive the properties (like `\permanent`, `\frozen`, `\immutable`, `\tolerant` and more) are very much inspired by how ConTEXt developers see things so it is unlikely that other macro packages will use these features. But that is probably true for most of the features that make LuaMetaTEX differ from LuaTEX. The same can be said for the embedded MetaPost library which is also an enhanced follow up and Lua helpers of any kind.

18.3 Macros

Macros are user defined commands (when using `\def` and friends) or aliases (when using `\let` and co).

```
\def\foo{fooled}
```

When `\overloadmode` is active the next one:

```
\permanent\def\foo{fooled}
```

will make sure that a user doesn't redefine this macro. One can argue that the strength of TEX is that you have complete control which is what you have unless a macro package decides that being a bit more strict makes sense. Primitives are permanent by default.

18.4 Tokens

Tokens are the storage concept of commands, and keep in mind that even a letter is just that, for instance a `letter_cmd` with a sub code being a Unicode? In Lua you can create tokens so that is actually a loophole: you can redefine a primitive but that doesn't remove the command and its subcommand: these stay around.

The `tex.inhibitprimitive` function can block such a combination either via its primitive name or by the two codes.

```
\ctxlua{tex.inhibitprimitive("primitive")}
```

That way there is no change that this old school primitive will kick in. This might be good to know for a macro package because then it doesn't need to take that possibility into account.

18.5 Nodes

Robust node usage is bit more complex. Where tokens are collected, consumed, deallocated or kept with a reference count and thereby managed, nodes are the result of building and manipulating (content) lists and at the Lua end one can create bad links (like loops) or forget to make copies when flushing nodes multiple times.

In LuaMetaTEX at least there is protection against assigning the wrong fields, accessing freed nodes etc. But it will never be completely safe. So, what can happen is that nodes are already freed (often a warning), list linking is bad (endless loops or crashes), internal mechanisms get confused (quit with error or just crash).

So here you mainly have to trust the writers of the macro package and they will not on purpose trigger problems. The good news is that it being an relatively long standing community, the TEX world has some leverage and protection against malice built in.

18.6 Lua

Here is the real possibility to mess with your run. There is little we can do about it. The good news is that Lua is relatively well designed wrt memory management so it's your own doing if something goes bad. It is good to keep in mind that even well intended code can behave bad and create crashes. Normally a crash is harmless and just a crash.

18.7 Files

Whenever a program can mess with files there is the danger of corruption. This is however also true for the other TEX engines. It therefore makes no sense to give examples here as it might give away ideas. Again there is the possibility to use sandboxing in ConTEXt but you are anyways dependent on what your macro package provides.

In this perspective we should also mention that you can produce a bad pdf file (assuming that this is your output format) and that might only show up after years.

18.8 Callbacks

These extend the engine and some are actually mandate, like those reading from files and loading fonts. Most intrusive are those that intercept the node lists in various states and it's important that things happen in the right order. Give back the wrong result and you might get into problems. Normally the engine intercept the unexpected but who knows.

The macro package is responsible for managing this. It can put restrictions on using callbacks, prohibit changes to them etc. For instance in ConTEXt the current callback properties are:

alignment	set frozen touched selective	22	things done with alignments
append_adjust	set frozen touched selective	40	things done with vertical adjusts
append_line	set disabled frozen touched selective	42	things done with lines
append_migrate	set disabled frozen touched selective	41	things done with migrated material
append_to_vlist	disabled frozen touched selective	21	vlist processing (not used, replaced)
balance_boundary	set frozen touched	68	process balance specific boundary
balance_check	set touched tracing	36	balance_check
balance_insert	set frozen touched	69	collect inserts from balance slot
begin_paragraph	set disabled frozen touched	47	before paragraph start
buildpage	set frozen touched	11	vertical spacing etc (mvl)
define_font	set frozen touched fundamental	8	define and/or load a font
find_format_file	set frozen touched fundamental	3	locate the format file
find_log_file	set frozen touched fundamental	2	provide the log file name
get_attribute	set frozen touched tracing	53	provide verbose attribute name
get_math_dictionary	set frozen touched tracing	55	provide math dictionary details
get_noad_class	set frozen touched tracing	54	provide math class name
glyph_run	set frozen touched selective	17	glyph processing
handle_overload	set frozen touched tracing	58	handle primitive and macro overload protection
handle_uinsert	set frozen touched selective	64	process user inserts in balancer
handle_uleader	set frozen touched selective	63	resolve user leaders
hpack	disabled frozen touched selective	12	hlist processing (not used, replaced)
hpack_quality	set frozen touched tracing	33	report horizontal packing quality
hyphenate	disabled frozen touched selective	14	normal hyphenation routine, called elsewhere
insert_boundary	set frozen touched	44	process insert specific boundary
insert_check_split	set frozen touched	45	process insert split state tracer
insert_distance	set frozen touched	43	check spacing around inserts
insert_par	set disabled frozen touched	39	after paragraph start
intercept_lua_error	set frozen touched tracing	30	intercept_lua_error

intercept_tex_error	set frozen touched tracing	29	intercept_tex_error
italic_correction	set frozen touched	65	insert italic correction
kerning	disabled frozen touched selective	16	normal kerning routine, called elsewhere
ligaturing	disabled frozen touched selective	15	normal ligaturing routine, called elsewhere
linebreak	set disabled frozen touched selective	19	breaking paragraps into lines
linebreak_check	set touched tracing	35	linebreak_check
linebreak_quality	tracing	61	
local_box	set frozen touched selective	23	process local boxes
make_extensible	set frozen touched	50	construct an extensible glyph
math_rule		49	
missing_character	set frozen touched tracing	59	report details about a missing character
mlist_to_hlist	set frozen touched selective	25	convert a noad list into a node list
open_data_file	set frozen touched fundamental	4	open the given file for reading
packed_vbox	set frozen touched selective	24	packed vbox treatments
page_boundary		70	
paragraph_context	set disabled frozen touched	48	when the context is dealt with
paragraph_pass	set touched selective	62	paragraph_pass
post_linebreak	set frozen touched	20	horizontal manipulations (after par break)
pre_dump	set frozen touched fundamental	26	lua related finalizers called before we dump the format
pre_linebreak	set frozen touched	18	horizontal manipulations (before par break)
pre_output	set frozen touched selective	10	preparing output box
process_character	set frozen touched selective	60	apply an action to a character in a font
process_jobname	frozen touched fundamental	5	manipulate jobname
quality_font	set frozen touched selective	9	initialize expansion and protrusion
register_extensible	set frozen touched	51	register math extensible construct
show_build	tracing	38	
show_error_message	set frozen touched tracing	31	show_error_message
show_loners	tracing	66	
show_lua_call	set frozen touched tracing	56	provide lua call details
show_vsplit	tracing	37	
show_warning_message	set frozen touched tracing	32	show_warning_message
show_whatsit	set frozen touched tracing	52	provide whatsit details
start_file	set frozen touched fundamental	27	report opening of a file
start_run	set frozen touched fundamental	6	actions performed at the beginning of a run
stop_file	set frozen touched fundamental	28	report closing of a file
stop_run	set frozen touched fundamental	7	actions performed at the end of a run
tail_append	set frozen touched selective	67	process tail related action
test_only		1	
trace_memory	set frozen touched tracing	57	
vpack	set frozen touched selective	13	vertical spacing etc
vpack_quality	set frozen touched tracing	34	report vertical packing quality
wrapup_run	set frozen touched fundamental	46	actions performed after closing files

There are probably ways around all this protection because after all the files that make a format are on the system. But the fact that one then to deliberately has to do that also indicates (or at least makes one aware) that one is ‘on its own’. The TEX ecosystem and the programs and macros used are open source so anything can be done with it, good and bad. So all boils down to trust.

18.9 Libraries

There is plenty built in so LuaMetaTEX can do without libraries. However, there are some so called optional library interfaces available. These are dynamic in the sense that they assume a stable API and bind functions when the library is loaded. Again controlling this is a macro package specific feature. Often one can just as well call a program (that uses such a library) which might be a better options, for instance when converting an image. We kept the interfaces minimal and assume some Lua wrapping. It helps to keep the dependencies to a minimum.

18.10 Execution

Then there is program execution (aka `\write18` in other engines than LuaTEX and LuaMetaTEX). The engine is not responsible for how `os.execute` and `io.popen` are used and macro packages can decide to disable it.